JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

QUICK START

INSTALLERS

1. If you need to assembly the kiln read the ASSEMBLY section.

2. If you need to hook up the kiln red the INSTALLATION section. The Wriing diagram is located in the WIRING seciton.

3. Read the CAUTION section for installatino cautions.

USERS

1. Read and understand the CAUTIONS section

2. Read the Operation section. This is all you need to know to operate the kiln.

3. If you want to know more about how to operate the control read the CONTROL section. This is very detailed and can be overwhelming. Use it as a referance and for more sophisticated programming and configuration instructions.

4. For ongoing routine kiln maintenance read the MAINTENANCE section. This is something that the kiln operator is responsible for.

5. For more background information on Ceramics process, Glass firing, Firing Tips, Cones, and a Log Sheet see the LOG, CONES, TIPS, CERAMIC PROCESS section.

MAINTAINERS

1. Read the TROUBLESHOOTING section, the WIRING section, the PARTS section and the SERVICE & WARRANTY section.

ADMINISTRATORS

1. See the MSDS section if you have any questions about materials used in the kiln.

CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L KILNS

CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS

KILNS THIS APPLIES TO

This section covers the caution instructions for the following L&L kilns:

CURRENT PRODUCTION KILNS

- Easy-Fire Kilns (e Series)
- Easy-Fire XT Kilns (X and T Series)
- School-Master Kilns (SM Series)
- Jupiter Automatic Kilns (JD Series)
- eQuad-Pro Production Kilns (eQ Series)
- JH Crystalline Kilns (JH Series)
- Hercules Front-Loading Kilns (EL-H Series)
- Easy-Load Front-Loading Kilns (EL Series)
- DaVinci Automatic Kilns (X and T Series)
- Jupiter Manual Kilns (J Series)
- Dura-Fire Kilns (D Series)
- Doll/Test Kilns (DL and DLH Series)
- Liberty-Belle Kilns (LB Series)

OBSOLETE MODELS

- Econo Kilns (K Series and J Series)
- Programmatic Kilns (B Series)
- Dyna-Kilns (C & H Series)
- Dyna-Kilns (SQ Series)
- Enameling Kilns (E48, E49, R Series)
- Oval Kilns (OV Series)
- Genesis Kilns (G Series)
- Most other L&L kilns

RESELLERS ARE NOT AUTHORIZED TO MODIFY THESE CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS

Distributors and installers of L&L kilns are not authorized by L&L to make modifications or contradict these Caution Instructions (or our Installation Instructions). If L&L's instructions are not followed, L&L specifically disavows responsibility for any injury or damage that may result.

DATED INFORMATION

The information in these Caution Instructions is believed to be correct to the best of our knowledge at the time of publication (see the date at the bottom of this sheet). You can view the most recent update from our web site at *www.hotkilns.com/cautions* at any time.

CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L KILNS

SAFETY NOTICE

1. All cautions and requirements recommended by L&L Kiln Mfg. Inc. are meant to assist Users to properly and safely operate their kilns. Many of these cautions apply to kilns and ceramic processes in general.

2. By making use of, and/or downloading from, this web site, User acknowledges that process and manufacturing systems improperly installed, maintained, or operated can pose serious and dangerous threats to worker safety, environmental integrity, and product/process quality.

3. Kilns operate at high temperatures and make us of high voltages/amperages and if improperly installed, maintained, or used can cause serious personal or property damages.

4. Commercial kilns are provided with various safety, performance, and operating limits, designs and devices which, if disconnected, altered, tampered with, or changed by User, User's employees, User's agents, or others acting on User's behalf or with User's knowledge, will become User's sole risk and responsibility.

5. User also has the sole responsibility for assigning properly trained persons to operate the kilns who have demonstrated common sense and a general aptitude for such work.

6. It is User's sole responsibility to understand and assure adherence to all safety notices and installation, operating, and maintenance instructions provided by this web site and/or by the kiln manufacturer.

ELECTRICAL SAFETY

GENERAL

Electricity is a wonderful utility, but can be dangerous if not approached carefully. There are three basic hazards that cause injury or death – shock, arc-flash, and arc-blast. It is important to remember that even a small amount of current passing through the chest can cause death. Most deaths occurring for circuits of less than 600 volts happen when people are working on "hot," energized equipment – PLEASE DISCONNECT AND LOCK OUT ALL ELECTRICAL POWER BEFORE ATTEMPTING KILN REPAIRS!

ELECTRICAL HAZARDS

SHOCK

An electrical shock is a current that passes through the human body. Any electrical current flows through the path of least resistance towards ground; if an external voltage contacts a human body, e.g. by touching a live wire with the hand, the voltage will try to find a ground, and a current will develop that flows through the body's nervous system or vascular system, and exit through the closest part of the body to ground (e.g., the other hand which may be touching a metal pipe.) Nerve shock disrupts the body's normal electrical functions, and can stop the heart or the lungs, or both, causing severe injury or death.

ARC-FLASH

An arc-flash is an extremely high temperature conductive mixture of plasma and gases, which causes very serious burns when it comes into contact with the body, and can ignite flammable clothing. Arc temperatures reach up to 35,000°F – which is 4X the temperature of the sun's surface!

ARC-BLAST

Arc-blast is a pressure wave resulting from arcing, which can carry molten metal fragments and plasma gasses at very high speeds and distances. This can not only carry very hot shrapnel to injure a person, but can actually be strong enough to destroy structures or knock workers off ladders.

SAFETY PRINCIPLES

Be safe! Make sure any equipment that is being installed or serviced is disconnected from all sources of power. In industry, it is important to have 'Lockout and tagout' procedures in place to make sure that power stays disconnected while people are servicing equipment. It is just as important in residential and commercial sites – DO NOT WORK ON LIVE EQUIPMENT UNLESS ABSOLUTELY NECESSARY!

Use the right tools for the job – do not improvise. For instance, use a proper fuse puller; don't use a screwdriver to pry out that open fuse.

Protect the person; use proper gloves, shoes, and clothing. In industry it is recommended to wear safety goggles or face shields to prevent arc-flash or arc-blast injuries. Wear rubber soled shoes.

Make sure the environment around the equipment being serviced is safe. For instance, when working around electricity, it always very dangerous for the floor to be wet. Make sure there is adequate space to work safely.

Be aware that current flow across your chest can be fatal. If possible, use only one hand to manipulate test leads when conducting any necessary measurements on live equipment. Use a clamp for one lead, and use one hand to guide the other test lead. Keep the other hand as far as possible from the live circuit components.

INSTALLATION CAUTIONS

USE A QUALIFIED ELECTRICIAN

1. Have electrical installation performed by an licensed electrician or other qualified technician.

2. There is danger of electric shock.

3. There is danger that an improperly sized or installed circuit could cause a fire.

CLEARANCES AND FLAMMABLE SURFACES

1. Make certain floor is not flammable.

2. Install kiln so that the hot surface of the kiln is no closer than 12” (30 cm) to any wall. 18” (46 cm) is preferable.

3. Be careful about enclosed spaces: In general, it is not a good idea to install a kiln in a small confined space (such as a closet).

4. Maintain a minimum of 36” (91 cm) between the hot surfaces of two adjacent kilns, especially if they are going to be used at the same time. (The kilns will heat each other).

5. The essential issue with kiln clearance is to keep excessive heat from flammable surfaces. Remember, even when you follow clearance and ventilation recommendations, the kiln is giving off heat. Try not to locate it near things that can be affected by elevated temperatures. An example of this would be an electrical fuse panel which you do not want to overheat.

CHECK TEMPERATURES AROUND KILN

1. Check temperatures around the kiln when it is at high fire to be sure that you are not creating an unsafe condition.

2. Combustible surfaces that stay below 71°C (160°F) are generally considered safe from the point of view of starting a fire.

LEVELING THE KILN

1. Level the kiln while you are installing it.

2. Use thin metal shims under the legs to accomplish the leveling (never wood or other combustible materials).

3. Make sure that the base will not wobble.

4. Leveling is important because the kiln sitter (in manual kilns) is affected by gravity. If the kiln is not properly leveled the kiln sitter might be either too reactive or too sluggish.

5. You do not want your ware to be unstable in the kiln.

6. If kiln is not leveled this could lead to the cracking of the bottom and the top. In particular, the bottom could easily crack when you first set the weight of the kiln on the bottom while setting up the kiln for the first time.

ADJUSTING THE HINGE PROPERLY

1. See the assembly instructions for your specific kiln.

2. The hinge of any kiln must be adjusted so that the expansion caused by the heating process has room to expand.

3. An improperly adjusted hinge can damage the rim and/or lid but making the brick of the rim compress against the brick of the lid.

THERMOCOUPLES

1. Thermocouples (in automatic kilns) must be inserted into the kiln at least 1” (2.5 cm) in from the inside surface of the kiln.

2. They must protrude into the kiln itself because if the measuring tip of the thermocouple is buried inside the insulation the thermocouple will measure a lower temperature than the actual temperature in the kiln.

CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L KILNS

3. This could cause an overfire of the kiln.

4. Replace thermocouples once they are no longer reasonably accurate.

USE THE SUPPLIED KILN STAND

1. Do not use kiln without the supplied stand.

2. Never set a kiln on a floor without significant air space circulating under the kiln.

3. L&L stands typically raise the floor of the kiln by 8" (20 cm).

DON'T USE AN EXTENSION CORD

1. Never use an extension cord with your kiln.

2. Locate the outlet close enough to the kiln to plug directly into it with the kiln's supplied power cord.

3. Kilns that pull over 48 amps and some three phase kilns generally will not have a power cord. These kilns need to be indirect-wiredin to the power supply.

POWER CORD MUST BE PROPERLY RATED

1. All L&L power cords are rated for 105°C (221°F).

2. Anything less than this can cause a malfunction and possible fire where the power leads connect to the control box.

3. It is OK, and will not void the warranty, to remove the plug that comes with the kiln and direct wire the kiln. However, the connection wires must be rated for a minimum of 105°C (221°F).

USE COPPER WIRE FOR HOOK UP

1. Do not use aluminum wire on the final connection to the kiln.

2. The specific reason particular to kilns is that the wire tends to get hotter near the kiln than it might going into some other types of appliance.

3. Being a resistive load, there is constant heat being generated by the conductors for quite a few hours. When aluminum wire gets hot it accelerates oxidation. Aluminum oxide is a resistor; copper oxide is not as much. If the connection at the terminal board gets oxidized it will really heat up - to the point where it could cause a fire.

4. Note: Depending on local codes it may be OK to use aluminum wire to your subpanel - as long as that wire is not exceeding its temperature rating while kiln is firing on full power for an extended period of time.

PROTECT POWER CORD FROM KILN CASE

1. Rout Power Cord (or electrical connection wires) away from kiln in such a way that it can not touch the hot case of the kiln.

2. Secure it so it can not move.

3. If cord touches the hot case it could melt and cause a short circuit and/or fire.

KEEP KILN DRY & IN PROTECTED SPACE

1. The kiln must be kept dry.

2. It is best to keep it in an enclosed room away from inclement weather. See specific details in the INSTALLATION INSTRUCTION section.

3. Note that our warranty does not cover damage from corrosion and electrical damage caused by inclement weather.

4. Water in contact with a kiln can cause an electrocution hazard.

5. If you keep a kiln outside (even in a very dry environment) and cover it with a tarp to protect it from rain you could still cause corrosion from the dew that forms on the cold metal surface of the kiln in the morning.

KEEP A FIRE EXTINGUISHER NEAR KILN

1. Keep an adequate fire extinguisher near the kiln and check it on a regular basis.

2. You may want to check with your local fire authorities to see if there are any specific requirements they have such as sprinkler systems, automatic foam extinguishers, etc.

3. Use a fire extinguisher that is rated for electrical fires (we recommend ABC rating).

SPRINKLER CAUTIONS

1. If you have a sprinkler system be careful to check the temperature rating and location of the heads so that you do not inadvertently cause them to actuate under

normal firing conditions.

2. Be sure to monitor this while the kiln is at its highest firing temperature and conditions are at their worse (for instance when the door to the kiln room is closed or the ventilation fan is turned off). Serious damage to the kiln and your premises can take place if the sprinkler system goes off when the kiln is at high temperature - especially if no one is in building when it happens.

GENERAL ENVIRONMENT CAUTIONS

VENTILATION IS ESSENTIAL

1. Kilns generate harmful fumes when firing ceramics.

2. Fumes include carbon monoxide, sulfur oxides, hydrogen fluoride and metal vapors (all of which can be very toxic).

3. Install kiln in well-ventilated area.

4. Never operate in an enclosed space such as a closet unless you have good ventilation.

5. Aside from issues of ventilating the fumes from the firing, the heat build up in an enclosed room could present a significant fire hazard. See the INSTALLATION cautions.

6. Severe corrosion can be caused by kiln fumes, salt air or other environmental conditions.

7. Good venting can minimize these problems.

8. Ventilation must be to the outside.

9. Be careful not to locate the outlet of the vent near an open window.

AMBIENT TEMPERATURES

1. The kiln should operate in an environment that is between -18°C (0°F) and 38°C (100°F).

2. Note that the control, if set up for degrees centigrade, may give you an error code if room temperature drops below 0°C (32°F). The DynaTrol and most other controls do not handle negative numbers.

SURFACE IS HOT AND CAN CAUSE BURNS

1. Kiln surface can be extremely hot: up to 260°C (500°F).

2. You can be severely burned if you touch the hot surface.

3. Display a sign near the kiln that specifically warns everyone of how hot the kiln is.

KEEP CHILDREN/ANIMALS AWAY FROM KILN

1. Protect any children, animals, and unqualified adults (anyone who is not able to understand these cautions) that may be near the kiln.

2. Aside from fumes that must be ventilated, and flammability concerns, they must be protected from the heat of the kiln and the electrical dangers.

3. Ideally, the kiln should be secured in a space away from any children (especially in a schoolroom situation where children might not always follow safety precautions).

KEEP FLAMMABLES AWAY FROM KILN

1. Do not put sealed containers or combustible materials such as solvents, paper, rags, in or near kiln.

2. An explosion or fire could result.

PRACTICE GOOD HYGIENE

1. Clay contains silica dust which can be harmful (see silica caution) and that many glazes contain heavy metals such as lead, cadmium and copper.

2. While this caution is outside the scope of kiln safety it is worth mentioning here.

3. Keep your room clean and your kiln clean.

TRIPPING HAZARDS

1. Be sure to remove tripping hazards near the kiln.

2. In particular be sure to keep the kiln cord out of traffic areas.

CLOTHING TO AVOID

1. When working around a hot kiln be careful of the kinds of clothes you are wearing.

2. Some clothes could potentially catch on fire if they touch the hot surface of a kiln.

3. Also avoid loose fitting clothes that could catch on the kiln.

CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L KILNS

PROPER USE OF KILN WASH

1. Make sure the floor of the kiln and the tops of the shelves are coated with kiln wash.

2. This will protect these surfaces from melting glaze and ceramics.

3. Do not coat the undersides or sides of the shelves.

4. Do not apply kiln wash to the brick sides or element holders. (Damage to the elements could result).

5. If you have a kiln sitter, put kiln wash on the cone supports (not the sensing rod) for accurate cone action.

6. Clean off the old wash and reapply new wash each time you fire or when it begins to chip away.

PREFIRING CAUTIONS

KILN WASH CONTAINS SILICA

1. Long term exposure to silica dust could cause lung damage.

2. See the MSDS sheets.

3. Exercise proper caution when mixing the dry powder and when removing it from your shelves.

4. Use a NIOSH approved particulate respirator for dust and use proper ventilation. You can buy these from safety supply houses. (NIOSH_approval #TC-21C-132 is an example).

DO NOT USE SILICA SAND

1. Do not use silica sand in the kiln.

2. Some people like to use this as a work support medium.

3. The silica sand will attack the elements and thermocouples.

4. It can migrate in the kiln from expansion and movement due to heat.

5. If you must use sand to support or stabilize your load try alumina oxide or zirconia oxide sand.

NEVER FIRE MOIST GREENWARE

1. Never load moist greenware or pots in your kiln.

2. The expanding water vapor in the ware could cause the ware to explode, damaging your kiln interior.

3. We recommend using a dry out segment in your bisque program at 66°C (150°F). (Note that, because of the thermocouple offset programmed into our DynaTrol when we use the ceramic protection tubes, the display temperature will read 93°C (200°F) when the real temperature is 66°C (150°F)).

4. Remember that there may be water trapped in the work even if you can't always see it. If you place a piece of greenware next to your wrist and it feels cool to the touch it probably has too much moisture in it to fire.

CAUTION WITH USE OF WAX

1. When you heat wax (in wax resist and lost wax processes) it will volatilize and potentially condense in the cooler ventilation ducts.

2. Over time this can cause a fire hazard because the wax is flammable.

3. Depending on how the vent motor is mounted, the wax can also gum up the vent motor.

4. If you use these processes it is entirely up to you to engineer and monitor the safety of the installation.

5. The use of wax will void the warranty of the vent system.

DO NOT FIRE TEMPERED GLASS

1. Tempered glass can explode when fired.

STORE SHELVES IN A DRY LOCATION

1. Shelves can absorb moisture.

2. This can cause them to explode when fired.

DO NOT USE CRACKED SHELVES

1. Cracked shelves can fail in the middle of a firing causing the whole load in your kiln to collapse.

DO NOT FIRE TOXIC, FLAMMABLE, OR UNKNOWN MATERIALS

1. Plastics, organic materials, bakeable modeling clay, mothballs and a large variety of materials can decompose under heat causing the release of highly toxic fumes or rapid uncontrollable combustion.

2. Rocks, marbles, cement and other materials may

explode under high temperatures.

3. Before firing anything but ceramics, glass and metal (obtained from a known reputable source) in a kiln carefully investigate what happens under heat.

4. This is the sole responsibility of the user.

5. The kiln is not designed to be used for firing hazardous materials.

LOADING & UNLOADING CAUTIONS

TURN OFF POWER WHILE LOADING

1. Turn off power to the kiln when loading or servicing.

2. If power is on when you are loading or unloading the kiln it is possible to touch the elements and get electrocuted.

3. We recommend having the kiln attached to a fused disconnect switch with a lockout device (in any institutional or industrial installations where someone could turn on the kiln while someone else was working on it).

KEEP LID CLOSED WHEN KILN IS NOT IS USE

1. Keep lid closed when not operating the kiln.

2. Otherwise the weight of the lid over time may force the hinge and stainless wrap to move down.

3. This will affect the way the lid closes and may cause the lid to crack.

4. It will also keep the kiln cleaner by keeping dust out.

5. In addition, if the kiln somehow gets turned on accidentally, an open kiln could present a fire hazard.

DO NOT STORE ANYTHING ON LID

1. Do not use the lid as a storage shelf.

2. The lid could crack.

3. Also - this practice could lead to a fire if you accidentally leave combustible materials on the lid.

DO NOT OPEN THE DOOR ABOVE 250°F

1. Do not open the kiln door until the kiln has cooled down to 250°F (120°C).

2. You could burn your hand on the handle and/or the radiant heat from the kiln.

3. Be careful when you do open the door at this temperature because you can still get burned.

4. Use heat resistant gloves when opening the door. (These are available from L&L).

5. For ventilation purposes, some people fire with the lid slightly propped open 1” to 3” during the beginning phase of the firing (if they do not have a downdraft vent system). Be aware of the potential dangers of doing this (heat, live electricity, fumes and potentially cracking the lid) and take appropriate measures to protect yourself and the kiln.

DO NOT UNLOAD KILN WHILE HOT

1. You may burn yourself

2. You may harm your work.

BE CAREFUL OF SHARP OBJECTS

1. Stilt marks and other sharp protrusions can cut you.

2. Remember that that glaze is like glass.

3. Wear safety glasses while grinding or knocking of stilt marks.

4. Check the shelves for broken bits of glaze which may have attached to the shelves. These can be like shards of glass that can cause a serious cut.

SECURE LID WHILE LOADING OR UNLOADING IF YOU HAVE A SPRING-LOADED EASY-LIFT HINGE

1. Be sure to LOCK THE LID IN PLACE with the spring-loaded plunger pin located on the side of the hinge.

IF YOU HAVE A DAVINCI COUNTERBALANCED LID

1. Be sure to LOCK THE LID IN PLACE with the safety hooks when in the up position.

2. There is one on each side of a DaVinci kiln. Use both chains.

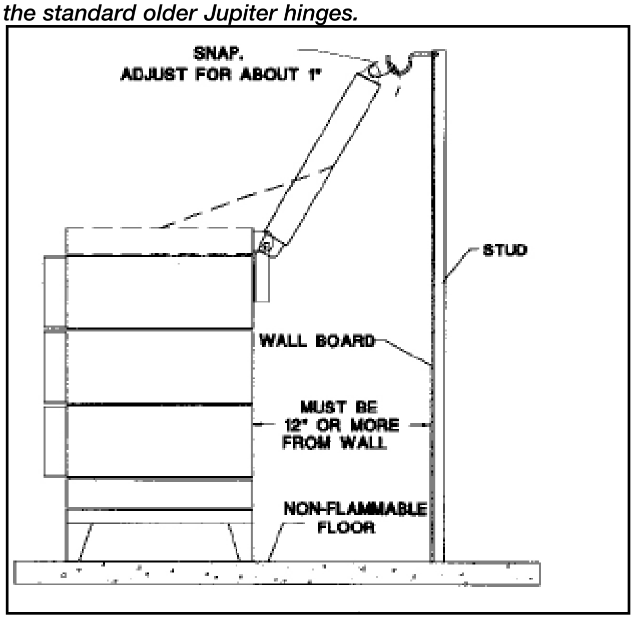
IF YOU HAVE A BASIC HINGE WITH CHAIN SUPPORTS

CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L KILNS

1. A special safety system is supplied with your Liberty-Belle, E18S, E18T, D18S, D18T, J18, or J18X kiln. This is a door safety chain.

2. It secures the lid in an open position when you are loading or unloading the kiln and insures that the lid can not accidentally come down on you.You must install and use this for your safety's sake.

This drawing shows the safety chain installation and use for the standard older Jupiter hinges.



VIEWING INTO THE KILN

1. Use dark glasses (shade number 1.7 to 3.0) to view inside the kiln through the peepholes when firing. (These are available from L&L). These will protect you from the radiant infrared radiation and will also protect your eyes in case the ceramic ware explodes. Do not use regular sunglasses for this - they are not designed to protect your eyes from this type of radiation.

2. Use heat resistant gloves when opening peephole plugs. They are very hot and can burn you.

3. Do not open the kiln lid unless the kiln is turned off (except for carefully controlled troubleshooting tests). There is danger from electrocution. Cracks caused by propping open the lid are not covered by the warranty.

4. Use heat resistant gloves when opening a hot lid. 5) Do not open the lid when the kiln is above 121°C (250°F).

FIRING CAUTIONS

ATTEND THE FIRING

1. We recommend attending the kiln while firing.

2. NO AUTOMATIC SAFETY DEVICE IS FOOLPROOF! Be especially careful about attending the kiln when it is supposed to shut off. (The Delay feature in automatic kilns gives you control over this).

3. If you have a manual kiln with a Kiln Sitter PLEASE BE EXTRA CAREFUL! Kiln sitters can be very unreliable because of the moving parts, dirt or clay that can get into the tube, the way cones are placed on the tube, corrosion, etc. **DO NOT FIRE THIS KILN UNATTENDED WHEN THE KILN IS SUPPOSED TO TURN OFF AND LEARN HOW TO USE THE TIMER BACK UP.** Neither L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. nor Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation warranty the kiln or kiln sitter against damage caused by overfiring. ***ALMOST ALL OVERFIRED KILNS WE SEE ARE FROM A MISFUNCTION OF A KILN SITTER. We highly recommend firing all manual kilns with witness cones that you can see through the peephole and/or a pyrometer so you have some idea of what is happening inside the kiln.***

4. The controller is used to control temperature; it is not a safety device.

MAKE SURE YOUR KILN SITTER IS ADJUSTED

1. If you have a manual kiln (or the Kiln Sitter backup on an automatic kiln) be sure it is properly adjusted.

2. See the Kiln Sitter instructions.

3. Overfiring could result.

4. Note that the kiln sitter could have gone out of adjustment during shipment. Do NOT assume that it is adjusted when first firing the kiln.

5. The tube assembly should be replaced if gets overly corroded or contaminated with condensed glaze or other materials. Dawson recommended checking the pivot point for corrosion and sluggishness every 6 to 12 months.

USE KILN WASH ON THE CONE SUPPORTS

1. If you have a kiln sitter, put kiln wash on the cone support (but not the sensing rod) for accurate cone

action.

2. This will keep the cones from sticking when they bend.

3. We recommend cleaning off the old wash and reapply new wash each time you fire.

UNDERSTAND YOUR CONTROL

1. Become familiar with either the control (if you have an automatic kiln) or the Kiln Sitter (if you have a manual control or have that as your backup control).

2. Do this before operating the kiln.

PROGRAM REVIEW ON AUTOMATIC KILNS

1. Review the current program before firing to ensure the correct profile is programmed.

2. You may pick up an important mistake and save a whole load.

3. Hit Review Prog after you have done your programming and the control display will scroll through the program. It only takes a minute or less.

DO NOT CONFUSE CONE NUMBERS

1. Cone ratings are not intuitive. Cones with an “0” in front of them (like cone 05) are lower in temperature rating and the higher the number the lower the temperature rating. On the other hand cones with no “0” in front (like Cone 5) raise in temperature as the number gets higher.

2. For instance, Cone 05 is a much lower temperature than Cone 5 for instance. If you fire Cone 05 clay to Cone 5 you could cause a serious overfiring of the material which could melt in your kiln and cause severe damage to the kiln interior.

3. See the Orton cone chart.

USE THE PROPER THERMOCOUPLE

1. Never use a different type of thermocouple with your controller unless it has been set up from the factory.

2. For instance if you used a Type S thermocouple on a control set up for Type K you would overfire your kiln.

3. On some controls (like the newer DynaTrols) it is possible to change thermocouple types. However, this involves both a programming change and a jumper change on the control. It also requires you to change out all the thermocouple lead wire to properly calibrated wire for the new thermocouple type.

CHECK THERMOCOUPLE CALIBRATION

1. Thermocouples will drift in reading over time.

2. This could potentially lead to an overfiring before the thermocouple actually fails.

3. Although you can not easily check thermocouple calibration, the general accuracy of the entire kiln system can be checked by firing with witness cones. See the LOG, CONES & CERAMIC FIRING section.

SHUT OFF KILN AT DISCONNECT OR CIRCUIT BREAKER

1. It is possible for electrical contacts on contactor relays to fuse together.

2. If this happens power will continue to flow to the elements and your kilns could overfire even though everything on the kiln is shut off.

3. You should turn kiln off from the circuit breaker or fused disconnect switch after turning off the kiln itself.

DO NOT FIRE KILN ABOVE 2350°F (1290°C, Cone 10)

1. Most L&L kilns are rated for use to 2350°F (1290°C, Cone 10).

2. The rating of the kiln is listed on its data nameplate normally affixed to the control panel.

3. DO NOT FIRE ANY HIGHER THAN THIS or hold for extended periods of time at those temperatures.

4. The elements, element holders and firebrick could melt.

POST FIRING CAUTIONS

CHECK FOR GLAZE AND CERAMIC CHIPS

1. Check element holders and walls for glaze, clay chips or anything that could melt at a high temperature.

2. If melted clay or glaze comes in contact with an element, a rapid failure could result. The molten

material traps the heat radiating from the element and subsequently raises the surface temperature of the wire. The temperature will quickly pass the maximum recommended temperature for the wire and burn it u

3. To clean holders, a good shop vacuum will handle dust and loose crumbs. A very gentle chisel or grinder may help with glaze contamination on element holders, but remember that the elements themselves are quite brittle when they are cool.

4. Replace the contaminated holder if you can not clean it.

5. Remove any glaze that has splattered on the firebrick or shelves. (USE SAFETY GLASSES WHEN DOING THIS BECAUSE GLAZE CAN BE LIKE BROKEN GLASS). Vacuum afterward. Note about vacuuming: it is possible to build up a strong static electricity charge when you are vacuuming. If this somehow manages to discharge into the control it can ruin the electronic circuit. Make sure vacuum is grounded and periodically touch some grounded metal surface away from the kiln to discharge the energy.

GENERAL MAINTENANCE CAUTIONS

ELECTRICAL SAFETY

1. Shut off kiln when servicing it. Use an approved lock out/tag out procedure to make sure that no one servicing the kiln gets injured or killed.

2. The elements carry high voltage and can electrocute you. Many of the tests described in the troubleshooting manual are performed under power. They should be done ONLY by someone who is familiar with electrical safety such as an electrician or trained maintenance person.

3. As long as the kiln is unplugged or turned off at the fused disconnect switch or circuit breaker (and checked with a reliable meter to be sure) you are safe.

CHECK WIRES & TERMINALS

1. Check wires for deterioration or oxidation.

2. Replace any that seem brittle or where the wire insulation has deteriorated or fallen off.

3. Check terminals for oxidation (discoloration).

4. If you are near salt air or if you notice corrosion on the stainless exterior of the kiln for whatever reason (like certain fumes generated by your work) then do this far more frequently.

5. Check power connection terminals in the kiln and control box for tightness. Be sure to do this with the power disconnected (unplugged) for the kiln. If these terminal connections get loose heat can be generated (because the electrical resistance gets greater) and this can cause a fire.

6. Check thermocouple connections for corrosion, tightness and oxidation as well. A bad thermocouple connection can change the accuracy of the temperature reading which could cause an overfiring.

CHECK TEMPERATURE OF CORD

1. Occasionally check temperatures of the main power cord at the main receptacle and the main kiln breaker while the kiln is at its hottest.

2. If these are hotter than normal, it could be a sign of a loose or corroded connection, or possibly the wire gauge used in the power hook-up is the wrong size for the amount of current being drawn by the kiln.

3. Immediately diagnose and fix this because it could cause a fire.

4. Also check temperature of any other cords on the kilns (such as element jumper cords).

CHECK FOR CORRODED CONNECTIONS

1. When replacing infinite zone switches (and other electrical components), replace the electrical connectors.

2. At the very least check for discoloration (an indication of oxidation).

3. Electrical connectors will typically oxidize over time where there is heat and this can cause further overheating of the part at the connection point. This can in turn lead to early failure of the part, wire and connector.

4. Make certain that the new connectors are firmly crimped onto the wire.

THE WRONG PARTS CAN BE HAZARDOUS

1. Non-L&L elements can present a potential hazard to

the kiln or cause a fire (by drawing too much amperage).

2. The wrong type of fuse, relay, switch or other component can cause a fire or other hazardous condition.

3. An improperly rated cord can cause a fire.

KILN MODIFICATIONS CAUTIONS

COATINGS

1. We can not at this time recommend any coatings for the elements.

2. Use of ceramic coatings will void the warranty on the elements and potentially the firebrick or element holders if it contaminates them.

3. Some people have reported success with ITC coating and some people seemed to have caused problems with this coating.

4. We have not adequately tested these coatings so we can only say, at this time, that any trouble that results from the use of ITC and other coatings must be at the risk of the user.

5. We do use a proprietary coating on all our firebrick that improves firebrick life and reduces dusting.

OTHER MODIFICATIONS

1. All customer modification is made solely at the risk of the customer.

2. Modifications will void the warranty.

3. L&L takes no responsibility for hazardous conditions created by unauthorized modifications.

4. Any authorization for an engineering change must be in writing from the factory.

DO NOT OVERINSULATE KILN

1. You may add insulation to the bottom, and to some extent the top.

2. If you put too much insulation on a lid it may weaken because it relies on the cooling of the lid to maintain its structural strength. This could lead to cracking or potentially a collapse of the lid.

3. See the various troubleshooting guides for information about this.

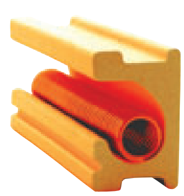
4. However, never wrap insulation around the perimeter of a typical sectional kiln.

5. You could trap heat in the wiring boxes and cause an electrical fire.

6. Also the stainless steel wrap that hold the kiln together will expand and loosen the structure of the kiln.

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

OPERATION



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

BASIC OPERATION OF L&L KILNS WITH A DYNATROL 700

Press the START/STOP Button to start firing the program you have selected. You can also stop a program from firing.

*The **Vary-Fire** section is for advanced users.*

Press Review Prog to see what program you are running and to make sure you have entered the proper cone number.

Review Seg allows you see what segment of the program you are on.

The Other section is for entering options such as cone offsets. thermocouple offsets, etc.

Delay allows you to enter a countdown time to start the program automatically.

The display area provides lots of information such as temperatures, program prompts, etc.

Enter the cone number and other numeric information like delay time using the number keypad.

Choose one of the four Easy-Fire programs. The control will prompt you for cone number and hold time.

Preheat allows you to enter a set time for the kiln to fire at 150°F to dry out your work

Alarm sounds an audible signal at whatever temperature you set. The normal setting of 9999 means it will not go off. Hit ENTER to turn off buzzer.

HOW YOUR KILN WORKS

The DynaTrol automatic program control uses three separate thermocouples to measure temperature in the top, middle and bottom of the kiln (top and bottom in a two section kiln). (Some kilns are programmed to have only one or two zones). The control automatically adjusts power to evenly heat up the kiln according to the program you are firing. The four EASY-FIRE programs make firing most ceramics simple. The programs vary the ramp rates and final temperature reached based on time-proven methods. You do not have to adjust anything once you start firing.

FIRST TEST FIRING OF THE KILN

See the *dynatrol-first-firing.pdf* sheet for detailed instructions on this process.

USING YOUR KILN

TURNING ON THE KILN

1) Make sure your circuit breaker or fused disconnect switch is turned on.

2) Turn on kiln with the toggle On/Off switch on the left side of the control box.

WHEN YOU FIRST TURN ON THE KILN

1) When the kiln is turned on you will see **WAIT** in the DynaTrol display. Wait until you see **IdLE**, **TC2**, and the current temperature cycling over and over in the display.

2) This cycling **IdLE** message means that the DynaTrol is on, ready to be programmed, but the kiln is not firing yet.

3) The current temperature is measured at the tip of the three thermocouples (**TC1**, **TC2**, **TC3**). The default thermocouple reading is TC2. In other words unless you specifically ask the control to show you the temperature at **TC1** or **TC3** then it will only show you

the temperature at **TC2**. Press the **#1** button to see the temperature at **TC1**, or the **#3** button to see the temperature at **TC3**.

IF YOU HAVE A TWO SECTION HIGH KILN

If your kiln has only two thermocouples you will not be able to find **TC3** as there is no third thermocouple. The DynaTrol comes pre-programmed from the factory for your kiln's particular specifications. (Note: if you programmed the control as a single zone control you will only see one temperature and no **TC1, TC2** or **TC3** in the display.

EASY-FIRE OPERATION

1) The EASY-FIRE mode allows you to fire to a CONE NUMBER at one of four different speeds. These are the four preset EASY-FIRE programs that have been designed to do most typical ceramic firing cycles. They are "Fast Bisque", "Slow Bisque", "Fast Glaze" and "Slow Glaze". These preset programs have specific ramps and speeds built into them. (You can find out how these are written in the Appendix of the DynaTrol Reference Section). You can enter any cone number from 022 up to cone 10.

> **CAUTION:** Follow the recommendations of the clay and glaze manufacturer for proper cone to fire to - and keep in mind that if you don't fire to the proper cone you can cause a major meltdown of your work).

2) You can enter a hold time at that final cone setting. (Be careful because you will add heat-work to load when you add soak time)

3) You can enter a delay time (to prevent the program from starting for a while)

4) You can enter a preheat time to "candle" the load at 200°F to help dry it out.

5) You can enter a controlled cooling segment, or other custom segments to the end of the easy-fire program

NOTE ABOUT WHAT YOU SEE: Most DynaTrol's will read 200°F during this phase even though actual temperature in the kiln is about 180°F. This is because the thermocouple offset used to compensate for the thickness of the thermocouple protection tubes acts. When it is climbing the temperature displayed is the real temperature inside the kiln.

6) The above "Easy Options" allow for some degree of customization while still keeping the programming simple and easy.

The EASY-FIRE mode uses the Orton Foundation's patented method to achieve the correct heat work making these programs ideal for firing ceramics. The advantage of using the EASY-FIRE method is that a very complicated firing profile may be chosen with just a few keystrokes. These program's final temperature set points are based on large Orton self-supporting cone (rather than the small Orton cones or regular large Orton cones). The DynaTrol actually calculates when it should shut off based on what cone number was programmed, and how many degrees per hour the kiln was rising at the end of the firing. The DynaTrol actually adjusts the final set point using Orton's patented formula in these Easy-Fire preset programs. (NOTE: This is not always true for the Vary-Fire programs where you can set an absolute final temperature set point).

WHAT IF YOU MAKE A MISTAKE?

NOTE: If you make a mistake while programming (like entering the wrong hold time) and you have already pressed ENTER, you must continue to enter the rest of the program. Once you see IDLE (meaning programming is complete) you must then go back and re-enter the program again.

FIRING THE KILN

1) Make sure **IdLE**, **TC2**, and the **temperature** are flashing. This means that the control is not running a program.

2) Press one of the four easy firing profile buttons: **SLOW BISQUE** or **FAST BISQUE** or **SLOW GLAZE** or **FAST GLAZE**.

3) Press **ENTER**. The display will flash **CONE** and a number representing a cone number (like **06**).

4) Enter the cone number you want to fire to (for instance 5). You can enter any cone number from 022 up to cone 10. It will not let you put cone numbers in outside of this range. If you type a wrong number, press 0/ 0/ ENTER and the previous cone number will reappear in the display. Then type the correct cone

number. BE CAREFUL TO ENTER THE PROPER CONE NUMBER. DO NOT CONFUSE CONE 05 WITH CONE 5 FOR INSTANCE BECAUSE YOU COULD MELT YOUR CONE 05 CLAY.

5) Press **ENTER**. **HOLD** and **0.00** will flash.

6) Enter a hold time or leave at **0.00**. Numbers to the left of the decimal are hours, to the right are minutes.

7) Press **ENTER**. then **IdLE**, **TC2** and the current temperature will flash in the display.

8) Press **START/STOP** to begin firing or read on to enter an optional **Preheat** or **Delay** Start time.

9) When firing is complete the display will flash **CPLT**, the total firing time in hours and minutes (for instance **07.34**) and current temperature inside kiln.

> **IMPORTANT NOTE ABOUT HOLD TIMES:**
> Be careful with hold times - this will add to the heat work and will actually fire the work to a higher cone which will not be compensated by the Easy-Fire program. In general we do not recommend using a hold time unless you are carefully monitoring the kiln performance with actual cones.

ENTERING AN OPTIONAL PREHEAT TIME

With any of the EASY-FIRE modes, a preheat stage is available. During the preheat stage the temperature is automatically increased at a rate of 60°F per hour until 200°F is reached; the 200°F temperature is then held for the programmed amount of time.

NOTE: Remember when the kiln holds for a while at 200°F it is it is slowly cooling to 182°F inside the kiln because of the way that the 18°F preprogrammed thermocouple offset acts during a hold time.

Preheat is automatically set to **0.00** during EASY-FIRE programming and at the end of each firing, so if a preheat stage is wanted, it must be reprogrammed for each EASY-FIRE firing.

1) To preheat the kiln for a specific amount of time you must first program an EASY-FIRE program. Once this is done you can add the preheat option to it.

2) Press the **Preheat** button in the **Easy-Options** Section at the bottom of the control. See **HOLD** and **0.00** cycling over and over.

3) Press the number keys to input how long you want the preheat time to be. Numbers to the LEFT of the decimal in the display are hours, i.e. 3 hours of preheat time would look like **03.00**. Numbers to the RIGHT of the decimal in the display are minutes, i.e. 75 minutes of preheat time would look like **00.75**.

4) Press **ENTER** and see **IdLE** meaning that programming the preheat option is complete.

5) Press **START/STOP** to begin firing or read on to enter an optional Delay Start time.

ENTERING AN OPTIONAL DELAY START TIME

This feature makes it easy for you to be present at the end of a firing. You can delay the start of the program by up to 99 hours and 99 minutes.

To program a delay time you need not have programmed any firing profile yet. You can enter a **Delay Time** at any time the control is not firing the kiln. It will apply to the next program you run when you hit **START/STOP**.

1) When the display cycles **IdLE**, **TC2**, **current temperature** over and over. (Control is not firing)

2) Press the **Delay** button in the Easy-Options Section at the bottom of the control. See **dELA** and **0.00** cycling over and over.

3) Press the number keys to enter the amount of delay time desired. Numbers to the RIGHT of the decimal in the display are minutes, i.e. 75 minutes of delay time would look like **00.75**. Numbers to the Left of the decimal in the display are hours, i.e. 14 hours 30 minutes of delay time would look like **14.30**.

4) Press **ENTER** and see **IdLE**, meaning programming the delay option is complete.

5) This delay will appear in the display like a timer counting down when you press **START/STOP** to begin firing. The firing will begin once the timer reaches zero. It will remain set as is until you change it.

ENTERING AN OPTIONAL ALARM TEMP

You can make the control sound an audible sound at some specific temperature. This can be useful to alert you to do something like pay attention to the end of the firing. It is not very loud.

1) You can enter an Alarm Temperature at any time the control is not firing the kiln. It will apply to the next program you run when you hit **START/STOP**.

2) Press the **Alarm** button in the **Easy-Options** Section at the bottom of the control. See **ALRM** and **9999** cycling over and over. A high value like that means the control will not sound an alarm.

3) Enter a four digit number like **2000**. (This represents 2000°F).

4) Hit **ENTER**

5) The display will go back to flashing **IdLE**, **TC2** and **current temperature.**

When you fire now, the alarm will sound at 2000°F. Once it starts to beep, press **ALARM** or **ENTER** to turn it off.

REVIEWING THE PROGRAM

1) Reviewing your program before you start (or just after) is very important. It can prevent a serious mistake. In particular check the cone number you are firing to. Also it is useful for obtaining the temperature that you reached on your last firing.

2) In the **Review** Section hit **Review Prog** button.

3) The program will scroll. You will see, in the following order, various aspects of the program.

a) The program name (like **S-bC** for Slow Bisque, **F-bC** for Fast Bisque, **S-GL** for Slow Glaze and **F-GL** for Fast Glaze)

b) **PRHT** followed by its value in time (like **3.00** for 3 hours)

c) **CONE** followed by its value (like **05**)

d) **°F** (or **°C)** followed by a value like **1888**.

e) **CNOS** followed by **9020** or some other number which could also be **0000**. The **9020** represents the Cone Offset that may be preprogrammed into the control.

f) **HLOd** followed by the value in time like **0.00** of the Hold Time programmed into the control.

g) **dELA** followed by the value in time like **02.30** if the Delay Start Time is programmed into the control.

h) **ALRM** followed by the value in temperature like **2000**

i) **ERCd** followed by **ON** or **OFF** (See in-depth *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf* if you want an explanation of this.) Typically Error Codes should be ON.

j) **FIRE** followed by the number of firings the kiln has done.

4) If you are using the VARY-FIRE programs it will be similar except it will scroll through all the segments, ramps and holds for USER programs.

5) If you have added controlled coolings or 16-step options there will be a reference to these steps in the Review Program sequence as well. (See the Reference Manual for more information).

VARY-FIRE OPERATION

With the Vary-Fire mode you may program six different programs. Each program can have up to eight segments. Each segment has a ramp rate (set in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade, heating or cooling, per hour), a set point temperature (the temperature that ramp rate will heat or cool to) and an optional hold time at that temperature for up to 99 hours and 99 minutes. (As a contrast, in the Easy-Fire mode, the number of segments and the firing profile are preset. In fact you can find these profiles in the Appendix of the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf*. They make a good starting point for creating your own Vary-Fire programs). When the DynaTrol comes to you new it has programs already in place in these six program slots. You can program over them with your own programs or simply use the ones in there. These pre-set programs are outlined in the Reference Manual in Appendix I. In short, they are a glass slumping program, a glass tack fuse program, a glass full fuse program, a glass bead annealing program, a lost wax burnout program, and a slow cooling cycle for cone 6 that can be added to an existing program. Even if you program over these programs, you can get them back from memory any time. Unfortunately any programs you have in there that you have made will be lost if you recall the original default programs.

When programming your programs, the ramp portion of a segment need not always be increasing in temperature. You can program a *decrease* in temperature at a specific rate also. If you wish to use the more sophisticated features and options of the DynaTrol refer to the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf*. There are various samples and great detail about options, troubleshooting and theory.

CONTROLLED COOLING

1) If your kiln is cooling too rapidly for good glaze results, or if the cooling is so rapid that cracking occurs on certain large pieces, it is recommended to cool under power. This is accomplished using the following instructions.

2) The Easy-Fire to Vary-Fire feature allows you to fire an Easy-Fire program and then automatically start a Vary-Fire program at the end of the Easy-Fire program. The Vary-Fire to Cone feature allows you to enter a sophisticated Vary-Fire program that fires to a cone number, not to a specific temp.

3) There are complete sections on these subjects along with a step-by-step examples, in the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf*.

CHECKING TEMPERATURE & TIME REACHED

1) When an Easy-Fire program is complete it will tell you how long it took to finish the program, and what the temperature is as the kiln cools off.

2) At the end of the program the control will flash CPLT and a number like 7.34. The 7 stands for hours and the 34 stands for minutes. This is how long it took for the kiln to reach final set point. It will also show you the temperature inside the kiln as it cools off.

3) Hit START/STOP. You will then see STOP.

4) Press REVIEW PROGRAM. The display will scroll through the entire program and will show you the actual temperature reached.

ADJUSTING THERMOCOUPLE OFFSET

NOTE: Offsets come already programmed into the control.

For kilns (and protection tubes) made before August 15, 2004 the offsets are as follows:

The thermocouple offset was 0050 (+50°F) when it left the factory. In addition the Cone Offsets came preprogramed. From cone 022 to cone 017 the cone offsets were set at 9030. All other cones were preset at 9020.

For kilns (and protection tubes) made AFTER Oct 1, 2004 the offsets are as follows:

The thermocouple offset is 0018 (+18°F) when it leaves the factory. In addition the Cone Offsets come preprogramed. From cone 022 to cone 017 the cone offsets are set at 9020. There are no cone offsets for other cones.

Note: At room temperature (no heat in the kiln) the control will display a high temperature (it adds the thermocouple offset to the actual room temperature). (Typically it will show from 80°F to 100°F). You can always change thermocouple and cone offsets. The **RESET** option in **OTHER** will NOT reset these settings.

1) The industrial thermocouple protection tubes that are used in your Easy-Fire kiln have many advantages such as long thermocouple life, clean operation (no metallic spalling) and inexpensive replacement cost. However, they do introduce a known error into the system. The thickness of the ceramic tube creates an offset in measured temperature vs the actual kiln temperature. The composition of the tube makes a difference in the necessary offsets. This has changed as we have improved the tube and the offsets preprogrammed into the control reflect the testing that we do in the factory.

2) If you are going to be using the VARY-FIRE programs then Cone Offset won't do anything.

3) See section 4.3.3.5 in the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf*

for information on how to change Cone Offsets and section 4.3.3.8 to change Thermocouple Offsets (that is also described just ahead). The RESET option in OTHER will NOT reset these settings.

CALIBRATING THE CONTROL

Some people say their new kiln does not get to temperature during the test firing. There are generally two reasons for this. One reason is that the kiln is empty. Another reason is that the kiln cannot be calibrated until it has reached temperature and melted a cone so someone can see how close it really is, and then adjust it accordingly. (We do not fire the kiln before it ships). The thermocouples can be +/- 10°F when they are brand new.

EMPTY KILN VS. FULL

One difference between an empty and full kiln is that an empty kiln cools a lot quicker which will freeze the cone very quickly. In a full kiln there is a lot of mass in the kiln that is just as hot as the kiln around it. It is this mass (the load in the kiln), radiating it's heat as well, that will continue to melt the cone for a little longer after the kiln has been shut down. Once the kiln is fine-tuned, it is this variable - how you have loaded the kiln- that will account for many of the variations you will see from firing to firing. Another difference is the speed of firing - an empty kiln will fire differently than a full one. Although the control does compensate for this that compensation is not totally perfect.

FINE TUNING THE KILN

You can fine-tune how hot the kiln gets by adjusting the thermocouple offset.

If you can tell the cone bent at all during the first firing, but no more than a little bit, then you can start by reducing the thermocouple offset setting by 5°F.

If you can tell the cone did not bend at all, then you can start by reducing the thermocouple offset setting by 10°F

If it bend more than a little bit, you might wait and see how it does with a load, or start by reducing the thermocouple offset settings just 5°F and then see.

If the cone bent too much you should start by increasing the thermocouple offset by 5°F.

REMEMBER THIS: Adding thermocouple offset lowers the temperature in the kiln, subtracting thermocouple offset raises the temperature. We suggest tuning the kiln for your glaze firings which are more critical and then using cone offsets to adjust bisque temperatures (if you need to).

STEP BY STEP

1) Turn kiln on with toggle switch. Wait 5 seconds.

2) Press 1, wait 5 seconds. The kiln display will say **STOP** and then go into **IdLE** mode.

3) Press **OTHER** about eight times until you see **TCOS**

4) Press **ENTER**. See **TC 1**

5) Press **ENTER** again

6) It will flash between **°FOS** (which stands for Deg F Offset) and **0018** (The **0018** stands for a thermocouple offset of 18°F - which comes preprogrammed into the control to compensate for the ceramic protection tubes. By changing the offset to 0010 we are REDUCING the offset by 8°F- making it fire 8 deg hotter). (NOTE: On older kilns with a slightly different composition thermocouple protection tube the preprogrammed value is **0050**).

7) Press **0008** to reduce thermocouple offset by 10°F.

8) Press **0013** to reduce thermocouple offset by 5°F.

9) Press **ENTER** to accept your input.

10) Do the same for all your thermocouples. The prompts will scroll past in the order of **TC1**, **TC2** and **TC3**.

CONE OFFSETS

Tune your kiln using the thermocouple offset for your most critical firing (typically glaze firings). Then use the cone offset to adjust for other cones that you fire to to get them just right (if they are critical). Typically bisque firings are not very critical. See section 4.3.3.5 in the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf* for instructions.

FOR MORE INFORMATION

See our various instruction sheets about cones, specifically *troubleshoot-cones.pdf*.

MISC NOTES AND OVERVIEW

The DynaTrol controls your kiln by firing programs you choose from a bank of available programs in its memory. It has four preset programs: Slow Bisque, Fast Bisque, Slow Glaze and Fast Glaze for any cone number; cone 022 through cone 10. In addition it has six specialized programs for glass and jewelry which can be replaced by your own custom programs, or recalled at any time

To any of these four pre-set programs, you have the option of including a **PREHEAT** to the beginning (for drying). You also have the option of adding a **DELAY** time to delay the start time of the entire program as well. Both of these options are things that you add to a program.

You cannot erase something you have entered. You can only program over it. Say you enter the wrong program, a Slow Glaze instead of a Slow Bisque. You must go ahead and program the whole wrong program with any cone numbers etc, then go and enter the correct program right over top of the wrong one. A preheat must be entered with the regular program every time you want one. The DynaTrol will not remember that you always/never use a preheat with that particular program. Delayed Starts will stay in effect regardless of what else is programmed, until you actually press **DELAY** and change it.

Always press REVIEW PROGRAM to see what program is ready to be fired.

OBTAINING FIRING INFORMATION

There are a number of keys that you can push while the control is operating to get information.

Press "1", "2" or "3" while firing to change which thermocouple reading you see in the LED display.

Press 8 while firing to turn On/Off the ability to see which zones are firing by the LED display dots. Dot on the left is the top zone, dot in the center is the center zone, and the dot on the right is the bottom zone. Don't forget that the dot on the very far right is only on if you are running in Celsius temp scale.

Press 5 while firing and see the current rate of climbing in degrees per hour. This is useful to look at near the end of the program so you can look on a cone chart to accurately see what temperature your kiln will shut off.

Press 0 while firing to see how much time has elapsed since the program began.

Press Review Prog - The information displayed when Review Program is pressed varies depending on whether you are using EASY-FIRE or VARY-FIRE. When Review Program is pressed, each of the steps in the current firing profile is displayed one after another.

When a firing is complete, Review Program is used to see the final temperature reached during the firing.

Press Review Seg - to view the current firing segment or to skip from the current segment to the next segment. When **Preview Seg** is pressed during a firing the current stage of the firing is displayed. If it is pressed in between firings, STOP will flash and then the current temperature will be displayed. When you press **Preview Seg** twice you will see the program set point temperature. When you press it three times you will see the control board temperature.

ERROR CODES & DIAGNOSTICS

See Appendix G in the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf* for a list of error codes and their meanings.

See Section 4.4 in the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf* for extensive information on how to troubleshoot a firing.

UNDERSTANDING THE DISPLAY

See Appendix D in the *dynatrol-instruct-700.pdf* for a list of all the displays and their meanings.

L&L JD SERIES JUPITER AUTOMATIC KILN INSTRUCTIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CAUTIONS

See the *cautions.pdf* in the CAUTIONS section. **READ THESE CAUTIONS.** They will help protect you and your property. Not all of the cautions are obvious - even experienced operators will need to pay attention.

INSTALLATION

See the INSTALLATION section (*install.pdf*) in this Instruction Manual. There is important information on electrical hookup, ventilation requirements, clearances, codes, etc. You must pay attention to these issues or you could create a dangerous situation.

TEMPERATURE RATINGS

The JD Series kilns are rated for use to 2350°F (1287°C) (Cone 10). DO NOT FIRE ANY HIGHER THAN THIS. The elements, element holders and firebrick will melt. (Although the JD23 is only rated to go to Cone 5 this is simply because of the lower power per square inch in that kiln; if you can get it to go above Cone 5 it won't hurt the kiln as long as you don't go above Cone 10).

PREPARATION & ASSEMBLY

See the ASSEMBLY section in this Instruction Manual for instructions on how to assemble your kiln.

UNDERSTANDING THE DESIGN

BASIC CONCEPT OF THE KILN

A JD Series electric kiln is an insulated polygonal heating device designed specifically for firing of ceramics. Coiled elements made of a special high temperature alloy (iron-aluminum-chrome) are mounted around the perimeter of the kiln.

SECTIONAL CONSTRUCTION

In the Jupiter Series the kiln is made up of one to five separate sections that sit on top of a separate kiln floor. Each section has a plug that plugs into a separate instrument/control panel. You can increase or decrease the size by adding or removing a section without removing the hinge or top. See *hotkilns.com/section.pdf.*

SEPARATE CONTROL BOX

The control panel is mounted on the floor away from kiln heat for more reliable operation. The contactors and other sensitive components last longer. The panel weight will not affect the kiln. The panel can be sent to factory for repairs if ever necessary.

STURDY ALUMINIZED STEEL STAND

Aluminized steel resists corrosion at the high temperatures experienced in the important stand. The stand has a full plate of aluminized steel under the bottom brick. This allows the bottom brick to move freely while expanding and contracting - which helps prevent broken bottoms! The legs, which have two bends for stiffness, are bolted onto the stand plates. There are plastic feet that slip over the metal legs.

SOLID STAINLESS STEEL CASE

Resists corrosion and strengthens construction. Stainless steel screws are used throughout for long-term corrosion resistance.

"EASY-OPEN, EASY-LOAD" LID

This is standard on the J2900 series and optional on J2300 Series. The ‘Easy-Open, Easy-Load” spring-assisted hinge is counterbalanced with a torsion spring which dramatically lightens the weight of the lid and makes it easy to open and close. A lighter lid also reduces lid and lip damage. A spring loaded safety latch holds the lid in place while loading. The lid, when open, is tilted away from the kiln opening allowing greater access to the interior. There are no lid supports in the way when loading your kiln. You can safely and easily load from both sides. Anyone who has tried to load a large kiln with a lot of work can fully appreciate this great feature. The hinge extends over three kiln sections and ties the kiln together for stability. All hinge parts are aluminized or galvannealed steel for corrosion resistance.

STANDARD HINGE FOR SMALLER MODELS

The standard hinge for the smaller models (J1800 and J2300 series) is made of stainless steel. You must use the provided safety chain system with these lids. (See *cautions.pdf* in the CAUTIONS section of your manual).

THREE CASE CLAMPS PER SECTION

The stainless steel case of each kiln section is held together by three adjustable stainless steel hose clamps. Behind the hose clamps the stainless steel case is reinforced with a piece of aluminized steel to prevent distortion. The clamps are easily accessible for adjustment. Two clamps are used on lids and bottoms.

STAINLESS CLIPS HOLD BRICK LID IN PLACE

Some manufacturers rely on the metal band around the kiln to hold the entire weight of the firebrick. L&L screws on several stainless steel clips that hold the firebrick in the band.

HEATING ELEMENTS IN CERAMIC HOLDERS

The heating elements are designed to have a low watt density (radiating watts per square inch of element surface area) and good stretch ratio (ratio of stretched length to original coiled length). These are supported in hard ceramic element holders (a unique L&L feature).

CHOICE OF 2-1/2" OR 3" OF INSULATION

The insulation is a special hand picked lightweight firebrick , which is 2-1/2" or 3" thick (depending on the model). This firebrick resists temperatures up to about 2450°F. It is highly insulating. See *btu.pdf* in the INSTALLATION section for a chart of BTUs that are given off by a hot kiln. The case temperature, when the kiln has reached final set point and the firebrick is saturated with all the heat it will absorb, can be several hundred degrees. After the heating elements are turned off the insulation will slowly loose its heat and the kiln and ware will cool down.

LARGE DIAMETER PEEPHOLES

There is one 1" diameter peephole per section for ventilation and cone sighting. These are full diameter all the way through the firebrick, which allows greater visibility into kiln than with the tapered holes that are often used in other kilns. One ceramic peephole plug is supplied per hole.

CONTROL SYSTEM

Each section has a plug that plugs into a separate instrument/control panel. In the panel are the control and contactors that control the time on that the elements get electrical power. In addition, there may be an optional Dawson Kiln Sitter, which breaks power supply to the DynaTrol before the control transformer. The Dynatrol automatic program control uses three separate thermocouples to sense temperature in each of three zones. (For two section kilns it is programmed for two zone operation and uses only two thermocouples). The control then automatically adjusts power output (turns the contactors for each zone on and off) to evenly heat up the kiln. The Dynatrol is a program control, which varies the target set point for the temperature according to various ramps and soak periods that are programmed in the control. If the Dawson kiln sitter/timer is used it is meant to be a back up safety system which is meant to turn the kiln off in the event of a control failure or overfire condition.

OPTIONAL "KISS" SOFTWARE

Software is available to provide communications between the DynaTrol and a PC. This is called KISS software. It does require some simple hardware modifications. See *kiss.pdf* in the ACCESSORIES section.

BOTTOM ELEMENT OPTION

Optional bottoms with elements are available on 23" and 29" diameter units. This improves heat up time and uniformity. (These bottoms are not reversible).

REVERSIBLE BOTTOM

The brick bottom can be easily reversed in case of a firing mishap. (Not true for kilns with powered bottoms).

KILN FURNITURE

L&L supplies ceramic kiln furniture for all our kilns. See the catalog and price sheet for details about what is included.

VENT-SURE VENT OPTION

The Vent-Sure kiln ventilation system by L&L vents harmful fumes away from a kiln to the outside. Carbonaceous materials in clay, china paints and glazes containing oils, glue from decals, and certain glazes and other miscellaneous products generate fumes. Each vent is capable of handling 20 cubic feet of kiln. They can be easily added. See the separate installation and operation instructions (*ventsure-instruct.pdf*) in the VENT section.

c-UL-US LISTED

All Jupiter kilns are c-UL-us listed except for 480-volt kilns. The Vent-Sure vent is listed for use with L&L Jupiter kilns. No. 789C. File E26330. Listed under the USL standard for Miscellaneous Heating Appliances & CNL for Canadian Standard C22.2, 122-M1989 and 88-1958. This mark is applicable in the US & Canada and is recognized the world over for its integrity.

POWER SUPPLY

VOLTAGE

Jupiter Series kilns are normally wired to work on either 240 Volt Single Phase, 240 Volt three Phase, 208 Volt Single Phase or 208 Volt Three Phase. (Some non-US kilns work on 220 Single Phase or 380 volts, 3 phase "Wye"). It is important that the kiln be hooked up to the proper voltage. 208-volt kilns hooked up to 240-volt power supplies will generate too many amps. 240 volt kilns hooked up to a 208-volt power supply will heat up about 25% slower than they should and may not reach the higher temperatures. Although it is possible to hook a single-phase kiln to two legs of a three-phase supply it will cause an unbalanced load on your electrical supply. CHECK WITH A QUALIFIED ELECTRICIAN. It is best to get a three-phase kiln for a three-phase power supply. In addition to the power wires there is, on all L&L kilns, a ground wire. The ground wire is not used as a neutral (i.e. no electricity normally flows through the ground). BE SURE TO GROUND THE KILN PROPERLY USING THE GROUND WIRE.

WIRING DIAGRAM

See your specific wiring diagram and data nameplate which has all electrical connection information for your kiln listed.

480 VOLTS OPTION

480 volts is available as a special option for JD2918, JD2927, JD2936 and JD2945 . The voltage of the elements is 277 volts and the connection is a "Wye" 3 phase. The control box is a special NEMA rated box and connections between the kiln sections and the control box are hard wired. These kilns are not c-UL-us listed. See your wiring diagram for more information. See *hotkilns.com/480.pdf.*

WHY PROPER GROUNDING IS IMPORTANT

All electrical appliances should be properly grounded. This can be to either a cold water pipe or proper system ground in your building. (NOTE: Grounding is normally provided in NEMA 6-50 type hook ups). If there is ever a short circuit (where the electricity flows through to the case or control panel and where you might touch it) you could be electrocuted if the kiln is not grounded. This is especially important with the high line voltage used on kilns. The higher the voltage the more easily it could flow through your body. In addition, because of the heat generated in a kiln, wires are subject to potential deterioration over time and expansion and contraction can move insulators and cause short circuits. BE SURE TO REPLACE ANY DETERIORATED WIRES!

ELEMENT VOLTAGE

The elements on all Jupiter Series kilns work on line voltage (208, 220 or 240 or 277 volts). Elements may be wired in series or parallel depending on the kiln. See your wiring diagram.

POWER HOOK UP

From the wiring diagram, have your electrician install the proper receptacle and safety switch at your kiln location. Note that L&L has available 50 Amp NEMA 6-50R receptacles from stock if you can't find them locally. Have receptacle placed in such a manner that the plug-in cord can in no way touch the body of the kiln. Some models hook up permanently to power supply. Be sure that your fuse ampere capacity is enough to carry the electrical load required. Also, ensure that your power lines are heavy enough to carry the required electrical load. Anticipate future needs (such as adding an extension) to save yourself from future electrical installation costs. If this is being used in an industrial application or environment be sure to follow lock out/tag out requirements and procedures. Be sure to ground kiln properly. DO NOT USE ALUMINUM WIRE FOR HOOKING UP A KILN.

FUSING YOUR CIRCUIT

The National Electrical says that you should fuse a resistance circuit (kilns are a resistive load rather than an inductive load like a motor) for 125% of their rated full load amps. The full load amps are listed on the data nameplate of the kiln. CHECK WITH A QUALIFIED ELECTRICIAN. See *hotkilns.com/volts.pdf* for a complete description of fuses.

OPTIONAL 120 VOLT CONTROL SUPPLY

Some automatic kilns are supplied with an optional 120-volt power supply for the control circuit. This

120-volt cord plugs into a grounded 120-volt outlet. Ideally it should be plugged into a UPS (Uninteruptable Power Supply) or computer surge protector because the whole point of this option is to allow you to protect your electronics from power surges and outages. The 120-volt supply is filtered though an electrical noise filter located within the cabinet. See *hotkilns.com/noise.pdf* for a complete sales information. This is an option that can be retrofitted into your system if ever needed.

KILN SECTIONS AND INSTRUMENT PANEL

The kiln consists of from two to five separate sections and a separate control/instrument panel. All the controlling of the kiln is done from the control instrument panel. This contains the DynaTrol, contactors and receptacles. Normally the Dynatrol is mounted in the control box, which is mounted on the kiln. However, as an option, the DynaTrol may be mounted in a separate box that hangs on the wall away from the kiln and that plugs into the main power panel.

MODELS WITH 50 AMP CORDS

This includes models JD18, JD18X, JD23 & JD230 Single phase versions with 50 amp power cords included. In addition the JD23-PB with a powered bottom gets a 50 amp cord.

The models all are rated under 50 amps. They have 72" power cords with 6-50P male plugs. These can get plugged into a NEMA 6-50R female receptacle.

DIRECT HOOK UP MODELS

This includes all three phase units, JD236, JD245, JD2918, JD2927, JD2936, JD2945. Also all kilns with powered bottoms except the J23-PB.

All direct hook up models have a power connection board (with grounding lug) in the instrument/control panel. An electrician needs to wire these kilns direct to a fused power circuit. We recommend using a flexible cable such as a liquid tight cable so that the panel can be removed easily.

ELEMENT BOX CORDS

There are from two to five contactors in all JD Jupiter kilns. Each zone is wired to a special female receptacle. Each kiln section plugs into one of these receptacles. Note that the plugs that go from the kiln sections to the receptacles are not standard plugs. This is so that you can not accidentally plug these into standard 120 volt outlets. The plugs and receptacles on these models are rated for 20 amps at 250 volts. NOTE: jumper cords are different lengths (36" and 45" long). Be sure to order the proper length.

DAWSON OPTION

If included as an option the Dawson kiln sitter/timer breaks the power to the DynaTrol.

REPAIRING OR REPLACING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL

The entire instrument panel is removable from the kiln. This is a unique L&L Kiln design feature and allows easy factory repair of your instrument panel. Disconnect power, unplug the kiln (if it has a plug), unplug all sections, remove the screws that hold the panel on the kiln, pack it carefully in a box with protective cushioning, and send it to L&L Kiln for inspection and/or repair. If the kiln is out of warranty there is still only a nominal charge for inspection (see the *part.pdf* in the PARTS section). Repairs will be quoted before any work is done. In addition complete instrument panels can be ordered for replacement. If your panel is hard wired then disconnect power, mark the wires and lugs where they come into the power connection board at the bottom of the control panel and remove the power wires. If you have an optional Dawson kiln sitter/timer disconnect the wires from the Dawson kiln sitter (or physically remove the Dawson kiln sitter from the kiln while keeping it attached to the panel).

BRANCH FUSES

For models JD18, JD18X, JD23 AND JD230: There are no fuses for these models except for the panel mounted control fuse.

For models JD236, JD245, JD2918, JD2927, JD2936, JD2945: The fuses for all models are located in the main instrument/control panel. Remove the cover to see the fuses and fuse blocks. The fuse blocks and fuses vary with the model. See the wiring diagram for specific information on your model. See *volts.pdf* for a complete description of fuses.

DYNATROL AUTOMATIC CONTROL

Please see the separate Basic DynaTrol Operation instructions (*dynatrol-basic-operation.pdf*) in the OPERATION section and the complete DynaTrol instructions in the CONTROL Section (*dynatrol-instruct-blue.pdf)* concerning this control and its operation.

THERMOCOUPLES

The standard thermocouple used on the JD Series an 8 gauge Type K thermocouple protected with an industrial grade mullite thermocouple protection tube. These work by creating a slight millivoltage at the junction of the two dissimilar metals. This millivoltage varies proportionately with temperature. The thermocouple ends insert into a ceramic junction block.

When testing a thermocouple that has a mullite protection tube do not heat up with a torch. Heat shock could crack the mullite tube.

METALLIC THERMOCOUPLE OPTION

Note that there is also a Pyrocil metallic sheathed thermocouple option which allows you to remove the thermocouple offsets but has the disadvantage of shorter life in the high temperature ranges and metal spalling in the kiln. See *tc-protect.pdf* in the ACCESSORIES section. Also see *hotkilns.com/tc-metallic.pdf*.

PROPER INSERTION OF THERMOCOUPLES

The thermocouples must be inserted at least 1" into the interior of the kiln. Keep a few things in mind. First: the thermocouple end is where the sensing takes place. Second: the thermocouple end must never be inside the kiln wall insulation (this will cause the kiln to overfire because of an incorrectly low reading).

KILN SITTER/TIMER

NOTE: This is standard equipment on the manual kilns and an option of automatic kilns in which case it is used as a safety back up control.

L&L Kiln Mfg. Inc. cannot assume any responsibility for a kiln sitter. We purchase this item. We install it, and supply you with the material to test it, prior to doing your regular firings. (All kiln manufacturers purchase the kiln sitter). It is a safety back up device; however, they can and do fail. L&L does not recommend unattended firings. See *cautions.pdf* in the CAUTIONS section.

Put kiln wash on the cone support (not sensing rod) for accurate cone action. Clean off the old wash and reapply new wash each time you fire.

Read your Dawson Kiln Sitter manual CAREFULLY AND COMPLETELY BEFORE USING YOUR NEW KILN. This control is the shut-off system for your kiln, and must be properly set to prevent over-fire of your kiln. With your kiln you have received two (2) 020 test cones for the initial test. You do not have to use 020 cones for the test but these are the ones that are provided.

NOTE: The Timer must be set so that it is not on "0" (Off). If it is the Dawson Kiln Sitter will not engage and the kiln will not turn on.

Be sure to read the section in the Dawson instruction book about Witness Cones. This is the most accurate method of determining temperature in the kiln.

TESTING THE DAWSON FOR AUTO KILNS

The whole point of having this option is to act as a back up safety to shut off the kiln in the event of a control failure. It is not meant to actually control the kiln temperature. Use a cone that is one to two cones higher than where you set your automatic control.

To test the operation of the system, simply program the DynaTrol for a higher cone than the cone you put in the Dawson. This way, if you use witness cones also, the Dawson kiln sitter will shut off the kiln BEFORE the DynaTrol and you can compare the kiln sitter cone to the witness cones. That way you can see if adjustments are needed on the kiln sitter. (See the kiln sitter instructions for more details on adjustments).

OPTIONAL POWERED BOTTOM

The 23" diameter (J2300) and 29" diameter (J2900) kilns have optional powered bottoms available. See the J Series literature for more information. These are useful if you need to fire faster, have a heavy load or are going to very high fire (they will improve overall element life because the elements won't have to work as hard to get there). The powered bottoms also offer more control over the accuracy of the temperature at the bottom of the kiln. There should be a 1" to 1-1/2" air space between the bottom and the first hearth shelf (in other words, set the first hearth shelf on 1" or 1-1/2" ceramic spacers). Keep spacers at least ½" away from the edge of the element grooves on the bottom. Be sure to read the section on programming powered bottoms in the DynaTrol Manual (*dynatrol-instruct-blue.pdf*) in the CONTROL section. Read chapter 4.4 (HIDDEN "OTHER MENU & Programming the Powered Bottom).

FIRST FIRING OF THE KILN

Follow the FIRST FIRING INSTRUCTIONS in the *first-firing.pdf* in this OPERATION section.

SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

REGULAR KILN MAINTENANCE

See *maintain.pdf* in the MAINTENANCE Section. NOTE: Failure to properly maintain your kiln could lead to a dangerous condition and could lead to premature aging of the kiln (like elements burning out).

WARRANTY

Jupiter kilns carry a three year limited warranty. See *warranty.pdf* in the SERVICE Section.

WHERE TO BUY PARTS

See *parts.pdf* in the PARTS Section.

REPLACEMENT ELEMENTS

See *parts.pdf* in the PARTS Section. Also see the *troubleshoot-elements.pdf* in the TROUBLE-SHOOTING Section.

SERVICE FOR YOUR KILN

See *service.pdf* in the SERVICE Section.

TROUBLESHOOTING

See the separate TROUBLESHOOTING SECTION.

ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

NOTE: You can get more information about the electrical specifications from *jupiter-ohms.pdf* (located in the TROUBLESHOOTING SECTION. This will give you resistance values for elements and kiln sections. Also see *jupiter-electric.pdf* for complete electrical specifications in the INSTALLATION section.

CRACKS IN THE TOP & BOTTOM

It is quite normal to get hairline cracks in both the top and the bottom firebricks. They are caused by the expansion and contraction of the firebrick as it heats and cools. As long as the bottom is fully supported by the stand the cracks in the bottom will not adversely affect the operation of the kiln. Note that it is possible to put another bottom under the original bottom as a second layer (this can also improve performance and heat up rate of the kiln). It generally does not make sense to cement these hairline cracks.

SPARE PARTS

WHERE TO BUY PARTS

See *parts.pdf* in the PARTS Section.

PARTS TO KEEP ON HAND

If you are operating in a production environment it is imperative that you stock certain spare parts if you must prevent down time. While we do our best to ship parts quickly and to keep all parts in stock we cannot be responsible for your downtime. We recommend the following parts be kept on hand:

Complete set of elements
Complete set of fuses
One power contactor
Jumper cable to element box
Set of spare thermocouples
Several element holders
Brick Repair kit (See *brickrepair.pdf*)

PYROMETRIC CONES

See *the* LOG, CONES & CERAMIC PROCESS section.

WHERE TO LEARN MORE ABOUT CONES

Visit the Orton Website at *ortonceramics.com*. There is lots of great information on how to use cones and troubleshooting cone problems. See the Orton Cone Chart in the ORTON TIPS section. Note that the kilns tend to slow down considerably in the higher temperature ranges to 50°F to 100°F per hour.

FIRING LOG

We recommend keeping a firing log. Keep track of firing times, approximate load weight, firing temperatures and notes on results of the firing. There is a template in the LOG, CONES & CERAMIC PROCESS section of your instruction manual (*log.pdf*)

MORE ABOUT FIRING CERAMICS

See the sheet called *ceramic-firing.pdf* in the LOG, CONES & CERAMIC PROCESS section.

CONFIGURATIONS

UNHEATED SECTIONS

NOTE: Unheated 4-1/2" high sections are available for all kiln configurations. These may, in some cases, create heat up problems because the internal surface area of the kiln is increased without any extra power. Where possible, we recommend locating unheated sections near the middle of the kiln.

POWER SUPPLY

IMPORTANT CAUTION NOTE: If you change you kiln configuration BE SURE TO CHECK YOUR POWER SUPPLY To make sure it will handle the extra load. We will supply you with a new data nameplate.

JD18

RINGS: Consists of two 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: Another 9" high ring (JX18) can be added to make this a JD18X.

ELEMENTS: The elements in a J18 and J18X are all the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 36"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 3

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 2. An extra zone can be added adding a thermocouple and thermocouple lead wire.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On top 9" high section

JD18X

RINGS: Consists of three 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: Nothing.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 36"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 3

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 3.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On top 9" high section

JD23
RINGS: Consists of two 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: A third 9" high ring (JR23) can be added. This makes the kilns a JD230. You can add a JB230 powered bottom and plug it into the extra receptacle on the JD23 kiln. (A wire also needs to be switched inside the box - contact factory for assistance). You can add more JR23 rings to make the kiln a J236 or a J245 but you have to change the control box to accept the increased number of circuits. If you add a JR23 ring and a JB23 powered bottom you will need the larger control box as well.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 36"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 3

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 2. An extra zone can be added adding a thermocouple and thermocouple lead wire. You do not need an extra thermocouple if you are adding a powered bottom.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On top (second) section

JD230
RINGS: Consists of three 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: You can add up to two JR23 rings to make the kiln a JD236 or a JD245. You can add a JB23 powered bottom but you have to change the control box (A five circuit JD245 control box) to accept the increased number of circuits. When adding rings you may need to change the length of the jumper cords to 45".

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 36"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 3

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 3.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On top section (third from bottom)

JD236
RINGS: Consists of four 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: You can add one JR23 ring to make the kiln a J245. You can add a JB23 powered bottom. . (A wire also needs to be switched inside the box - contact factory for assistance). If you change the control box to a 6 zone box you can add both a ring and the powered bottom.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 45"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 5

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 3.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On the third section from bottom.

JD245
RINGS: Consists of five 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: You can add a powered bottom if you get a 6 zone control box.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 45"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 5

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 3.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On the third section from bottom.

JD2918
RINGS: Consists of two 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: You can add a JR29 ring to make the kiln a JD2927 or you can add a JB29 powered bottom. (A wire also needs to be switched inside the box - contact factory for assistance). By changing the control box you can add more rings and make the kiln a JD2936 or JD2945.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 45"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 3

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 2. An extra zone can be added adding a thermocouple and thermocouple lead wire. You do not need an extra thermocouple if you are adding a powered bottom.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On both rings.

JD2927
RINGS: Consists of three 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: You can add JR29 rings to make the kiln a JD2936 or a JD2945. You can add a JB29 powered bottom. (A wire also needs to be switched inside the box - contact factory for assistance). To do any of this, however, you will need a new 5 circuit box.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 45"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 3

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 3.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On the top two rings.

JD2936
RINGS: Consists of four 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: You can add one JR29 ring to make the kiln a JD2945. Or you can add a JB29 powered bottom. (A wire also needs to be switched inside the box - contact factory for assistance). If you change the control box to a 6 zone box you can add both a ring and the powered bottom.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 45"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 5

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 3.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On the second and third ring from the bottom.

JD2945
RINGS: Consists of five 9" high rings.

WHAT CAN BE ADDED: You can add a powered bottom if you get a 6 zone control box.

ELEMENTS: All the same.

LENGTH OF ELEMENT JUMPER CORDS: 45"

NUMBER OF CIRCUITS: 5

NUMBER OF THERMOCOUPLES: 3.

WHERE CONTROL PANEL IS MOUNTED: On the second and third ring from the bottom.

FIRST FIRING INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L KILNS WITH A DYNATROL

WHEN TO DO A FIRST TEST FIRING?

Once your kiln is set up, leveled properly (very important), control panel hooked up to the kiln correctly and all the power wired properly, you are ready for your first firing. Read these instructions and plan your time accordingly.

> **NOTE:** This version is for kilns with the DynaTrol 700 control board (Blue Board).

WHY DO A TEST FIRING?

The test firing is done very slowly, about 16 to 19 hours total to minimize the inner and outer surface temperature differences in the kiln while it goes through its maiden firing. Also this will slowly steam off any moisture absorbed by the firebrick during construction, shipping, and storage.

The test firing is done to cone 5 (about 2167°F) to vitrify the special coating on the inside on the firebrick and to allow an "aluminum oxide" coating to form on the element's surfaces. The coating on the brick helps to reflect the heat radiated from the elements. The oxide layer on the elements helps to protect them from the many contaminants found in many materials fired in a kiln. This aluminum oxide layer will rejuvenate itself every time there is an oxygen rich firing to a high temperature. Going to cone 5 may also point out any problems with your electrical service - like low or incorrect voltage or wrong supply line wire size. The elements will also seat themselves in the ceramic holders - and any springiness you see when you first get your kiln will be alleviated.

NOTE: Normally bisquing is done to cone 05. Do not be confused by how the test firing uses SLOW BISQUE to cone 5, even though normally you would use a SLOW BISQUE to cone 05. The Slow Bisque program is used for the test firing BECAUSE is is a long program. We want this to be slow.

The test firing is done with the operator present as much as possible. This is to be sure the kiln is heating up safely, and that the heating kiln affects nothing else in the room or the room itself. As for the operator being present, logistically this may be difficult as the test fire is designed to take about 16 to 19 hours. To deal with this a "Delayed Start" can be added to the test fire program, allowing you to press START at say 5PM, the kiln to start at say 8PM in order to turn off at 3PM the following day while you are there. More detail on this a little further on. You can also split it into two firings (see instructions at the end of this sheet).

The test fire is done with the kiln empty, or with the new kiln furniture. Anything else in the kiln (clay) will produce contaminants to some degree, and the elements in the kiln have not yet achieved this all important aluminum oxide coating before being subjected to these contaminants.

VENTING

Leave the Vent-Sure downdraft vent system on while the kiln is heating and cooling. Keep the peephole plugs in and the lid closed. If you have no vent system then leave the top peephole plug out during the first test firing.

NOTE: it is best for the evenness and speed of the firing to keep all the peepholes closed. However, for longevity of things like the elements, thermocouples, and kiln-sitter tube, as well as for better colors in clays and glazes, it is best to have as much air as possible moving through the kiln, without compromising the speed and evenness of the firing (this is a tradeoff). Open peepholes can be an OK way to vent, except that uneven drafts through the kiln can affect thermocouple readings, or "freeze" cones, leading to uneven firings or slow firings.

WHAT TO EXPECT

ELEMENT SMOKING

Brand new elements will smoke a little initially the first time they are heated. A fan in a window is more than adequate to deal with this. If you have the Vent-Sure vent on this should also be adequate.

NOISES IN AN AUTOMATIC KILN

A **Beep** when you press a button on the DynaTrol keypad.

Clicking noises from inside the control box as the unit heats. This will happen throughout the firing until it shuts off. Sometimes it will happen more frequently than other times. It is the result of the relays opening and closing as the control tells them to, turning the electricity on or off to the elements, working to heat the kiln evenly. (On manual kilns with contactors you will also hear contactors clicking).

Hum. Whenever kiln elements come on they are accompanied by a humming sound from electricity in the elements. This is normal. The natural properties of electricity and the dynamics of the shape of the element combine to make a slight vibration in the element.

WHAT HAPPENS AS THE KILN HEATS UP

All the materials used in the kiln's construction expand incrementally as they are heated. First the inside materials- i.e. the elements, holders, and inside surfaces of the walls, floor, and lid heat and expand slightly. Then, the heat moves slowly through the walls, lid and floor until it begins to heat the outer surface of the kiln. The greater the difference in temperature is between the inside surface vs. outside surface, the more stress there is on the material itself. Walls, lids and floors can sometimes hairline-crack on the surface or in the some cases, all the way through. Really this is normal and to be expected sooner or later to some degree. If you tighten the stainless steel bands that surround the floor, lid, and walls of the kiln every so often, the fact that the firebrick expands as it heats will mean that the cracks are actually closing up while the kiln is heating, expanding against the cooler outer shell. The geometry of the kiln and the tightness of the stainless steel bands are what holds everything together, whether the brick is in a few pieces or all one piece should not matter a whole lot, although cracked floors should be fully supported as they are with our full-support stands. See the *maintain.pdf* and *troubleshoot-brick.pdf* for more information.

VISIBLE RED HEAT

Another thing to expect is to see the "red heat" through the seams, between the sections of the kiln, beginning around 1000°F. This is normal. The seam between the lid and the top section will probably appear the largest. This is partly because, when the top heats up, it becomes slightly concave and the edge lifts up.

IMPORTANT NOTE: It is VERY important for this gap between the lid and the rest of the kiln to be even all the way around throughout the firing. If it is more open in the front when hot, then the hinge is out of adjustment and must be raised up. Your kiln's Assembly instructions detail the hinge adjustment. The danger of this condition is that all the weight of the lid is now resting on the inner upper edge of the back firebricks on the top section. They will crack off in a firing or so and probably damage the lid too.

The outer metal and brick surfaces of the kiln will get very hot, as hot as 450°F - easily hot enough to burn you.

The interior of the kiln will look white hot at the highest temperatures.

CAUTION: Be sure to always use rated safety glasses when looking through the peepholes to protect your eyes from infrared radiation.

CONTROL DISPLAY ON DYNATROL

Acronyms on the DynaTrol's display screen stand for important messages, they are its way of communicating with the user:

An acronym is a group of letters, each letter or the whole group of letters represents an entire word. For example; "USA" is the acronym for, of course, "United States of America". **TCOS** is the acronym the DynaTrol uses for "thermocouple offset". The DynaTrol display is limited to four letters or numbers at a time. Always pay attention to the acronyms the Dyna-Trol displays as the info it gives can be useful later Once it hits its target temperature, it will shut off with a **CPLT** message. Once this message is seen the kiln is no longer running. It is safe to shut off the power to it. If no controlled cool-down was programmed, the kiln will cool quickly at first, then more and more slowly. As it is cooling it will display the **CPLT**, the **amount of time it took to complete the firing**, the **TC2**, and **the current temperature** over and over again.

The temperature will normally be displayed from **TC2**, which is thermocouple number two. Press **1** to see the temperature in the top section- **TC1**. Press **3** to see the temperature in the bottom section of a three or more section kiln. The DynaTrol is checking all three thermocouples every eight seconds even though just one thermocouple's temperature is displayed. The displayed temperature will rise as the kiln heats up, cycling from **TC2** to current temperature inside the kiln over and over again. (A kiln with just one thermocouple will just show the temperature reading, no **TC number**).

IF YOU HAVE A KILN SITTER/TIMER BACK UP ON AN AUTOMATIC KILN

If your kiln has the Orton AutoCone Kiln-sitter/timer (as a back-up safety system - not the main control) AND a DynaTrol follow these next sub-steps, otherwise skip this section.

There are three possible ways in which such a kiln can be shut off automatically. Either the DynaTrol, AutoCone cone device or AutoCone timer will shut off the kiln during this first firing. If the kiln-sitter's cone device or the kiln-sitter's timer shuts the kiln off, then the DynaTrol's screen will be blank. Typically you would let the DynaTrol shut off the kiln, by initially adding more hours on the AutoCone timer and using a cone number that is one or two cones hotter than what the DynaTrol is programmed to fire to. Realize too that if you are not around for the end of the firing, the AutoCone timer will still continue to count down after the DynaTrol has properly shut off the kiln. Once the timer runs out, it will seem as though the AutoCone timer has shut off the kiln, not the DynaTrol, as the DynaTrol screen will be blank when you come in. (Note: some people use the AutoCone as the final shut off device and some people disconnect the timer function).

1) Read the entire AutoCone instruction manual.

2) Insert the proper cone for a cone 5 test fire into the kiln-sitter tube inside the kiln, while holding the "trigger" under the "claw" on the outside of the kiln- (as described in the AutoCone instruction manual.) You may want to actually use a Cone 6 so the AutoCone doesn't shut off the kiln first but this is not critical if you don't have a Cone 6 cone.

3) Set the kiln-sitter's timer for the maximum time. Once you know how much time the kiln generally needs to fire you can set this timer closer to how long the kiln actually takes.

4) Press the "white button" in the middle of the "trigger" in. It should stay in. It will not stay in if the timer is on or close to zero, or if the "trigger" is not up. With the button in, power is allowed to pass through the Kiln-sitter to the DynaTrol.

5) NOTE: You can bypass the AutoCone for the first firing by doing the following: Set the AutoCone Timer to maximum, hold the "weighted trigger" up, press the white button in, then gently lower the weighted trigger until it stays. Do not bump it!

6) Flip the toggle switch up on the main control box. The DynaTrol display should light up with the **WAIT** message or the **IDLE** message.

DYNATROL CONTROL: STEP BY STEP

1) Power to the kiln is ON (kiln is plugged in), turn the toggle switch ON, display reads **WAIT** or **IDLE**

2) Press **ENTER** and wait until you see **IDLE**, **TC2**, and the **current temperature** cycling over and over again.

3) Press **SLOW BISQUE** and see **S-bC.**

4) Press **ENTER** and see **CONE**, and a number (which represents the cone number currently programmed in the control) flashing back and forth.

5) Press **5**, and see the number **5** in the display. .

6) Press **ENTER** and see **HOLd**, **0.00** flashing back and forth.

7) Press **ENTER** and see **IDLE**, **TC2**, and the current temperature cycling over and over.

8) Press the **Preheat** button in the Easy-Options section.

9) See **HLd**, **0.00** flashing back and forth.

10) Press **300** so the display reads **3.00**.

11) Press **ENTER** and see **IDLE**.

12) Press **START/STOP** to begin the test firing.

You have just entered an "Easy-Fire Slow Bisque" Program to cone 5 with a three hour preheat, the combined total of which will take roughly 16-19 hours. The preheat part increases the heat in the kiln at 60°F per hour from room temperature up to 200°F where the hold time comes on, the timer appears, and it holds at 200F for the set amount of time. Once the timer runs out, the rest of the program follows.

Now you must figure out how to be around for the end of the 16-19 hour firing. This is where the Delay Start feature may come in handy. It is a digital hours and minutes timer you can add to the beginning of any program. You tell the timer how many hours and minutes to count down before the DynaTrol turns up the kiln and runs the rest of the program. (Do not confuse the operation of this timer with the "hour timer" that comes on the AutoCone Kiln-sitters).

NOTE: It is critical for someone to be present for, and especially at the end of, each firing. This is particularly true for this first firing. Even if you have an AutoCone Back-up - no safety device is entirely foolproof.

DO YOU NEED A DELAYED START?

Picture a clock-face and count forward 16 hours from when you planned to press **START/STOP** to begin this program. Will you be present for at least the last few hours? If "YES" then you do not need a delayed start time and you can start the firing when you planned to, skip the rest of step 6 and step 7. If "NO" then you do need a delayed start time, continue on here.

CALCULATING THE DELAY START

Picture the same clock-face, and see when the firing would have ended if you had pressed **START/STOP** when you planned (i.e. 16 hours from when you want the firing to begin). Now picture how many hours later the firing would have to end, in order to have someone there for the last few hours of this 16-19-hour firing. That "number of hours later" is what to program in for the Delay Start.

An example

You are planning to start the program at 7 pm. Your program is going to take minimum 16 hours. 16 hours from 7pm is 11am the following day. You plan to get into the kiln room at 9am. 9am to 11am is only two hours. You would need to get there one hour earlier to be there for the last three hours, OR start the program one hour later than 7PM so that the program completes at 12pm the following day. You will need to program a one hour delayed start. First you will enter the program, then the preheat, then the delayed start. You will press **START/STOP** at 7pm, but now a timer will appear and count down the one hour before the rest of the program begins.

ADDING A DELAYED START

1) Press **DELAY** and see **dELA**, **0.00** flashing over and over.

2) Enter the number of hours and minutes to delay the start for. For example: For a two hour delay press **2**, **0, 0** so it says **2.00**. For a 1 hour and thirty minute delay press **1, 3, 0** so it says **01.30**. Numbers in the display to the right of the decimal represent minutes. Numbers to the left of the decimal represent hours.

3) When the correct number of hours and minutes has been keyed in, press **ENTER**, see **IDLE**

START FIRING

When the correct time to begin the firing arrives, press **START/STOP**. The display will say **-ON-**, then it will cycle through a sequence showing **TC2**, and the **current temperature** in the kiln over and over as it heats. Here is what to expect the kiln will do based on what you have programmed, after you press **START/STOP**.

If you programmed a delayed start, there will be an hours and minutes timer displayed along with the **TC2**, **current temperature** message. It will be displayed until the timer runs out.

It will climb at about 60°F per hour until it reaches 200°F, then the timer will appear again and the three hour preheat will begin counting down on the display with the **TC2**, **current temperature** message. It will sit around 200°F until the timer runs out.

Now it will begin to climb at about 80°F per hour up to 250°F

Once the hottest thermocouple reading reaches 250°F, the kiln will begin climbing at 200°F per hour until it reaches 1000°F

Once the hottest thermocouple reading reaches 1000F, the kiln will begin climbing at 100°F per hour until it reaches 1100°F

Once the hottest thermocouple reading reaches 1100F, the kiln will begin climbing at 180°F per hour until it reaches 1915°F

Once the hottest thermocouple reading reaches 1915°F, the kiln will begin climbing at 80°F per hour until it reaches somewhere between 2100-2190°F

Once the hottest thermocouple reading reaches ~2165°F, the kiln display will say **CPLT**, a time like **17.47**, the **TC2**, and the current temperature in the kiln as it is cooling.

Once **CPL**T is seen the firing is complete. It is best to now shut all power to the kiln off. It is safe enough to leave the display on with the current messages cycling over and over, or it is also safe to press **START/STOP** to get back to **IdLE**, **TC2**, **current temp** and leave it there.

> **NOTE:** If the first firing ended in an error code please make note of which one it was; i.e. **E—1** or **E—d** etc. See this first:
>
> **http://hotkilns.com/list-all-error-codes-dynatrol**

SPLITTING TEST FIRING INTO TWO FIRINGS

This is done by entering in the standard program for the test fire on Day 1, first thing in the morning. Turn this on as early on Day 1 as possible and let it run all day until you go home in the afternoon. Before you go home Press **START/STOP**, then turn off the kiln.

On day 2, first thing in the morning, program in a **SLOW GLAZE** to cone 5, no hold or preheat is necessary. Regardless of how hot it still may be in the kiln, turn this program on as early as possible in the morning on Day 2. It will run up to somewhere between 2100°F and 2190°F in about 7-8 hours. If it is still not done when you go home, as long as 8 hours have passed since you turned it on, you can press **START/STOP** and turn the toggle switch off and go home. Otherwise when it is done it will give the **CPLT** message and it is then safe to Press **START/STOP**, turn the toggle switch off and go home.

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

FIRING LOG FOR L&L KILNS

DATE	PROGRAM	CONE	TIME	FINAL TEMP	LOAD WEIGHT	CLAY BODY	GLAZE

Temperature Equivalent Chart for Orton Pyrometric Cones (° F)   Cone Numbers 022-14

	Self Supporting Cones						Large Cones				Small
	Regular			Iron Free			Regular		Iron Free		Regular
	Heating Rate ° F/hour (last 180° F of firing)										
Cone	27	108	270	27	108	270	108	270	108	270	540
022		1087	1094				N/A	N/A			1166
021		1112	1143				N/A	N/A			1189
020		1159	1180				N/A	N/A			1231
019	1213	1252	1283				1249	1279			1333
018	1267	1319	1353				1314	1350			1386
017	1301	1360	1405				1357	1402			1443
016	1368	1422	1465				1416	1461			1517
015	1382	1456	1504				1450	1501			1549
014	1395	1485	1540				1485	1537			1598
013	1485	1539	1582				1539	1578			1616
012	1549	1582	1620				1576	1616			1652
011	1575	1607	1641				1603	1638			1679
010	1636	1657	1679	1600	1627	1639	1648	1675	1623	1636	1686
09	1665	1688	1706	1650	1686	1702	1683	1702	1683	1699	1751
08	1692	1728	1753	1695	1735	1755	1728	1749	1733	1751	1801
07	1764	1789	1809	1747	1780	1800	1783	1805	1778	1796	1846
06	1798	1828	1855	1776	1816	1828	1823	1852	1816	1825	1873
05½	1839	1859	1877	1814	1854	1870	1854	1873	1852	1868	1909
05	1870	1888	1911	1855	1899	1915	1886	1915	1890	1911	1944
04	1915	1945	1971	1909	1942	1956	1940	1958	1940	1953	2008
03	1960	1987	2019	1951	1990	1999	1987	2014	1989	1996	2068
02	1972	2016	2052	1983	2021	2039	2014	2048	2016	2035	2098
01	1999	2046	2080	2014	2053	2073	2043	2079	2052	2070	2152
1	2028	2079	2109	2046	2082	2098	2077	2109	2079	2095	2163
2	2034	2088	2127				2088	2124			2174
3	2039	2106	2138	2066	2109	2124	2106	2134	2104	2120	2185
4	2086	2124	2161				2120	2158			2208
5	2118	2167	2205				2163	2201			2230
5½	2133	2197	2237				2194	2233			N/A
6	2165	2232	2269				2228	2266			2291
7	2194	2262	2295				2259	2291			2307
8	2212	2280	2320				2277	2316			2372
9	2235	2300	2336				2295	2332			2403
10	2284	2345	2381				2340	2377			2426
11	2322	2361	2399				2359	2394			2437
12	2345	2383	2419				2379	2415			2471
13	2389	2428	2458				2410*	2455*			N/A
14	2464	2489	2523				2491*	2530*			N/A

Pyrometric cones have been used to monitor ceramic firings for more than 100 years. They are useful in determining when a firing is complete, if the kiln provided enough heat, if there was a temperature difference in the kiln or if a problem occurred during the firing.

Cones are made from carefully controlled compositions. They bend in a repeatable manner (over a relatively small temperature range - usually less than 40° F). The final bending position is an indication of how much heat was absorbed.

Behavior of Pyrometric Cones

Typically, it takes 15 to 25 minutes for a cone to bend once it starts. This depends on the cone number. The cone bends slowly at first but once it reaches the half way point (3 o'clock), it bends quickly. When the cone tip reaches a point level with the base, it is considered properly fired. This is the point for which temperature equivalents are determined. Differences between a cone touching the shelf and a cone at the 4 o'clock position are small, usually 1 or 2 degrees.

Temperatures shown on the charts were determined under controlled firing conditions in electric kilns and an air atmosphere. Temperatures are shown for specific heating rates. These heating rates are for the last 100° C or 180° F of the firing. Different heating rates will change the equivalent temperature. The temperature will be higher for faster heating rates and lower for slower heating rates.

Cone bending may also be affected by reducing atmospheres or those containing sulfur oxides. Orton recommends the use of Iron-Free cones for all reduction firings (cones 010-3). If a cone is heated too fast, the cone surface fuses and binders used to make cones form gases that bloat the cone. If cones are to be fired rapidly, they should be calcined (pre-fired) before use. Cones should be calcined to about 850° F (455° C) in an air atmosphere.

If a cone is soaked at a temperature near its equivalent temperature, it will continue to mature, form glass and bend. The time for the cone to bend depends on several factors and as a general rule, a 1 to 2 hour soak is sufficient to deform the next higher cone number. A soak of 4 to 6 hours will be required to deform two higher (hotter) cones.

for more information on pyrometric cones, contact Orton or visit us at www.ortonceramic.com

Orton®
The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
P.O. Box 2760 • Westerville, OH 43086-2760
(614) 895-2663 • (614) 895-5610 fax
info@ortonceramic.com
www.ortonceramic.com

These tables provide a guide for the selection of cones. The actual bending temperature depends on firing conditions. Once the appropriate cones are selected, excellent, reproducible results can be expected. Temperatures shown are for specific mounted height above base. For Self Supporting - 1¾"; for Large - 2"; for Small - 15/16". For Large Cones mounted at 1¾" height, use Self Supporting temperatures. * These Large Cones have different compositions and different temperature equivalents.

Temperature Equivalent Chart for Orton Pyrometric Cones (° C) Cone Numbers 022-14

	Self Supporting Cones						Large Cones				Small
	Regular			Iron Free			Regular		Iron Free		Regular
	Heating Rate ° C/hour (last 100° C of firing)										
Cone	15	60	150	15	60	150	60	150	60	150	300
022		586	590				N/A	N/A			630
021		600	617				N/A	N/A			643
020		626	638				N/A	N/A			666
019	656	678	695				676	693			723
018	686	715	734				712	732			752
017	705	738	763				736	761			784
016	742	772	796				769	794			825
015	750	791	818				788	816			843
014	757	807	838				807	836			870
013	807	837	861				837	859			880
012	843	861	882				858	880			900
011	857	875	894				873	892			915
010	891	903	915	871	886	893	898	913	884	891	919
09	907	920	930	899	919	928	917	928	917	926	955
08	922	942	956	924	946	957	942	954	945	955	983
07	962	976	987	953	971	982	973	985	970	980	1008
06	981	998	1013	969	991	998	995	1011	991	996	1023
05½	1004	1015	1025	990	1012	1021	1012	1023	1011	1020	1043
05	1021	1031	1044	1013	1037	1046	1030	1046	1032	1044	1062
04	1046	1063	1077	1043	1061	1069	1060	1070	1060	1067	1098
03	1071	1086	1104	1066	1088	1093	1086	1101	1087	1091	1131
02	1078	1102	1122	1084	1105	1115	1101	1120	1102	1113	1148
01	1093	1119	1138	1101	1123	1134	1117	1137	1122	1132	1178
1	1109	1137	1154	1119	1139	1148	1136	1154	1137	1146	1184
2	1112	1142	1164				1142	1162			1190
3	1115	1152	1170	1130	1154	1162	1152	1168	1151	1160	1196
4	1141	1162	1183				1160	1181			1209
5	1159	1186	1207				1184	1205			1221
5½	1167	1203	1225				1201	1223			N/A
6	1185	1222	1243				1220	1241			1255
7	1201	1239	1257				1237	1255			1264
8	1211	1249	1271				1247	1269			1300
9	1224	1260	1280				1257	1278			1317
10	1251	1285	1305				1282	1303			1330
11	1272	1294	1315				1293	1312			1336
12	1285	1306	1326				1304	1324			1355
13	1310	1331	1348				1321*	1346*			N/A
14	1351	1365	1384				1366*	1388*			N/A

Pyrometric cones have been used to monitor ceramic firings for more than 100 years. They are useful in determining when a firing is complete, if the kiln provided enough heat, if there was a temperature difference in the kiln or if a problem occurred during the firing.

Cones are made from carefully controlled compositions. They bend in a repeatable manner (over a relatively small temperature range - usually less than 40° F). The final bending position is an indication of how much heat was absorbed.

Behavior of Pyrometric Cones

Typically, it takes 15 to 25 minutes for a cone to bend once it starts. This depends on the cone number. The cone bends slowly at first but once it reaches the half way point (3 o'clock), it bends quickly. When the cone tip reaches a point level with the base, it is considered properly fired. This is the point for which temperature equivalents are determined. Differences between a cone touching the shelf and a cone at the 4 o'clock position are small, usually 1 or 2 degrees.

Temperatures shown on the charts were determined under controlled firing conditions in electric kilns and an air atmosphere. Temperatures are shown for specific heating rates. These heating rates are for the last 100° C or 180° F of the firing. Different heating rates will change the equivalent temperature. The temperature will be higher for faster heating rates and lower for slower heating rates.

Cone bending may also be affected by reducing atmospheres or those containing sulfur oxides. Orton recommends the use of Iron-Free cones for all reduction firings (cones 010-3). If a cone is heated too fast, the cone surface fuses and binders used to make cones form gases that bloat the cone. If cones are to be fired rapidly, they should be calcined (pre-fired) before use. Cones should be calcined to about 850° F (455° C) in an air atmosphere.

If a cone is soaked at a temperature near its equivalent temperature, it will continue to mature, form glass and bend. The time for the cone to bend depends on several factors and as a general rule, a 1 to 2 hour soak is sufficient to deform the next higher cone number. A soak of 4 to 6 hours will be required to deform two higher (hotter) cones.

for more information on pyrometric cones, contact Orton or visit us at www.ortonceramic.com

Orton®

The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
P.O. Box 2760 • Westerville, OH 43086-2760
(614) 895-2663 • (614) 895-5610 fax
info@ortonceramic.com
www.ortonceramic.com

These tables provide a guide for the selection of cones. The actual bending temperature depends on firing conditions. Once the appropriate cones are selected, excellent, reproducible results can be expected. Temperatures shown are for specific mounted height above base. For Self Supporting - 1¾″; for Large - 2″; for Small - 15/16″. For Large Cones mounted at 1¾″ height, use Self Supporting temperatures. * These Large Cones have different compositions and different temperature equivalents.

TROUBLESHOOTING KILN FIRING WITH CONE PACKS

BASIC CONE INFORMATION

PYROMETRIC CONES

Pyrometric cones are made of clay and other minerals and are precisely formulated to soften when fired in a kiln. They will bend over when they have absorbed a certain amount of heat. The amount of heat is related to both time and temperature. They mirror fairly accurately what goes on in ceramic body and so can be a more reliable guide to firing than a thermocouple instrument. Differing materials in the cones result in different firing temperatures. The cones you are likely to use in an L&L kiln are numbered from Cone 022 to Cone 10 (coldest to hottest). The number is imprinted on the cone. Usually clay and glaze comes with a recommended cone to fire to. A cone is a tall (about 2-½”) pyramid made from specific damp-pressed ceramic materials. Each cone has a slight lean to it when placed on a flat surface. Be careful not to drop or expose to moisture your cones.

CONES MEASURE HEAT-WORK

Cones are not temperature measuring devices. They measure how much heat has been absorbed by the ware in the kiln, which is the result of the combination of time and temperature. A particular piece of clay needs a certain amount of time at a specific temperature to properly fire it, lower temperature if the time is longer, higher temperature if the time is shorter. An example of this would be if you added about a 20 minute hold to the maximum temperature of a cone 6 firing, you would be able to lower that final temperature by about 20°F. An hour hold time would mean a final temperature of about 40°F lower. A two hour hold time, about 60°F lower.

LARGE SELF SUPPORTING CONES

Although there are various types of cones available we recommend using the “self-supporting large cones”. They have a built-in base that allows the cone to sit flat while always placing the pyramid part of it at the proper angle. The angle is there to ensure that the cone bends in the direction you want it to, and doesn’t just slump and puddle.

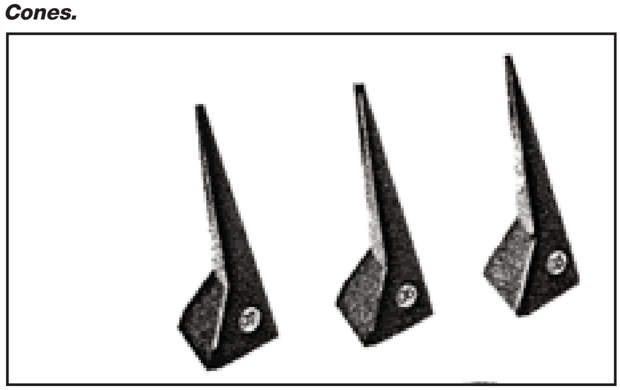
CONES FOR DAWSON KILN SITTERS

There are “small cones” and “bars” available for use in kiln-sitters and in automatic shut-off devices. Small cones are shaped like standard cones but are only about 1” long. They are meant to melt in the kiln-sitter mechanism and activate the shut-off device. The “bars” make it easier for them to be placed properly in the mechanism, as the cones are tapered, and improper placement can result in a slight over-fire or under-fire of the ware. These cones should never be expected to mimic the results of standard or self-supporting cones unless they are used in the kiln-sitter. Gravity works differently on them because their physical size is smaller, and therefore they will melt at a considerably higher temperature than a large cone of the same cone number when they are placed side-by-side.

CONE PACKS

The best way to use the cones, especially if they are all you have to tell how hot your kiln is getting, is to use 'cone packs', or the three cone system. The three cones are placed in a line, aimed so that when they fall, they will fall in a line. The first cone to fall should be in the front of the three cone line. This cone should be one cone number lower than the one you wish to fire to. The target cone (the cone you wish to fire to) should be the next one to fall and should be in the middle. The last cone should be one cone number higher than the target cone. The first cone is to warn you that the firing is almost done. The target cone tells you when to turn off the kiln, and the last cone tells you if the kiln got hotter than you thought it did.

Picture of a “cone pack” (Courtesy of Orton). The ones in the back are before the firing and the ones in the front are after a perfect firing/ These are Self-Supporting Large Cones.



USE CONES TO CONTROL ACCURACY IN AN AUTOMATIC KILN

We recommend checking the accuracy of your control and thermocouples every so often by placing at least one large cone (the target cone or cone number you are firing to) in the top, middle and bottom. Thermocouples will drift in their accuracy, but you can adjust the cone offset or thermocouple offset (or both) to compensate for this. You know how many degrees off the thermocouple reads at the end of the firing. Using a cone near the thermocouple and a "cone to temperature chart" will help to calibrate a thermocouple accurately. Remember though, cone temperatures are affected by their location in the kiln, the angle at which they are held, and the rate at which they are heated. Slight variations throughout the kiln should be expected.

CONE CHART

You can see a "cone to temperature" chart in the LOG, CONES, TIPS, CERAMIC PROCESS section of your manual. There is far more detailed information on this on the Orton web site (*ortonceramics.com*).

TROUBLESHOOTING FIRING PROBLEMS

Seems like the kiln is under-firing or over-firing slightly

1) On the next firing make up "cone packs", one for each thermocouple. A cone pack is a set of three cones, standing in a line. The cone the firing should go to is called the target cone, and is in the middle. The one in front of it is one cone number lower, and the one behind it is one cone number higher. Pay attention to how you position the cones as they are designed to only fall in one particular direction if placed on a level surface. You do not want a lower-numbered cone stuck in the cone pack behind a higher-numbered cone because the lower-numbered one will fall first and might lean against or knock over the higher-numbered cone, which will compromise the accuracy of both cones.

2) Once the cone packs are positioned on shelves (or on a post lying on its side) and are visible through the peepholes, fire the kiln to the middle cone's number.

3) Near the end of the firing start watching the cone packs. Look for the first cone to fall over in each pack, not necessarily at the same time, but pretty close, probably in the middle zone first.

4) Now watch for the middle cone in each pack. Keep checking the DynaTrol display to be sure it does not say **CPLt**. The middle cone in each pack should start to fall at pretty much the same time in the top, middle and bottom of the kiln. When the tip of the cone touches the melted cone in front of it note the temperature readout on the display for that zone's thermocouple.

a) If the middle cones did not go down together then immediately note the differences in each thermocouple reading from the one thermocouple in the same zone as the first cone that went down. Later on, use the "thermocouple offset" feature to add or subtract degrees from each thermocouple accordingly. Use the differences between the thermocouple readings as a guide to know how much to offset each thermocouple.

b) If the three thermocouple temperatures are close enough to be reading the same thing (the middle cones did all go over at the same time), then the kiln should say **CPLt** right when the cone tips bend over and touch or just before it. If the kiln is still firing after this point, note how many degrees higher it goes before shutting itself off. Then use the "cone offset" feature to change the temperature equivalent of that cone. Subtract the same amount of degrees from the temperature equivalent that the kiln over-fired the cone by.

c) If the kiln shut itself off before bending the cones properly, you want to reprogram it and then re-start it as quickly as possible. Note the temperature at which the kiln shut down. Get from **CPLt** to **IdLE**, **tC 2**, current temperature by pressing either **START/STOP** or **ENTER**. Re-program the same program to one cone number higher, then re-start the firing. Do these steps quickly. Now watch the middle cones again and note at what temperature the cones properly bend. If they bent while you were programming then just offset the temperature by 5 or 6 degrees. Shut the kiln off once you note that temperature. Using the “cone offset” feature, add the difference of the two readings to that cone's temperature equivalent.

Note: From the factory, the settings that interpret temperature signals in the DynaTrol are hard-programmed; they will not change unless part of the microprocessor has been affected. There is a range of acceptability for the accuracy however and the cone offset feature exists to allow you to fine tune the kiln to particular sized loads. It is best to use all new thermocouples to properly tune the cone offset before individual thermocouples begin to drift. Even keeping one new thermocouple solely for calibrating the individual thermocouples will help to keep the kiln accurate.

CALIBRATING YOUR DYNATROL

This is also covered in the instruction sheet called *dynatrol-basic-operation.pdf* in the OPERATION section of your manual (if you have an automatic kiln).

MORE INFORMATION

Orton Ceramic Institute

See *ortonceramics.com* for lots of very helpful information on how to use cones and for many firing tips and great information on firing kilns. (*ortonceramics.com*)

You can see a “cone to temperature” chart in the LOG, CONES, TIPS, CERAMIC PROCESS section of your manual.

What Cone Numbers Mean: Why You Should Care

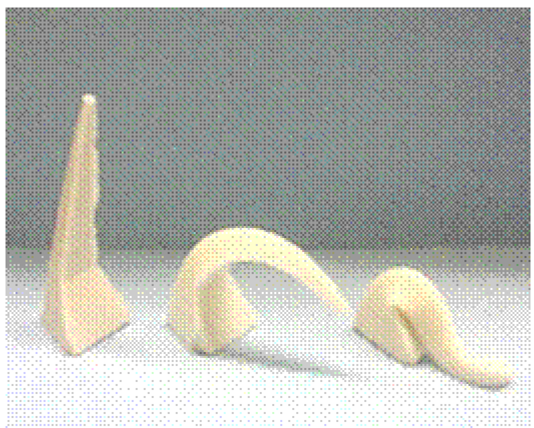
The pyrometric cones used today by ceramic artists and industrial manufacturers were developed in the late 1800's by Edward Orton Jr. Dr. Orton recognized that ceramists needed a way to determine when their ware was fired correctly to develop the properties they required in their finished products. Thus all ceramic products were assigned a cone number to which they were to be fired to assure maturity of the ware during the firing process such as Cone 06 glazes, Cone 04 bodies, etc. Later, the development of electronic temperature controllers simplified the control of the firing process, but they could not replace the cones as a measure of the accumulative effect of time and temperature on the ceramic ware. An interesting parallel to this principle would be the cooking of a turkey in your electric oven. You can set the oven temperature to 350 degrees Fahrenheit and place the turkey in the oven and estimate how long to cook it to attain an internal temperature of 180 degrees Fahrenheit. However if you want to be assured the turkey reaches the desired internal temperature you can place a meat thermometer into the turkey and it will tell when you have reached the desired internal temperature. Changing the oven temperature will surly effect the time required to reach the desired internal temperature. Cones serve a similar purpose in the firing of ceramics.

Both the Orton and the Bartlett electronic temperature controllers' cone-fire programs were developed based on the actual firing behavior of Orton cones and would not work without the information on cone behavior provided by the Orton Ceramic Foundation. These controllers automatically adjust the final firing temperature based on the actual heating rate of the kiln so that the kiln delivers the correct amount of heat work specified by the cone number program selected. Therefore the most efficient and reliable way to fire your kiln is to utilize the cone-fire programs built into your controller.

However, the electronic controller is not the ultimate answer for assurance that your ware has been fired correctly. The electronic controller measures the temperature inside the kiln via the thermocouple that is usually mounted in the side wall of the kiln and extending into the kiln 1to 1½ inches. The thermocouple is great for measurement of temperature at a point in space and a point in time and provides the controller feedback needed to control the firing cycle. But heat work is a function of both temperature and time as measured by the bending of pyrometric cones.

Why is it so important to know if you have attained the correct cone firing? Look at the label on your glaze jar. The odds are that the glaze is specified as a "Cone X" glaze. The unstated instruction for firing such a glaze is to "apply heat work equal to the cone number specified and the glaze will be properly matured". The glaze manufacturer has developed the glaze formula to mature at a certain cone number. The glaze manufacturer has conducted sufficient testing to know the fired characteristics of the mature glaze as related to glaze fit to the body, color development, the chemical resistance of the glaze surface, food-safe, etc. Under-firing or over-firing can prevent the glaze from attaining the appearance and properties you expect.

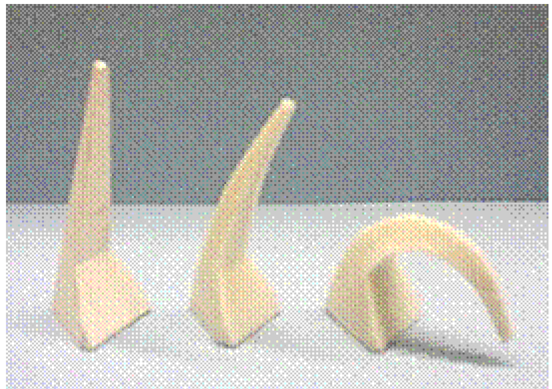
Since the thermocouple and the controller do not measure heat work how do you know if you actually matured the glaze in every firing? The thermocouple measures the temperature near the wall of the kiln where the heating elements are located and unfortunately has no means of measuring the temperature within the setting of the ware in the kiln and therefore cannot confirm if the distribution of heat work was uniform throughout the kiln. Remember the turkey story? One could fire the kiln with such a long firing cycle that all areas within the kiln received the desired amount of heat work, but this practice could require additional kilns to meet firing needs and the energy consumption would be wasteful. A definite overkill approach without merit. The programmable controller, coupled with the use of pyrometric cones, allows for the development of firing profiles to meet all your firing conditions. Since most shop operators want to have their kiln fully utilized during each firing, we will consider a fully loaded kiln of glazed ware to be fired to cone 06. The load placed in the kiln has a direct bearing on the firing profile required to successfully fire your ware. Select the cone-fire program consistent with the recommendation of the glaze manufacturer, in this case cone 06. Remember that selecting a cone-fire program alone does not insure that you will obtain uniform heat distribution throughout your ware. The controller is designed to compensate if the kiln is heating slower than the expected rate, but only at the tip of the thermocouple, it has no information about what is occurring in the interior of the ware setting. Place a series of three cones, 07, 06, 05 (self-supporting cones are the most convenient to use) one series located on the outside perimeter of the ware setting, and the second series located in the center of the ware setting on each shelf in the kiln (commonly referred to as "witness cones"). Fire the kiln. Once cool, remove the cones marking their location in the kiln. If the cone 06 is bent so that the tip is at the same level as the top of the foot of the cone in all locations, congratulations, you have just achieved a successful firing to cone 06. **See Figure 1**.



Cone 05 Cone 06 Cone 07

Figure 1. Cone 07 is over-fired and cone 06 indicates a successful cone 06 firing.

If some of the locations indicate that you did not reach cone 06, the tip of cone 06 is not bent enough, you will need to modify your firing cycle on your controller. By having cone 07 along side cone 06 you can determine by how much you failed to reach a cone 06 firing. Cone 07 measures a lesser amount of heat work than cone 06, therefore if cone 07 is bent so that the tip is at the same level as the top of the foot of the cone you are only one cone away from the desired heat work. **See Figure 2.** There are two simple ways to correct poor heat distribution within your kiln. First, for your cone-fire program if you selected either *fast*(#1) or *standard*(#2) heating speeds try *slow*(#3), which will allow more time during the firing cycle for the heat to equalize in the ware setting, or you can add additional *hold time* (soak) at the final cone temperature. A combination of both may be necessary depending on how heavily the kiln is loaded. Your kiln manufacturer or your controller manufacturer can be a good resource for suggestions to improve your firing program. The first question you will likely be asked is "what do your witness cones show". Repeat the procedure above once the change(s) to the firing cycle have been made.



Cone 05 Cone 06 Cone 07

Figure 2. Cone 06 has not reached the proper bending angle, indicating an under-fired condition.

Since minor under-firing may not be obvious to the eye, the use of cones in every firing will alert you if there is a potential problem with the correct amount of heat work being delivered uniformly to your ware. And, when the cones confirm a successful firing, you can sleep a little better knowing you have taken a proactive, safe approach to providing your customers a high quality firing process. Retaining the cones constitutes physical proof that the ware was fired according to the glaze manufacturer's specification.

For more information on the use of pyrometric cones and the firing of ceramics please visit the Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation on the internet at www.Ortonceramic.com.

The Ceramic Process

What happens when you fire clay.

Loading kiln with greenware

When placing greenware in a kiln, all pieces may touch each other. To prevent possible distortion, place lids on the pieces they go with when firing to bisque. It is important to place the tallest pieces on the center of the shelf and work outward to the shortest pieces. This will give you the best heat circulation. Be sure the ware is totally dry before firing (unless you use a very long drying cycle). Moisture in the work can cause cracking or even an explosion. We suggest using either the SLOW BISQUE program for heavy loads with a Preheat time of between two to three hours or the FAST BISQUE program for lighter loads (again with a Preheat time of two to three hours). If you want to make up your own program, use the preset program as a guide (see Appendix F in the DynaTrol instructions, **hotkilns.com/dynatrol-instruct-blue.pdf**, for a description of the segments in the preset programs). It is not a bad idea to Preheat the kiln overnight, as its only purpose is to thoroughly dry and start the expansion of the ware, so that the higher heat will not negatively affect it.

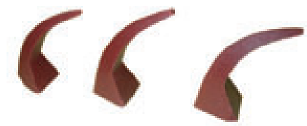
Venting

If you are using the **Vent-Sure** automatic vent system, you can turn it on and leave it on during the entire firing. If you use an automatic vent, you do not normally need to prop the lid open or remove peephole plugs. If manually venting (without a powered vent), fire in the beginning with all the peepholes out. Then put bottom peephole plugs into peepholes after the low firing is over (you will know it is over when you start to see red heat through the peepholes). You typically want to leave the top peephole out during the entire firing if you do not have an automatic downdraft vent. NOTE: HEAVY GREENWARE MAY TAKE LONGER TO DRY. Be sure to use the Preheat feature in the DynaTrol for ensuring dry work. NOTE: If you have a lot of moisture in your work you may want to prop open the lid for the first hour of preheat even if you have an automatic vent system. (CAUTION: Propping open a lid in this way can cause the lid to crack if you are not careful. This is not covered in our warranty).

Robert Shenfeld's studio in Syracuse NY where he produces production quantities of hand-crafted tiles.

Loading kiln with glaze ware

When placing ware into the kiln to be glaze-fired, we suggest placing the pieces ½" apart so



that when they expand there is no danger of them touching each other. If pieces are placed too close together, they may touch and stick to each other, thereby ruining both pieces of ware.

Except for placing ware the proper distance from each other for good heat circulation, follow the instructions for the firing of greenware. Be certain that no piece while expanding can touch the thermocouples. Use either the FAST GLAZE or SLOW GLAZE program depending on your glaze needs (experiment if you are not sure), or make up your own program. Ask the supplier of your glaze if you use a commercial glaze. There are some good firing recipes in various glaze books, including Mastering Cone 6 Glazes available from us. Your clay and glaze supplier will know the cone number to which you should fire your work.

Overglaze firing

When firing overglazes such as Gold, Palladium, Mother of Pearl, China Paints, etc., the kiln must be vented during the firing up to 1,100°F. If you are manually venting, leave the peepholes open. (NOTE: This is if you are not using a vent system such as an L&L **Vent-Sure** which automates the venting process). Check with your clay and glaze supplier for recommended cycles.

Speed of firing

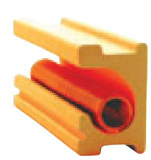
Although the kiln may be capable of firing relatively fast, this does not mean you should fire it as fast as it is capable of firing. The speed of firing will depend on what you are trying to accomplish. Check with the glaze or clay manufacturer or supplier for a recommended firing cycle.

Soaking

Soaking is holding the kiln at any given temperature for a set amount of time. One purpose is to achieve uniform temperatures on the inside and outside of your pieces. Other benefits

L&L Kilns
hotkilns.com

505 Sharptown Road • Swedesboro, NJ 08085
Phone: 856.294.0077 • Fax: 856.294.0070
Email: sales@hotkilns.com • Web:www.hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

include the smoothing out of glazed surfaces to get rid of pin holes or craters in the glazed surface. During the bisque firing, people often hold at different temperatures to allow the clay body to out-gas more of its organic material. Holding is also useful at a low temperature like 150°F to 180°F to dry out pottery or kiln wash on shelves.

The downside to holding only happens at high temperatures. There is almost no downside to holding at low temperatures except increased firing time and slight element and thermocouple degradation from the extra firing time. At high temperatures the amount of degradation to the elements and thermocouples is exponentially greater. As a result, holding the kiln at a high temperature will affect the element and thermocouple life.

Try soak times in the range of 5 or 10 minutes at the most. If longer, exercise care as the kiln may over-fire your work. Compensate by reducing the cone's temperature in the cone offset setting, or raise the thermocouple offset. Use witness cones that you can see through your peephole (and be sure to use dark safety glasses when doing so). If you see the cones bending (which would indicate proper heat-work achieved), then you can always turn off the control at that point manually. The Orton website has a great program available for free which helps you calculate how different temperature ramps and hold times will affect the "heat-work" and cone bending in a kiln.

Firing log

Keep a firing log. Keep track of firing times, approximate load weight, firing temperatures and notes on results of the firing. There is a sample log in our instruction manuals (**hotkilns.com/log.pdf**).

Applying kiln wash

Kiln wash the floor of the kiln and the upper sides of the shelves only. Apply the kiln wash to the thickness of a postcard. The purpose of kiln wash is to prevent any glaze that drips from ware from sticking to the floor or shelves. If dripping should occur, remove dripping and cover the spot with new kiln wash. Kiln wash is a powder mixed with water to a light creamy consistency. See page 53. For best results, apply three separate coats. If you brush one coat on, let it dry and then brush on another; you can brush off the first in the process, so ideally each coat should be fired on. The shelf can be used while firing the kiln wash, so theoretically you would put one coat on, load the shelves and do your test-firing of the kiln. The second coat would be fired on in the first bisque and the third coat in the second bisque or first glaze (whichever comes next). Fire at least to cone 018—hot enough to give the kiln wash enough adherence to the shelf to prevent it from coming off in the second coating. Note that some people make do without three firings of the kiln wash. However, we include this recommendation as a "best practice".

What happens when you bisque and glaze in your kiln

When you fire a kiln, you chemically and physically alter clay and glaze compounds in a way that, to some degree, can be anticipated and accounted for. There is quite a bit more going on during firing than meets the eye. It is useful to divide the processing cycle into separate distinct stages or segments. The stages that clay and glaze go through in a typical firing can be divided as follows:

Complete drying

Even after you room-dry your work there will be some moisture left in the seemingly dry ware. Your ware will pick up moisture from the air, even if it is left for weeks on a warm, dry shelf. Bisque ware can also absorb moisture during glazing, and the newly applied glaze is really a very fine-grained clay coating at this point; it will retain the water it was mixed with and the water in the air until it is completely dry.

When you put this piece in the kiln it will first go through a complete drying stage. This is where any water that was in your ware evaporates and expands to 1,170 times its original volume. This moisture must escape from your ware before the kiln temperature gets to 212°F. It is important that the kiln temperature climb very slowly at first, and that the lid be propped 1" with several soft pieces of firebrick or ceramic posts and the peepholes opened if there is no forced venting system. (CAUTION: Keep in mind that propping open a lid in this way can cause the lid to crack if you are not careful). If you have a lot of moisture in your work you may want to prop open the lid for the first hour of preheat even if you have an automatic vent system. The amount of drying needed depends on factors such as how much mass is in the kiln and how wet the ware is. Factors that lead to a longer drying time include fine-grained clay and thick-walled ware. Be sure to use the Preheat feature in the DynaTrol which automatically sets the kiln temperature at the right drying temperature. Preheating overnight is recommended. It is best to be conservative to prevent the ware from exploding in the kiln. After a while you will get a feel for how long is necessary. Remember to carefully vacuum out your kiln if a piece that is not fully dried explodes.

These instructions refer to the use of our DynaTrol control "Easy-Fire" programs. If you have a manual kiln you will need to adjust the switches to achieve various cycles.

The "Ceramic Change"

This happens to each crystal and mineral particle in the clay body. Even though water between the crystals and minerals has already evaporated (hopefully during the slow preheat time), there is still water in these crystals and minerals that is venting off. This can occur all the way until the kiln reaches red heat. Slow firing is not as critical as there are pathways for the steam to travel through where the water molecules between the particles used to be. Venting, however, is critical to remove the water vapor.

Quartz Inversion

This is a generic name for the 20 or so changes quartz goes through as the temperature increases and the molecules/particles/atoms become increasingly mobile. Most phases that a particle of quartz goes through as the kiln is heating will reverse during cooling. One of the largest and quickest changes the quartz goes through is roughly at 1,060°F with about a 2% increase in the size of the particles during heating. The process is reversed during cooling. Also, during cooling another 2% contraction takes place at about 439°F. This is caused by the formation of "crystobalite" in some clay bodies. There is a lot of other material in your clay besides quartz, so it is not always that important to account for the quartz while the kiln is heating up. The structure of unfired clay is full of pores and non-glass bound particles, so it can withstand the expansion of a few of its quartz particles. Once the clay is fired, though, the particles become part of a solid mass of glass. This mass is extremely intolerant of the expanding quartz particles. This is especially true in the glaze firing (even more so if the bisque was even slightly under-fired). In under-fired ware the quartz never has a chance to react with the fluxes and remains intact during a second firing, ready to expand and contract as your kiln heats and cools. This is one cause of dunting (fine cooling cracks). The glass mass simply has no room for the expanding quartz crystals.

Burnout

This is the burning off of any trapped organic matter in the clay. Burnout generally takes place at and above red heat. Sufficient airflow and time are necessary to burn off all the organic matter. If a bisque piece is under-fired, or fired too quickly, any unburned organic matter will bubble up through the glaze during the second firing. Even if the bisque is properly fired, there will still be some organic matter in the clay that will burn out once you pass the bisque's firing temperature. A glaze that fluxes too early will block off the exits for the gasses in the clay body and cause bloating or pitting.

Sintering

This is the point at which powdered clay particles will begin to form chemical bonds with each other. Although the clay is not melting yet, it is forming a lump from the powdered clay. The point at which this begins to happen is called the 'sintering point'. This, like burnout, happens right around red heat.

Decomposition

This is where fluxes really start to react and clay and glaze ingredients are deconstructed into their basic building blocks. This process can emit gasses such as sulfur and carbon dioxide which must travel out of the clay body. Once the firing is finished and the kiln cools, reconstruction takes place and the glaze and clay body recompose into a glass.

Vitrification

This is a process that develops in the clay body during firing. At one point a piece of clay might be under-fired and at a higher point it may have good strength, but not good color; at another point it may be perfect and at another, even hotter point, the piece may warp, or melt. What is important to understand is that as the firing progresses, more and more activity is taking place on a molecular level. This is good only to a certain point, after which you are left with a warped blob, or puddle. You want to achieve the "glassification" of the clay. This occurs right before the clay body begins to slump. At this point the molecular bond between fluxes, quartz, silica and other materials makes the "glass". However, it is the formation of the long mullite crystals (which only occurs above 2,000°F) from the decomposing clay crystals that gives the ware its strength.

Glaze set, cool & freeze

Unlike the clay body, the glaze melts completely, and the bond between it and the clay becomes more complete as the temperature rises; eventually, the glaze starts to run. Things like fluidity and surface tension are determined first by the chemistry of the glaze, then by the layer formed by the heightened interaction between the glaze and clay molecules. When the ingredients of the clay and glaze have been properly matched, the nature of the molten layer between the two is such that when the kiln is at maximum temperature during firing, things like pinholes and bubbles can rise through this layer and reach the surface from the clay body within, and not remain trapped in the surface when the glaze sets and begins to cool. Once maximum temperature is reached and the kiln begins to cool, the glaze and clay body will follow. The glaze will not solidify until some time after the kiln begins to cool. When this happens depends on the rate of cooling and the chemistry of the glaze. Right before the glaze solidifies, however, crystals can form. Depending on its chemistry, the glaze can solidify quickly and form crystals. Or, with some glazes, crystal formation can take place throughout the initial cooling until the glaze finally solidifies several hundred degrees lower than the highest temperature. By adjusting the glaze recipe slightly, one can maximize or minimize the forming of crystals in the glaze during cooling. Once the glaze solidifies it is still important for the kiln to cool slowly. Crazing (fine cracking) can occur if cooling is too rapid. Heat shock, which is usually catastrophic, is something that can happen in the kiln or may occur gradually over time.

In truth, simply test-firing the kiln and the ware to be fired is usually enough to deal with the complexity of the process. Every kiln and kiln-load fires differently, and a new kiln is no exception. The use of a vent system is recommended simply because it will exhaust any detrimental particles and fumes from the kiln, circulate air in the kiln and provide an oxygen-rich atmosphere. See **ortonceramics.com** for helpful information on how to use cones, firing tips and great information on firing kilns. They have an excellent program available for free which helps you calculate how different temperature ramps and hold times will affect the "heat-work" and cone bending in a kiln.

Bill Campbell at work.

"I make a living out of my five L&L kilns. I really beat them up firing them at least three times a week to Cone ten. They take a real beating and keep on going" -Bill Campbell

Firing Glass in a Ceramic Kiln

How to use an L&L Ceramic Kiln with a DynaTrol to Fire Glass

Firing Glass in a Ceramic Kiln

Basic Ideas

Glass is not as forgiving as clay when fired in a kiln. Temperatures and firing times must be more precise; as such firing glass requires special considerations when fusing and slumping in a pottery kiln.

Using a kiln sitter with cones is a difficult process when fusing and slumping glass and will not be discussed here. The following instructions address how to use a DynaTrol digital controlled pottery kiln when fusing and slumping glass. Glass casting is a special process and is not covered by the following information.

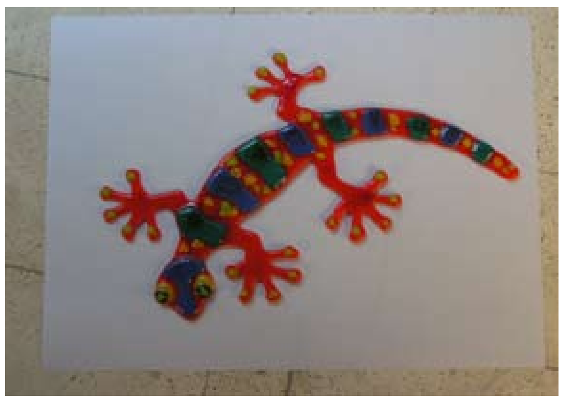
Pottery kilns heat from the side elements where as glass kilns heat from the lid element and side element. In most glass kilns the lid element provides 70% of the heat and the side elements provide 30% of the heat. The lid element throws heat down in a uniform manner across the kiln shelf. The side element is only there to adjust for the height of the kiln.

A pottery kiln heats from the sides toward the center. Using a standard glass firing sequence in a pottery kiln will cause the glass pieces on the outer edges of the kiln shelf to fuse long before the glass pieces in the center of the kiln shelf. If firing a large piece of glass the outer edges will fuse quickly and trap air bubbles in the glass and by the time the center of the piece reaches fusing temperature the outer edges will be over fired and may become distorted and thin.

The number of stacked shelves (amount of furniture) will impact the firing of the kiln. Kiln furniture absorbs heat before the glass absorbs heat causing what is referred to a heat steal. Also impacting glass firing in a pottery kiln is the size of the kiln plus if the kiln is made of 3 inch brick will also affect the firing. Glass kilns tend to be shorter in height than potter kilns and are usually made of 2 ½ inch brick or refractory fiber board or blanket.

With side elements, kiln furniture, size of the kiln and brick thickness you must fire slow in a pottery kiln when firing glass. If you fire too fast you will have an over fire plus you may also thermoshock the glass causing it to break. If you cool too fast you will thermoshock the glass causing it to break.

The following fusing sequences are to be used as a starting point from which you will develop your own firing sequence for successful firing of your projects. The sized of your kiln and how you load the furniture may require refining the sequence below.



You would use the same firing sequence for small jewelry pieces as well as large platters and bowels.

On the left of the DynaTrol digital controller is a yellow section labeled “VARY-FIRE”. This feature has 6 user programs each user program has 8 segments. A segment permits the artist to input firing sequences with a specified ramp rate in degrees per hour, a soak temperature, and a soak time. These three items comprise a segment. You select the number of segments needed for your firing sequence.

Simple firings like jewelry and small plates and bowels you should be able to obtain good results with the use of 2 segments.

If you are loading the kiln with multiple shelf levels or a single shelf you would use the 3 zone feature of your kiln to obtain uniform heating.

The assumption is made that you already know how to safely and correctly operate your DynaTrol digital controlled kiln. The following information is provides a guide line for adjusting your firing from pottery to glass.

The following information is not to replace the instructions provided in your kiln owner’s manual. Refer to the owner’s manual for complete information on the operation and features of the DynaTrol digital controller.

After loading your kiln you would set the DynaTrol digital controller in the following manner.

NOTE: All degrees listed below are degrees F. If you want to use degrees C you will need to set the controller for degrees C and convert the degrees F below to degrees C for you firing.

The firing schedule below is for use with Bullseye, Uroboros, or Spectrum Glass. It is not for use with float or borosilicate glass.

Fusing Glass

1. If the kiln has an off/on switch, turn the kiln on.

2. The kiln should indicate it is in the idle mode by flashing “IdLE”, the number of zones and the temperature inside the kiln.

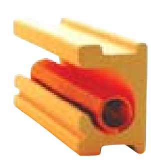
3. Press the “Enter Prog” key in the VARY-FIRE section. You will see the display flashing between “USER” and a number between 1 and 6. At this point you want to choose which USER program you want to use. You can set USER 1 for a fusing project and you can set USER 2 for a slumping project, as an example.

4. Press the number 1 on the key pad, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have chosen to use “USER 1”

5. The display will now flash SEGS and a number. It is asking how many segments you want to use for your firing.

L&L Kilns hotkilns.com

505 Sharptown Road • Swedesboro, NJ 08085
Phone: 856.294.0077 • Fax: 856.294.0070
Email: sales@hotkilns.com • Web:www.hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln’s patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

Bulletin No: Spec-Firing-Glass-9-08

Firing Glass in a Ceramic Kiln

Firing Glass in a Ceramic Kiln

6. Press the number 2 on the key pad, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have chosen to use 2 segments for your firing.

7. The display will now flash RA 1 and a number. It is asking for the ramp rate in degrees per hour for the first segment.

8. Pressing the number keys enter 150, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have instructed the controller to heat at 150 degrees per hour. This means that after 1 hour the kiln will be at room temperature plus 150 degrees, after 2 hours it will be at room temperature plus 300 degrees, and so forth.

9. The display will now flash °F 1 and a number. It is asking for the soak temperature for the first segment.

10. Pressing the number keys enter 1450, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have instructed the controller to heat to 1450 °F. This means that the kiln will heat at a rate of 150 degrees per hour and go to 1450 degrees, taking roughly 9.66 hours to do so.

11. The display will now flash HLd 1 and a number with a decimal point 2 digits to the left, You may have a number which looks like 12.30 or 1.20 or 0.20. The decimal point separates minutes from hours. Hours to the left of the decimal point and minutes to the right of the decimal point. It is asking for the soak time period for the first segment.

12 - Pressing the number keys enter 15, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have instructed the controller to soak for 15 minutes. On review of the program you would see: 0.15. You have entered the first segment.

13. The display will now flash RA 2 and a number. It is asking for the ramp rate in degrees per hour for the second segment.

14. Pressing the number keys enter 150, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have instructed the controller to cool at 150 degrees per hour.

15. The display will now flash °F 2 and a number. It is asking for the soak temperature for the second segment.

16. Pressing the number keys enter 100, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have instructed the controller to cool to 100 °F. This means that the kiln will cool at a rate no faster than 150 degrees per hour and go to 100 degrees, taking roughly 14.5 hours to do so.

17. The display will now flash HLd 2 and a number with a decimal point 2 digits to the left, You may have a number which looks like 12.30 or 1.20 or 0.20. The decimal point separates minutes from hours. Hours to the left of the decimal point and minutes to the right of the decimal point. It is asking for the soak time period for the second segment.

18. Pressing the number keys enter 30, then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area. You have instructed the controller to soak for 30 minutes. On review of the program you would see: 0.30

19. The display will now flash ALRM and 9999. It is asking if you want to have an alarm sound when the kiln reaches a particular temperature. The number 9999 instructs the controller NOT to sound any alarm.

20. Press the ENTER button in the number key pad area, with the 9999 number in the display, if you do NOT want an alarm. If you want the controller to sound an alarm notifying you that it has reached a particular temperature enter that temperature number on the key pad and then press the ENTER button in the number key pad area.

21. The display will now display CPL for a few seconds then switch to the IdLE mode. You have entered the second and final segment. The digital controller has the above firing sequence in its memory as USER 1. It will remember this firing sequence even after the kiln is turned off. You can edit and change the firing sequence any time.

22. When the display is in the IdLE mode press the "Recall Prog" button in the VARY FIRE section of the key pad. The display will flash USER and a number. Press the number 1 and then press the "START /STOP" button. The display will briefly show STOP then switch to the IdLE mode. Press the START/STOP button again. The display will show -- ON -- and the controller will start the firing the USER 1 program.

Note: The digital controller does not understand heating or cooling. It only understands what temperature it is at and what temperature it is to go to. Thus it will adjust the firing to go to the destination temperature.

The above glass firing sequence has instructed the kiln to do the following.

Heat at 150 degrees per hour, go to 1450 degrees, stay at that temperature for 15 minutes then cool at 150 degrees per hour, go to 100 degrees and stay at that temperature for 30 minutes then stop firing.

Slumping Glass

To slump glass you will use the same sequence however you must change the soak temperature from 1450 degrees to 1250 degrees, all other values remain the same.

How to correct for over or under firing with the above firing sequence

Only change one variable at a time.

1. I suggest that you adjust the soak time not the temperature.
2. If the glass is over fired reduce the soak time by 5 minutes.
3. If the glass is under fired add 5 minutes to the soak time

Annealing Glass

The above firing sequence passes through the annealing temperature so slowly that the glass is annealed. If you want to use a formal annealing cycle you would use 3 segments with the second segment having the annealing soak temperature and soak time in it. The heating and cooling rate would remain the same.

Marty Dailey - Sept 2006

Firing Tips

LOADING A KILN FOR BEST RESULTS

Loading a kiln for firing is not a simple matter of placing shelves and stacking ware. The more thought and planning that is put into loading, the better the results. Ware and shelf placement, the size of the load, the firing characteristics of the kiln and the type of ware being firing are all important factors.

First the Furniture

Kiln shelves come in all shapes and sizes. For economy of space, it is best to choose shelves similar in shape and size to your kiln chamber. For instance, use a round or multi-sided shelf in a round or multi-sided kiln. Keep the size small enough so there is at least 1" of space between the shelf edge and the side of the kiln or the Kiln-Sitter®. Also allow some room between the top of your ware and the lid of the kiln and leave space for witness cones amongst your ware.

Select posts in heights to accommodate the ware you are firing. Leave some room between the kiln shelves for air to flow, for heat transfer and for removal of fumes.

Half shelves are very useful to improve air movement in the kiln. Use two side by side with a 1/2" space between them and you don't lose much stacking space.

Some kiln manufacturers recommend placing shelves directly on the floor of the kiln. Most suggest using 1" posts to put the bottom up from the cooler floor. This creates an insulating layer much like a storm door.

Setters and Stilts

Air movement in the kiln is clearly a big consideration - one of the most important when loading a kiln. Ceramics need to heat uniformly to prevent warping and stresses in the ware. Air needs to move around shelves and around individual pieces.

Plates and tiles benefit from the use of tile and plate setters or stackers. Shelf-style setters allow air to move under the large flat objects so they heat more evenly. Avoid heating large flat objects directly on the cooler shelf. If you are firing decorated tiles or plates, vertical setters economize on space, and sets can be stacked to fit even more.

Orton

The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

Glazed ware needs to be stilted or dry footed or the melting glaze will stick the ware to the kiln shelf, ruining both. Stilts also provide space for air to move around all sides of the ware. Porcelain and stoneware can not be stilted. The stilts embed into the ware during firing. Instead, use high fire kiln wash or silica sand on the shelf. Use prop to prevent sagging of porcelain.

Consider Heat Distribution

It is important to evaluate heat flow in your kiln and to make this a consideration in loading. Use pyrometric cones to determine the heating characteristics of your kiln so you know where the hot and cooler places are. Arrange your ware with different sized pieces on the same shelf to allow better heat flow.

Don't Overfill

Perhaps one of the most important factors in good fired results is enough air to mature the ware - to burn out organics in bisque and develop best colors in glazes. Shelf and ware placement and the use of setters and stilts can all help this, but here are a couple more tips:

1. When stacking bisque, invert bowls and mugs opening to opening instead of nesting - this helps air move around all sides of a piece and prevents black rings and spots in the bottom of ware.

2. Fire bisque lids and bottoms together. To get the best fit for lids, fire them on the piece they match. This will let the two pieces shrink together so you get a good tight fit. Fire all glaze pieces separately.

3. Leave space between ware - don't overfill. There is a temptation to cram as much as possible into the kiln to economize on firing costs. Ware fired too closely together creates firing problems. If you must overfill, fire very slowly and vent adequately.

4. Mix thin and thick-walled pieces together throughout the load - don't concentrate them in one area where they are competing for air and heat.

5. Use downdraft venting to move air through the kiln and to remove fumes created during firing.

Want to learn more?

Read more about Loading A Kiln in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

UNDERSTANDING HEAT TRANSFER

How Heat is Transferred

Heat moves through the kiln from hotter to cooler zones by:

1. convection
2. conduction
3. radiation

Convection

Convection is the first step in the heating process in the kiln. Air is heated as it passes across the warming kiln elements. As the hot air rises and cool air falls, air currents are created which circulate hot air to cooler places in kiln. This heat is transferred to the ware, shelves, etc.

The kiln will not be uniform in temperature at this early stage of firing unless the hot air is pushed through the kiln by mechanical means. Low cone firings such as 022 and 021 depend more heavily on convection for heat transfer.

The most common type of convection we are familiar with is wind chill. The cool air passes across the face and pulls heat from our warmer body, which lowers our skin temperature.

Conduction

When heat moves through a solid, it is conducted. An example would be heat moving through the handle of a saucepan. This is a slow way to heat, but the handle will eventually get hot.

In a kiln, conduction moves heat from the inside to the outside of the kiln and from the outside to the inside of the ware. Conduction is the main way we get uniform heating in the kiln. This is a slow process and if we fire too fast, the inside of our ware will receive too little heat and not fire properly.

Radiation

At the beginning of the firing, the elements are the hottest part of the kiln. The heat from the elements radiates out - like the sun warming us on a cool day. Eventually the firebrick and the ware will also get hot and will radiate heat as well.

As the temperature increases, more and more of the heat is transferred by radiation from the heating elements. For uniform heating, is important that all surfaces of the ware be exposed to heating elements, even partially.

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

4. Time and temperature profile during the burn out period

Both time and temperature are important for proper burn out of the carbon. Some carbons require much higher temperatures than others. Oxidation should be completed below red heat (1400°F).

Carbon burns out from the surface first. As more oxygen penetrates the body, then more carbon is reacted to form the CO or CO_2 gas and the burn out process continues. If there is sufficient time, temperature and oxygen, then complete burn out occurs. If these conditions do not exist, the resulting incomplete burn out is referred to as black coring (where the center of the piece has a black or gray cast).

Incomplete Burn Out

Incomplete burn out can result in several firing problems including:

1. Bloating of the ware
If the temperature is hot enough, the outside of the piece will seal up before all the gases can escape. As the body becomes plastic due to glass forming, gases trapped inside the body expand with heat and cause bloating and sometimes cracking of the ware.

2. Glaze defects, such as pinholes
The escaping gases will push through the glaze surface and cause bubbles which pop. If these do not heal, then pinholes will result.

3. Appearance of fired bisque
Where carbon burn out is incomplete, the piece will have a grayish cast (white bodies) or may have a greenish cast (red bodies). The body will also be more porous and weak.

Preventing Incomplete Burnout

1. Slow down the firing.
2. Be sure the kiln is vented adequately so there is sufficient oxygen.
3. Load the kiln with burn out requirements in mind.

Leave plenty of space between ware and shelves. Do not stack ware. Use tile and plate stackers and invert pieces on top of one another to help conserve space and insure proper burnout.

Want to learn more?

Read more about carbon related glaze and body defects in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 460, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

CRACKING AND THERMAL SHOCK

Cracks that appear in fired ware which were not caused by casting or drying problems may be the result of thermal shock.

Thermal shock occurs when too much stress is created in a piece of ware during the heating and cooling process. It comes from temperature differences in the ware and can cause small to large cracks in the piece, or the piece may actually break.

Why Does Cracking Occur?

The tendency of a piece of be susceptible to thermal shock is related to:

- the strength of the piece
- the thermal expansion of the material

Thermal shock can result when changes in temperature occur in the kiln during heating and cooling. As temperature changes rapidly, the outside of the ware and kiln furniture becomes much hotter or cooler than the inside. This causes stresses which may result in cracking or breaking.

The following can effect thermal shock

- a fast heating rate or rapid cooling
- a sudden influx of cool air such as opening the kiln lid when the kiln has not finished cooling
- in a gas kiln - turning off the gas and allowing cool air from the burners to enter the kiln

Thermal shock can also occur when ware is stressed in use such as a casserole or dish that is taken from the freezer or refrigerator and put into a hot oven.

The stronger ware is, the better able it is to resist cracks due to thermal shocking. Weak ware will be more likely to break when stressed.

A piece that is porous will also be weaker, making it easier to crack. Water or condensation that enters pores in the ware can turn into steam and expand and this can cause cracking when heated. The harder (hotter) ware is fired, the less porous it will be.

Ware that expands and shrinks a great deal during heating and cooling is also more likely to be affected by thermal shock. Most kiln shelves contain

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

cordierite because this material has a lower expansion than most of our ware and so less affected by thermal shock.

What Happens to Ware During Firing?

During heating and cooling, the body and glaze undergo many physical and chemical changes. Some of these include:

- moisture is driven out of the ware - if this occurs too rapidly, cracking can occur
- organic material is oxidized and released from the material
- the glaze softens, melts and flows during heating and may trap gas
- the body expands as it is heated and contracts during cooling
- the glaze solidifies and contracts during cooling

If the body or glaze contains silica, it will expand rapidly at 1063°F on heating and contract during cooling. If the heating or cooling is rapid near this temperature, this change can lead to cracking of the piece.

Control of heating and cooling is especially critical when firing thick-walled pieces or pieces with an irregular wall thickness.

Reducing Thermal Shock

There are several easy ways to minimize the potential for thermal shock:

- use a smooth, moderate heating rate
- let the kiln cool naturally with the lid closed
- use a controller to slow down the cooling time
- avoid sudden temperature changes

A programmable controller such as the Orton AutoFire™ is the best solution to control the heating and cooling rates and to get a smooth temperature rise.

If instrumentation is not available, heat loss during cooling can be controlled to some extent by keeping the kiln closed until well below red heat (900° F).

To be sure that ware is properly matured, be sure to use witness cones. Underfired bisque will continue to shrink during the glaze firing and this can result in a poor glaze fit.

Want to learn more?

Read more about cracking and thermal shock in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

CRACKING AND WARPING CAUSED BY DRYING AND CASTING

In some instances cracking and warping problems share a common source: the casting and drying of the piece. In other cases, cracking may be related to how the piece is fired. This Tip looks at problems related to casting and drying

DRYING CERAMICS

Ceramics contain clay which can absorb and hold water. Before firing, it is important to remove all of the physical water so that the piece will not crack or explode when heated. This is often accomplished in steps with firing being the final stage. During firing, the chemical water is removed from the piece and it gains strength while developing physical surface characteristics.

UNDERSTANDING DRYING

Simplified, drying is the removal of water from body by evaporation. As the ware is dried, the film of water separating the clay particles gets thinner and thinner, the solid particles get closer together and the piece shrinks. Shrinkage stops when the particles finally contact each other.

DRYING FAULTS

Cracking, distorting and warping are problems that may not become evident until after firing. They are usually caused by drying too fast or unevenly.

If ware is heated too fast, the pressure from water vapor inside the piece can cause cracking. Ware dried only on one side, can shrink more on that side causing warping or bending of the somewhat plastic (flexible) piece. When one surface finishes drying, the piece is now too stiff to recover and the warping becomes permanent. This can lead to cracking.

Bodies made of very plastic clays or compositions having a high clay content require attention to uniform, slow drying.

Thicker walled pieces will often have a greater tendency to warp or distort.

Care needs to be taken to allow for uniform air movement around all sides of a piece to avoid drying problems. Sometimes drying must be slowed down to avoid cracking.

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy

Handles on cups can have a tendency to pull away from the mug. Doll heads and chest cavities may deform inward.

REDUCING WARPING AND CRACKING

To reduce warping and cracking, take steps to dry more slowly and more evenly from all sides.

Don't dry a flat object on a wet or cool surface like a formica or plastic table top or damp newspaper. The piece can only dry on one side. Instead, dry objects on something porous like wood or plaster or set them so air can circulate around them. If necessary, turn pieces over during drying for more even result.

Slow the drying of thick walled pieces and hand built ware.

Support areas during drying that might cause stresses to build up.

DRYING TECHNIQUES

slip cast ware - may warp or crack if stressed (deformed) when removed from the mold. Even if the ware is gently returned to the original shape, the created stress will ultimately cause the piece to warp or crack.

wheel thrown ware -should not distort during drying unless subjected to further mechanical forces - let the ware dry naturally on a bat or shelf and it should be fine.

thick handbuilt ware - needs to be dried for a very long time before it can fired or it may explode during firing. Several days may be required or a low heat drying in an oven may be necessary to remove all the water.

plates - even drying is particularly important with plates. Warping can cause the center of plate to fall or arch up. Rims and centers must dry evenly to prevent warps, humps and cracks.

drying tiles - drying tiles can present a particular challenge because it can be difficult for the piece to dry evenly. Usually air is passed over the top of the tile. This results in warping because the bottom of the tile remains wet. Drying tiles in tile racks can help air movement for more even drying.

Want to learn more?

Read more about Solving Cracking and Warping Problems in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing,* is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

USING THE THREE CONE SYSTEM

All ceramic products fire within a range to develop best fired properties. Some products such as stoneware have a wide firing range. Other products such as porcelain slip and leadless glazes have a narrow firing range (less than 2 cone numbers).

To be sure ware is properly fired, it is important to understand how your kiln is firing. The Three Cone System is an excellent way to do this.

What is the Three Cone System

The Three Cone System consists of three consecutively numbered cones:

Firing Cone - cone number recommended by manufacturer
Guide Cone - one cone number cooler
Guard Cone - one cone number hotter

For example: Cones 017 (guide cone), 018 (firing cone), 016 (guard cone)

Uses for the Three Cone System

- determine temperature uniformity in the kiln
- check the performance of the Kiln-Sitter® or electronic controller
- manually shut off the kiln by direct observation of the cones bending
- evaluate heatwork that ware receives during firing

How Witness Cones Work

Pyrometric cones indicate how much heat has been absorbed. Witness cones set on the shelf near the ware are true indicators of whether the ware received the proper amount of heat. Products are expected to be fired to a cone number or within a range of numbers. For some products, good results can be obtained at a cone lower or higher. Other products have to be fired very precisely.

Using the Three Cone System for Manual Shut-off

By observing the witness cones during firing, the end of the firing can be determined for manual kiln shut off.

To use the Three Cone System for manual shut-off, place cones on a kiln shelf near the center of the load ,but out of a draft and where they can be observed through the peephole

When the kiln is near its firing point, the Guide cone will begin to bend. The ware is approaching maturity and soon the kiln can be shut off.

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 460 • Westerville OH 43081

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

It takes about 15 to 20 minutes for the Firing Cone to reach it's end point. The cone bends slowly at first, and more quickly after the half way point. When the cone tip is even with the top of the cone base, it is time to shut off the kiln. If the Guard Cone bends, the desired heatwork has been exceeded.

Using the Three Cone system to Evaluating Kiln Performance

Most kilns have temperature differences from top to bottom. The amount of difference depends on

- design of the kiln
- age of the heating elements
- load distribution in the kiln
- cone number being used

Usually, there will be a greater temperature difference at lower cone numbers than at higher ones. Placing a set of cones on each shelf during various firings allows you to determine the heating uniformity of your kiln for the materials you fire.

After firing, observe the cones and evaluate the heat distribution in the kiln. If only the guide cone is bent, there is less heat on that shelf. If the guard cone is bent, there is more heat on that shelf.

If you do find a difference, the heating uniformity can be improved by changing the kiln loading, adjusting switching or adding a downdraft vent system.

Checking Kiln-Sitter® Performance

The Kiln-Sitter® is designed to shut off the kiln as a Small Cone or Bar deforms. Here's how it works:

- Small Cone/Bar is placed under sensing rod
- firing begins, cone/bar receives heat, begins to soften
- sensing rod presses down, cone bends with weight
- movement of rod activates shut -off

Because the cone or bar in the Kiln-Sitter® is near the kiln wall (closer to the heating elements), it may receive more heat than witness cones on the shelf. If the kiln shuts off before the witness cones have properly deformed, you may need to use the next hotter cone number in the Sitter®.

Witness Cones Are Like Insurance

Cones are considered an inexpensive way to monitor your kiln and detect problems before a crisis occurs. Use Self-Supporting Cones for the Three Cone System because they are the easiest to use and most consistent cones available.

Want to learn more?

Read more about The Three Cone System in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Published 8 times a year, each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 460, Westerville OH 43081, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

CONES AND CONTROLLERS

Automatic controllers and shut-off devices are a convenient way to heat and turn off a kiln. But for consistent results it is still is important to know how much heat the ware received. Only cones provide this information.

Witness cones set near the ware tell if the firing reached the cone value necessary to properly mature the ware. Cones also help in diagnosing firing problems.

Advantages of Controllers

Electronic controllers have many advantages. They:

- allow heating rate control - heat up/cool down of the kiln
- permit slow down of the firing below red heat to burn out carbon and organic materials
- permit elimination of a kiln shut-off device, although some use this as a safety backup
- allow soaking of kiln at the firing temperature to get more uniformity of fired pieces or for special results
- provide more consistency from firing to firing

So with all of these advantages, why are cones still needed?

Firing Ceramics

Firing ceramics is much like baking food, except ceramics go to higher temperatures. When we bake, we leave food in the oven at a temperature for a certain time. A thermometer may help measure the temperature of our food or we may stick a fork in to test whether it seems right.

It is the same with firing - a combination of temperature and time "cooks" the ware. However, unlike baking we can't put our ware into a preheated kiln and poke a fork in our pot to test doneness. The next best thing is to place Pyrometric Cones near the ware to measure whether it has received enough heat.

Firing With Cones

The bodies, glazes and decoration products we use are all formulated to be correctly fired when they have received enough heat to properly bend a cone. The companies and individuals who make and test these supplies use Orton Cones. Cones deform when they have received the

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

right amount of heat, not just when the kiln reaches a certain temperature. In other words, cones behave just like your ware. This is why they are such good indicators of whether the ware was properly fired.

How Controllers Work

Electronic controllers regulate power to the heating elements. They do this by comparing the temperature measured by a thermocouple with the expected temperature programmed into the controller. If the temperature is low, heat is added.

Controllers fire a kiln to a temperature. If this temperature is not measured accurately, the controller will fire the kiln improperly. Most controllers use a Type K thermocouple, which is less expensive, or a platinum thermocouple (Type S), which costs more but is more accurate and has a longer life.

Measuring Temperature

Even brand new, a Type K thermocouple can vary from a true reading, as shown below. On the other hand, a Self-Supporting witness Cone will vary no more than 4°F.

	Variation in New Thermocouples		Max. Cone Variation
Cone	Type K	Type S	Cones
020	8.5°F	2.9°F	4°F
06	13.5°F	4.5°F	4°F
6	16.6°F	5.6°F	4°F

This variation in the temperature measured by a thermocouple becomes even larger after the thermocouple has been used for awhile. It is not unusual for a Type K thermocouple to have an error of more than 25°F when fired to Cone 6 repeatedly. This means that more than a full cone error can be introduced.

Using Controllers and Cones

Controllers do a good job at what they do - controlling the heating and cooling rate and providing consistency from firing to firing. However, if witness cones are not used with the controller, there is no way of determining what the actual firing conditions were, except by how the ware looks. By then, it may be too late.

Want to learn more?

Read more about using cones and controlling a kiln in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute, video or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663

Firing Tips

AVOIDING CARBON BURNOUT PROBLEMS

Materials used in ceramics contain naturally occurring impurities that can affect the color, appearance and maturing temperature of the product.

Carbon, found in most clays, is normally considered one of these impurities. Carbon can also be present in the additives and binders which make up clay bodies, slips, decals and lusters.

How Carbon Burns Out

During heating (firing) the carbon reacts with oxygen to form carbon dioxide and carbon monoxide gases. The carbon leaves the body as a gas.

Binders are burned off at a relative low temperature: 300°F to 500°F.

Naturally occurring carbon in clay burns off (become gases) at higher temperatures: up to 1200°F-1400°F.

The rate at which this carbon burns out is related to:

1. The amount of carbon present (that is, the amount of natural contaminants in the body)

Some bodies have more contaminants than others, such as red clays. This needs to be considered when planning the firing.

2. Amount of air available (air provides oxygen for burnout) Air needs to get to the carbon inside the body.

This is impacted by several factors. A load that is fired very quickly will not allow enough time for the oxygen to react with the carbon, form gases and leave the ware.

If ware is stacked during bisque firing, oxygen may not be able to penetrate all surfaces of or inside all the pieces.

Also, if gases are not removed from the kiln and replaced with fresh air, then there may not be sufficient oxygen to burn out the carbon.

3. Thickness of the piece

Air has to penetrate through the entire thickness of the piece and the gases have to escape the same way. It takes longer for carbon to burn out of a thicker piece of ware.

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

4. Time and temperature profile during the burn out period

Both time and temperature are important for proper burn out of the carbon. Some carbons require much higher temperatures than others. Oxidation should be completed below red heat (1400° F).

Carbon burns out from the surface first. As more oxygen penetrates the body, then more carbon is reacted to form the CO or CO_2 gas and the burn out process continues. If there is sufficient time, temperature and oxygen, then complete burn out occurs. If these conditions do not exist, the resulting incomplete burn out is referred to as black coring (where the center of the piece has a black or gray cast).

Incomplete Burn Out

Incomplete burn out can result in several firing problems including:

1. Bloating of the ware
If the temperature is hot enough, the outside of the piece will seal up before all the gases can escape. As the body becomes plastic due to glass forming, gases trapped inside the body expand with heat and cause bloating and sometimes cracking of the ware.

2. Glaze defects, such as pinholes
The escaping gases will push through the glaze surface and cause bubbles which pop. If these do not heal, then pinholes will result.

3. Appearance of fired bisque
Where carbon burn out is incomplete, the piece will have a grayish cast (white bodies) or may have a greenish cast (red bodies). The body will also be more porous and weak.

Preventing Incomplete Burnout

1. Slow down the firing.
2. Be sure the kiln is vented adequately so there is sufficient oxygen.
3. Load the kiln with burn out requirements in mind.

Leave plenty of space between ware and shelves. Do not stack ware. Use tile and plate stackers and invert pieces on top of one another to help conserve space and insure proper burnout.

Want to learn more?

Read more about carbon related glaze and body defects in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 460, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

FIRING HANDBUILT OR THICK CAST WARE

Most pinch pots, coiled or slab built ware generally have thicker walls than their slip cast cousins, although molded pieces may be cast heavily as well. With these types of pieces, the thicker walls create some unique challenges for firing.

Basic problems that can occur when firing handbuilt or thick cast ware include cracking (or exploding) and carbon burnout. Because of the thicker walls it is important to fire slower and control heating and cooling during firing. Preparation of the piece is important as well.

During forming, stresses within the piece may result in hairline cracks that appear during firing. It takes longer to fully dry a thick piece. Uneven drying can result in warping or cracking.

For pieces properly prepared, handled and dried, the next critical step is firing.

Firing issues

- Is the ware fully dry?

  Ware that is not adequately dried will crack or explode during the early stages of firing. Water inside the pores of the ware turns to steam, exerting pressure inside the ware. To fully dry a thick walled piece, the ware needs to be warm for more than 12 hours.

- Am I firing too fast?

  All bodies expand when heated and shrink when cooled. If the outside wall expands more than the inner wall, stresses occur. If these stresses are large enough, they pull the body apart and cause cracking. A 1" thick wall can have more than a 10°F difference in temperature between the hotter and cooler surfaces. Firings need to be slowed down for thicker wall pieces. Likewise, it is important not to cool too fast.

- Have I allowed enough time for carbon burnout?

  It is important to burn out all carbon from the ware before higher temperatures are reached (1200°F or 650°C). It takes time for oxygen to move into the porous body, react with the carbon and then leave. If carbon remains, many problems can occur. These include problems with color, glaze fit, strength, blistering and discoloration. Use of a downdraft vent system, combined with slower heating, virtually eliminates carbon-related problems.

Heating & cooling control

The best way to control cracking problems during firing is by controlling the rate of heating and cooling for the kiln.

Orton®
The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
6991 Old 3C Highway
Westerville OH 43082

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

During firing, materials that make up the body undergo many changes. Special care must be taken at temperatures below 1500°F (815°C) to heat the body uniformly.

Remember, the thicker the wall, the slower the heating should be done. Above 1500°F, temperatures can be increased more rapidly because the changes are less likely to causes stress cracks within the ware.

- What kind of changes occur?

  All clays and many minerals contain water which does not leave the body until above 700°F. Organic (carbon) materials need to be oxidized (burned out). Other minerals, such as calcite, break down and give off a carbon dioxide gas. Minerals such as flint (silica) undergo a sudden expansion on heating to 1060°F and contraction during cooling.

- How can I control my heating?

  This depends on the controls for the kiln. With switches, leave them on medium settings longer. It should take more than 3 hours to reach red heat and even longer for thick pieces or a heavily loaded kiln.

  Make sure the kiln is well vented below red heat and closed up completely above red heat. Keep the kiln closed during cooling for 8 hours or until well below red heat.

- When did cracking occur?

  Often the crack itself can be examined to determine when it occurred. If the edges are sharp, then it probably occurred during cooling. If the edges are rounded or if glaze has flowed into the crack, then it occurred during heating.

- What else can cause cracking?

1. Uneven heating is a primary culprit that causes cracking during firing.

   Hot and cold spots in the kiln can cause uneven heating of pieces.

   Use witness cones to diagnose hot and cold spots and then adjust the switching or use a downdraft vent to help even out the heating.

   Careful loading of the ware in setters and on stilts can also help heat circulate around the piece.

2. Underfired bisque is not as strong and may crack more easily during the glaze firing.

   Use witness cone to assure a proper firing and prevent underfired bisque.

3. Gas expanding in air pockets which developed in the ware during forming can cause large cracks during firing.

Want to learn more?

Read more about firing handbuilt and thickcast ware in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Published 8 times a year, each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor.

For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, 6991 Old 3C Hwy., Westerville OH 43082, 614-895-2663

Firing Tips

FIRING CERAMIC BODIES

Most bodies and glazes contain clay. These fine clay particles give the body and glaze many desired properties and bonds other materials together.

When the body is fired:

- clay and other minerals in the body start to change
- clay/minerals break down and react with other materials to produce gases
- at 900 F (red heat), tightly held water molecules begin to break free and leave
- gases such as sulfur oxides and some fluorine may be released
- as the temperature increases, clay and other minerals continue to change and react with each other to form new compounds that will be part of the final product
- some products form glass which will bond everything together

Gases

The gases which form need to be removed from the body. For example, carbon is in the clay and organics are added to the body, glaze or decoration to improve strength during handling or application. These must be removed during firing to avoid defects.

Firing Conditions

Firing conditions can also determine many properties of the fired product. Firing too fast at lower temperatures may not allow sufficient time for materials to react and gases to leave the body or glaze.

Firing too fast can result in

- weaker bodies
- pinholing
- bubbling of the glaze
- color changes in the body
- color changes in the decoration
- mildewing of porcelain
- crazing or peeling of glazes if body is not properly mature

TYPES OF BODIES

Earthenware

- typically fired from Cone 07 - 03
- made with talc, less expensive clays
- clays contain many impurities, need fired longer at lower temperatures
- low shrinkage
- porous after firing
- usually tan or red in color
- frequently glazed or stained
- sometimes used as-fired.

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 460 • Westerville OH 43081

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

Often, problems arise because bodies are underfired. The piece may look okay, but is porous and weak. Also, underfired bodies may not match the expansion of the glaze used in a later firing. This can result in glaze fit problems or cracking of the body in use.

The high iron and carbon content of these clays requires plenty of air during firing to maintain good color and to burn out all of the carbon. If this is not done, many problems can occur when the product is glazed and refired.

Stoneware

- typically fired between Cone 6 -10
- large number of compositions
- contain clays and other minerals with many impurities, including sand, feldspar and grog
- additives are used to provide plasticity, workability, strength, color and to reduce shrinkage
- colors depend on raw materials

Because of the additives and impurities, care needs to be given to how stoneware is fired and to proper ventilation of the kiln early in the firing to burn out organics.

Stoneware is vitreous and contains a high percentage of glass in the fired product. For color variations, mature the ware under reducing conditions.

Porcelain

- typically fired from Cone 3 - 10
- compositions vary, but contain high quality materials
- colorants may be added.
- bodies are hard, white, translucent
- very high glass content
- narrow firing range - need to be fired close to slump or sag point for best fired properties.

Because color is very important, these bodies need to be fired with plenty of air below red heat to be sure all the carbon is removed. Shrinkage is high and special care must be given to supporting porcelain during firing or it will warp and distort.

CRITICAL FIRING PERIODS

For all clay containing bodies and for most glazes and decorations:

- be sure ware is dry before firing
- fire slowly below red heat (1100 F) where many changes occur in the clay and other materials
- provide plenty of air below red heat for oxidation and ~~to~~ burn out organics and carbon
- do not to force cool the kiln while it shows red heat.

Want to learn more?

Read more about successfully firing ceramic bodies in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Published 8 times a year, each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 460, Westerville OH 43081, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

FIRING LEAD FREE GLAZES

Changes in glazes

Lead free glazes are becoming the standard for commercial use. This is due to government regulation and health concerns by the manufacturers.

As the name implies, lead free glazes are made from compositions or materials where lead has not been added.

To eliminate lead, glazes are reformulated. This can change some of their properties. Some of the differences you may notice include:

- does not flow or run as much in firing as lead containing glazes
- brush marks may show after firing
- not as wide a firing range
- may not be compatible with as many bodies (improper fit). This leads to shivering or crazing of the glaze.
- color does not match lead glazes
- more surface defects

For problem-free results with lead free glazes, firings must be more closely controlled and kilns well vented. Bodies may have to be bisqued to a higher or lower cone number to solve a problem.

Why do problems occur?

Lead softens a glaze and allows it to be fired over several cone numbers. Glazes made without lead have a narrower firing range. Typically, lead glazes are able to be fired over a four cone number range (example 08 to 05).

Lead free glazes typically need to be fired within two cone numbers (example 06-05) - less than half of that for lead glazes.

Glaze and body fit

Since the glaze and the body on which it is fired (bisque) are made from different materials, it is important that they expand and shrink a like amount when heated and cooled. If they don't, then the fired glaze can be stretched to the point where it can crack (crazing), or it can be pushed together on to itself to a point where shivering or crawling occurs.

When using lead free glazes:

1. Make test firings of the body and glaze to their recommended cone number, first the unglazed body and then the glazed bisque.

Orton®
The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
6991 Old 3C Highway
Westerville OH 43082

2. Use witness cones placed near the ware to be sure the proper cone number was reached. Differences may exist between the Kiln-Sitter® and a witness cone or from the top to the bottom of the kiln. Firing with a controller to a cone number or a temperature may not be adequate.

3. If crazing occurs and the witness cone indicates the glaze and bisque firings are properly fired, make some tests by firing the bisque progressively hotter (e.g. if you fire bisque to 05, test to 04, then 03).

   When you fire hotter, the expansion of the bisque is changed and glaze on the bisque may fit better.

4. If shivering occurs, fire one cone cooler. You may need to select another body for your bisque. Firing too cool is not a good idea since the strength is reduced and porosity increased, both of which may cause problems during use of the final piece.

Is Your Kiln Uniform in Temperature?

If temperature in your kiln varies by more than 1 to 2 cones, then glazed ware in one part of your kiln may fire okay, while ware fired in another part of your kiln will have a problem.

Most kilns vary in temperature from top to bottom. To determine how much your kiln varies, place witness cones on each shelf when making firings. Usually, there is less difference top to bottom for hotter firings.

Each kiln has its own personality and the solution for improving temperature uniformity may vary.

If you have glaze firing problems because of too much variation, then we recommend the following:

1. Make sure cracks and holes are repaired to keep heat in your kiln.

2. Fire slower during the early part of your firing, before red heat (below 1200°F). This allows heat to soak into the refractory and even out temperatures in the kiln.

3. Consider changing the switching pattern to even out top and bottom temperatures. Switch the bottom to a higher setting before the top or vice versa. Higher settings add more heat.

4. Consider adding an Orton KilnVent. These pull hot gases from the top to the bottom of the kiln and cut temperature variations in half. Hoods above the kiln will not help temperature uniformity problems.

Want to learn more?

Read more about glaze and body fit, heat distribution and measuring heatwork in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Published 8 times a year, each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor.

For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, 6991 Old 3C Hwy., Westerville OH 43082
614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

FIRING RED GLAZES

Red glazes are among the liveliest, brightest colors we can use, but unfortunately, red glaze problems are legendary. Many of us simply give up using reds or accept whatever results we can get, including the problems.

Common Red Glaze Problems

improper color development - dark bluish or purple cast to the glaze
color loss - glaze looks gray, white
poor surface texture - a rough matte finish and/or visible surface defects
"The Strawberry Effect" - tiny black dots or spots in the fired glaze
crazing - a crackled or cracked appearance in the fired glaze

Some of these problems relate to the preparation of the piece and application of glaze, but many defects are the result of improper firing practices.

Preparation and Application

1. ware must be clean and free of dust
2. do not apply red glaze to greenware
3. apply only to properly fired bisque (use witness cones to verify firing) -
4. work area and tools should be kept clean and free of contaminants
5. no eating/smoking in glazing area
6. glaze away from cleaning areas
7. apply adequate coats of glaze - four coats is often recommended
8. allow each coat to dry

How Colors Develop

Many ceramic glazes need to be fired in an oxidizing (air) atmosphere for best results. Red, orange and yellow glazes in particular are very oxygen sensitive. This means they require sufficient air during the firing to bring out the colors to their fullest and to prevent surface/finish defects.

Firing reds requires us to control the firing rate and properly vent the kiln.

Controlling the Firing Rate

Nearly all ceramics fire better when fired slowly below red heat. Slow firings have the advantage of allowing the necessary physical and chemical changes to occur in the ware. Slower firings also permit time for sufficient air to enter the kiln and displace the carbon monoxide. This is true for both bisque and glaze firings.

Firing rate can be controlled using the settings on an automatic kiln, programming an electronic controller or by adjusting the switching. Control or slowing of the firing rate is most important in the early stages of the firing when most of the reactions are occurring and when air is needed to burn out the organics in ceramic materials. Near vitrification (the end of the firing) a faster rate is desirable and can usually be applied.

Venting for Proper Air

It is most important that enough air gets into the kiln in the early stages of firing. This is when the organic materials are burning out of the ware and air reacts with carbon to form carbon monoxide. Kilns can be vented manually or with an automatic venting system.

Manual Venting

Manual venting lets the fumes out of the kiln, but is only somewhat successful at letting air into the kiln. For manual venting, the top lid should be propped and the peephole plugs out for at least the first hour and a half. Slower firings require additional time. When the kiln reaches red heat, the lid can be closed and peephole plugs replaced. Leaving the peephole plugs out for the whole firing is not recommended since it can cause cold spots in the kiln.

Manual venting works better with a smaller load. Also, using split shelves allows air circulation and helps ventilation.

Manual venting is recommended whenever a downdraft vent is not available. When venting manually, it may be desirable to locate red glazes on the top shelf to assure sufficient air.

Automatic Downdraft Venting

A downdraft automatic venting system like the Orton KilnVent efficiently brings the proper amount of air into the kiln and removes the fumes for exhausting. The kiln lid and peepholes remain closed the entire firing. Using the Orton Vent, tests have shown reds can even be fired with other colors with good results.

Firing to Proper Cone Number

Using witness cones on the kiln shelf to verify results is important to good results. Many problems occur when red glazes are not fired to the proper cone number. Blistering can occur if underfired and loss of color if overfired. Glaze on underfired bisque may craze. Firing lead free glazes to the proper cone number is especially important.

Firing reds can be a challenge, but by following good preparation, application, firing and venting practices, and by firing to the proper cone number, most problems can be eliminated.

Want to learn more?

Read more about Firing Reds in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

UNDERSTANDING CRAZING

What is Crazing

Crazing is one of the most common problems related to glaze defects. It appears in the glazed surface of fired ware as a network of fine hairline cracks. The initial cracks are thicker and spiral upward. These are filled in horizontally with finer cracks.

Crazing is caused by the glaze being under too much tension. This tension occur when the glaze contracts more than the body during cooling. Because glazes are a very thin coating, most will pull apart or craze under very little tension.

Crazing can make foodsafe glazes unsafe and ruin the look of a piece.

There are two types of crazing, each with a different cause:

immediate crazing
- appears when piece removed from kiln or shortly thereafter
- caused by glaze body fit (glaze fits too tightly to body)

delayed crazing
- shows up weeks/months later
- caused by moisture getting into ware

Immediate Crazing

Size Changes During Firing

All ceramic bodies change in size during heating (firing) and cooling. What is desired is for the glaze to shrink a little more than the body during cooling. If it doesn't then glaze problems may occur.

It is important for ware and glaze expansion and shrinkage to match or crazing can occur.

Glazes During Firing
1. during firing, glaze undergoes physical and chemical changes
2. as heating progresses, glaze melts
3. with further heating more liquid forms until viscous or thick fluid
4. more heating, more fluid glaze
5. at this point, vicous (thick flowing) glaze still conforms to size of the bisque.
6. any gas evolving from body will form blisters which can heal if glaze is still fluid
7. when kiln shuts off, glaze and body cool together
8. during cooling, both the body and glaze shrink
9. eventually glaze becomes a hard glass that will no longer flow

Orton®
The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 460 • Westerville OH 43081

Thermal expansion/shrinkage properties of both the body and the glaze determine if the glaze crazes.

Glazes are designed to shrink less than the body which puts them in compression, makes them stronger, and makes them less susceptible to crazing.

Solution to Glaze and Body Fit

1. test samples for a good fit
2. bisque to 1-2 cone numbers hotter than glaze to insure body is mature
3. use Self-Supporting Witness Cones to verfiy heatwork
4. recognize that bodies and glazes will have different fits for different heatwork. A glaze might fit bisque fired to 03, but craze on 07 bisque

DELAYED CRAZING

This type of crazing shows up weeks or months later and is practically always caused by underfiring.

If ware is underfired (does not reach maturity), it can, in time, expand when moisture fills the pores causing the bodyu to expand. Sudden changes in temperature can cause crazing if the body and glaze do not expand or contract uniformly.

Either the body expanding or the glaze shrinking can cause fine hairline cracking (crazing) to occur. Refiring to the proper cone will sometimes solve the problem.

Proper Firing

Firing to the proper cone number is critical to help eliminate crazing problems. Witness cones must be used to verify the heatwork the ware receives.

If the Kiln-Sitter® turns the kiln off and a witness cone is not properly deformed, then the ware is not fired to maturity.

Underfiring can occur because of:

- variations in kiln heating uniformity
- Kiln-Sitter® out of adjustment and shutting kiln off early
- controller thermocouple inaccurate
- differences in heatwork between kiln shelf and Kiln-Sitter® location

Crazing can also be reduced by slower cooling and slower firing.

LEAD FREE GLAZES

Lead-free glaze formulations today have less of firing range. They develop their fired properties more quickly and this makes proper firing more critical.

Want to learn more?

Read more about crazing in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Published 8 times a year, each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor.

For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 460, Westerville OH 43081, 614-895-2663

Firing Tips

SOLVING GLAZE DEFECTS BLISTERS, CRATERS and PINHOLES

Blisters, craters and pinholes are related glaze surface defects. They show up as a rough, grainy or bubbled surface on the ware and appear after the glaze firing or decorating firing.

What Causes These Defects?

This family of problems can be caused by many different factors including:

- dust and contamination in the glaze
- air bubbles in the glaze
- air trapped in the slip
- improperly mixed slip
- a dirty kiln

Most commonly, however, the problems are related to gases coming from the body, glaze or kiln atmosphere.

What Happens During Firing?

Clays and glazes contain organic materials. When heated, these burn out of the body, forming gases such as carbon, sulfur and water.

If the carbon in materials is not fully removed from the body, then gas will form during the glaze or decorating firing, forming bubbles or blisters. These may pop to become craters or pinholes.

These defects can occur because:

1. There was not enough air in the kiln during firing for the carbon to properly burn out.

   Any combustion process requires air. Without air, oxidation cannot occur.

2. Carbon monoxide formed by oxidation of carbon has not been adequately reomved from kiln.

   If the gases produced during firing are not removed from the kiln, they may deposit onto the glaze surface or affect the glaze color.

3. The kiln was heated so quickly that there was not enough time for the carbon to burn out.

   Carbon which is only partially burned will continue to oxidize during the glaze or decorating firing causing defects.

4. The ware was underfired. That is, there was not enough heatwork.

   When the body is underfired, it is weaker and its expansion may no longer fit the glaze.

Orton®
The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
6991 Old 3C Highway
Westerville OH 43082

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

How Do I Solve Glaze Defects?

To make sure that glaze defects do not occur, it is important to properly mix glazes and slips and to use good pouring (slip) and application (glaze) techniques. Proper housekeeping for the kiln and workplace should be observed. Straining glaze through nylon often helps remove any lumps.

Most critical for good results are proper firing practices. We recommend the following:

1. Bring air into the kiln and make sure it circulates around the ware especially during bisque firings:

   - use setters and stilts to improve air flow around the ware
   - use half shelves to improve air flow through the kiln
   - adequately vent the kiln
   - position ware to take best advantage of air flow in the kiln

   Use a downdraft vent like the Orton KilnVent to bring a controlled amount of air into the kiln and circulate it throughout the kiln. This helps remove fumes and even out the temperatures in the kiln.

2. Control the firing.

   Fire slower, especially below 1200°F (650°C). Slow down the firing by adjusting switches to lower settings or soak/hold at a temperature to allow carbon to burn out.

   Use an automatic controller to set heating rates and hold times.

3. Use witness cones to verify heatwork.

   Underfiring can occur due to burned out heating elements, an improperly adjusted Kiln-Sitter®, a controller thermocouple which has changed or differences in heating within the kiln. Witness cones give a true reading of the heatwork the ware received.

   Witness cones placed throughout the kiln show differences in heat distribution.

4. Vent the kiln to remove gases and prevent them from redepositing on ware. Only downdraft venting removes the gases from the kiln.

If good firing and venting practices are observed during firing, problems with glaze surface defects can be controlled.

Want to learn more?

Read more about glaze surface defects in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Published 8 times a year, each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor.

For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, 6991 Old 3C Hwy., Westerville OH 43082, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

SUCCESSFUL GLASS FUSING

Probably the most common problem encountered when fusing glass is that it breaks during firing. There are several causes, including:

1. glass incompatibility
2. glass sticking to shelves
3. glass heated too rapidly
4. glass annealed too quickly

Glass Compatibility

To be compatible, glasses must expand and contract at the same rate when heated and cooled. When this does not occur, they are considered incompatible.

If incompatible glass is fused together and then cooled, stresses will occur in the piece. If the stress is excessive, the fused glass will break either immediately upon cooling or months or even years later.

Glasses are rated using a coefficient of thermal expansion scale. This is based on the linear size change or expansion during heating.

What this means is that the amount the glass expands during heating is measured and compared to a scale. The larger the number, the greater the expansion. Glass with low expansions will have greater resistance to thermal shock and breaking or cracking.

When you purchase glass, be sure all of the materials you are planning to use in a piece have similar expansion (coefficient) numbers.

Glass Sticking

If kiln wash (shelf primer) is applied unevenly or bare patches are left, the glass may stick as it moves (expands) during the firing process. When this happens, the glass can pull itself apart and break.

Kiln wash should be cleaned off and reapplied in a thin even coating to prevent sticking problems. Take care not to use too much shelf primer as it may require sandblasting to remove it from the bottom of the fired piece.

Glass Heating Too Rapidly

Thermal shocking of glass during

Orton
The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

FIRING TIPS is a series of firing problem solvers. New TIPS are available every month. Contact your Orton supplier for your copy.

heat up can lead to uneven heating and cracking of the piece. Thermal shocking means that the surface of the glass changes temperature rapidly.

When fusing glass, it is important to control the heating rate between about 150°F and 500°F. For larger or thicker pieces more time is needed. Glass fired in a mold is more susceptible to uneven heating since contacts with the cooler refractory (mold) can lead to uneven heating.

Direct radiant heat from heating elements needs to fall uniformly on the class or it can cause uneven heating. Most glass firing is done in electric kilns, often with elements above the glass.

Glass Annealed Too Quickly

Annealing is done to reduce stresses in the glass that can result in cracks or breaks. Typically annealing is accomplished by soaking during the cooling cycle (at about 900°F) and then slow cooling between 900°F and 500°F. The amount of time the glass is annealed depends on its thickness. Annealing permits all the glass to equalize in temperature.

When glass is annealed too quickly, stresses can remain that can cause cracking.

When thick sheets or pieces of glass are being annealed, a process called firing down may be necessary. Firing down is done during the slow cooling phase of annealing. Firing down is used if the kiln is unable to maintain the slow cooling rate required for the piece. The process of firing down involves adding a small amount of heat to the kiln as it cools.

The best way to control cooling during annealing is to use an automatic controller. The desired anneal temperature, soak time and cooling rate are set and the kiln operates automatically. Temperature is displayed. However, even with a controller, the coooling rate set by the operator may be too fast for the kiln to achieve. It is necessary to monitor the temperature change to insure the proper annealing and cooling down occurs.

The thickness of the glass being fired

Want to learn more?

Read more about annealing and firing glass in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute, video or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663

Firing Tips

SUCCESS WITH GOLDS

Gold overglazes are known as liquid precious metals. They are expensive and because of this they are traditionally used only for decoration.

Golds are typically used to add detail or distinction to plates, cups and china blanks.

There are several types of gold available in different forms, including bright golds and burnished golds.

Bright Golds

These are gold overglazes. They are not solid gold; instead they contain some percentage of gold, usually about 5 to 15%.

They come as a liquid solution and are usually applied with a brush to reduce waste. A thin coat is preferred to prevent the decoration from running, or failing to adhere.

If the liquid gold becomes too thick, it can be thinned with gold essence. Both of these products are very expensive and come in small vials or bottles.

Burnished Gold

Burnished golds are also gold overglazes. They differ from bright golds in that they require finishing (burnishing) to develop a lustrous finish and bright sheen.

Burnished golds are more durable and have a higher resistance to scratching than other golds. Their appearance is very rich and dense and slightly more matte. The brightness or matte quality can be controlled by application. A thinner application makes for a brighter gold.

Burnished golds contain 16-32% gold, including gold powder. Burnished golds are available in several forms: liquid, paste, dry powder or concentrated pats. The dry powder is extremely expensive.

There are some burnished golds that do not require polishing. These contain between 12 and 20% gold.

Firing Golds

Golds generally fire in the 022 to 018

Orton®
The Edward Orton Jr.
Ceramic Foundation
PO Box 2760 • Westerville OH 43086

cone range. This can vary greatly depending on the gold itself and the ware it is being used on. For typical glassware, an 022-021 firing is the most common. For china blanks, the gold can fire as high as 011. Follow the instructions of the manufacturer when firing golds.

Gold will adhere best with a slow firing and a soak. This helps them to develop the proper color and finish. A faster firing increases the risk of surface defects which can be magnified through washing or use.

Golds contain heavy solvents which make kiln ventilation a must for both health and safety reasons and to bring air into the kiln. Usually gold is fired alone to reduce contamination problems.

Typical Gold Faults

Most gold faults are surface defects. These include:

cloudy appearance
caused by inadequate ventilation or too heavy application,
firing too fast or overfiring

gold not adhering
caused by underfiring
or too heavy application

gold is running
caused if application is too heavy

burnished gold is dull
caused by insufficient burnishing or possible underfiring

dull or scummy appearance
caused by inadequate ventilation or possible overfiring

cracking in finish
caused by firing too fast

pinholes and blemishes
caused by poor quality of gold or contamination of gold

blisters
caused by heavy application

Application and proper firing are the key to great gold results. Gold should be applied in moderation using a very light coating. Be sure to vent the kiln until it glows red hot. Use witness cones to verify the proper heatwork was achieved.

Want to learn more?

Read more about using golds in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing,* is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

SUCCESS WITH DECALS

Decals offer an opportunity to add decoration to ceramic and glass ware without the time and skill required for hand painting. When properly applied and fired, decals can add color, texture, design and personalization to a piece.

To achieve professional results with decals, it's important to understand how to select, apply and fire the decals.

- type of decals
  - different decals are made for glass and ceramics
  - ceramic decals often fire hotter than those for glass
- application
  - decals must have good contact with the surface of the ware
  - all wrinkles and bubbles need to be smoothed away
  - avoid tearing the decal
- firing
  - decals are generally low firing - from cone 022 to 016
  - check the package for the proper firing range
- venting
  - decals contain lots of organics which need to burned off
  - often smelly fumes result during decal firings

Firing Decals

A decal isn't fired that much differently than any other piece of ware, although there are some special considerations.

1. Venting is very important to good results with decals - especially to get true colors.

   Problems related to venting include:

   - poor color development
   - a cloudy or hazy appearance

2. Proper heatwork is also an important factor. Decals that are under or overfired may exhibit the following:

   - faded colors (overfired)
   - color shift (underfired)
   - decals rub off (underfired)
   - dull appearing metallics (underfired)

Determining Firing Range

Because the colors on decals can so easily be affected by the amount of heatwork they receive, we recommend test firings to determine the best firing range.

Orton

The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation
6991 Old 3C Highway
Westerville OH 43082

Use a series of witness cones to fire samples of the decals on tiles or blanks. Make several firings and then select the fired appearance which looks the best.

Color development

Cloudy looking decals or decals where the color is not bright need to have additional air to develop properly. Organics need to be burned out and carbon monoxide fumes have to be removed from the kiln.

Manual venting by propping the lid and removal of peephole plugs will improve the firing, but may not help bring enough air to the bottom of the kiln or to distribute it evenly throughout the load.

A downdraft vent system will ensure sufficient air is brought into the kiln and circulated throughout.

Measuring heatwork

Heatwork is another critical factor in the color development of decals.

Fading, shifting and dullness are signs of too much or too little heatwork. This is also true when decals rub off after firing. (White or blank spots or burned off areas are generally related to application, not firing.)

Use witness cones to measure heatwork and to check the heat distribution in the kiln. Firing to a temperature or firing to a Kiln-Sitter® cone may not give the same results as found with a witness cone next to the ware.

Measuring heat distribution

Differences in heat distribution from top to bottom in the kiln are usually far more noticeable for cooler firings like decals. A 2 or 3 cone difference at 022 may only be a 1 cone difference at cone 6. This is because at higher temperatures radiation heats the kiln more effectively.

Slowing the first half of the firing can help heat distribution problems. This also helps by allowing more time for air to enter the kiln and burn out organics and for carbon monoxide to leave the kiln.

Use a controller to set heating rates and soaks for more precise firings.

Want to learn more?

Read more about successfully firing decals in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Published 8 times a year, each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor.

For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, 6991 old 3C Hwy., Westerville OH 43082, 614-895-2663.

Firing Tips

MAKING FOODSAFE WARE

When making ware to contain food and beverages, it is very important to be sure it is foodsafe. Some of important considerations for mugs, serving pieces and dinnerware include:

- body composition
- design of the ware
- glaze selection
- decoration
- firing to maturity
- testing for lead safety
- government regulations

What Type of Ware?

The design of some pieces of ware have inherent problems which make them unsuitable to contain food and beverages.

Design-related cracks, rough areas, crevices and nooks and crannies are difficult to clean and might trap bacteria. They can also be difficult to thoroughly glaze. Pitchers with hollow handles can have the same problems.

Ware also needs to be serviceable - that is, it should be strong so it won't fail or break during service.

Making Smart Glaze Choices

While glazes are extremely durable, most are not completely insoluable. If attacked by acids in foods such as orange juice, vinegar and tomatoes, small amounts of the glaze may dissolve and pose a health hazard.

Acid resistant glazes have passed rigorous tests and are labeled as foodsafe. These should be selected for glazing food ware. Lead-free glazes may not be acid-resistant and should not be used unless labeled as foodsafe.

Homemade, altered, crackle, matte or specialty glazes also should be avoided for surfaces of containers that will contact food and beverages.

How to Decorate

When glazing, be sure to completely glaze the ware to ensure the entire body is sealed. Properly bisqued porcelain may be dry footed, but only if the porcelain has been fired to vitrification. Label the ware as foodsafe for future users.

China paints, decals and rim designs

are a popular way to decorate plates and mugs, but may not be safe for food surfaces. Specific regulations exist for the location of rim decorations which must be followed.

Decals should be used on the outside of a piece where they will not be in contact with food or beverages. Use china paints on decorative items only.

Safe Firing

Proper glaze firing and the bisque firing are very important to insure ware is foodsafe. If the bisque is underfired, it may create problems with glaze and body fit that result in crazing of the glaze, or glaze surface defects such as pinholes. These would not be acceptable for ware used to contain food and beverages.

If the glaze is not properly matured, it will not meet the foodsafe standards under which it was tested and may craze while in service.

Using pyrometric witness cones on the kiln shelf is the only way to insure that a proper firing has occurred. For foodsafe ware, many prefer to fire their bisque to an 03 witness cone just to be sure it is fully mature. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions for glazes for the best and safest results.

Regulations

There are several very specific regulations for ware which will contain or contact food and beverages. California has the most stringent rules for dinnerware and new standards have been set by the FDA for rim decorations. These rules are available from state and federal agencies. If you are selling your dinnerware you may be subject to additional regulation.

How to Test for Lead Release

Several easy to use products are available on the market to test for lead release. These are primarily quantitative tests - that is, they tell you yes or no if the surface has lead above a certain level. The most commonly used kit is a thick cotton swab which turns pink if lead levels are exceeded. This test does not harm ware so if it tests too high in lead, the piece can still be used as decoration. These tests are a simple, economical way to feel confident that your ware is safe.

Want to learn more?

Read more about Making Foodsafe Ware in the Orton Firing Line and Technical Tips publications. Each issue is packed full of articles to help you learn more about firing. Members of the Orton Firing Institute receive these publications at no charge. Single copies are available to non-members at a per issue rate. Orton's 80 minute video, *Key Principles of Successful Firing*, is also an excellent resource on firing.

For information on Orton products, see your Orton dealer or distributor. For information on the Firing Institute or publications, contact

Orton Firing Institute, PO Box 2760, Westerville OH 43086, 614-895-2663.

REGULAR MAINTENANCE OF YOUR L&L KILN

REGULAR KILN MAINTENANCE

To keep your kiln in top operating condition, we recommend the following minimum housekeeping:

AFTER EACH FIRING

1) Turn off the kiln at the circuit breaker or fused disconnect switch.

2) Check element holders and walls for glaze, clay chips or anything that could melt at a high temperature. If melted clay or glaze comes in contact with an element, a rapid failure could result. The molten material traps the heat radiating from the element and subsequently raises the surface temperature of the wire. The temperature will quickly pass the maximum recommended for the wire and burn it up. To clean holders, a good shop vacuum will handle dust and loose crumbs. A very gentle chisel or grinder may help with glaze contamination on element holders, but remember that the elements themselves are quite brittle when they are cool. Replace the contaminated holder if you can not clean it. Remove any glaze that has splattered on the firebrick or shelves. (USE SAFETY GLASSES WHEN DOING THIS BECAUSE GLAZE CAN BE LIKE BROKEN GLASS). **Vacuum afterward.**

VACUUMING NOTE: It is possible to build up a strong static electricity charge when you are vacuuming. If this somehow manages to discharge into the control it can ruin the electronic circuit. Make sure the vacuum is grounded and periodically touch some grounded metal surface away from the kiln to discharge the energy.

3) Make sure the tops of the shelves are coated with kiln wash as it will keep running glaze from ruining the shelf. Some people also apply the kiln wash to the kiln bottom. Because this has both its benefits and detractants, we recommend that it only be done based on the kiln user's individual preferences. (Do not coat the undersides or the sides of the shelves because you do not want the kiln wash to fall off into the kiln).

4) Keep a kiln log of firings. Tracking the performance of your kiln over time may turn out to be an extremely valuable tool if you ever need to diagnose future problems. **Remember that you can easily get the firing time and final temperature at the end of the firing by hitting the Prog Review button if you have a DynaTrol.**

AFTER 10 FIRINGS

1) Check temperatures of the main power cord at the main receptacle and the main kiln breaker while the kiln is at its hottest. If these are hotter than normal, it could be a sign of a loose or corroded connection, or possibly the wire gauge used in the power hook-up is the wrong size for the amount of current being drawn by the kiln. Immediately diagnose and fix this because it could cause a fire.

2) If you have a plug on your kiln, unplug it from the receptacle and check for oxidation, any burn marks, discoloration, or melted spots on the plug. If you see this replace the plug (and the receptacle) before using the kiln again. Make sure the receptacle feels tight when you press the plug into the outlet. A loose receptacle indicates worn springs, which will lead to overheating.

NOTE: An oxidation inhibitor can be used on the plug's prongs.

3) Check element resistance. You will need a digital multimeter (see the Troubleshooting Guide). Keep track of this information.

4) Check tightness of case and retighten if necessary. (the case will expand and contract during each firing and may eventually become loose. Brick also shrinks slightly with use - especially if used at the higher temperatures like cone 10).

5) Repair any firebrick problems.

6) If you have a manual kiln (or the Orton AutoCone backup on an automatic kiln) be sure it is properly adjusted. See the AutoCone instructions. Overfiring could result. The tube assembly should be replaced if it gets overly corroded or contaminated with condensed glaze or other materials. Orton recommends checking the pivot point for corrosion and sluggishness every 6 to 12 months.

REGULAR MAINTENANCE OF YOUR L&L KILN

AFTER 30 FIRINGS OR ANNUALLY

1) Check wires for deterioration or oxidation. Replace any that seem brittle or where the wire insulation has deteriorated or fallen off.

2) Check terminals for oxidation (discoloration). If you are near salt air or if you notice corrosion on the stainless exterior of the kiln for whatever reason then do this far more frequently.

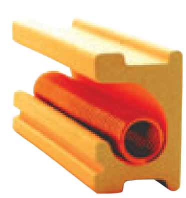
3) Check power connection terminals in the kiln and control box for tightness. Be sure to do this with the power disconnected (unplugged) for the kiln. If these terminal connections get loose, heat can be generated (because the electrical resistance gets greater) and this can cause a fire.

CHECK THERMOCOUPLE CALIBRATION

Thermocouples will drift in reading over time. This could potentially lead to an overfiring before the thermocouple actually fails. Although you can not easily check thermocouple calibration, the general accuracy of the entire kiln system can be checked by firing with witness cones. See *troubleshoot-cones.pdf*.

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

L&L Kilns
hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

CONTROL

Zone Control — Advanced Uniformity

Modern Automatic Zone Control Technology Allows Dynamic Adjustment of Electric Kilns to Ensure Uniform Firings.

Zone control in ceramic electric kilns has been around for quite a few years. However, only since zone control became automated within the past few years has it become more popular.

The typical ceramic top-loading electric kiln, based on designs that are now almost a half-century old, has always had a problem with temperature uniformity, especially from top to bottom. Typically the center or the top of the kiln fires the hottest, while the bottom fires colder. This differential can be up to a whole cone or more.

There are a number of techniques that are used to counteract this effect. One of the oldest, used in batch kilns from time immemorial, is to learn the firing characteristics of a kiln and load the kiln accordingly. You can load certain pieces in the cold spots that won't be as affected by the temperature differences or perhaps load heavier pieces in the center that would absorb more heat. This has the obvious disadvantage of constraining the artist or productive output of the kiln. For instance, it would be difficult to uniformly fire 100 coffee mugs with the same glaze in a conventional polygonal electric kiln.

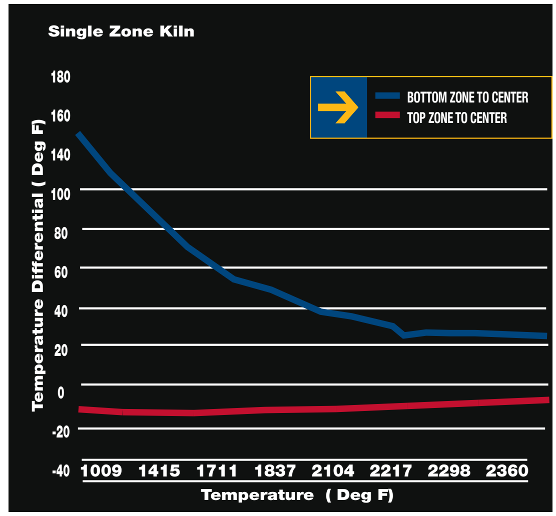
Another technique used in many electric kilns today is to grade the power output of the elements so more power goes towards the top and the bottom of the kiln. This can produce a very even kiln if done right. The problem with this method, however, is that the power output of the elements changes with age and so the heating characteristics of the kiln may become less uniform. It can become a big problem if one element gets ruined by glaze, for instance, and has to be changed. You may have to change all the elements in the kiln. Also this method may not accommodate changes in the loading patterns. (Interestingly when we designed the School-Master kilns, which have graded elements for uniformity, we only had to vary the ohms slightly and then only on the top to achieve perfect results - which indicates that the basic kiln design is extremely uniform.)

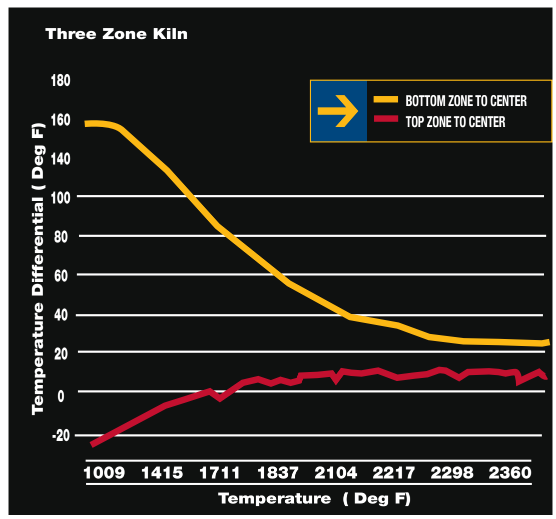
Another method of evening out temperatures in an electric top-loading kiln is to use a downdraft vent. This system pulls a small amount of air down from the top of the kiln and out the bottom. It counteracts the natural tendency of the heat to rise. Our tests have shown about a ½ cone uniformity improvement using this technology.

The other method of dealing with uniformity issues is by using zone control. This is a technology that L&L has used in its industrial division at great expense to achieve critical results for important processes like firing million-dollar loads of ceramic-based superconducting wire (We have built special kilns with up to 24 separate heating zones). In addition, L&L has had a long history of utilizing manual zone control on its top-loading electric pottery kilns. The use of manually controlled infinitely adjustable switches allows control of manual kilns zone by zone. This system, especially when used in conjunction with a multi-thermocouple pyro-meter system, allows potters to see which zone is getting hotter and make adjustments while firing. This, however, can be a tedious process.

In the past few years newer electronic controls designed just for electric kilns have begun to incorporate true automatic multi-zone operation. These controls typically use three separate thermocouple inputs and three relay outputs for the power control. Each zone of the kiln is independently controlled on a separate control loop – sophistication typically only available in controllers costing much more money.

The great advantage of automatic zone control technology is that it allows dynamic adjustment of the kiln to accommodate changing elements and different loads. Typical uniformity is within ½ a cone or better. Another nice feature of zone control is that you can bias zones. For instance, if the top of the kiln fires cooler, you can subtract a few degrees from the top zone thermocouple reading to make that zone fire to a higher temperature.





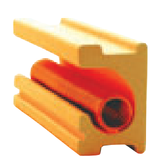
The downside of zone control is that it can slow down the kiln by turning off power to hotter zones. However, this technology has matured over the past few years. The new controls include the ability to turn zone control off during all but the last segment of the program to speed up firing. The key to good functioning now is to ensure that there is enough power in the kiln to compensate for the effects of the zone control.

Zone control is an excellent technical answer to the age-old difficulty of batch kiln uniformity problems.

ZONE CONTROL Advanced Uniformity

L&L Kilns hotkilns.com

505 Sharptown Road • Swedesboro, NJ 08085
Phone: 856.294.0077 • Fax: 856.294.0070
Email: sales@hotkilns.com • Web:www.hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

KILNS BUILT TO LAST
L&L Kiln Mfg Inc. ♦ 8 505 Sharptown Road ♦ Swedesboro NJ 08085
Phone: 856.294.0077 ♦ Fax: 856.294.0070 ♦ Email:sales@hotkilns.com ♦ Web:hotkilns.com

DYNATROL REFERENCE INSTRUCTIONS
With the 700 Series Processor

Congratulations! You have just purchased one of the new DynaTrol automatic temperature controls with "Dynamic Zone Control". This is an easy to use control which should give you many years of service.

Suggestions? Firing Tips? Corrections? Please phone, fax or email us with your suggestions, firing tips, unique uses, applications, or corrections. The DynaTrol is a truly great control. However, we want to keep improving both the control and the instructions. Please help us and our other customers.

What Control this manual applies to: This manual is for all DynaTrols with the 700 Series processor. These are used in most kilns manufactured after Jan 1, 2005.

Note: One easy way to tell whether you have a 700 level control is to look at the display. Each of the four characters on the display have 14 segments in the character, allowing a for a more legible display. The older controls had 7 lighted segments in each character.

When L&L started using the 700 Processors: The 700 processor is used on L&L Kilns made after Jan 1, 2006 (The serial number will have an "06" in it – for instance 012806A).

TYPE CONVENTIONS USED IN THIS MANUAL

BUTTON = This type font equals a button that you hit on the face of the control
DISPLAY = This type font equals what the display shows

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1.0 CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

- The controller is used to control temperature, it is not a safety device.
- Do not operate the controller in temperatures above 125°F or below 32°F (NOTE: The board components are rated for 50°C below zero so the control (and kiln) can be stored outside in a covered area).
- Never leave your kiln unattended at the end of a firing. (The Delay feature gives you control over this).
- The controller contains electronic components which are sensitive to static electricity. Before handling the controller dissipate any static charge you may have by touching metal or a screw on the controller panel, the electrical box, the kiln lid, or some other grounded object. Pack in anti-static treated material or paper. Do not pack in plastic bag or untreated material.
- Be sure that the kiln has been set up properly. For EASY-FIRE kilns see the specific EASY-FIRE Assembly Instructions. For Davinci and Jupiter kilns: the kiln sections are numbered with a small sticker on the end of each section's powercord. The top section on any L&L kiln is section #1. The #2 section is always the section directly under the #1 section on any sectional L&L kiln. On three section kilns section #3 is the bottom section. On kilns with more than three sections, sections are numbered 1 through 4 or 1 through 5, top to bottom. Likewise, the top thermocouple is labled #1 and should be in the top section of the kiln. The #2 thermocouple is the bottom thermocouple in a two section kiln. The #2 thermocouple is the middle thermocouple on three or more section kilns. The #3 thermocouple is always in the bottom section of the kiln. It is imperative that your kiln is set up like this. Be sure to double-check this even if you set up the kiln yourself.
- When hooking up the thermocouple wires to the thermocouples on the kiln be sure to follow these color codes:

THERMOCOUPLE WIRE COLOR CODING

In the USA and non-European countries with Type K Thermocouples: The RED wire goes to the NEGATIVE side of the thermocouple connection block and the YELLOW wire goes to the POSITIVE side of the thermocouple connection block. The external sheathing of the extension wire is YELLOW.

In the USA and non-European countries with Type S Platinum Thermocouples: The RED wire goes to the NEGATIVE side of the thermocouple connection block and the BLACK wire goes to the POSITIVE side of the thermocouple connection block. The external sheathing of the extension wire is GREEN.

In European Countries with Type K Thermocouples: The WHITE wire goes to the NEGATIVE side of the thermocouple connection block and the GREEN wire goes to the POSITIVE side of the thermocouple connection block. The external sheathing of the extension wire is GREEN.

In European Countries with Type S Platinum Thermocouples: The WHITE wire goes to the NEGATIVE side of the thermocouple connection block and the ORANGE wire goes to the POSITIVE side of the thermocouple connection block. The external sheathing of the extension wire is ORANGE.

NOTE: On the 700 control the control can be switched between Type K and Type S. This requires a software configuration as well as a jumper change. See more about this is section 4.4.12.

- Always check the position of the thermocouple probe on the inside of the kiln before starting a firing. The current temperature displayed on the controller is measured at the end of the thermocouple. NOTE: If the thermocouple tip (where the temperature is measured) is back inside the brick insulation of the kiln (even a little bit) it will make the control think that the kiln is not as hot as it really is. That could lead to an overfiring!

- Always review the current program before firing to ensure the correct profile is programmed.
- We recommend having your kiln shut off by a manual fused disconnect switch located near the kiln. That way you can turn off all electricity to the kiln when you are not using it. This would prevent any sort of accidental turning on of the kiln by an electrical surge.
- Follow the other precautions listed in your Kiln Instructionsand in the Troubleshooting Guide.

TIP

NOTE: SETTING UP THE SECTIONS WITH A JUPITER OR DAVINCI KILN
Be sure to set up the sections, thermocouples and plugs in the proper way or the kiln will not work properly.

2.0 DYNATROL SPECIFICATIONS

Thermocouple Input: Type K or Type S (software/jumper switchable)
Accuracy: +/- 10°F
Cold Junction Compensation: Electronic
Power Input: 24 Volt Center Tap Transformer / 50 Hz or 60 Hz
Outputs 1 & 3: 150mA at 12 VDC, one 12 volt relay with 80 ohm coil per output
Output 2: 600mA at 12 VDC, one to three 12 volt relays with 80 ohm coil per output
Output 4: 150mA at 12 VDC, one optional 12 VDC relay with 80 ohm coil per output
Output 5: 150mA at 12 VDC, one optional 12 VDC relay with 80 ohm coil per output
Operating Temperature Range: 0°F to 125°F, 0°C to 52°C (See the notes in the Frequently Asked Questions Section concerning "What Ambient Temperature Conditions do I need for control?")
High Side Switching: High side switching which allows the relay's return wire to be connected to ground (if the return wire shorts to ground it will have no effect.
Safety Transistor: A safety transistor powers the other output transistors giving multiple ways to turn off the output and increase safety.
Capacitor-Couple Output: The microprocessor is connected to the output transistor through a capacitor so that the output turns off if the microprocessor latches up.

3.0 OVERVIEW: HOW THE DYNATROL WORKS

When electrical power is connected to the Dynatrol, the display will be lit , and WAIT will be displayed for about 5 seconds then, IdLE, TC2, and the current temperature will be cycling over and over in the display. This cycling IdLE message means that the Dynatrol is on, ready to be programmed, but the kiln is not running yet. The current temperature is measured at the tip of the three thermocouples (TC1, TC2, TC3). If the thermocouple wires are connected to the thermocouples and if the tips of the thermocouples are inserted inside the kiln, the current temperature displayed is the temperature inside the kiln. The default thermocouple reading is TC2. In other words unless you specifically ask the control to show you the temperature at TC1 or TC3 then it will only show you the temperature at TC2. This is done by simply pressing the #1 button to see the temperature at TC1, or the #3 button to see the temperature at TC3.

When the **START/STOP** button is pressed after either a EASY-FIRE (also sometimes called "Cone-Fire) or a VARY-FIRE profile has been selected, the Dynatrol starts to increase the temperature in the kiln towards the first set temperature at the programmed rate of rise. The kiln will be cycling (clicking) on and off to accomplish the exact rate of temperature rise. When the displayed temperature reaches the first set temperature in the first segment, the first hold phase can begin. If there is a hold time programmed in this segment, the Dynatrol will hold at the first set temperature for the programmed amount of hold time until the ending of the first segment of the firing. The second segment ramp stage then begins with the temperature increasing toward the second set temperature at the second ramp rate. Once it reaches the second set temperature it will hold there if there is a hold time programmed for the second segment (if there is no hold time then it simply goes on to the next segment). The control keeps going through this sequence until the end of the firing profile.

With the VARY-FIRE mode you may program six different programs with up to eight segments in each program. VARY-FIRE programs can be changed to whatever you need them to be. Each segment in a given program has a ramp rate (set in degrees Fahrenheit or Centigrade, heating or cooling, per hour), a set point temperature or cone number (the temperature that ramp rate will heat or cool to) and an optional hold time at that temperature for up to 99 hours and 99 minutes. In the " EASY-FIRE" mode, the number of segments and the firing profile are preset according to the EASY-FIRE Temperature Profiles shown in the Appendix section. The ramp portion of a segment need not always be increasing in temperature. You can program a decrease in temperature at a specific rate also. EASY-FIRE programs can have preheat segments and cooling segments added to them, or they can stand alone.

WHEN YOU HAVE LESS THAN THREE THERMOCOUPLES

TIP

If your kiln has only two thermocouples you will not be able to find TC3 as there is no third thermocouple. The Dynatrol comes pre-programmed from the factory for your kiln's particular specifications.

If your kiln only has one thermocouple many of the features in the Dynatrol are not used. Rather than seeing IdLE and a TC1, TC2, or TC3, you will only see IdLE and a temperature flashing on and off. Likewise any menu choice which controls relationships between the different "zones" in the kiln will either not even appear in the menu or if in the menu or will not affect the Dynatrol's operation using only one thermocouple.

4.0 PROGRAMMING

4.1 EASY-FIRE

The EASY-FIRE mode allows you to fire to a CONE NUMBER at one of four different speeds and then hold at that final temperature if you desire. EASY-FIRE also allows you to add a preheat time to the beginning of the program, and/or, a slower cooling time or a more complex program to the end of it. These are the four preset EASY-FIRE programs that have been designed to do most typical ceramic firing cycles. They are **Slow Bisque** (very slow; approximately 13+ hours heating time only), **Fast Bisque** (slow; approximately 10+ hours heating time only), **Slow Glaze** (medium; approximately 6-1/2+ hours heating time only) and **Fast Glaze** (fast; approximately 3+ hours heating time only). These preset programs have specific ramps and speeds built into them. You can enter any cone number up to cone 10. *(see note below) as the hottest set point. This allows for some degree of customization while still keeping the programming simple and easy.

The EASY-FIRE mode uses the Orton Foundation's patented method to achieve the correct heat work making these programs ideal for firing ceramics. The advantage of using the EASY-FIRE method is that a very complicated firing profile may be chosen with just a few key strokes (see Appendix F for these firing profiles). These program's final temperature set points are based on a 108°F temperature rise per hour for a large Orton self-supporting cone (rather than the small Orton cones or regular large Orton cones). Your real rate of climb may be different in the end; depending on a lot of different variables. **Expect to see a lower final temp if the kiln goes slower, or a higher one if it climbs faster.**

TIP

*** NOTE:** Some L&L Kilns are not designed to go to cone 10 or 2350°F. Consult your kiln's control panel label for the maximum operating temperature.

4.1.1 To use EASY-FIRE:

Make sure IdLE, TC2, and the temperature are flashing.
Press one of the four easy firing profile buttons: **SLOW BISQUE** or **FAST BISQUE** or **SLOW GLAZE** or **FAST GLAZE**.
Press **ENTER.** You will see S-bC, F-bC, S-GL or F-GL
Type the cone number you want to fire to (for instance **05**).
If you type a wrong number here, press **000** until all zeros appear in the display, press **ENTER,** then type the correct cone number.
Press **ENTER.**
Type the hold time or leave at 0.00. Numbers to the left of the decimal are hours, to the right are minutes. (Note that adding hold time will add heat-work to ceramics and thus increase the cone that you are firing to. The EASY-FIRE programs will NOT compensate for this)
Press **ENTER,** IdLE, tC2 and the current temperature will be flashing in the display.
Press **START/STOP** to begin firing.

4.1.1.1 Use the Preheat Option:

TIP

NOTE: PREHEAT OPTION. With any of the EASY-FIRE programs, a preheat stage is available. During the preheat stage the temperature is automatically increased at a rate of 60°F per hour until 200°F is reached; the 200F° temperature is then held for the programmed amount of time. Preheat is automatically set to zero at the end of each firing, so if a preheat stage is wanted, it must be reprogrammed for each EASY-FIRE firing.

To preheat the kiln for a specific amount of time you must first program an EASY-FIRE program. Once this is done you can add the preheat option to it:
Press **PREHEAT** and see HLd, 0.00 cycling over and over.
Press the number keys to enter the amount of Preheat time desired. Numbers to the LEFT of the decimal in the display are hours, i.e. 3 hours of preheat time would look like 03.00 or like 3.00. Numbers to the RIGHT of the decimal in the display are minutes, i.e. 75 minutes of preheat time would look like 00.75 or like 0.75.
Press **ENTER** and see CPL meaning that programming the preheat option is complete.

More Information about Preheat -see Section 4.1.4.1

4.1.1.2 Use the Delay Option:

TIP

NOTE: DELAY OPTION With any EASY-FIRE or VARY-FIRE program an optional Delay for the start time of the program is available. **This feature makes it easy for you to be present at the end of a firing.** Appendix F has the estimated times that the EASY-FIRE Programs take for selected cone numbers. By using this appendix, and adding however many hours you need, up to 99 hours and 99 minutes, to the delay timer you can ensure your presence at the end of the firing.

To program a delay time you need not have programmed any firing profile yet. When the display cycles IdLE, tC2, current temperature over and over:

Press **Delay** and see dELA, 0.00 cycling over and over.

Press the number keys to enter the amount of delay time desired. Numbers to the RIGHT of the decimal in the display are minutes, i.e. 75 minutes of delay time would look like 00.75 or 0.75 or .75. Numbers to the Left of the decimal in the display are hours, i.e. 14 hours 30 minutes of delay time would look like 14.30.
Press **ENTER** and see IdLE/ TC 2, - that's it.

Now once you program any EASY-FIRE or VARY-FIRE program this delay will appear in the display like a timer counting down when you press **START/STOP** to begin firing. The firing will begin once the timer reaches zero. It will remain set as is until you change it.

More Information about Delay - see Section 4.1.4.2

4.1.1.3 Controlled Cooldown:

TIP

NOTE: DOWN-RAMP or EXTENDED FIRING OPTION. With any EASY-FIRE program an optional controlled cooling or extended firing can be added. This allows you to control the cooling rate of your firing if you want to, or add as many as seven more segments to the program for crystalline firing (or other slow cooling effects). The DynaTrol comes pre-programmed with a slow cooling program you can add to a cone 6 program. The pre-programmed cooldown is located under **USER 6** in the VARY-FIRE programs. **USER 6** is the only program that can be added to an EASY-FIRE program

The pre-programmed cone 6 cooldown can be reprogrammed with a different program. Once this happens the cone 6 cooldown program will no longer be available until you re-enter it or until the control's defaults are reset.

To Add The Program That Is In User 6 to an EASY-FIRE Program:

When the display cycles IdLE, TC2, current temperature over and over:
First enter a complete **EASY-FIRE** program.
Once it says IdLE, TC2 again, press **Other** again and again until it shows 16-S, then press ENTER
Press **1** until it says **ON,** press **ENTER** and see **IdLE, TC 2,** current temperature over and over:

Setting the **16-S** setting to **ON** will attach whatever is in **USER 6** to the last EASY-FIRE program you programmed. Setting the **16-S** to **OFF** will unattach **USER 6** from your EASY-FIRE program.To change this program see the VARY-FIRE section a little further on in this section of the kiln manual.

More Information about Down-ramping and Adding Segments - see Section 4.1.4.4

TIP

NOTE: If you make a mistake while programming (like entering the wrong hold time) and you have already pressed **ENTER,** You must complete the programming as if you made no mistake, to get back to IdLE, TC2, and the current temp again. Then you must re-enter the entire program over again, making sure that you do it properly this time.

4.1.2 EASY-FIRE Example 1

Slow Bisque Firing Profile to Cone 04, **Pre-heat of 1 hour, 2 minute Hold -** Use the following steps for a bisque firing to cone 04, a 2 minute temperature hold at the peak temperature, and a preheat stage with 1 hour hold time. THIS IS JUST AN EXAMPLE…You can change the firing profile, cone number, hold time, or preheat time to fit your specific needs.

To begin programming the display must be reading IdLE, TC2, and the current temperature.

Press	Display	Comment
Slow Bisque	S-bC	If you press the wrong button, before pressing **ENTER**, simply press the correct button.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: CONE & #	The Slow Bisque profile is now selected. The word CONE and the last entered cone number will alternately flash on the display. Now enter the cone number - **04**.
04	Alternately flashing: CONE & 04	The word CONE and the entered cone number will alternately flash on the display. If you type a wrong number, press **000**, then type the correct number.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HOLd & 0.00	The cone number has been accepted. Now enter the 10 minute hold time.
0002	**00.02**	Numbers to left of decimal point are hours, to the right of decimal point are minutes. If you type a wrong number, press **0000**, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IdLE TC 2 flashes, then the current temperature	The 2 minute hold time is accepted. IdLE indicates the firing profile has been completed.
Preheat	Alternating flashing: HLd & 0.00	Preheat has been selected and the hold time is to be entered now.
100	**1.00**	Numbers to left of decimal point are hours, to the right of decimal point are minutes. NOTE: For a 1 hour hold time you could also enter **60** for 60 minutes; the display would show .60. If you type a wrong number, press **0000**, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IDLE TC 2 flashes, then current temperature	Accepts a hold time of 1 hour, then IdLE indicates the preheat stage has been completed.
START STOP	-ON-	After -On- is displayed for several seconds, the heating elements of the kiln will cycle on and the current temperature in the kiln will be displayed. If a time is displayed instead of the current temperature, then a delay start is in effect. If you do not want to delay the start. Press **START/STOP** button, then **DELAY,** then **0000,** then **ENTER**. When the current temperature and IdLE are again flashing in the display, press **START/STOP** to re-start the program.

4.1.3 EASY-FIRE Example 2

Fast Glaze Firing Profile to Cone 06, 10 minute Hold, Delay start of 2 hours. Use the following steps for a glaze firing to cone 06, a 10-minute temperature hold at the peak temperature, and a 2-hour delay before the start of the firing. THIS IS JUST AN EXAMPLE. You may change the firing profile, cone number, hold time, delay time, or even add a preheat to this program to fit your special needs.

Press	Display	Comment
Fast Glaze	F-GL	If you press the wrong button, before pressing **ENTER,** simply press the correct button.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: CONE & #	Fast Glaze is selected. The word CONE and the last entered cone number will alternately flash on the display.
06	Alternately flashing: CONE & 06	The word CONE and the entered cone number will alternately flash on the display. If you type a wrong number, press **0000**, then type the correct number.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HOLd & 0.00	The cone number has been accepted and the hold time is entered now.
10	**00.10**	The Hold time is displayed. Numbers to left of decimal point are hours, to the right of decimal point are minutes. If you type a wrong number, press zero 4 times, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IDLE TC 2 flashes, then the current temperature	Accepts a hold time of 10 minutes and then IdLE indicates the firing profile has been completed.
Delay	Alternately flashing: dELA & 0.00 (or the last programmed delay time)	Either 0.00 or the last programmed delay time will flash alternately with dELA.
200	**02.00**	Numbers to left of decimal point are hours, to the right of decimal point are minutes. If you type a wrong number, press zero 4 times, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IdLE TC 2 flashes, then current temperature	The 2 hour delay time is accepted. IdLE indicates the job is completed.
START/ STOP	-On- then 2.00	Starts the countdown of the delay time toward zero, at which time the kiln will start to heat. The display will show the amount of time left until the firing is to start.

4.1.4 EASY-FIRE OPTIONS SECTION

4.1.4.1 Delay Button

This button's function is used to delay the start of a firing.

TIP

NOTE: There is a separate button specifically for this function. If you program a delay start it will remain on and set for all programs (both VARY-FIRE and EASY-FIRE until you take it off by programming it to 0.00. This means you can program the delay time before or after you enter (or recall) the program that you want to fire.

Example: Program a one hour delay to the start of a firing. You can change the one hour delay to as much as 99 hours and 99 minutes of delay time.

Remember: IdLE, TC2, and the current temperature must be cycling on the display before beginning to program.

Press	Display	Comment
Delay	Alternately flashing: dELA and 0.00	The controller is ready to accept the delay time of 1 hour.
100	1.00	Displays the selected time. Numbers to left of decimal point are hours, to the right of decimal point are minutes. If you type a wrong number, press **0000**, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IdLE TC 2 flashes then the current temperature	IdLE indicates the 1 hour delay has been accepted. The current temperature then flashes in the display.

4.1.4.2 Preheat Button

- Preheat can be used with the EASY-FIRE mode only. When Preheat is in use, the temperature ramps up at 60°F/hour to 200°F and then holds at 200°F for the amount of time programmed. If you start at a room temperature of 70°F, then it will take about 1-1/2 hours to reach 200°F at which time the hold segment in the Preheat will start. Preheat is automatically set to zero during EASY-FIRE programming and at the end of each firing, so if a preheat stage is wanted, it must be reprogrammed for each cone firing. **Preheat Example:** Set a preheat time of 3 hours.

TIP

Remember: You must choose and program an EASY-FIRE profile first, before you set the preheat time.

IdLE, TC2 and the temperature must be flashing to start the programming.

Press	Display	Comment
Preheat	Alternately flashing: HLd and 0.00	If you see IdLE when you press Preheat then it means that you have a VARY-FIRE program entered. You can not use preheat with a VARY-FIRE program.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd & 0.00	Preheat has been selected; enter the time you want to hold the temperature at 200°F (in this example 3 hours)
300	3.00	Displays the selected time of 2 hours. Numbers to left of decimal point are hours, to the right of decimal point are minutes. If you type a wrong number, press **0000**, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IdLE TC 2 flashes then the current temperature	IdLE, TC2, and the current temperature then cycles in the display.

4.1.4.3 Alarm Button

This button's function enables you to program an audible temperature alarm. (Note: it is not very loud)

TIP

NOTE: If the alarm is desired, it must be set with the Alarm Button for each firing when an EASY-FIRE program is chosen. When a VARY-FIRE program is chosen the Dynatrol will automatically use the alarm setting that can be programmed with that VARY-FIRE program (It is done within the VARY-FIRE program). Once the Alarm Button is pressed, if no alarm setting is entered within 10 seconds, the display will return to IdLE, TC2 and the current temperature.

The alarm may be set before or *during* a firing. When the alarm temperature is reached, a beeper will sound. Turn off the sound by pressing **ENTER.** This is very useful for alerting you to specific critical temperatures in a program - for instance just before the kiln is going to reach maturing temperatures or when to close the peepholes during natural venting.

Example: Before or during a firing, set the alarm temperature to go off at 600°F.

Press	Display	Comment
Alarm	Alternately flashing: ALRM and #	The word ALRM and the last entered alarm temperature will alternately flash on the display. The controller is ready to accept the alarm temperature. If no alarm is entered within 10 seconds, the display will return to IdLE TC 2 and the current temperature.
600	600	Displays the selected temperature of 600°F. If you type a wrong number, press **0000**, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IdLE TC 2 flashes then the current temperature	The IdLE, TC2, and the current temperature then cycles in the display.

4.1.4.4 Downramping, or Controlled Cooling with EASY-FIRE

If your kiln is cooling too rapidly for good glaze results, or if the cooling is so rapid that cracking occurs on certain large pieces, it is recommended to cool under power. This is accomplished using the following instructions. A kiln with a light load or a large firing chamber will cool more quickly than a kiln with a heavy, dense load or a small firing chamber assuming the same thickness of the insulation. So you may want to test your kiln to see how quickly it cools at high temperatures and at low temperatures to see what type of cooling segment(s) you need.

The EASY-FIRE to VARY-FIRE feature allows you to fire an EASY-FIRE program and then automatically start a VARY-FIRE program at the end of the EASY-FIRE program.

4.1.4.5 Step-By-Step: How To Control The Cooling

1) First you enter the cooling segment. (NOTE: If your kiln is brand new this cooling segment is already entered in your DynaTrol. If you are not sure that it is in there, it will not hurt anything to re-enter it. Start by pressing the **ENTER PROG** button in the VARY-FIRE Section

2) Press **6** and then press **ENTER** to program **USER 6**.

3) Program **USER 6** with the desired cool down program. 150 degrees F per hour down to 1400 F is a good cooling program. Once we finish these steps, **USER 6** will start when your EASY-FIRE program reaches complete (CPLT). If you do not know how to program a VARY-FIRE program, see Section 4.2.

NOTE: Segment 1 of **USER 6** is utilized by the controller and cannot be used for the program. Therefore the number of segments you input for the program will need to be one greater than the number of segments that are really being used for the cooling. Once you begin programming **USER 6**; when the display asks for RA1 press **ENTER**, **ENTER**, **ENTER** and begin the cool-down part of the program with segment 2.

4) Press the desired EASY-FIRE program button (i.e. **Slow Bisque, Fast Bisque, Slow Glaze or Fast Glaze**).

5) Enter desired EASY-FIRE program. This will program the EASY-FIRE portion for the program. Do this just as you would for any EASY-FIRE program.

6) To tell it to join the cooling program to the EASY-FIRE program enter in the following: Press the **Other** button until 16-S appears in the display. Press **ENTER**.

7) Press the **1** key until the desired condition is displayed. On will allow EASY-FIRE program to flow into VARY-FIRE **USER 6** program and OFF will disable this option.

8) Press the **ENTER** button. Programming is now complete. If 16-segment is On then the controller will complete the EASY-FIRE program and, upon finishing it, will run the VARY-FIRE **USER 6** program.

NOTE: 16-S will appear in in the Program Review when you press the **Review Prog** button. Once the **USER 6** is programmed with the controlled cooling segment you do not need to enter it every time. In place of steps 1-3; do the following: 1) Press **Recall Prog**. 2) Press #6. 3) Press **ENTER**. Then follow with steps 4-8 above.

4.1.6 EASY-FIRE Example 3 with a controlled cooldown

Slow Glaze Firing Profile to Cone 6, 5 minute Hold, Controlled Cooldown.

Press	Display	Comment
Enter Prog	Alternately flashing: USER & 6	This allows you to chose which program number to program. You FIRST have to program the cooldown program BEFORE you program the EASY-FIRE program. Otherwise the control thinks you are going to use VARY-FIRE program #6 as your main program.
6	6	You are going to program VARY-FIRE program No 6
ENTER	Alternately flashing: SEGS & 2 (or some other number 2-8)	This is the number of segments you will need. In most cases you will want 2 segments. The first segment IS NOT USED and it doesn't matter what it says.
2	2	This tells the control you will be programming two segments
ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 1 & 0500 (or some other number)	This is the ramp of segment 1. It doesn't matter what the value is because it will be ignored.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: oF 1 & 0200 (or some other number)	This is the temperature set point of segment 1. It doesn't matter what the value is because it will be ignored.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd1 & 0200 (or some other number)	This is hold value of segment 1. It doesn't matter what the value is because it will be ignored.

ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 2 & 0000 (or some other number)	This is asking you what ramp value to put in for segment 2. This will be our cooldown rate in degrees F (unless you are operating in deg C)
150	150	This means we will cool at a rate of 150 deg per hour.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: oF 2 & 0000 (or some other number)	This is asking you what temperature value to put in for segment 2. This will be our cooldown setpoint, i.e. the target temperature to cool down to. After we reach this temperature the kiln will stop firing and it will cool down without any power.
1400	1400	We will have a controlled cooldown to 1400 Deg F
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd2 & 0000	This is asking you for a hold time.
0000	00.00	Hold of zero
ENTER	Alternately flashing: ALRM & 9999	This is asking you for an alarm temperature. 9999 keeps it turned off.
ENTER	IdLE	The cooling segment is complete. Now we must enter the heating part of the program
Slow Glaze	S-GL	If you press the wrong button, before pressing **ENTER,** simply press the correct button.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: CONE & #	Fast Glaze is selected. The word CONE and the last entered cone number will alternately flash on the display.
6	Alternately flashing: CONE & 6	The word CONE and the entered cone number will alternately flash on the display. If you type a wrong number, press **0000, press ENTER**, then type the correct cone number.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HOLd & 0.00	The cone number has been accepted and the hold time is entered now.
05	**.05**	The Hold time is displayed. Numbers to left of decimal point are hours, to the right of decimal point are minutes. If you type a wrong number, press zero 4 times, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IdLE flashes, then the current temperature, etc	Accepts a hold time of 5 minutes and then IdLE indicates the heating part of the program is complete
Other, Other, Other, Other	16-S	This means "16 segment". This is how we add the two programs to each other.
ENTER	OFF	The 16 segment feature is turned off as the default setting.
1	On	Pressing 1 turns the 16 segment feature on. You can toggle between OFF and On by pressing **1** again.
ENTER	IdLE	You have now activated the 16 segment hfeature which will start VARY-FIRE Program No 6 when the EASY-FIRE program finishes
START/ STOP	-On-	Starts the program..
Review Prog		You will see 16-S at the end of the displays that scroll. This tells you that VARY-FIRE Program #6 will start when your EASY-FIRE program ends.

4.2 VARY-FIRE

The VARY-FIRE mode allows you to program exactly how you want the kiln to fire. It provides a very broad range of programming possibilities designed to allow for the many different ways these kilns can be used. The Dynatrol allows you to permanently store 6 separate programs with up to 8 ramp/hold segments in each program. There is one cooling or heating ramp, a temperature setpoint, and an optional hold time at that setpoint, per segment. These programs are stored in a non-volatile memory bank, which means that they will stay in memory even when all power is turned off. The Dynatrol allows you to hold at a low temperature for a long time (i.e. you can have an automatic drying period similar to the Preheat option in the EASY-FIRE mode). Then it can automatically ramp up to your final temperature, switching to different heating or cooling rates along the way. You can ramp slowly through critical periods or soak at any temperature within, or at the end of a firing, for more consistent maturing of work. Your program can include a controlled cool down to avoid heat shock. Many of these options are permanently programmed into the EASY-FIRE programs to maximize their ability to properly fire your ceramics. However, with the VARY-FIRE programs you have complete control over nearly every aspect of the firing so you can adjust the kiln performance to your exact needs. **This can allow the kiln to be used for non-ceramic applications such as glass slumping, annealing, enameling, growing crystals, jewelry, heat treating, testing, and other industrial uses.**

In the VARY-FIRE mode your saved programs are called USER1, USER2,… USER6. These are the names that will define your programs and make them easy to recall in order to use them to fire the kiln.

These six programs slots; USER1, USER2,… USER6 etc come with generic programs already in place. These programs can be replaced with your own custom programs, and at any time in the future the original programs can be recalled. If they are recalled however, they will replace any of your custom programs that you have saved under USER1, USER2,… USER6.

The six pre-set programs in the VARY-FIRE's custom program slots are as follows:

USER1 is a glass slumping program

USER2 is a glass tack fuse program

USER3 is a glass full fuse program

USER4 is a glass bead annealing program

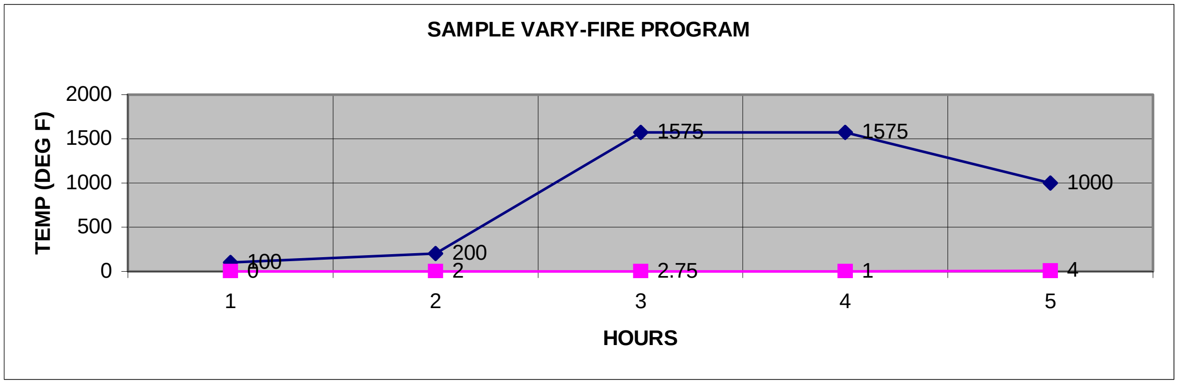
USER5 is a lost-wax burnout program

USER6 is a slow cooling cycle that can be added to a CONE 6 firing (or can be altered to add to any firing) but only when the 16-S option is selected

NOTE: See the Appendix I section in this manual for exactly what each of these programs will do.

VARY-FIRE programs in general are best thought of in the terms of a chart. For example: a three segment program with a maximum set point temperature of 1575°F, a one hour hold time, and a controlled cooldown. In segment 1, ramp rates are at first only 100°F per hour until the entire kiln's temperature reaches 200°F. Then, with no hold time in segment 1, the control automatically switches to segment 2, which will allow the kiln to rise at 500°F per hour until its maximum setpoint at 1575°F. Then it will hold for one hour at 1575°F. Then, in segment 3, it will cool from 1575°F to 1000°F at 143°F per our. Once the kiln temperature cools to 1000°F the firing is complete and the kiln heaters will turn off.

Segment	Rate °F/hour	Temperature	Hold
1	100°F/Hour	200°F	0
2	500°F/hour	1575°F	1 hour (01.00)
3	143°F/hour	1000°F	0



NOTE: The Appendix section has a blank form for writing your firing programs. Photo-copy this form as needed.

4.2.1 VARY-FIRE Example

The following steps are used to enter a program under USER1 for the firing profile in the above example.

TIP

NOTE: You can change the program's name (the USER number), change the number of segments, and change the ramping rates, segment setpoints and hold times within each of the segments. You can even add a DELAY time to ensure that you will be around for the end of the firing, all to fit the program to your own specific needs.

Press	Display	Comment
Enter Prog	Alternately flashing: USER & #	The display alternates between USER and the last selected firing profile number.
1	1	Selects user (USER) profile number 1. Only choose USER 1 if you wish to program over the program that is already there.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: SEGS & No.	The displays flashes between SEGS and the number of segments which were previously selected for this profile.
3	3	This is the number of segments needed for our example profile.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 1 & No.	The display flashes between RA1 and the heating rate per hour of the previously selected for this profile.
100	100	Displays the selected rate/hour.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: °F 1 & No.	The display flashes between °F1 & the temperature which was previously selected for this profile.
200	**200**	Displays the selected temperature
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd1 & No.	The display flashes between HLd1 & the hours and minutes which were previously selected for this profile.
0	. 0	No hold time.

ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 2 & No.	The display flashes between RA2 & the heating rate previously selected for this profile.
500	500	Displays the selected rate/hour.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: °F 2 & No.	The display flashes between °F2 & the temperature which was previously selected for this profile
1575	1575	Displays the selected temperature.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd2 & No.	The displays flashes between HLd2 & the previously selected hold time.
0100	1.00	One Hour hold time at 1575°F. (Normally with pottery you would rarely hold at the top temp/cone. Holding here adds heat work… an hour hold can make it 2-3 cones hotter. Type "0" for no Hold))
ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 3 & No.	The display flashes between rA3 & the heating rate previously selected for this profile.
143	143	Displays the selected rate/hour.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: °F 3 & No.	The display flashes between °F3 & the temperature which was previously selected for this profile
1000	1000	Displays the selected temperature.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd3 & No.	The displays flashes between HLd3 & the previously selected hold time.
0	. 0	No hold time.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: ALRM & No.	The display alternates between ALRM & the previously used alarm setting.
9999	9999	Enters the temperature at which the alarm will sound. The alarm will be turned off with a setting of 9999.
ENTER	CPL flashes then IdLE and the current temperature	CPL flashes indicating the program has been completed. IdLE then the current temperature flashes in the display.

TIP

NOTE: Preheating (Candling) with VARY-FIRE

There is no actual **Preheat** option in the VARY-FIRE mode. You must include another segment in your program in order to "Preheat". To preheat in the VARY-FIRE mode you would make your first segment as follows:

rA1 **60**

°F1 **200 -**

HLD1 (time you wish to preheat for)

4.2.2 Downramping, or Controlled Cooling with VARY-FIRE

To have the kiln cool at a prescribed rate, slower than it's natural rate, within a program or at the end of a firing, first consider the following. A kiln with a light load or a large firing chamber will cool more quickly than a kiln with a heavy, dense load or a small firing chamber assuming the same thickness of the insulation. So you may want to test your kiln to see how quickly it cools at high temperatures and at low temperatures to see what type of cooling segment(s) you need.

When using just VARY-FIRE programming, treat a cooling segment the same as a heating segment when programming the Dynatrol. While programming, you must initially add an extra segment. Then, when you input the RA number in this segment (ramp or rate of rise or fall in °F or °C per hour), this number will be the number of degrees per hour that you want the kiln to COOL. Next in that segment, when you input the °F (or °C) number (the segment's set point), this number will be the temperature *to which* the kiln will cool to, at the rate you have just programmed. You can then program a hold (if you need one here) at this temperature. The program can then end (this was your last segment) or it can continue on cooling or go back to heating in the next segment.

All that the Dynatrol knows, is that to be a cooling segment, the set point must be *LOWER* than the previous segment's set point. It will treat the ramp rate the same for either heating or cooling, just moving the temperature along at the prescribed rate. (See the previous example for the VARY-FIRE).

? TIP

NOTE: When programming a firing with a controlled cooling, be sure to put at least one heating segment before the cooling segment as the kiln cannot cool first. It must heat first before cooling.

4.2.3 Using VARY-FIRE to fire to a CONE number

You can write a VARY-FIRE Program, and rather than have to set a *temperature* as the hottest point, you can set a *Cone Number* as the hottest point. This is very useful when you want your glazes fired to say "cone 6". The VARY-FIRE program will actually adjust the final temperature in the segment where you programmed a cone number as the set point. All subsequent set points in later segments must be lower in temp than the Cone segment.

In order to do this; while you are programming the VARY-FIRE program and you come to the point where you would normally enter the hottest *temperature*, press **Other** instead of entering a top temperature. Now enter in the appropriate cone number, then press **ENTER** and continue on with that segment's hold time and any later cooling segments etc…

If you change your mind, pressing **Other** before you enter a cone number will take you back to where you can input a temperature rather than a cone number for that segment.

Example: (Same program as the earlier example, just going to a cone number instead of 1575)

Press	Display	Comment
Enter Prog	Alternately flashing: USER & #	The display alternates between USER and the last selected firing profile number.
1	1	Selects user (USER) profile number 1. Only choose USER 1 if you wish to program over the program that is already there.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: SEGS & No.	The displays flashes between SEGS and the number of segments which were previously selected for this profile.
3	3	This is the number of segments needed for our example profile.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 1 & No.	The display flashes between RA1 and the heating rate per hour of the previously selected for this profile.
100	100	Displays the selected rate/hour.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: °F 1 & No.	The display flashes between °F1 & the temperature which was previously selected for this profile.
200	**200**	Displays the selected temperature

ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd1 & No.	The display flashes between HLd1 & the hours and minutes which were previously selected for this profile.
0	. 0	No hold time.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 2 & No.	The display flashes between RA2 & the heating rate previously selected for this profile.
500	500	Displays the selected rate/hour.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: °F 2 & No.	The display flashes between °F2 & the temperature which was previously selected for this profile
Other	CONE & No.	This is where we are entering a cone number for the max temp rather than a temperature
012	012	Cone 012 is roughly equal to heating to 1575F at 108degrees F per hour. We are choosing to enter a cone number here because we really want to hit cone 012… not whatever 012 would look like at 1575.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd2 & No.	The displays flashes between HLd2 & the previously selected hold time. Done with the cone part- back to the regular VARY-FIRE program
0100	1.00	One Hour hold time at 1575°F (Normally with pottery you would rarely hold at the top temp/cone. Holding here adds heat work… an hour hold can make it 2-3 cones hotter. Type "0" for no hold)
ENTER	Alternately flashing: RA 3 & No.	The display flashes between rA3 & the heating rate previously selected for this profile.
143	143	Displays the selected rate/hour.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: °F 3 & No.	The display flashes between °F3 & the temperature which was previously selected for this profile
1000	1000	Displays the selected temperature.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: HLd3 & No.	The displays flashes between HLd2 & the previously selected hold time.
0	. 0	No hold time.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: ALRM & No.	The display alternates between ALRM & the previously used alarm setting.
9999	9999	Enters the temperature at which the alarm will sound. The alarm will be turned off with a setting of 9999.
ENTER	CPL flashes then IdLE and the current temperature	CPL flashes indicating the program has been completed. IdLE then the current temperature flashes in the display.

4.2.4 Adding Two VARY-FIRE Programs Together

TIP

The USER 6 program can be added to any EASY-FIRE or to VARY-FIRE program USER 5. USER 6 comes pre-programmed as a slow cooldown from a Cone 6 firing. It can be adapted to be a slow cooldown from a different cone number or temperature, or with a few adjustments it can be it's own program, or it can be the second half of a sophisticated crystalline glaze program.

To add whatever is programmed in USER 6 to whatever you program in USER 5 you must check and be sure USER 5 is programmed the way you want it. Then be sure USER 6 is programmed the way you want it. Think of the first segment of USER 6 following right after the end of USER 5. Then turn on the **16-S** feature- located under the **Other** key so the control knows to join those two programs together and run first USER 5, then immediately follow it with USER 6

4.2.5 The UNDO/GO-BACK Button

The **Review Prog** (Review Program) button acts as the Go-Back button during VARY-FIRE Programming only. If you are programming a segment of a VARY-FIRE program, you can go backwards to change something if you need to by pressing **Review Prog**. Once you reach the ALRM, 9999 part of the programming you can no longer go backwards. Likewise, while you are programming your USER # or number of segments you cannot go backwards either.

If you cannot go back, just continue on and finish programming like nothing was wrong. Then when you get back to IdLE, go back in and program it correctly.

You cannot go backwards in the EASY-FIRE programming at all. Just finish programming as if no mistake was made, then once you are back to IdLE, re-program it correctly.

4.2.6 The RECALL PROG (RECALL PROGRAM) Button

This button is used to call up one of your six previously programmed USER firing profiles in order to use that program to fire the kiln.

Example: To recall USER profile #4, do the following. First enter your program into User Profile #4, then:

Press	Display	Comment
Recall Prog	Alternately flashing: USER & 1	The controller is ready to accept the desired user number.
4	4	Indicates the user program selected.
ENTER	IdLE flashes then the current temperature	IdLE appears indicating the program has been selected. The current temperature then flashes in the display.

4.2.7 The SKIP-STEP Feature

The Skip Step function is performed using the **Review Seg** (Review Segment) button. The Skip Step feature is only available in a VARY-FIRE firing profile. It is used when enough heat work has been done at the current segment and you want to immediately go the next segment. To skip to the next segment, press **Review Seg**, then within 2 seconds, press **ENTER**, and **ENTER** a second time. If you press **View Seg** and do not press **ENTER** within 2 seconds, the current segment (e. g., rA1) will continue to be displayed. Simply wait until the temperature is again displayed and press **Review Seg**, then **ENTER** within 2 seconds, and **ENTER** again. If you press **Review Seg,** then **ENTER,** then decide not to skip to the next ramp stage, simply do not press any key; after about 10 seconds the display will return to the current temperature.

If you are currently in the ramping part of the segment and you skip step you will jump over any hold time in that segment and go directly to the ramp in the next segment. If you are currently in the hold part of a segment and you skip a step you will just go to the ramp in the next segment.

4.2.8 Full Power Ramp

A full power ramp will be enabled if a ramp rate of 9999 degrees per hour is programmed. At the start of a full power up ramp the elements will continuously be on until the soak temperature is reached. At temperatures 50 degrees less than the programmed soak temperature the elements will begin to cycle to minimize overshoot. A full power ramp is the quickest way to reach a specified temperature.

4.3 VIEW/ REVIEW AND SPECIAL OPTIONS

4.3.1 Review Prog (Review Program)

This feature is useful to be sure that the program that you have just selected to fire the kiln, either one of the preprogrammed EASY-FIRE programs or one of your six USER programs, is the one that you think it is.

Example - If you have selected a Slow Bisque "EASY-FIRE" profile to cone 04 with a 20 minute hold, the following will be displayed, each for about 1/2 second when **Review Prog** is pressed:

Display	Comment
S-bC	Slow Bisque firing profile
PRHT	Indicates the next value will be the preheat hold time
0.00	No preheat hold time is selected
CONE	Next value will be the selected cone number
04	Selected cone number
°F	next number will be the cone temperature
1926	Dynatrol's temperature for cone 04
CNOS	Indicates the next value will be the amount of offset applied to that cone number
0	There is no offset- Offset is degrees +/- you can add to a cone's temp equivalent
HOLd	Next number will be the hold or soak time at the end of the firing
0.20	20 minutes hold selected
dELA	next number will be the delay time before the start of firing
0.00	No delay, firing will start when **START/STOP** is pressed
ALRM	Next number will be the high alarm limit setting
9999	This is as high as the alarm can be set and assures the alarm will be off
ERCd	Next message will indicate if the error codes are ON or OFF
ON	Error codes are ON
FIRE	Next number is the number of times the kiln has been fired
25	Kiln has been fired 25 times (yours may say a different number here)
IdLE	End of firing profile- it goes back to IdLE

4.3.2 Review Seg (Review Segment)

This feature is used while firing to see where the kiln is in the program, what the travelling set point is currently set for, and what the ambient temperature of the Dynatrol's electronics is.

Examples:

If you press Review Seg, and the FIRST message that is displayed is…	**It Means**
STOP	No firing is in progress, the controller is currently idling (IdLE, tC2, temp.)
rA 4	Kiln firing, ramp stage in segment 4, 500 degrees per hour rate of rise
rA 3	Kiln firing, ramp stage in segment 3, 50 degrees per hour rate of rise
HLd2	Kiln firing, hold stage in segment 2
HLd6	Kiln firing, hold stage in segment 6
If you press Review Seg, the SECOND message that is displayed is…	**It Means:**
The Travelling Set Point: in the form of a temperature number in whatever temperature scale you are using. i.e. SETP, 200	This number is constantly changing based on how you have programmed the kiln. The Dynatrol looks at the entire program you have entered and then plots the course of the Travelling Set Point. Once the firing has started and the elements are heating, the thermocouples are registering the temperature in the kiln. These temperatures are constantly compared to the Travelling Set Point and their relationship is what determines whether or not the elements stay on or are turned off in each zone of the kiln.
If you press Review Seg, the THIRD message that is displayed is…	**It Means:**
The ambient temperature of the Dynatrol's electronics in the control panel. i.e. bd T, 100	This temperature can tell you if you are operating the kiln in a detrimental and possibly unsafe environment. The recommended maximum ambient temperature is 125°F. If your temperature reads hotter than that you could damage the Dynatrol over time. Something else to consider is the fire hazard issue (see the general kiln instructions for precautions on this)

4.3.3 The 'Other' Button

The Other button contains a menu which contains many of the different user-programmable settings. As you press Other again and again the menu will scroll by. You can press **Review Seg** to go backwards in the menu. NOTE: You can not access the **Other** menus while the control is firing a program.

The Other Menus:

- Reset feature RSET
- Cone Lookup Table CONE
- Controller ID Id
- 16 step program 16-S (only comes up if you have VARY-FIRE Program #5 in active memory or if you have an EASY-FIRE program in active memeory)
- Cone temperature offsets CNOS
- Temperature scales °F or °C CHG°
- Error codes ON or OFF ERCd
- Thermocouple offset TCOS
- Board temperature bd T

? TIP

TO EXIT this menu without changing anything, cycle through by pressing Other until CONE appears, then press ENTER twice.

4.3.3.1 Reset

RSET - Choosing this function will re-assign the default value (ON) to the Error codes only. Press **Other** until RSEt is displayed. Then press **ENTER**. IdLE will be displayed indicating that the Error Checking to ON. It is also the screen where you can enter the "hidden other menu".

4.3.3.2 Cone Lookup Table

CONE- **This option allows you to type in a cone number and see what the Dynatrol's programmed temperature is for that cone number at a temperature climb of 108°F per hour.** This function is provided as a handy reference table to use while you are programming. There is a more complete cone table in "Logs, Cones, Tips" section of the Owners Manual. Remember, however, that there is no absolute equivalent between cones and temperature.

Cone Table Example:

Press	Display	Comment
Other **Other**	CONE	The word CONE will appear on the display
ENTER	Alternately flashing: CONE & a cone number. This example: CONE, 07	The word CONE and a cone number will alternately flash on the display.
04	04	This is the cone we are looking up in this example
ENTER	1945	The cone temperature is displayed for 2 seconds then IdLE is displayed followed by the flashing current temperature

4.3.3.3 Identification

Id - **Used by KISS (Kiln Interface Software System) to identify the kiln when hooked to a personal computer.** This software is available from L&L. Normally this is set to 1. If you are not using the control in a KISS environment it doesn't matter what it says.

4.3.3.4 Sixteen Segment Program

16-S - **This option allows VARY-FIRE profile #5 or any EASY-FIRE program to be combined with USER 6 to make one profile with up to 16 segments.** It shows up in the **Other** menu only when VARY-FIRE #5 Profile or any EASY-FIRE program has been programmed . To use it, first, program VARY-FIRE Profile #5 or an EASY-FIRE program. Then program VARY-FIRE Profile #6. Note that the beginning segment of Profile #6 should be entered as if it was to start directly after the ending segment of the EASY-FIRE program or of VARY-FIRE profile #5.

To take advantage of this feature do the following:

Press	Display	Comment
		First, program VARY-FIRE Profile #6 Then VARY-FIRE Profile #5. Then…
RECALL PROGRAM	USER, 1	This is asking which program to recall, you can press 5.
5	5	USER profile number 5 containing at least the first half of your program has been chosen, press **ENTER**.
ENTER	IdLE	The program USER 5 has been recalled
Other (4x)	16-S	Press **Other** until the 16-S appears. Press **ENTER** to accept the option.
ENTER	OFF	This option is currently off. Use any number key to toggle between ON and OFF
1	ON	This turns on the 16 segment programming – linking program #5 and program #6, press **ENTER**.
ENTER	IdLE	This activates and confirms the programming
START		The controller will fire VARY-FIRE Profile #5 until complete and then will fire VARY-FIRE Profile #6 until complete

TIP

NOTE: If you just want USER5 to fire without automatically being followed by whatever is programmed in USER6 double-check that this option is set to OFF. It will show up in the Program Review. If you have activated the 16-S feature and you press **Review Prog** it will only show you the first half of the program; USER 5 or the EASY-FIRE program. It will not show you the contents of USER 6 in the Review Program. It will show you "16-S" as it scrolls through the Review Program. This is your clue that whatever is in USER 6 is going to follow your current program.

4.3.3.5 Cone Offset

CNOS **(Cone Offset) - Used to fine tune what the Dynatrol thinks the final cone temperature should be in EASY-FIRE programs.** The final cone temperature can be raised or lowered a maximum of 99°F (or 55°C). When entering the offset temperature the following code is used: the left two digits designate whether to raise (00) or lower (90) the cone temperature, that is, "00" means plus (+) and "90" means minus (-). The right two digits are the number of degrees the cone temperature will be raised or lowered. This offset will remain programmed only for the specific cone number until you reprogram the cone offset differently

Examples:

Number	Meaning
0020	Raise the final cone temperature by 20°F
0040	Raise the final cone temperature by 40°F
0015	Raise the final cone temperature by 15°F
9030	Lower the final cone temperature by 30°F
9005	Lower the final cone temperature by 5°F
9045	Lower the final cone temperature by 45°F

? TIP

NOTE: This option does not affect the VARY-FIRE (Ramp-Hold) mode but it will show up on the menu.

NOTE ABOUT PREPROGRAMMED CONE OFFSETS: The Cone Offsets come preprogramed. From cone 022 to cone 017 the cone offsets are set at 9020. All other cones are preset at 0000. (Note on Blue DynaTrols made before Oct 1 2004 the cone offset was 9030 for cones 022 to 017 and 9020 for other cones. The offsets were changed when we switched to a more responsive thermocouple protection tube). You can always change this. The **RESET** option in **Other** menu will *NOT* reset these settings. This is part of the compensation necessary for the mullite thermocouple protection tubes.

Cone Offset Example: Adjust cone 07 to shut off the kiln at 20°F below Orton's prescribed cone temperature.

Press	Display	Comment
Other **Other**	CNOS	If CNOS does not show on the display, press the **Other** key until CNOS displays.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: CONE & #	Cone Offset has been selected; the word CONE and the last entered cone number will alternately flash on the display. Now enter the cone number which you want to adjust (in this example cone 07)
07	Alternately flashing: CONE & 07	The word CONE and the entered cone number (07) will alternately flash on the display. If you type a wrong number, press zero 3 times, press ENTER, then type the correct number.
ENTER	Alternately flashing: °FOS & 0	°FOS and the previous offset setting alternately flash. Enter the new offset temperature using the rules above, in this example, 9020"
9020	9020	The selected offset temperature is displayed. If you type a wrong number, press zero 4 times, then type the correct number.
ENTER	IdLE flashes then the current temperature	IdLE appears indicating the offset temperature adjustment has been accepted. The current temperature then flashes in the display.

4.3.3.6 Change from Deg F to Deg C

CHG° - Used to select degrees Fahrenheit (°F) or degrees Celsius (°C).

Example: Change from °F to °C.

Press	Display	Comment
Other Other	CHG°	If CHG° does not show on the display, press the **Other** key until CHG° displays.
ENTER	°F	Indicates that the Fahrenheit (°F) scale is being used. You can toggle back and forth between °F and °C by pressing the **1** key.
1	°C .	Displays °C . **The decimal point in the lower right corner means that the Celsius (centigrade) scale has been selected**.
ENTER	IdLE flashes then the current temperature	IdLE appears indicating the temperature scale has been changed. The current temperature in **°C** then flashes in the display. There will be a decimal point in the lower right-hand corner of the display.

4.3.3.7 Error Codes (On/Off)

ERCd - **Used to turn ON or turn OFF the error codes.** When you receive your Dynatrol the error codes are turned on. In most cases, you will want the error codes on. They can be turned off if you are doing special firings, such as jewelry or glass firing where the kiln is opened while hot. Turning the error codes off turns off the dynamic zone control feature that keeps the temperature in the kiln even top to bottom. It eliminates nuisance shut downs but side also eliminates built in fail-safe measures that help prevent mistakes.

Example: Turn the error codes off.

Press	Display	Comment
Other Other	ERCd	If ERCd does not show on the display, press the **Other** key until ERCd displays.
ENTER	ON	Indicates that the error codes are turned on. You can toggle back and forth between on and off by pressing the **1** key.
1	OFF	Displays OFF indicating the error codes will be turned off.
ENTER	IdLE flashes indicating that the error codes have been turned off.	IdLE appears indicating that programming is complete. IdLE, tC2, and the current temperature then cycle in the display.

4.3.3.8 Thermocouple Offsets

TCOS – This is used to raise or lower the temperature indicated by any of the thermocouples. The maximum offset is 99°F (or 54°C). A positive offset is entered with 00 preceding the amount of offset and a negative offset is preceded with 90. This is similar to what is done for entering cone offsets. When TCOS is displayed, press **ENTER** and TC1 will be displayed. Press **ENTER** and the current offset for the top thermocouple will be displayed. Press **ENTER** when the correct offset for the top thermocouples is displayed and then TC2 will be displayed. Repeat the process for TC2 and TC3 only inputting the offset on the thermocouples that need it. **Raising the indicated temperature LOWERS the actual temperature in the kiln and therefore the amount of heat work. Lowering the indicated temperature RAISES the actual temperature in the kiln and therefore the amount of heat work.**

Thermocouple Offset Example

Entering this sequence of steps will make the TOP zone of the kiln fire cooler by 15°F than the rest of the kiln. To do this, the offset is performed on the top (#1) thermocouple only, however the rest of the thermocouples must be programmed as well. The other one or two thermocouples (depending on model of kiln) would be programmed for a zero offset.

TIP

Reminder: IdLE, TC2, and the current temperature must be cycling before you begin programming

Press	Display	Comment
Other Other	TCOS	Represents thermocouple offset, press **ENTER**
ENTER	TC1	Represents thermocouple #1. The top of the kiln contains TC1 so this is the thermocouple that we want to offset. Press **ENTER**.
ENTER	°FOS 18	The Dynatrol is asking how many degrees you wish to add to or take from that thermocouple's displayed reading. NOTE: If this number reads something other than **0000**, you already have an offset programmed here. Note that the control comes with 18 degrees already preprogrammed in as a thermocouple offset to help compensate for the ceramic protection tube. Press **ENTER** if you wish to keep this offset, OR press **0000** and then press **ENTER** to have no offset on that thermocouple OR in this example we would press **33**
33	33	You have now programmed the top thermocouple to read 65°F hotter, therefore making the top of the kiln 65°F cooler, provided of course, that you program no offsets for thermocouples 2 or 3. Press **ENTER**
ENTER	tC2	Press **ENTER**, you must now enter offsets for thermocouples 2 and 3. In this example we are keeping these offsets set for zero.
ENTER	°FOS 0050	Keep at **0050**. If this number reads something other than **0050**, you already have an changed the default offset programmed here. Press **ENTER** if you wish to keep this offset.
ENTER	tC3	Press **ENTER**
ENTER	°FOS 0050	Keep at **0050**. If this number reads something other than **0050**, you already have an changed the default offset programmed here. Press **ENTER** if you wish to keep this offset.
ENTER	CPL or StOP	Thermocouple offset programming is complete.

TIP

NOTE: The thermocouple offset will affect the final temperature in that zone only for all EASY-FIRE and VARY-FIRE profiles. It will remain programmed until you reprogram it.

NOTE: The Thermocouple Offset comes already programmed into the control at 0018 (+ 18 Deg F) when it leaves the factory. Note the the room temperature will show 18 Deg F higher than it actually is. The RESET option in Other will NOT reset these settings. IF YOU DO NOT USE THE THERMOCOUPLE PROTECTION TUBES THEN YOU NEED TO CHANGE THERMOCOUPLE OFFSET TO 0000. (Note that on DynaTrols sent out before Oct 1, 2004 the thermocouple offset was set for 0050)

4.3.3.9 Board Temperature

bd t - You may press **ENTER** here to see what the ambient temperature of the Dynatrol's electronics are. This temperature can also be seen while the kiln is firing by pressing **Review Seg** three times. (125°F is an acceptable ambient operating temperature)

4.4 HIDDEN "Other" MENU
& Programming the Powered Bottom

This menu contains the programmable settings for the rest of the features in the Dynatrol. To find this menu, first IdLE, tC2, and the current temperature must be cycling in the display.

Press **Other** once to see RSET displayed
Press **4, 4, 3**, and see NOTC (this is the first option in the hidden "Other" menu)
To exit the menu press **ENTER** twice when you see PCt. You will then see CPL, and then IdLE, tC2, and the current temperature cycling in the display again.

? TIP

WARNING: 'OPTION A'(OPA), 'OPTION B'(OPB) DO NOT PRESS **ENTER** HERE. These options are currently programmed to operate with different equiptment than our powered bottoms and are therefore not recommended as options for controlling them. If you accidentally press **ENTER** on OPAor OPB you must then re-enter the hidden **Other, 4, 4, 3** menu and press **Other, Other, Other** (a total of three times to scroll to OPC). If you have a powered bottom then press ENTER while you see OPC. If you do NOT HAVE a powered bottom you must press **ENTER** on PCT, set it for all zeros, and press **ENTER** again.

When you press **Other, 4, 4, 3** The "Hidden Other Menu" is displayed as follows:

4.4.1 NOTC: Number of Thermocouples

NOTC is used to change the number of zones in your kiln (essentially, the number of thermocouples used).

To run the kiln using only one thermocouple: When you see notC press **ENTER**, then **1,** then **ENTER**. If you choose to do this you must use only thermocouple number 2 in the kiln and we recommend putting it in the middle zone's thermocouple hole. All the zones of the kiln will turn on and off simultaneously when you program the Dynatrol to use only one thermocouple.

If you wish to run the kiln using only two thermocouples: When you see notC press **ENTER**, then **2,** then **ENTER.** If you choose to do this you must have thermocouple #1 in the top zone of the kiln and thermocouple #2 in the middle zone or in the bottom zone. When you program the Dynatrol to run using only two thermocouples the bottom zone and the middle zone go on and off simultaneously.

To run the kiln using three thermocouples: When you see notC press **ENTER**, then **3**, then **ENTER**. If you choose to do this thermocouple #1 must be in the top zone, thermocouple #2 in the middle, and #3 in the bottom. All three zones will operate independently, tied to their respective thermocouples.

NOTE: Kilns with only one thermocouple can be *programmed* to run with two or three thermocouples but because they physically only have one thermocouple the FAIL message will be displayed referring to the non-exhistant thermocouple. You must then re-program for just one thermocouple. Likewise, two section L&L kilns come with only two thermocouples. If you physically add a section to a two section kiln, you be able to add a third thermocouple. But if you program a two section kiln for three thermocouples you will receive the FAIL message referencing the non-exhistant thermocouple. You must then re-program for two thermocouples.

4.4.2 OP A: Option A

DO NOT USE

4.4.3 OP B: Option B
DO NOT USE

4.4.4 OP C: Option C
When you press **ENTER** here all you will see is CPL (meaning 'Complete'). Now when you program in VARY-FIRE mode however, you will see an extra prompt in each segment called FAN1, FAN2,...FAN8. This will appear right before you see the rA1, rA2,…rA8 prompt. FAN, in this application, is referring to the powered bottom. You can set the powered bottom to be either ON or OFF in each segment of programming in a VARY-FIRE program only. Toggle between ON and OFF using a number key.

4.4.5 PCT: Percent
When you press **ENTER** here you can either exit the menu by pressing **ENTER** again (you are essentially setting the percent to remainas is without changing it by doing this). Or else you can program this setting to turn your powered bottom on *a percent of the time that the bottom zone in the kiln is on*. To set this percent from 0% to 150% press the percent you want. i.e. Entering 100 here would turn the powered bottom on whenever the bottom zone came on. Entering 50 here would turn the powered bottom on for about eight seconds, then off for about eight seconds if the bottom zone of the kiln was on all the time. 150 is the maximum you can enter. This pretty much ensures the power bottom is on all the time. The bottom zone would have to be on less than about 66% of the time to have the power bottom cycle if **PCT** was set to 150.

NOTE: Setting the PCt setting to 0000 will turn off all powered bottom options.

4.4.6 PId: PID Setting
This setting is not part of the powered bottom settings, It is always "on". Pressing **ENTER** here allows you to set another percent setting that can help a slow, heavily loaded kiln fire faster. This setting comes pre-programmed at the factory for 65%. Basically you are determining how much help the middle zone of the kiln gives the bottom zone of the kiln when the bottom zone is lagging behind during heating. This function automatically activates to your pre-programmed setting when the bottom zone is on 100% of the time. Without this feature, heat from the bottom zone will rise up and help to heat the other zones so generally the bottom of the kiln is on more than the other zones to compensate for this. Sometimes the slow bottom zone will slow the whole kiln down. With this feature, the middle zone of the kiln will come on the programmed percent of the time that the TOP zone comes on, if the bottom zone is on all the time. What was found during tests was that if the bottom was on 100% of the time, the top zone was generally on 90% of the time, but the middle zone was on only about 40% of the time. By programming a higher percent you can greatly speed up your firings. (you will have to experiment, try the factory setting 65% then try maybe 85% and compare your results).

4.4.7 dIAG: Diagnostics
This is handy to use when your kiln is first delivered and set up to make sure it was done properly. It can also be useful in seeing if an element has burned out. Press **ENTER** when you see dIAG and open the lid of your kiln. When you are ready, press Enter again and each zone of the kiln will turn on for 10 seconds starting with zone #1, the top zone. If you have a powered bottom it will be on last; when it says OUT4. **CAREFUL it can get hot and there is LIVE electricity – DO NOT TOUCH THE ELEMENTS!** This will tell you if all the power circuits are hooked up right and working; , or if kiln sections are plugged in to the wrong receptacles on the control panel(jupiter kilns only). If this is the case the zones will not turn on in the proper 1, 2, 3, order.

4.4.8 ShTO: Shut-Off Averaging

This option is used to shut off the automatic feature in the Dynatrol that holds the hottest part of the kiln at each segment's set point until the average of the three (or two) thermocouples reaches that set point. Pressing **1** here allows you to toggle between ON and Off. ON meaning that as soon as the hottest zone gets to the segment's set point the entire kiln switches to either the "hold time" or the next segment. OFF meaning that the Dynatrol will not let the hottest zone's temperature rise until the average temperature of the three zones reaches that segment's set point. Then the kiln can begin the "hold time" or the next segment. You may want to turn this setting to ON if you fire with the "Lag" set for say 15 and the "Autolag" OFF. ON can also help to speed up a slow firing as well.

4.4.9 ALR4: Alarm For…

This feature is activated by pressing **ENTER** when ALR4 is displayed. It energizes output #4 on the DynaTrol electronics board when the Alarm goes off. Since the alarm is a temperature alarm; can be set to go off at a specific temp, output 4 can be connected (for example) to a relay that governs the power for an auto-dialer to call your cell phone so you know it is time to come check the kiln. Or it could be connected to a really loud buzzer or light for the kiln room door. Contact the factory if you want to learn more.

NOTE: On kilns with powered bottoms DO NOT CHOOSE THIS OPTION. Your Powered Bottom is connected to output #4 and is best controlled by the 'PCT' option in the Hidden Other Menu. If this option is chosen, *and* you have a powered bottom, *and* you set the alarm, when the alarm goes off the powered bottom will come on- even if the program is off. The bottom of your kiln could get a bit hot if this happens. Just another reason why it is good to never leave a firing un-attended.

4.4.10 CYCL: Cycle Time

The cycle time is the length of time between an element turning on two consecutive times. Using a short cycle time may improve temperature control, while using a long cycle time may improve relay life. Cycle time can be programmed anywhere from 10 to 60 seconds. The default setting from the factory is 14 seconds

4.4.11 MAX: Maximum Temperature Setting

Maximum Temperature Setting controls how hot the kiln can be programmed to fire. It can be set as high as 2400°F, although on any L&L the max temp in the warranty literature is "2350°F or Cone 10". This is already set in the factory.

4.4.12 TYPE: Type of Thermocouple

The type of thermocouple can be either Type K or Type S. You must have the appropriate thermocouples and lead wire to switch from one to the other; either Type K thermocouples and wire or Type S. In addition you must switch the software setting from "K-TH" to "S-TH", or vise versa. Pressing any number key toggles you back and forth from K-TH to S-TH. For precaution, a small jumper must be moved on the circuit board when going from K to S. This jumper is located approximately in the center of the board under the marking "R97". If the jumper is on only one of the prongs the control is set for Type K. If the jumper is on both of the two prongs the control is set for Type S. This precaution keeps you from accidentally having it set for K with S thermocouples or vise-versa. (A severe overfiring can occure if you have the control programmed for a Type S thermocouple and you are using a type K thermocouple). If there is a mismatch between the jumper setting and the software setting you will get an error code: **ERR9**.

4.4.13 2KEY: Two- Key Start

Two-Key Start is a safety feature that makes you press **ENTER** after pressing **START/STOP** to begin a program. It keeps you from turning the kiln on by accident. If Two-Key Start is activated, when you press **START/STOP** you will see "----". Pressing **ENTER** now starts the program. By defailt we do not have this feature turned on.

4.4.14 E-bd: Error Board Temperature

This allows you to set how hot the room can be that the kiln is in before the DynaTrol shuts the elements off. A temp sensor right on the electronic board inside the control box senses temperature and can be used to trigger a power-off to the elements if the kiln room gets too hot. 250°F is the max. Remember it is a whole lot hotter that close to the kiln than it is in the rest of the room. Default seting is 200°F (93°C)

4.4.15 REST: Restore Default USER Programs

The DynaTrol comes preloaded with 6 special programs in the VARY-FIRE USER memory slots. VARY-FIRE has 6 memory slots for you to create and store your own custom programs. When it comes to you from the factory however, it already contains programs that as you create your own, you will program over.You may decide to keep these original programs or program over them with your own programs.

If you ever want to get all of the original programs back again, you can go to REST in the Hidden Other Menu and press **ENTER**. If you do this however, any custom programs you made up and saved in the VARY-FIRE USER memory slots will be unretrievable. If you want to just get some of the original programs but not others, you will have to manually enter them in. VARY-FIRE TEMPERATURE PROFILES section in the Appendixes contains the actual segment-by-segment program for each of the preset programs.

4.4.16 ERTF: Stores the Temp, Hours Past, and Rate of Rise when an Error Code occurs.

This feature stores the temp, number of hours that have passed in the program, and the rate of rise of the kiln when an error code occurs. If you come in to your kiln and see E- 1 for example, it has shut off because it cannot climb faster than the slowest allowable temp:12 degrees per hour. You can press **ENTER** and then go to ERTF in the Hidden Other Menu, press **ENTER** there and see, the temperature at which the error code happened, then the number of hours and minutes that have passed since the program began, then the actual rate of rise in degrees F/ hour (or degrres C/ hour if yours is set for Celcius) when the error code occurred. This is a great diagnostic tool.

4.4.17 COOL: Cone-Fire Cooling Segment

This feature allows the user to toggle **ON** or **OFF** a cooling segment for any EASY-FIRE Program. **OFF** means that the EASY-FIRE Program will fire to it's maximum temperature, then shut off and cool naturally. **ON** means that once the max temp is reached the cooling segment will kick in. If **ON** is set, when a EASY-FIRE Program is chosen, like **Slow Bisque**, the control will prompt you to enter the cool down segment you want after you are done programming the EASY-FIRE Program.

With this feature turned on, the prompt while you are programming an EASY-FIRE program will be RA 8. When you see this enter a ramp rate. Then you will see °F 8 (or °C 8). Enter a final set point temperature that you want the controlled cooldown to stop at. Then you will see HLd8 for a hold time (typically not used). An example of a good cool-down segment would be: **Rate: 150 degF/hr, to: 1200F, hold: 0.**

4.4.18 VOLT: Voltage Measurement

This feature allows the line voltage to be tested by the DynaTrol safely, where the kiln is set up. This will help diagnose firing problems where the kiln cannot reach temperature. When you see VOLT in the Hidden Other Menu, press **ENTER** and the display will flash NOLd; meaning that the next number displayed will be the "No Load Voltage". Press **ENTER** again and FLLd will flash meaning the next number to appear will be the "Full Load Voltage". The kiln's heating elements will be turned on for about 4 seconds while the full load voltage is displayed. After that, it will return to IdLE

To display voltage using the kiln controller a calibration must be done. Before calibration make sure the relays and elements are connected.

1. Press **Other** key one time. The message RSET will be displayed.
2. Type in key sequence **4, 4, 3**
3. NOTC will be displayed. Press **Other** until VOLT is displayed.
4. Press **ENTER** key. NOLD for no load will be displayed for two seconds. After NOLD, a number will be displayed until either **ENTER** is pressed or the **443** calibration code is entered. This number is the no load voltage. However, until after calibration this number is meaningless.
5. Type in key sequence **4, 4, 3**.
6. CAL1 will be displayed. Measure the line voltage and enter this number now using the keypad. This number will be used to calculate no load voltage
7. Press **ENTER** key.
8. CAL2 will be displayed. Measure the line voltage and enter this number now using the keypad. This number will be used to calculate full load voltage.
9. Press **ENTER** key.
10. The voltage calibration routine is now complete. The controller will return to idle.

4.4.19 DTCT: Amperage Measurement Setting

This feature can only be used if your DynaTrol came with the optional current sensor. If equipped and properly installed, this sensor allows the DynaTrol to read the amperage of the kiln in real time. This setting here only controls the maximum amount that the current sensor will measure. It is set in the factory for the proper amount and should not have to be changed. The amperage reading requires a current sensor that clips around one of the power cord's hot wires. The default range for the calibrated sensor is 50A. For larger kilns the controller can be adjusted for a higher range sensor.

Installing the optional current sensor:

The current sensor has two wires that need to be connected to the circuit board. One wire is black. One wire is white. On the top left corner of the circuit board is a terminal with inputs marked black and white.

1. Insert the white wire in the terminal that has been marked white.
2. Insert the black wire in the terminal that has been marked black.
3. Use a screwdriver to tighten the two screws on the terminals so that the wires will not come lose.
4. The circuit sensor clips around one of the power cord's hot wires.

The control is now able to measure the amperage draw using the controller's diagnostic routines.

4.4.20 Amperage Measurement

Amperage measurement can only be done if your kiln is equipped with a current sensor. If there is no sensor (or no amperage), your amp readings will be 0 when you run try this feature.

To run this feature first enter the "Hidden Other Menu", then scroll through it until you come to dIAG. Press **ENTER** and see it say OUTS. Press "**1**", see it say AMPS. Press **ENTER** and see it say AMP1 -meaning the next number displayed will be the amps of Zone 1. Then AMP2 will be displayed- meaning the next number to appear will be the amps of Zone 2, and so on for Zone 3 if you have three zones.

APPENDIX A

OVERVIEW OF FEATURES

A.1 Dynamic Zone Control

The DYNATROL features Dynamic Zone Control. It measures temperatures in the bottom, middle and top of the kiln and automatically adjusts the heat output of three separate heating zones even as the kiln is heating up and during the final approach to maturing temperatures. Kiln temperatures are automatically evened out to within 1/2 cone or better top to bottom! There is no manual intervention with input switches to even out temperatures. There are separate thermocouples (heat sensors) and contactors (power controls) for each of the three zones. Dynamic Zone Control suspends firing on one or more zones if the other zones are lagging behind the faster zone(s)..TC1 (as displayed on the kiln) is the Top Zone, TC2 is the Middle Zone, TC3 is the Bottom Zone. **NOTE: It is absolutely necessary to match the proper section with the proper control box outlet and proper thermocouple** (Thermocouples, cords and receptacles are all marked for identification. If these are mismatched the kiln will not operate properly and you will get the Ed display showing that one of the zones is way off set point.

A.2 Programmable Number of Zones

The latest version of the DynaTrol allows you to program the number of zones. Typically there are three zones in a kiln. However, on our two section kilns the control will come programmed to operate as a two zone control. On GS1714 kilns we have the control programmed to be a single zone control. If you change the number of sections in a kiln (for instance, if you take one section off a three section kiln) you can reprogram the control to suit your needs. Another benefit of this new feature is that you can program the control to be a single zone control and avoid the complications of three zone control (i.e. LAG issues). When the control is programmed to be a single zone control outputs 1, 2 and 3 all work together. When programmed as a two zone control outputs 2 and 3 work together and output 1 is separate.

A.3 Four Easy Preset Programs

There are four preset " EASY-FIRE" programs that have been designed to do most typical ceramic firing cycles. They are **Fast Bisque, Slow Bisque**, **Fast Glaze** and **Slow Glaze**. These preset programs have specific ramps and speeds built into them (see Appendix A for details of what these ramps are). You can enter any cone number up to cone 10* as a final temperature, a hold time, a delay time and even a time as options. This allows a great deal of customization while still keeping the programming simple and easy. We recommend you start with these programs until you get some experience with the control and your kiln.

The EASY-FIRE mode uses Orton's patented method to achieve correct heat work so it is ideal for firing ceramics. The advantage of using the EASY-FIRE method is that a very complicated firing profile may be chosen with just a few key strokes. The EASY-FIRE method helps protect against over and under firing by carefully tracking and controlling the temperature at the end of the firing as the cone temperature is approached. The program is based on a 108°F temperature rise for a large self supporting cone (rather than the small Orton cones or regular large cones).

TIP

***Note:** Some L&L Kilns are not designed to go to cone 10. Consult your kiln's label for the maximum operating temperature.

A.4 Six User Defined Programs

If your needs are more sophisticated or involved there is a separate VARY-FIRE programmer mode. This allows you to have 6 separate, repeatable, storable programs with up to 8 segments. There is one cooling or heating ramp, a temperature setpoint and an optional hold time per segment. The programs are stored in non-volatile memory which means that they will stay in memory even when all power is turned off. The DYNATROL allows you to soak at a low temperature for a long time (i.e. you can have an automatic drying period) and then automatically ramp up to your high fire at different rates. You can ramp slowly through critical periods or soak at end point temperatures for more consistent maturing of work. It also allows a controlled cool down to avoid heat shock. Of course many of these valuable uses are available in the preset EASY-FIRE programs. However, with the VARY-FIRE programs you have complete control over ramp times and rates and so you can adjust the kiln performance to your exact needs. It also allows the control to be used for non-ceramic applications such as glass, enameling, heat treating and other industrial uses.

TIP

Note: VARY-FIRE programs fire the kiln to your specifically programmed temperature. EASY-FIRE programs will fire the kiln to your specifically programmed cone number.

A.5 Linkable Programs

You can link VARY-FIRE Program #5 and #6 to get a 16 segment program. You can also use this system to link VARY-FIRE Program #6 to the end of an EASY-FIRE Program.

A.6 Delay Start

You can delay the start of the program by up to 99 hours, 99 minutes. This allows you to plan end of firing conveniently. This is also very useful for saving energy costs by firing kiln with night electric rates. If you want the kiln to mature at 2:00 PM the next day and you know your program will take 12 hours and you are starting your program at 4:00 PM today you would program in an 8 hour delay. NOTE: The delay start remains on or set for all programs (both VARY-FIRE and EASY-FIRE) until you turn it off.

A.7 Preheat (Candling)

You can "candle" the kiln for up to 99 hours, 99 minutes to dry ware thoroughly. "Candling" is a specific hold at 200°F which boils off the water in the clay slowly so that your work does not explode as the water expands rapidly to steam. This is highly recommended to do for most ceramics. We recommend overnight or for at least several hours depending on how dry your work it. NOTE: This is available as an optional step in the EASY-FIRE mode only. You can do the same thing with an added first segment in the VARY-FIRE mode.

A.8 Soak

The control will soak at Final Set Point for up to 99 hours, 99 minutes, and can be programmed to hold a temperature as long as 66 days before needing to be reset. This is a very useful feature and one of the great advantages of an automatic control. Most ceramics achieve their characteristics not so much by what temperature they reach but by how much "heat-work" is put into them. A long soak at a lower cone can often develop the bisque or glaze better. In addition a soak period almost always will improve the uniformity of the firing throughout the kiln. A soak period gives the entire load of ware time to absorb the radiant heat that is projected from the elements. If you simply rise to a certain temperature and then shut the kiln off (as is typical of a manual kiln sitter operation) then the center or the bottom of the kiln may not have had a chance to absorb as much heat as the ware around the perimeter. You may have experienced the fact that an older kiln with slow firing elements may in fact have given you better results. This is because the entire kiln has had a chance to even itself out as it approached final cone. We suggest experimenting with this feature. Try a soak of 10 to 20 minutes. The Dynatrol will automatically adjust the final temperature to compensate for the programmed Hold Time in the EASY-FIRE mode only. Be warned that element life is lessened by the amount of time the elements spend up at at a higher temperature.

A.9 Audible Temperature Alarm

There is an easily settable audible temperature alarm. This can alert you at any point in program. For instance the control can alert you that the kiln is close to maturity so you can watch it reach final set point. You can use it to alert you when to close the lid if you are manually venting the kiln. You can disable this alarm by programming in 9999. Press **ENTER** to turn off alarm when it is sounding. You can tie this into a relay output to ring an external alarm. (See section 4.4.9).

A.10 Program Review

Press this button to see the entire program before or while running it. It will scroll through the programmed steps. We suggest hitting **Review Prog** at the beginning of your firing to see if the control is set up to do what you want it to. If the control shows error codes “OFF” when they should be “On” or no “Hold” where one should be, you must first stop the program that is running in order to change anything. Most settings cannot be changed while running a program.

A.11 Segment Review

Press **Review Seg** once while you are firing to see which segment’s ramp or hold you are currently in, what the current set point is, and what the actual temperature of the Dynatrol’s electronics are.

A.12 Skip Segment

In the VARY-FIRE mode you can skip a segment to advance to a higher segment and speed the program along.

A.13 Set Point Indication

If you press **Review Seg** twice while the kiln is firing, the control will show you what your current set point is during the program as it is changing. This is useful to confirm that the temperatures of the thermocouples are where they are supposed to be.

A.14 Change of Program During Firing

When firing you can alter the program anytime. You must press **START/STOP**, then reprogram, then press “Start”. The Dynatrol will automatically take the current temperature into consideration and start back up at that point in the program. If you attempt to do this right at the end of a firing, the amount of time it takes to reprogram is not accounted for by the Dynatrol. If more than a few minutes go by, the temperature displayed may not accurately represent the amount of heat work taking place in the kiln. Another reason to fire with witness cones.

A.15 Cone Offset

This is one tool you have to help you match the control to your real firing experience. It is important to fire the kiln with witness cones to find out what is really happening inside the kiln. Using these you can fine tune the overall performance of the kiln to match what is really happening to your ware. The cone offset is just one of the ways you have of making this adjustment. Keep in mind however that your firing speed and soak time will also have an effect on how the witness cones and ware perform. When you are making an adjustment try changing one variable at a time. For instance if you are firing to Cone 05 and your witness cones don’t mature you could do a number of things. One is to use the cone offset to raise what the Dynatrol thinks is the temperature of cone 05 in an EASY-FIRE program. Another thing you could do is put in a soak/hold time at the end of the program in a VARY-FIRE program. Another thing would be to slow the kiln down towards the end of its firing cycle with a slower, longer final segment in a VARY-FIRE program. Try one thing at a time to find out what works best for you. The cone table that the Dynatrol uses are based on a 108°F temperature rise for a large self-supporting cone (not the small Orton cones or the regular large cones).

A.16 Thermocouple Offset

This allows you to individually change what the Dynatrol thinks the thermocouples are reading. Use this to adjust for thermocouple drift or kiln uniformity adjustments. It allows you to influence how the kiln "sees" the temperature in the kiln. For instance, if the center zone is consistently firing higher (as measured by witness cones) then you would change that thermocouple to read higher. This would trick the control into thinking that the center zone was hotter and it would keep the temperatures down. The difference between Cone Offset and Thermocouple Offset is that Cone Offset works in EASY-FIRE programs only and changes a specific cone's temperature for the whole kiln. Thermocouple Offset will affect temperatures in both VARY-FIRE programs and in EASY-FIRE programs. Basically it changes just that particular thermocouple's reading up or down to even out temperatures in an unevenly heating kiln no matter what cone number or temperature you are firing to.

TIP

NOTE: Thermocouples drift in their accuracy over time. The hotter you fire the quicker this will occur. This is another reason why it is important to check each firing (or at least every 5 or 10 firings) with witness cones. This is particularly important if you are firing at high temperatures like cone 6 or cone 10.

A.17 Last Temperature Reached Indication

When an EASY-FIRE program is complete it will tell you what the last temperature reached was. You press **Review Prog** at the end of the cycle to see this temperature. This is useful for logging and comparing to what happened with your ware. Compare this temperature to witness cones and make adjustments in your firing cycle or cone offsets to adjust the performance of the kiln.

A.18 Cone/Temperature Equivalent Look Up Table

Convert cone numbers to temperatures in degrees. The look up table is based on a ramp rate of 108°F. This table is provided as a handy reference table to use while you are programming. There is a more complete table in the Appendix J.

A.19 Dust Sealed Keypad

The keypad is dust tight so you don't need to worry if you have dirty hands that might get dust into the electronics.

A.20 Easy to Follow Graphic Design

It is graphically designed to be user friendly. EASY-FIRE, VARY-FIRE, OPTIONS and VIEW functions are grouped separately. The numeric keypad makes entering parameters like temperatures and cone numbers easy.

A.21 Error Checking Can Be Turned Off

There are various error codes in the control. These can be important diagnostic tools. They can also be somewhat confusing and alarming if you don't understand then. One of the most common ones is E 1 which will stop the program if the kiln's temperature is rising too slowly. ErrP flashing or PF indicates a power outage to the control. E d indicates that one zone is 100°F off set point. All these and more are explained in greater detail in Appendix G.

A.22 Reset Defaults Function

This function (available under "Options, Other" - see Section 4.3.3) resets most settings back to factory defaults. It does not affect the thermocouple or cone offsets. Turns Error Checking On.

A.23 Reads Control Board Temperature

This is a diagnostic tool. The control should not be operated when it is above 125°F (52°C) or below 32°F (0°C). This should not normally be a problem with the way L&L mounts these controls away from the heat. However, if you do get a reading that is higher than this temperature (for instance if you are operating in a particularly hot room) we recommend that you direct some cooling air at the control. This board temperature is displayed as follows: When you press the View Segment Button while firing, first the current segment is displayed, then the set point temperature and then the Dynatrol's board temperature. Ambient temperatures that are out of the suggested range can lead to either control failure or control inaccuracy.

A.24 Automatic Restart after Brief Power Interruption with Flashing Alert

This is the ErrP indication. If the power outage was brief the program will continue to fire and the ErrP message will flash with the temperature indication. By hitting the "1" button you can clear this alarm message. See Appendix G for all error code explanations

A.25 PID Tuning Control

PID stands for Proportional - Integral - Derivative. It is a sophisticated calculus algorithm that minimizes temperature overshoot. The control is able to anticipate the temperature set point and start to cut back power before it reaches actual setpoint. In standard On/Off control the power does not turn off until the actual set point is reached. Because of the inertia of the kiln this could result in temperature overshoot without the PID control. The values for the PID are hard programmed into the control and can not be changed. They are optimized for ceramics. If you are using the control for another application and you find that the control gives you some overshoot try a step in your VARY-FIRE program that is a very slow ramp for the last few degrees of the program. For instance if you wanted to get to 1800°F without overshoot, have the program go to 1775°F and then take 15 minutes to ramp to 1800°F. NOTE: As of April 2000 a second set of PID settings was added for temperatures below 500°F. This improved overshoot in the lower temperature range.

A.26 Thermocouple Burnout Protection

The kiln will shut down automatically if all thermocouples burn out. The kiln continues to fire if only one or two thermocouples burn out. This protects your firing in the event of failed thermocouples. Of course, if all three thermocouples fail then the control stops firing.

A.27 Digital Indication of Temperature in either Degrees F or C

You can switch between temperature readings in degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Centigrade.

A.28 See All the Zone Temperatures

You can scroll through all three thermocouple readings by pressing **1** to see TC1 (top zone), **2** to see TC2 (middle zone) and **3** to see TC3 (bottom zone). The default view is of TC2. You must specifically hit **1** or **3** to see the top and bottom zone temperatures. The reading will stay on the thermocouple that you last pressed.

A.29 See Which Zones are Firing

Press Number Key **8** while the kiln is firing. This toggles the LED display to show you which zones are firing. See the section under **DESCRIPTION OF KEY FUNCTIONS AND DISPLAY,** Appendix C for details. This is a great diagnostic tool to allow you to see which zones are firing. For instance if one zone is firing constantly and the other zones are not then you know that the constantly firing zone is the slow zone.

A.30 See the current rate of rise in degrees per hour:

Press Number Key **5.** See the section under **DESCRIPTION OF KEY FUNCTIONS AND DISPLAY,** Appendix C for details

A.31 See the elapsed time since the firing began

Press Number Key **0.** See the section under **DESCRIPTION OF KEY FUNCTIONS AND DISPLAY,** Appendix C for details

A.32 Cold Junction Compensation

The control automatically compensates for varying ambient temperatures. It can operate in ambient temperatures of 32°F to 125°F (0°C to 50°C). The **Review Seg** button lets you see ambient board temperature (press **Review Seg** three times). This is an electronic compensation.

A.33 Matches Pyrometric Cone Performance in EASY-FIRE Mode

This feature is licensed from Orton. (Patent #4,461,616 and 4,730,101). This feature is not controlled by the user. Basically it adjusts how the firing takes place towards the end so that the control approximates how cones work. The control sees how fast the kiln is rising and adjusts the final end point temperature higher or lower to achieve the proper amount of "heat-work". For instance, to mature your ware at the same cone number, a the kiln rising at 100°F per hour will require a lower set point temperature than a kiln rising at 200°F per hour. This feature is only used in the EASY-FIRE mode. Note: The control emulates the self supporting cones. (see Appendix J, Pyrometric Cones)

A.35 Computer Interface System

The new DynaTrol is capable of being hooked up to a computer using special KISS Software. See separate instructions for details on this feature. Up to 10 separate kilns can be hooked up to one computer. This is available from L&L.

A.36 PID algorithm

The PID algorithm (in industrial, mathematical terms this is the proportional, integral, and derivative functions of the control) is how the controller decides what percentage of the kiln's total power is required to keep the temperature at the desired set point. The DynaTrol 700 board has a cycle time of 14 seconds (as the default setting) and will turn the relays on for a calculated number seconds to give the correct percent of power needed to keep the temperature near the traveling set point. For example, if the controller calculates that 25% of the power is required, the relays will be on for 3.5 seconds and off for 10.5 seconds.

Each part of the P (Proportional band), I (Integral) and D (Derivitive) are calculated separately and added together to determine the correct percentage (control value) of power required. The proportional part of the control value is based on how far the temperature is away from the desired set point. It is the difference between the set point and the current temperature (also called the error) multiplied by the proportional gain.

The integral part of the control value is based on how long the temperature is taking to get to the set point. It is calculated by multiplying the error by the integral gain and summing this value over time. The integral value compensates for any long term error not taken care of by the proportional part.

The derivative part of the control value is based on how fast the temperature is moving towards or away from the set point. If the temperature is moving quickly towards the set point the derivative portion reduces the control value to prevent overshoot. If the temperature is moving away from the set point then the derivative portion increases the control value to get the temperature to start moving back towards the set point.

The constants for calculating the control value are fixed within the controller and can not be changed by the user. They do vary throughout the firing depending on the current temperature in the kiln. To prevent over and undershoot, the controller also has "approach control" to smooth the transition from a fast ramp to a hold.

A.37 Automatic Lag Function

With a zone control kiln there is always a trade off between speed and tightness of control . The series 700 automatic control LAG feature uses the programmed ramp rate to automatically set its "LAG" temperature setting to balance these two opposing needs. Sometimes the temperature of one or more kiln's sections "lags" behind one or more of the other sections. This is because the traveling set point of the control (based on the programmed ramp rate) is faster than one or more of those sections' can rise and have the temperature in the sections stay even. To effectively deal with this the 700 DynaTrol will automatically slow the ramp rate when a section of the kiln lags. The amount of "lagging" that is allowed before the firing rate will slow is determined by the ramp rate. Fast ramp rates (greater than 500 °F/hour) will allow the greatest temperature difference between sections. Slow ramp rates (below 70 °F/hour) will have the smallest temperature difference between sections. Therefore, when the controller is programmed to go fast it will sacrifice evenness to obtain speed. Likewise, when the controller is programmed to go slow, the controller will maintain tighter control. The controller will try to balance speed and tight control when a medium speed is programmed.

Here is the actual algorythm for those of you who are interested in knowing what is taking place (note that this is all transparent to the user and is included in here to let you know how this works):

1. If the programmed rate of rise is between 1˚F/hour and 70˚F/hour and -

1. all thermocouple readings are less than 3 degrees behind the traveling set point, the traveling set point moves at the programmed rate.
2. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 3 and 6 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 75% of the programmed rate.
3. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 6 and 9 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 50% of the programmed rate.
4. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 9 and 12 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 25% of the programmed rate.
5. the lowest thermocouple reading is more than 12 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 1 degree F per hour.

2. If the rate of rise is between 71˚F/hour and 500˚F/hour and -

1. all thermocouple readings are less than 7 degrees behind the traveling set point, the traveling set point moves at the programmed rate.
2. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 7 and 14 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 75% of the programmed rate.
3. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 14 and 21 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 50% of the programmed rate.
4. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 21 and 28 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 25% of the programmed rate.
5. the lowest thermocouple reading is more than 28 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 1 degree F per hour.

3. If the rate of rise is greater than 500˚F/hour and -

1. all thermocouple readings are less than 10 degrees behind the traveling set point, the traveling set point moves at the programmed rate.
2. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 10 and 20 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 75% of the programmed rate.
3. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 20 and 30 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 50% of the programmed rate.
4. the lowest thermocouple reading is between 40 and 50 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 25% of the programmed rate.
5. the lowest thermocouple reading is more than 50 °F behind, the traveling set point moves at 1 degree F per hour.

APPENDIX B

DESCRIPTION OF KEY FUNCTIONS AND DISPLAY

The front panel of the controller has seven distinct parts:

- **START/STOP** Key
- **LED** Display
- **VARY-FIRE PROGRAMMER** Section
- **REVIEW AND SPECIAL OPTIONS** Section
- **NUMBER KEYS** Section
- **EASY-FIRE** Section

EASY OPTIONS Section

START/STOP button for starting and stopping firings.

"Vary Fire" Programmer for setting and saving your own firing profiles.

REVIEW section to review the selected program, view the current segment, view the board temperature, view the program set point, or skip to the next firing segment.

OPTIONS button to look up cone temperatures, set the cone offset to adjust cone tem-peratures, set thermocouple offsets, set LAG, AUTOLAG On/Off, Identify Control, Turn On/Off 16 seg-ment program capability, Reset default values, or change the temperature scale (°F/°C).

LED DISPLAY - four digit display showing times and temp-eratures. Indicate Deg F or C

Number keys section for entering temperatures and times. Change which thermo-couple you are reading. Turn On/Off ability to see which zones are firing. Reprogram the number of zones of control.

EASY FIRE section for choosing one of four preset Easy Fire profiles.

EASY OPTIONS section for setting Delay Time, PreHeat Time, and Alarm Temperature.

B.1 START/STOP Key

Starts the firing or, if there is a firing in progress, stops the firing.

NOTE: This key has no function during programming.

B.2 VARY-FIRE PROGRAMMING Section

Program your own firing profiles and recall them for use.

Enter Prog - This button allows you to initiate programming. Up to 6 profiles (programs) may be programmed and saved.

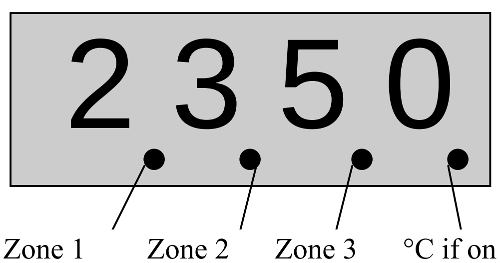
Recall Prog - Allows one step recall of one of the programmed profiles (programs).

B. 3 LED DISPLAY- Displays temperatures, times, and messages.

The LED (Light Emitting Diode) has room for four digits or letters in the display.

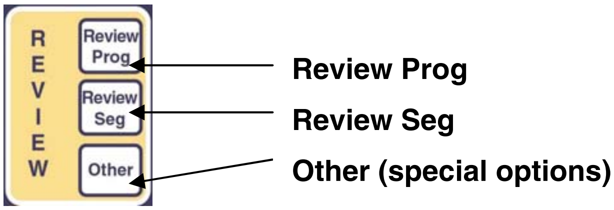
When the decimal point is displayed between the middle 2 digits, a time is being displayed.

If there is a decimal to the right of the last digit, the temperature is being displayed in degrees Celsius (Centigrade). By pressing #8 on the numerical Keypad while you are firing a profile you can turn on and off the ability to see which zones are firing. The little LED lights under the numerals in the display act as indicators of the zones firing. There are three of these little indicators and all three will blink on and off even if your kiln only has two or one heating zone



B.4 REVIEW & SPECIAL OPTIONS

Cone Offset, Thermocouple Offset, Identify Control for KISS software, Set 16 Segment Program, View Cone Table, and change between °F and °C.



Review Program - The information displayed when Review Program is pressed varies depending on whether you are using EASY-FIRE or VARY-FIRE. When Review Program is pressed, each of the steps in the current firing profile is displayed one after another.

When a firing is complete, Review Program is used to see the final temperature reached during the firing.

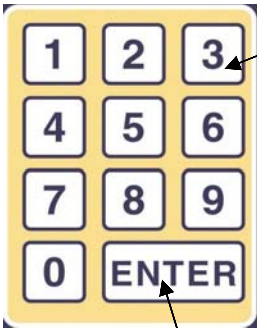
Review Segment - It is used to view the current firing segment or to skip from the current segment to the next segment. When Review Segment is pressed during a firing the current stage of the firing is displayed. If it is pressed in between firings, STOP will flash and then the current temperature will be displayed. When you press **REVIEW SEG** twice you will see the program set point temperature. When you press it three times you will see the control board temperature.

Other - There are several "**Other**" options

- Reset feature RSET
- Cone Lookup Table CONE
- Controller ID Id
- 16 step program 16-S (only comes up if you have VARY-FIRE Program #5 in active memory or if you have an EASY-FIRE program in active memeory)
- Cone temperature offsets CNOS
- Temperature scales °F or °C CHG°
- Error codes ON or OFF ERCd
- Thermocouple offset TCOS
- Board temperature bd T

B.5 NUMBER KEYS Section

Contains the ENTER key and the number keys.



Numeric keys - Used for entering times, temperatures and other numbers. The number "1" is also used to acknowledge the ErrP error signal when you first turn the kiln on. Press "**1**", "**2**" or "**3**" while firing to change which thermocouple reading you see in the LED display.

-Press **5** while firing and see the current rate of climbing in degrees per hour. This is useful to look at near the end of the program so you can look on a cone chart to accurately see what temperature your kiln will shut off.

-Pressing the **7** key will run the amperage diagnostic routine displaying the amperage rating for each section of the kiln. If the kiln is not equipped with the optional current sensor all amperage readings will be zero.

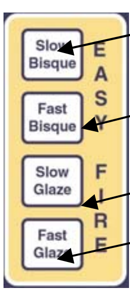
-Press **8** while firing to turn On/Off the ability to see which zones are firing by the LED display dots. Dot on the left is the top zone, dot in the center is the center zone, and the dot on the right is the bottom zone. Don't forget that the dot on the very far right is only on if you are running in Celcius temp scale.

-Press **0** while firing to see how much time has elapsed since the program began

Enter Key – Used to enter or acknowledge numbers and programs

B.6 EASY-FIRE Section

Choose the EASY-FIRE mode you want to use.



Slow Bisque - Used for setting a slow bisque firing profile.
** ~13 hours to fire to cone 04.**

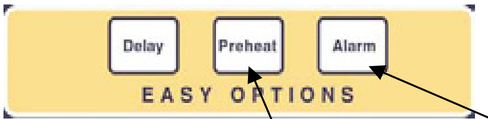
Fast Bisque - Used for setting a fast bisque firing profile.
** ~10 hours to fire to cone 04.**

Slow Glaze - Used for setting a slow glaze firing profile.
** ~7 hours to fire to cone 04.**

Fast Glaze - Used for setting a fast glaze firing profile.
** ~4 hours to fire to cone 04.**

B.7 EASY-OPTIONS Section

Choose the EASY options (Delay Time, Preheat Time, Alarm)



Alarm – Used to sound an audible alarm at a temperature that you specify. Pressing the **Alarm** key while firing will allow the reprogramming of the alarm to either a low or high temperature alarm.

Preheat – Used to put in a preheat time at 200F to allow the ceramic work to dry out completely.

Delay – Used to delay firing until you want the program to start

APPENDIX C

TERMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

Celsius - a temperature scale in which 0° is the freezing point and 100° the boiling point of water. Also called centigrade.

centigrade - a temperature scale in which 0° is the freezing point and 100° the boiling point of water. Also called Celsius.

cone - a pyramid shaped ceramic composite which bends and melts in the kiln to indicate the amount of heat work which has taken place in the kiln.

default – (or default settings) These are the settings that the Dynatrol comes programmed with from the factory. Using the Reset feature will return the Dynatrol to it's default settings.

final set point – in an all heating program with no cooling segments this would be the maximum temperature the kiln was programmed to reach. If there are programmed cooling or holding segments then the last segment's programmed set point is the final set point.

profile - A series of segments which define how the kiln temperature is to proceed through the firing. This is sometimes referred to as a program.

ramp-hold - A firing profile in which the temperature is programmed to increase to a specific temperature, hold for a period of time then repeat this sequence until a final temperature is reached.

segment - One unit of programming. Each segment on this control has a ramp (Deg per hour), a final set point temperature and a hold time.

set point – the target temperature within a programmed segment.

T/C or **t/c** - Abbreviation for thermocouple.

thermocouple (abbreviated **T/C** or **t/c**) - Temperature measurement sensor made of two dissimilar metals which are joined at one end; the end where they are joined is the temperature measuring end. The RED wire is always the negative lead in a thermocouple.

witness cone - a ceramic cone which bends to indicate the heat work which has been done.

APPENDIX D

DISPLAY MESSAGES (in alphabetical order)

ALRM - **Alarm**. When ALRM flashes in the display, an alarm temperature between 0° and 9999° may be entered. When the alarm is set to 9999°, it is turned off.

bd T - **Board Temperature**. Indicates the temperature of the Dynatrol's electronics (see Control Precautions).

°C1, °C1, °C1, through °C 8, Degrees Celsius temperature. In the VARY-FIRE Mode with the Celsius temperature scale selected, the controller is waiting for an end temperature to be entered for the segment. The numbers stand for the segment which is being programmed.

CHG° - **Change degrees** - When CHG° is displayed, press **ENTER** to select the temperature scale you would like to use, either Fahrenheit (°F) or Celsius (°C). The **1** key will toggle between °F and °C. When the scale you want to use is displayed, press **ENTER**.

CNOS - **Cone offset**. Press **ENTER** to adjust an individual cone shut off temperature plus or minus 50°F.

CONE - **Cone number**. When **CONE** is displayed, a cone number between 022 and 10 must be entered. This will be found in the Cone Table or the " EASY-FIRE" Mode.

°COS-**Degrees Centigrade offset** – seen when a Cone Offset or a Thermocouple offset is being programmed.

CPL - **Complete**. Indicates programming or some programming function is complete.

CPLT - **Complete**. Indicates a firing has been completed.

Decimal Point displayed in lower right-hand corner of display The temperature is displayed in degrees Celsius (°C).

Decimal Point displayed in center of display between 10's and 100's. A time in hours and minutes is being displayed.

dELA - **Delay**. Indicates the time in hours and minutes before the start of firing.

DIAG - **Diagnostics**. Located in the Hidden "Other" Menu. Pressing **ENTER** here turns zone 1's elements on for a few seconds followed by zone 2's elements, then zone 3's elements. A powered bottom will stay on during all three zone's test. If the kiln is improperly put together it will become apparent now.

ERCd. **Error Codes**. When ErCd is displayed, press enter to turn the Error Code function on or off. This function is located by pressing **Other** in the OPTIONS Section.

E A **Error**. Indicates a software error has occurred. The error codes are listed in **APPENDIX.**

E E. Software Error. Indicates a software error has occurred. Contact L&L Service. The error codes are listed in **APPENDIX.**

E 0, E 1, E 2 through E 8 means **Error**. An error has occurred; the error codes are listed in **APPENDIX.**

ErrP (flashing)- **Power Outage Error**. This is displayed during a firing if power to the kiln has been interrupted for less than a couple minutes, depending how far along in the firing you are. The error codes are listed in **APPENDIX.**

°F1, °F2, °F3 through °F8 In the VARY-FIRE Mode with the Fahrenheit temperature scale selected, the controller is waiting for an end temperature to be entered for the segment. The numbers stand for the segment which is being programmed.

°FOS - **Degrees Fahrenheit Offset** – seen when a Cone Offset or a Thermocouple offset is being programmed.

FAIL - **Thermocouple Failure**. The thermocouple is not connected to the controller or there may be a break in one of the thermocouple lead wires. If the thermocouple wire is broken, it must be replaced. When connecting the thermocouple, SEE THE COLOR CODING INFORMATION in Section 1.0 (Control Cautions).

FAN1, FAN2, FAN3, through FAN8. This message will appear during programming in the VARY-FIRE mode only after OP C (option C in the hidden "other" menu) has been chosen. "FAN" refers to your powered bottom (if you have one), and the number is the number of the segment you are currently programming. The powered bottom (FAN) can be programmed to be ON or OFF in each segment of the VARY-FIRE program.

F-bC **Fast Bisque**, One of the EASY-FIRE programs

F-GL **Fast Glaze**, One of the EASY-FIRE programs

HOLd or HLd - **Hold**. Indicates the holding time in hours and minutes at the end of a " EASY-FIRE" program. OR it may mean that you have just chosen the Preheat option and now the Dynatrol is asking how much hold time in the preheat setting you want to have.

HLd1, HLd2, HLd3 through HLd8 In the VARY-FIRE Mode the controller is waiting for a soak or hold time in hours and minutes to be entered for the segment. The numbers stand for the segment which is being programmed.

Id **– Identification.** Allows you to identify a particular control for use with KISS computer software.

IdLE **and Temperature – Flashing** The kiln is off, and the current temperature in the kiln is displayed. The Dynatrol is programmed to run using only one thermocouple.

IdLE, TC2, **and the current temperature flashing**- The kiln is off, and the current temperature in the kiln at thermocouple #2 is displayed. The Dynatrol is programmed to run using either two or three thermocouples.

NOTC - **Number of thermocouples.** Located in the Hidden "Other" Menu. Pressing **ENTER** here allows you to choose how many thermocouples (essentially how many zones) are in the kiln.

OFF. Press **ENTER** when displayed to turn the Error Codes, the Autolag, a Powered Bottom, or the "shut off" feature Off. Pressing the **1** key toggles between On and OFF.

ON (no dashes). Press **ENTER** when displayed to turn the function you are programming on. Pressing the **1** key toggles between On and OFF.

-On- (displayed with dashes). Displayed for about 10 to 15 seconds when the **START/STOP** button is pressed to begin a firing. The heating elements of the kiln will not begin heating until -On- disappears and the current kiln temperature is displayed. NOTE: Pressing any key besides **START/STOP** while -On- is displayed, will stop the firing. Pressing **START/STOP** after –ON- goes away will stop the firing.

OPA. **Option A**. DO NOT PRESS ENTER HERE. This option is not used with L&L's kiln systems.

OPB. **Option B**. DO NOT PRESS ENTER HERE. This option is not used with L&L's kiln systems.

OPC. **Option C**. Located in the Hidden "Other" Menu. Allows you to turn the powered bottom on or off in each segment of the VARY-FIRE mode.

PCT. **Percent**. Located in the Hidden "Other" Menu. You can set how often your powered bottom comes on based on a percent of when the bottom zone comes on.

PF. **Power Failure**. PF indicates the power to the kiln has been interrupted for a long enough time to effect the current firing. The kiln has shut down and the firing must be restarted.

PId. Located in the Hidden "Other" Menu. Pressing **ENTER** when you see this allows you to program a setting to help a heavily or unevenly loaded kiln fire faster.

RA1, RA2, RA3 through rA8 In the VARY-FIRE Mode the controller is waiting for an ramp temperature rise per hour to be entered for the segment. The numbers stand for the segment which is being programmed. The temperature is in °F/hr or °C/hr whichever has been selected. If °C has been selected, there will be a decimal point in the lower right-hand corner of the display.

RSET **Reset**. Press **Other** until rSEt is displayed. Then press **ENTER**. IDLE will be displayed indicating that the the Error Checking is ON. This is the Default settings.

16-S. **Sixteen step program option.** VARY-FIRE profile #5 must have been chosen, and now the Dynatrol must be told whether to automatically fire VARY-FIRE profile #6 immediately after the ending of #5 (16-S set to ON) or not (16-S set to OFF).

SAFT. **Saftey option.** DO NOT PRESS ENTER HERE. This option is not used with L&L's kiln systems

S-bC **Slow Bisque**. One of the EASY-FIRE programs

S-GL **Slow Glaze**, One of the EASY-FIRE programs

SEG. **Segment**. When SEG is displayed, the number of desired segments for a VARY-FIRE program should be entered.

SHTO. Located In the Hidden "Other" Menu. Set to either ON or OFF. Lets you choose between firing styles where:ON means that as soon as the hottest zone gets to the segment's set point the entire kiln switches to either the "hold time" or the next segment. OFF means that the Dynatrol will not let the hottest zone's temperature rise until the average temperature of the three zones reaches that segment's set point. Then the kiln can begin the "hold time" or the next segment.

STOP **- Stop**. Indicates firing has been stopped. Also may be displayed when the controller is first turned on. Also used like CPL with some functions.

USER. When USEr is displayed, one of the 6 user programs may be selected or programmed.

SSTP. **Skip Step**. Press **Review Seg, ENTER, ENTER** to skip to the next ramp segment in a VARY-FIRE program. Skip Step is not available with a EASY-FIRE program.

TCOS **Thermocouple offsets**. This is used to raise or lower the temperature indicated by any of the thermocouples. The maximum offset is 50°F. A positive offset is entered with 00 preceding the amount of offset and a negative offset is preceded with 90. This is the same as is done for entering cone offsets. When TCOS is displayed, press **ENTER** and TC1 will be displayed. Press enter and the current offset for the top thermocouple will be displayed. Press **ENTER** when the correct offset for the top thermocouples is displayed and then TC2 will be displayed. Repeat the process for TC2 and TC3.

Temperature - Continuously displayed The kiln is on (in either a VARY-FIRE or a EASY-FIRE program), and the current temperature in the kiln is displayed. The Dynatrol is programmed to run using only one thermocouple.

TC2 and the current temperature flashing- The kiln is on (in either a VARY-FIRE or a " EASY-FIRE" program), and the current temperature in the kiln at thermocouple #2 is displayed. The Dynatrol is programmed to run using either two or three thermocouples.

Time - Decreasing A delay start is in effect for a VARY-FIRE or a EASY-FIRE program. The time remaining before the kiln starts to heat is displayed.

Time - Temperature alternately flashing. The kiln is in either a hold phase of a VARY-FIRE segment or a hold phase at the end of an EASY-FIRE Profile. The numbers displayed are the remaining time and the current kiln temperature.

APPENDIX E

EASY-FIRE TEMPERATURE PROFILES

These charts tell what the EASY-FIRE programs do to your kiln when you choose one of them. These charts will also be good reference points for writing your own programs in the VARY-FIRE mode. These charts are for cones 07 through 04 and cones 5, 6, 7, and 10. Other cone numbers will work as well in your own programs.

TIP

NOTE: No delays, preheats. or final soaks are shown. When these programs are fired the actual final temperatures will vary as the Dynatrol adjusts itself based on how quickly it is climbing to that final temperature. This would not be the case for VARY-FIRE programs that you develop and input yourself. Also note that all these programs end on segment 7 rather than start on segment 1. This is due to the way the Orton feature works in the EASY-FIRE mode and is not relevant to your own programming in the VARY-FIRE mode. (Segment #7 in the EASY-FIRE mode is a special segment that incorporates the Orton software and so it must be the last segment of every " EASY-FIRE" profile). Start your VARY-FIRE profiles on segment 1.

CONE 07

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			**07**	**1787°F**		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2.25	5	150	250		1.20
4	200	1000		3.75	6	400	1537		3.22
5	100	1100		1	7	120	1787		2.08
6	180	1537		2.43					
7	80	1787	0	3.13				0	
			Total	12.55				Total	6.50
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		1.50	6	570	1537		2.57
4	300	1000		2.50	7	200	1787		1.25
5	150	1100		0.67					
6	180	1537		2.43					
7	108	1787	0	2.31				0	
			Total	9.41				Total	3.82

NOTE: All the programs shown are written to accommodate the fastest possible empty kilns. THE NUMBERS DO NOT REPRESENT TYPICAL KILN FIRING TIMES WITH A LOAD. Your kiln can take considerably longer (as much as 4 times) to fire than the times shown here.

CONE 06

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			**06**	**1819°F**		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2.25	5	150	250		1.20
4	200	1000		3.75	6	400	1569		3.30
5	100	1100		1	7	120	1819		2.08
6	180	1569		2.61					
7	80	1819	0	3.13				0	
			Total	12.73				Total	6.58
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		1.50	6	570	1569		2.63
4	300	1000		2.50	7	200	1819		1.25
5	150	1100		0.67					
6	180	1569		2.61					
7	108	1819	0	2.31				0	
			Total	9.59				Total	3.88

CONE 05

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			**05**	**1891°F**		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2.25	5	150	250		1.20
4	200	1000		3.75	6	400	1641		3.48
5	100	1100		1	7	120	1891		2.08
6	180	1641		3.01					
7	80	1891	0	3.13				0	
			Total	13.13				Total	6.76
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		1.50	6	570	1641		2.75
4	300	1000		2.50	7	200	1891		1.25
5	150	1100		0.67					
6	180	1641		3.01					
7	108	1891	0	3.13				0	
			Total	10.81				Total	4

NOTE: All the programs shown are written to accommodate the fastest possible empty kilns. THE NUMBERS DO NOT REPRESENT TYPICAL KILN FIRING TIMES WITH A LOAD. Your kiln can take considerably longer (as much as 4 times) to fire than the times shown here.

CONE 04

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			04	1926°F		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2	5	150	250		1
4	200	1000		4	6	400	1676		4
5	100	1100		1	7	120	1926		2
6	180	1676		3					
7	80	1926	0	3				0	
			Total	13				Total	7
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		2	6	570	1676		3
4	300	1000		3	7	200	1926		1
5	150	1100		1					
6	180	1676		3					
7	108	1926	0	2				0	
			Total	11				Total	4

CONE 5

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			5	2165°F		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2.25	5	150	250		1.20
4	200	1000		3.75	6	400	1915		4.16
5	100	1100		1	7	120	2165		2.08
6	180	1915		4.43					
7	80	2165	0	3.13				0	
			Total	14.66				Total	7.44
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		1.50	6	570	1915		3.24
4	300	1000		2.50	7	200	2165		1.25
5	150	1100		0.67					
6	180	1915		4.53					
7	108	2165	0	2.31				0	
			Total	11.51				Total	4.49

NOTE: All the programs shown are written to accommodate the fastest possible empty kilns. THE NUMBERS DO NOT REPRESENT TYPICAL KILN FIRING TIMES WITH A LOAD. Your kiln can take considerably longer (as much as 4 times) to fire than the times shown here.

CONE 6

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			6	**2199°F**		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2.25	5	150	250		1.20
4	200	1000		3.75	6	400	1949		4.25
5	100	1100		1	7	120	2199		2.08
6	180	1949		4.72					
7	80	2199	0	3.13				0	
			Total	14.85				Total	7.53
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		1.50	6	570	1949		3.30
4	300	1000		2.50	7	200	2199		1.25
5	150	1100		0.67					
6	180	1949		4.72					
7	108	2199	0	2.31				0	
			Total	11.70				Total	4.55

CONE 7

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			7	**2228°F**		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2.25	5	150	250		1.20
4	200	1000		3.75	6	400	1978		4.32
5	100	1100		1	7	120	2228		2.08
6	180	1978		4.88					
7	80	2228	0	3.13				0	
			Total	15				Total	7.60
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		1.50	6	570	1978		3.35
4	300	1000		2.50	7	200	2228		1.25
5	150	1100		0.67					
6	180	1978		4.88					
7	108	2228	0	2.31				0	
			Total	11.86				Total	4.60

NOTE: All the programs shown are written to accommodate the fastest possible empty kilns. THE NUMBERS DO NOT REPRESENT TYPICAL KILN FIRING TIMES WITH A LOAD. Your kiln can take considerably longer (as much as 4 times) to fire than the times shown here.

CONE 10

Slow Bisque Firing Profile for cone			**10**	**2345°F**		**Slow Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	80	250		2	5	150	250		1
4	200	1000		4	6	400	2095		5
5	100	1100		1	7	120	2345		2
6	180	2095		6					
7	80	2345	0	3				0	
			Total	16				Total	8
	Fast Bisque Firing Profile					**Fast Glaze** Firing Profile			
Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time in Hours	Segment	Rate°F /hr	Temperature °F	Hold	Time Hours
3	120	250		2	6	570	2095		4
4	300	1000		3	7	200	2345		1
5	150	1100		1					
6	180	2095		6					
7	108	2345	0	2				0	
			Total	13				Total	5

NOTE: All the programs shown are written to accommodate the fastest possible empty kilns. THE NUMBERS DO NOT REPRESENT TYPICAL KILN FIRING TIMES WITH A LOAD. Your kiln can take considerably longer (as much as 4 times) to fire than the times shown here.

APPENDIX G

ERROR CODES

Error Code	**Description**	**Quick View** NOTE: “>” means greater than, “<” means less than
E 0 RPCN	Software Error. Recheck the selected program, and reprogram if necessary. You may have to contact the L&L for new software.	
E 1	The temperature is increasing less than 12 degrees per hour during a ramp segment, where the temperature is programmed to increase. This slow rate must persist for 22.5 minutes before the error is displayed. This can be caused by low power to the kiln, aged elements, etc. See the kiln Troubleshooting Guide to check for all the things that could cause slow heat up. It is one of the most common error codes. Try running the kiln with the error codes turned off. Note that Err1 is only a possibility during a ramp.	Ramp segment Temp. increase < 12°F/hr Persists > 22.5 min.
E 2	During a hold segment the temperature rises to greater than 50 degrees above the hold temperature which was set. The temperature must stay 50 degrees above this set temperature for 18 seconds before the error is displayed.	Hold segment 50°F above set temp. Persists > 18 sec.

E 3	During a hold segment the temperature is more than 50 degrees below the hold temperature which was set. The temperature must stay 50 degrees below this set temperature for 18 seconds before the error is displayed.	Hold segment 50°F below set temp. Persists > 18 sec.
E 4	The temperature is more than 50 degrees above the previous hold temperature during a ramp segment where the temperature is programmed to decrease. The temperature must stay 50 degrees above this set temperature for 18 seconds before the error is displayed.	Decreasing Ramp segment 50°F above last hold temp. Persists > 18 sec.
E 5	The temperature is more than 50 degrees below the local setpoint temperature during a ramp segment where the temperature is programmed to decrease. The temperature must stay 50 degrees below this set temperature for 18 seconds before the error is displayed.	Decreasing Ramp segment 50°F below local setpoint temp. Persists > 18 sec.
E 6	A Negative temperature is displayed. This generally indicates the thermocouple is connected incorrectly. To correct this situation, ensure the red and yellow wires are connected correctly to the controller and at all junctions. You can identify the red lead on an unmarked thermocouple with a magnet because a magnet will be attracted to the red lead.	(-) displayed
E 7	The temperature is more than 50 degrees above the local setpoint temperature during a ramp segment where the temperature is programmed to increase. The temperature must stay 50 degrees above this set temperature for 18 seconds before the error is displayed.	Increasing Ramp segment 50°F above local setpoint temp. Persists > 18 sec.
E 8	When using the EASY-FIRE Mode, the temperature is decreasing during the last ramp segment. This could indicate that (if provided on your kiln) that a kiln sitter has turned the kiln off or that the lid was up or the peepholes open or some other physical thing is causing the kiln to decrease in temperature.	Cone fire mode only Temp. decreasing during last ramp segment
E 9	There is amismatch between the thermocouple type selected in the software and the jumper for the thermocouple type. See section 4.4.12 to correct. (Also see section 1.0 about thermocouple extension wire).	
E 22	E-22 appears if one of the thermocouple's connection wires is reversed- i.e. the red wire is where the yellow wire is, and the yellow wire is where the red wire is. When the wires are reversed on a thermocouple circuit the temperature it reads actually falls rather than rises as the thermocouple is heated. Eventually this leads to it's reading a negative number and this trips the error code. E-22 is the same as E--6. To fix it first look for which thermocouple reading is falling while the kiln is heating up. Press 1,2,3 while it is running to see the different thermocouple temperatures. 1 is always the top, 3 is the bottom. 2 is the bottom on a two section kiln. Then unplug the kiln and open the control cover and follow the wires for whichever thermocouple was falling. Look for where the wire's colors are reversed; at each connection it is red to red, and yellow to yellow. If all looks well, the thermocouple itself is probably flipped in the ceramic thermocouple connection block. Remove that thermocouple's mounting screws and washers. Loosen the two center screws on the thermocouple connection block. Pull the block off, turn the two heavy wires of the thermocouple itself over and slide the connection block back on. Retighten the two center screws and remount. Test it to see if that fixed it.	
PF	Continuous PF in display. Indicates a long term power outage. The kiln has been shut down. Press **1** to clear the display.	

ERRP	ErrP and the current temperature are alternately flashing. To clear the display, press the 1 key. If a firing was in progress, the kiln will continue to fire even though this message is flashing. This error can also happen as a result of RF noise that resets the microprocessor. If this is suspected, the control panel should be returned to L&L for testing and possible modification.	
E d	This is "Error Difference." Errd indicates that a difference of more than a 100 degrees has been detected between any of the thermocouples and the set point. When Errd is displayed the firing will be terminated. Errd will not be detected if the error codes (ErCd) have been turned off. The reason for having Errd is to insure against a case where, for instance, the top (tC1) and bottom (tC3) thermocouples have been inadvertently switched. In such a case the top thermocouple (tC1), while placed in the bottom section, could be calling for heat and the heat will be delivered to the bottom of the kiln causing a grossly uneven firing. The first thing to test, if you have this error code, is that the thermocouples are placed in the proper sections. To do this take each thermocouple out (while the kiln is cold) and heat it with a match while pressing the 1, 2, or 3 button on the control to read the appropriate thermocouple. Top should be #1, Middle should be #2 and Bottom should be #3. Another potential cause of this error code could be the sections stacked in the wrong order, or plugged into the control's receptacles in the wrong order. If not this, a bad element in one of the sections. Check to see if the elements are firing. Check resistance on the elements (see the troubleshooting guide or the general kiln instructions or contact L&L for information on this). Another possibility is a bad contactor or bad receptacle or loose wire. Using a digital multi-meter that allows you to test voltage in an outlet and resistance in a circuit (available from any good electronics or hardware store) you, your electrician, or your local kiln distributor can see whether a circuit is actually delivering power to the receptacles on the control box, and exactly what the resistance of your elements are.	
E E	A hardware error has been detected by the controller software. The controller must be returned for service.	Hardware error

APPENDIX G

HOW THREE ZONE CONTROL IS USED ON A TWO, FOUR AND FIVE SECTION KILN AND WITH A POWERED BOTTOM

On kilns with four heating sections the center two heating sections are tied together as one center zone. On kilns with five heating sections the center three heating sections are tied together as one center zone. Each section still has its own separate contactor, but the center zone control output controls one contactor on a three section kiln, two contactors on a four section kiln and three contactors on a five section kiln. We suggest placing the center zone thermocouple (TC2) in either of the two middle sections on a four section kiln and in the center section on a five section kiln. You can of course experiment to achieve optimal results.

Kilns with two zones typically use inputs (thermocouples) and outputs (receptacles) 1 and 2 even though we usually have a third unused circuit on the control. If you add a section you may want to enable the three zone control (see the section on programming) and possibly add a thermocouple. On kilns with powered bottoms the powered bottom is controlled off the bottom zone control output. This would be the case of a kiln with three or more sections. In the case of a two section kiln with a powered bottom the powered bottom is controlled off the center zone control (TC2). This acts as a two zone kiln.

APPENDIX H

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

H.1 During programming of a firing, I typed a wrong number. How do I correct this?

Before pressing **ENTER,** enter zero until all zeros are displayed, then enter the correct number. If you have already pressed **ENTER,** you must continue to enter the rest of the program as you would have, then you must start over again to program properly, fixing your mistake this time around..

H.2 How do I clear the ERRP/ PF from the display?

Press the **"1"** key. After several seconds the current temperature will be displayed. The amount of time the last firing took or STOP may be displayed before the current temperature. If the ERRP/ PF message is flashing with the alternate display being the temperature then it means that the kiln is still firing after a brief power interruption.

H.3 I am getting the E d message. What is wrong?

More than likely the kiln was set up improperly. NOTE: It is absolutely necessary to match the proper ring with the proper control box outlet and proper thermocouple. If these are mismatched the kiln will not operate properly and you will get the E d display showing that one of the zones is way off set point. Thermocouples, cords and receptacles are all marked for identification. The top zone ring, outlet and thermocouple are all marked #1. In three ring kilns the middle zone is #2 and the bottom is #3. In four ring kilns the middle zone is #2 and #3; the bottom is #4. In five ring kilns the middle is #2, #3 and #4 and the bottom is #5. You can easily test to make sure the thermocouples are properly located by putting a match to one at a time and checking the temperature rise on the control for that thermocouple.

H.4 I am getting the E 1 message. What is wrong?

This is the most common error message. It means the kiln is rising in temperature too slowly and can be caused by a variety of things. In older kilns it is probably a result of elements being aged or one or more elements not firing for some reason. The first thing to check is element resistance and continuity. See our troubleshooting guide for details. If this happens in a newer kiln it is still a good idea to check the elements. One problem we have found is that the thermocouple lead wire was pinched and was creating a short circuit (meaning that the controls was reading whatever temperature was at the pinched point and so, as far as the control was concerned, the kiln wasn't heating up. The way to test for such a condition is first of all to observe that the control is showing a temperature that is greatly different than what you can tell is in the kiln. The other better way is to disconnect the thermocouple and see if the display says FAIL . If it does then it means there is no short circuit in the thermocouple circuit. This could also happen with a burned thermocouple connection wire (say if the yellow wire touched the kiln case and the wire insulation burned off). Note that Err1 is only a possibility during a ramp. A common problem is that one of the sections is lagging. Try to find out which section is lagging. If it is the bottom (fairly typical) you could try a 2" layer of calcium silicate under the kiln bottom (this is very inexpensive insulation that is quite hard and non-compressible) or even another brick bottom. If you are using a vent try turning it off towards the high end of the firing cycle. (NOTE: This is OK to do on an L&L Vent-Torr but with some bottom mounted vents you are not supposed to do this or you will burn up the motor). Make sure your peepholes are closed at high fire.. Make sure kiln is loaded evenly, more in the bottom of the kiln than the top will make it fire very slowly also. One last thing to consider is the voltage available to the kiln when it is on and running. Get an electrician to check this at the kiln and be sure it comes pretty close to the kiln's label. Low voltage can cause slow heat ups and voltage lower than 208VAC can also cause problems with the microprocessor in the Dynatrol as well.

H.5 My kiln takes longer to fire than I think it should.

See suggestions above in E 1 troubleshooting.

H.6 My program takes longer to complete than I expected. What is happening?

The controller actually accomplishes the temperature rise by establishing what's called a traveling set point. The traveling set point is set by the controller at the initial kiln temperature, and it is increased (or decreased) at a rate equal to the ramp rate you have chosen. Anytime the kiln temperature is below this traveling set point the heating elements of the kiln are turned on. If the temperature is above the traveling set point the heating elements are turned off. When both the traveling set point and the average of the measured temperatures reach the first soak temperature, the hold phase begins or the next ramp rate begins. (That is called a guaranteed soak). It means that a program might take longer than the theoretical time you have programmed into it.

H.7 My kiln seems to be much hotter than the thermocouples indicate. Or the kiln seems to be going to slow (by the readings on the controller).

This could be serious. Check to see that the thermocouples are inserted at least 1 to 1-1/2" into the kiln. If the tips of the thermocouples are buried in the kiln wall insulation they will obviously read at a lower temperature than the inside of the kiln. **THIS COULD LEAD TO AN OVERFIRING OF THE KILN!** Another possibility is that there is a short circuit in the thermocouple lead wire. See the above Err1 question to check the thermocouple circuit.

H.8 Is there a guaranteed soak?

Yes. This means that if the kiln does not reach temperature in the time you assign in a ramp it will not start the hold portion of that segment until the kiln reaches the set point temperature. This also means that the actual time to fire may take longer than you have programmed into the kiln (if it takes longer to get to a particular temperature than you think it ought to take).

H.9 I turned on the controller and FAIL is displayed. What does this mean?

One or more of the thermocouples are not connected to the controller. When connecting the thermocouple, connect the negative wire (on Type K in non-European kilns this is RED) to the connector with the negative (minus) sign under it. Connect the positive wire (on Type K non-European kilns this isYELLOW) to the connector with the positive (plus) sign under it. (See Section 1.0 for information on Type S and European kilns). Also there may be a break in one of the thermocouple lead wires, if so, the thermocouple lead wire must be replaced. Make sure all thermocouple connections are very secure and tight and that there is a direct touching of the thermocouple lead wire with the actual wire inside the thermocouple. (See I.21)

H.10 I keep burning out thermocouples. What is wrong?

Thermocouples, like elements are a consumable item. They will burn out over time. If you are firing to high temperatures (Cone 5 and above) you should consider either an 8 gauge thermocouple with a ceramic protection tube or Type S thermocouples. A reduction atmosphere (the lack of enough oxygen in the kiln to thoroughly burn off all impurities) attacks elements and thermocouples. Speedy firings especially as the kiln climbs to 1100°F, will not give enough time to burn out these impurities. This is made worse if there is no ventilation to the kiln. An open peephole or three may be enough, or a downdraft venting system like L&L's Vent Sure system may be what you need for a good, clean, oxidizing atmosphere.

H.11 How can I find out the final temperature which was reached during a cone firing?

At the end of an EASY-FIRE firing, the current kiln temperature and CPLT will be alternately flashing in the display. Press **ENTER** or **START/STOP**. Then press **Review Program**, the final temperature will display. This final temperature will be retained until the next firing or until the controller is reprogrammed. In a VARY-FIRE program the Dynatrol will fire to the temperature programmed.

H.12 My kiln underfires, turns off before the DynaTrol reaches its set point .

If you have a Dawson Kiln Sitter as a back up safety device be sure that the cone in it is at least two to three cones higher than your final set point temperature. Remember that, when using the DynaTrol control, the optional kiln sitter is only safety back up controls. You do not want it to actually actuate. If you have a Dawson Kiln Sitter/Timer, be sure the time is set higher than the expected length of your program. See above answer about the kiln sitter safetey control. Also you may need to calibrate; to adjust the cone settings with the cone offset. Note that it is common for thermocouples to "drift" in their readings. As this happens the cone offset or the thermocouple offset can compensate for this. Sometimes fire with witness cones so you can compare what the control did to the actual performance of cones.

H.13 Why use a soak time or make the kiln go slow?

Most ceramics achieves its characteristics not so much by what temperature it reaches but by how much "heat-work" is put into it. A long soak at a lower cone can often develop the bisque or glaze better. In addition a soak period almost always will improve the uniformity of the firing throughout the kiln. A soak period gives the entire load of ware time to absorb the radiant heat that is projected from the elements. If you simply rise to a certain temperature and then shut the kiln off (as is typical of a manual kiln sitter operation) then the center of the kiln may not have had a chance to absorb as much heat as the ware around the perimeter. The same would be true for a thick piece of pottery if it was just heated to a temperature and then cooled. The middle of the piece would never get to the same temperature as the outside of the piece, and in extreme situations, if it was heated very quickly, could cause the piece to explode. You may have experienced the fact that an older kiln, with slow firing elements may in fact have given you better results. This is because the entire kiln has had a chance to even itself out as it approached final cone. A slow heat up will result in "cleaner" bisque. It will give the kiln time to burn out impurities like sulfur and carbon out of the clay. These impurities can cause pitting and other problems when you subsequently glaze the ware if they have not been given sufficient time to burn off during the bisque.

H.14 Can you change a program segment while running a program?

No. You must first Stop the program by hitting **START/STOP**. Then change the program. Then re-start the program. The control will automatically start from where you were previously. For instance if the kiln temperature is at 1200°F and this is segment No 2 it will restart from that point in the program. You can advance to the next segment (in a VARY-FIRE Program). See the directions in under Skip Step in the View Section.

H.15 When the control flashes TC2 alternating with a temperature does it read that until you toggle to a different thermocouple?

The control is continually reading the temperatures in all three zones. However it only displays one temperature at a time. It does not scroll automatically. To manually scroll to the different thermocouples hit either 1, 2 or 3. The default display is thermocouple #2.

H.16 Is there a lead zone?

No. Each zone is controlled independently with a separate input (each thermocouple), and a separate output (the signal from the Dynatrol to one of the contactors to send or not to send power to the elements. The output of the zones can be quite different. For instance the top zone (#1) may be calling for 75% output while the middle zone (#2) is calling for 35% output while the bottom zone (#3) is calling for 90% output. This percentage is the percent of time that a zone is on, out of the total time elapsed. This is a time proportioning control.

H.17 Is this a time proportioning control?

Yes. The control determines what the percent of output (0-100%) is required to properly heat the kiln. It then converts this into amount of time or and time off that the contactor should be firing. This is different than current proportioning which would send a proportional current to adjust an continually adjustable SCR power control for instance.

H.18 What happens when I turn off the Error Codes?

It is O.K. to do this. However, you will not get certain operator protections which might prevent you from getting a poorly fired kiln. They can be turned off if you are doing special firings, such as jewelry or glass firing where the kiln is left open. This will also turn off the Dynamic Zone Control, and the E d function when the Error Codes are turned off. This turns off most error functions so that kiln is not affected by these built in checks. It eliminates nuisance shut downs but side steps built in "fool proofing". The only Error codes that this does not turn off are E b, FAIL, and ErrP/ PF in both the EASY-FIRE and VARY-FIRE modes. In addition E 1 (indicating slow temperature rise) and E 8 (temperature falling) is not turned off in the last segment of an " EASY-FIRE" program. This is because the built in calculations would make no sense if the kiln were firing too slowly.

H.19 What happens when a thermocouple fails?

If the top (TC1) thermocouple fails then the top (TC1) and middle (TC2) work together from the TC2 thermocouple. If the bottom (TC3) fails then the bottom (TC3) and middle (TC2) work together from the TC2 thermocouple. If the middle (TC2) fails then the top (TC1) and middle (TC2) work together from the TC1 thermocouple.

I.20 One or more of the thermocouples reads FAIL. What is wrong?

One or more of the thermocouple circuits has failed. Chances are this is a bad thermocouple. Even if the thermocouple looks OK there might be a microscopic crack that could fail intermittently. A simple test to see if the problem is in the thermocouple itself or in the thermocouple wire is to do the following: Disconnect the thermocouple from the yellow lead/extension wire that attaches at the cold end of the thermocouple. Touch together the red and yellow leads coming out of the yellow lead/extension wire (note: this is very low milli-voltage and is not dangerous). This will complete the thermocouple circuit and eliminate the actual thermocouple from consideration. Now press the #1 button, If the FAIL message goes away then you know it is a bad thermocouple. If the FAIL message does not go away then the next thing to check is make sure that the thermocouple is properly attached to the connection board on the control. If this looks OK then the yellow extension wire should be replaced or the Dynatrol might have a problem. (See I.9)

H.21 What is PID and can the PID settings be changed?

PID stands for "Proportional, Integral, Derivative" This is a mathematical calculus function built into the control that proportions the amount of power going to the output device (contactor) as the kiln approaches set point temperature. It is used to prevent overshoot which you would get if the control did not turn off until it reached the set point. The values are fixed and based on average kiln conditions. Because most kiln conditions are fairly similar and the ramps are very slow by most industrial standards not much flexibility needs to be built into the PID constants. There is no "adaptive tuning." The values for the PID are hard programmed into the control and can not be changed. They are optimized for ceramics. If you are using the control for another application and you find that the control gives you some overshoot try a step in your program that is a very slow ramp for the last few degrees of the program. For instance if you wanted to get to 1800°F without overshoot have the program go to 1775°F and then take 15 minutes to ramp to 1800°F .

NOTE: Do not confuse the PID talked about here with the "PID" setting in the Hidden Other Menu.

H.22 Is there any way to know what the set point actually is?

Yes. Press Review Segment twice while the kiln is firing and the set point will appear.

H.23 What happens if there is a power outage?

If the power outage lasts for less than ½ hour the control should pick up where it left off unless the kiln temperature has dropped more than 250°F or, if it is within 100°F of the end of the firing then only a 100°F drop off is allowed. If the program automatically aborts based on the above logic then it must be manually restarted. If you restart the program, the control will find out where the temperature is and will start from there. If you get a power outage you will see an ErrP or PF error code. This must be reset by hitting any button on the key pad.

H.24 The display is jumpy. What about Thermocouple noise?

The negative lead of the thermocouples are automatically grounded to the safety ground. This typically is able to remove thermocouple noise from the system. Thermocouple noise is typically caused by stray electrical currents induced into the low voltage thermocouple circuits by the kiln elements. It shows up as "jumpy" temperature readings on the control. A little of this is OK but if the readings are very jumpy it can confuse the control. If you see this sort of "jumpiness" check all ground connections involved for tightness and continuity. If the ground is OK and the thermocouples are in the factory provided holes, in your kiln about one and one half inches, then contact L&L or a certified repairman for assistance. NOTE: thermocouples in homemade holes that may be positioned too close to the elements, could receive more of the inductive current generated by the elements, therefore receive more noise (NOTE: In extreme cases L&L can retrofit your control box with a noise suppresser and even wire the box so that the control voltage is feed through a separate 120 volt cord).

H.25 Do thermocouples need to be grounded or ungrounded?

They must be ungrounded thermocouples. Grounded thermocouples will cause problems with this control. The negative leads of the thermocouples are connected to the kiln ground. (See above). Be sure there is only one ground to your kiln. This is normally through the plug or main power connection all the way to the "earth ground". The control is grounded and RF noise generated in the thermocouples (from the elements and other sources) is drawn into the sheath ground and into the negative lead of the thermocouple and then ultimately out to earth ground.

H.26 Can I overide the end of a firing to gain temperature?

Lets say you just fired a load and you can see through your peephole (looking at a witness cone) that your load did not fire to full maturity. Restart the program with a higher cone value and then manually shut off kiln when the witness cone starts to mature. Use the cone offset feature next time to eliminate this problem before it happens again.

H.27 I hear the contactors clicking on and off when the kiln is at a low temperature and even though my set point is way above the temperature readings. Why?

The control only allows power for about 1/3 of the time when the kiln temperature is below 500°F. This is because kilns are generally overpowered for these low temperatures and the control would constantly be overshooting any lower temperature set points without this feature.

H.28 What does it mean when the display flashes?

The Dynatrol is trying to give more information than can fit on just one displayed message. Either the message cycles over and over again, like IdLE, TC2, current temperature, or the messages continue to flash by quickly, as in the case of what happens when you press the Review Program button.

H.29 What does CPL mean?

"**CPL**" means that programming an option or a sequence of steps has been completed.

H.30 How do you turn off the audible alarm?

The alarm is an audible signal. You can turn it off (after it turns on) by pressing **ENTER**. Set it for **9999** to disable it.

H.31 How do I get information about my firing?

When the program has completed it will flash CPLT and the time it took to get to temperature. After pressing **STOP** you can press **REVIEW PROGRAM** to get more information about the firing. The display will scroll through the following: the Cone you set it at, the actual temperature that the kiln achieved, what speed you had it set for, and hold time etc. This only works in the EASY-FIRE mode. In the VARY-FIRE mode, if you press **REVIEW PROGRAM** you see what you programmed only. This information will be retained in memory until the control is reprogrammed.

H.32 What ambient temperature conditions do I need for the control?

Do not operate the controller in temperatures above 125°F or below 0°F or 0°C. Actually a little hotter or colder will still be within tolerance of the components. The real component rating is near 160°F . If you are using the Celsius temperature scale 0°C is the lowest operating temperature possible as the Dynatrol thinks a negative temperature displayed is because of a thermocouple installed backwards, not because it could be cold outside. and . (NOTE: The board components are rated for 50°C below zero so the control (and kiln) can be stored outside in a covered area).

H.33 The kiln did not begin soaking when it should have.

The fact that the kiln did not start to soak when its seems like it should could be due to the fact that an average of all the process variables (TC readings) and the traveling set point have to reach set point temperature before the hold begins. Or the dynatrol has computed a higher temp (than you expected it to) to equate to the cone # fired to and the rate of climb… Once it gets to where it determines the cone is , it will begin the hold.

H. 34 The thermocouples seem to be off according to the cones.

If you had an ErrP or PF message while firing, and the kiln temperature went down briefly, the cones may have misrepresented actual temperature for the following reason: If the temperature decreases in the kiln temporarily after the cone begins to form a glass (starts to mature even though it may not be visible) the decrease in temperature could "freeze" the cone and prevent it from operating properly. Cone temperatures also vary according to how quickly the kiln climbs in temperature. Thermocouples do age, sometimes rapidly, and may not read like they used to. Try a cone offset to raise or lower the entire kiln's final temperature for the cone you have programmed. Or try a thermocouple offset if it is just one or two zones that are consistently hotter or cooler than they should be.

H.35 How do I ramp down?

You must use the VARY-FIRE Mode. The control will change the path of the firing profile in the direction of the next segment's set point. In other words if the current segment has a set point of 500°F and the following segment has a set point of 1000°F then the control will ramp the set point in the "up" direction. Conversely if the current segment has a set point of 1000°F and the next segment has a setpoint of 500°F then the control will ramp the set point in the "down" direction. See the specific instructions in the Programming section under VARY-FIRE.

H.36 Does the control work on 50 HZ?

Yes. The control will work on either 50 Hz or 60 Hz. The electrical cycle does not affect any timing circuits in the control.

H.37 TEMPERATURE READINGS VS CONES

Automatic controls are great tools. *They are not complete tools, however.* They base what they do on electrical signals generated by the thermocouples that get interpreted by the electronic control as specific temperatures. There are four inherent problems with this. First, the thermocouples are only measuring temperature at the very tip of the thermocouple. Typically this is placed an inch or two in from the inside surface of the kiln. The thermocouple is usually not measuring the temperature in the middle of the kiln. Second, there is an inherent error in the thermocouple of a few degrees either way. Third, thermocouples drift in their accuracy over time. Fourth, and perhaps most important, thermocouples only measure temperature. For ceramics you are really interested in "heat-work" or the amount of heat that is absorbed by your ware over time. It is like baking a cake. Absolute temperature is only one factor in the successful baking. For all these reasons we highly recommend the use of witness cones in every firing. These will tell you what really happened in the kiln. We suggest using a set of three witness cones in each zone for the kiln. At the absolute minimum use one witness cone per firing to check basic performance of the kiln and control. Then using this accurate information you can use the many features of the DynaTrol to conform the performance of the control to your exact needs. You may want to try firing the kiln with all the preset programs with witness cones to see just how the type of program affects the cones you will be using. Keep good records and get to know your kiln, the Dynatrol and how the combination of these two things with the kind of ware that you fire all work together. **There is no substitute for experimentation and personal individualized documentation.**

APPENDIX I

VARY-FIRE DEFAULT PROGRAM'S TEMPERATURE PROFILES

USER 1: Medium Speed Glass Slumping ProfileSegment	Rate	degF	Hold
1	500	250	00:12
2	500	500	00:12
3	500	750	00:12
4	600	1100	00:05
5	600	1220	00:05
6	9999	1000	01:00
7	90	970	01:00
8	120	750	00:01

USER 2: Medium Speed Glass Tack Fuse Profile

Segment	Rate	degF	Hold
1	500	250	00:12
2	500	500	00:12
3	500	750	00:12
4	600	1250	00:20
5	600	1350	00:10
6	9999	1000	01:00
7	90	970	01:00
8	120	750	00:01

USER 3: Medium Speed Full Fuse Profile

Segment	Rate	degF	Hold
1	500	250	00:12
2	500	500	00:12
3	500	750	00:12
4	600	1250	00:20
5	600	1480	00:15
6	9999	1000	01:00
7	90	970	01:00
8	120	750	00:01

USER 4: Glass Bead Annealing Profile

Segment	Rate	degF	Hold
1	9999	960	08:00
2	9999	960	00:40

USER 5: Lost Wax Burnout Profile

Segment	Rate	degF	Hold
1	9999	300	01:00
2	100	350	00:30
3	350	1350	01:30
4	300	900	99:99

USER 6: Slow Cooling Cycle for Cone 6 Glazes

Segment	Rate	degF	Hold
1	9999	2232	00:00
2	9999	1900	00:00
3	150	1500	00:00

APPENDIX J
FIRING PROGRAM BLANK

Firing Program Number: ____________

Segment	Rate	Temperature	Hold
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			

Firing Program Number: ____________

Segment	Rate	Temperature	Hold
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			

Firing Program Number: ____________

Segment	Rate	Temperature	Hold
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			

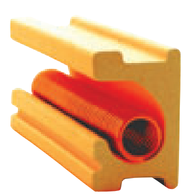
Firing Program Number: ____________

Segment	Rate	Temperature	Hold
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

VENT

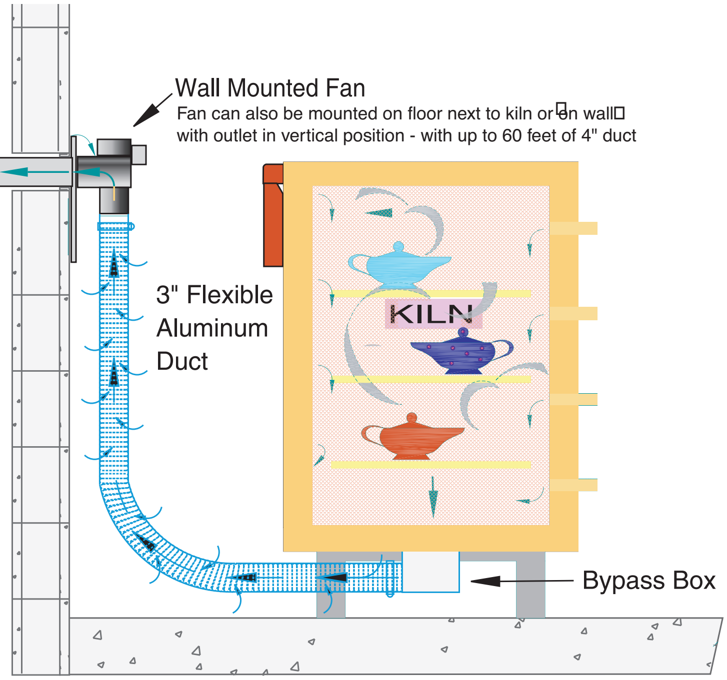
L&L Kilns
hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented
hard ceramic
element holders
protect your kiln.

Vent-Sure Downdraft Vent

Downdraft Vent for L&L Kilns



FEATURES

Type of Vent: Downdraft - pulls air from the bottom of a kiln to ventilate fumes from the kiln under vacuum. Vents kiln fumes to the outside. The Vent-Sure downdraft ventilation system produces better firing by promoting higher temperature uniformity in the kiln - up to a 1/2 cone improvement.

Voltage and Amperage: 120 Volts at 1.37 Amps.

On/Off Switch and Cord: Switch on six foot cord.

Blower Mounting: Blower is normally mounted on the wall with discharge through a 4" round opening. (See Options below for optional Multi-mount bracket). This keeps the heat of the kiln away from the motor (for long motor life) and keeps the motor vibration away from the kiln (which can cause ware to move, damage to the kiln, and misfiring of cones on a kiln sitter). Although the vent motor normally discharges right through the wall it is mounted on, use of 4" duct can extend this distance 60 feet (horizontally or vertically) with up to four 90 degree bends.

Duct Work: 15 Feet of 3" flexible and expandable duct is included along with necessary hose clamps. Longer lengths or lengths of 3" stove pipe can be used as well.

Capacity: The blower vents up to 148 cfm (cubic feet per minute). This will handle up to a 20 cubic foot kiln (and usually larger) or even two separate kilns. More than one vent can be attached to larger kilns.

Vent Control: A vacuum bypass on the kiln bypass/collection box adjusts the amount of venting from the system.

Application: The Vent-Sure is designed to be used on almost all our kilns, as well as other brand kilns. You can order one of our Easy-Fire kiln stands with the bypass/collection box attached to the bottom or you can attach the bypass collection box directly to the side of the kiln. (See hotkilns.com/vent.pdf).

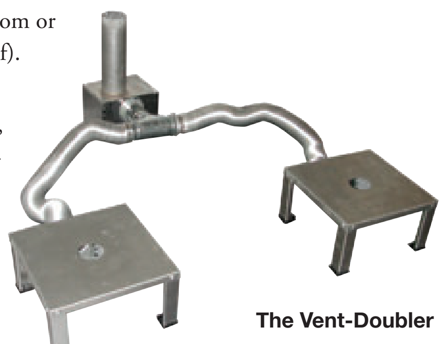
Warranty: Limited 3 year warranty. (See hotkilns.com/warranty.pdf).

UL Listing: The Vent-Sure is c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards for use with Easy-Fire, Jupiter, JH Series, and DaVinci kilns. It is MET-us listed to UL499 standards for use with Hercules, Easy-Load, and Renaissance kilns.

The Vent-Sure pulls air out of the kiln and the room keeping fumes in the duct under vacuum so any leaks get pulled out instead of pushed into your room. The Vent-Sure is the worry-free, super-safe vent!

OPTIONS

Vent Doubler: The Vent-Doubler allows you to connect two kilns to a Vent-Sure vent system. This can be added to an existing vent system or ordered with a new vent. In some cases you may be able to fire two kilns at once. The Vent-Sure has enough force to vent at least 20 cubic feet of kiln. The "T" duct fitting attaches to the inlet of the fan motor. There are two dampers on it to allow you to both control the flow and to shut off one or the other kiln. Flexible aluminum duct connects this "T" duct and the two fittings that attach to the kiln stands. M-V-VENT/DB



The Vent-Doubler

Multi-Mounting Bracket: An adapter to mount our motor on the floor is available for people who don't want to mount the motor on the wall. There is a 4" duct outlet that you can hook up to an existing wall opening. This can be used to mount motor on wall as well with output going into an existing ventilation system. M-V-BRKT/00

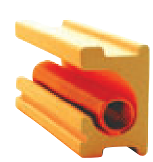
220-240 Volt Option: Motor is 220 volt. Plug to be specified.

The Multi-Mounting Bracket

VENT-SURE Downdraft Vent

VENT-SURE Downdraft Vent

L&L Kilns hotkilns.com
505 Sharptown Road • Swedesboro, NJ 08085
Phone: 856.294.0077 • Fax: 856.294.0070
Email: sales@hotkilns.com • Web:www.hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

How do I know if the system is working?
The easiest way to test the operation of the vent system is to turn the unit on and to place a lit match directly over and level with one of the holes in the bottom of the kiln. The flame from the match should be gently pulled into the kiln as a result of the draft.

How hot does the duct get during the firing?
Due to the introduction of fresh air through the plenum of the vent system mixing with the hot gases being drawn from the kiln, the temperature of the duct is below 150°F. This will prevent burns from occurring in the event of the duct being touched.

How long can the duct be and with many bends?
Up to 60 feet of ducting containing four 90 degree bends may be safely used with no drop in static air flow at the duct exhaust point or a reduction in draw at the kiln. The ducting can be run either horizontally or vertically.

Do I need double wall duct when going through the roof?
You do not normally need double wall ducting when going through the roof since the pipe or duct does not reach high temperature. It is always advisable to check your local building codes for their requirements.

What type of duct do I use if I need more than 15 feet?
You can use more of the flexible aluminum dryer ducting or you can use galvanized furnace ducting. We recommend using 4" diameter galvanized duct.

Will the fumes coming through the vent damage my plants, the neighborhood pets or disturb the local environment?
No. The fumes and the gases coming from the kiln have been diluted with enough fresh air to make them safe for the environment. Do not, however, place the outlet of the vent below an open window.

Will using the vent cause my firing to take longer?
The vent system pulls only a very small amount of air out of the kiln, so very little heat is removed and firing times will change very little. For some kilns, a high firing may take a little longer. The insulation value and the number of air leaks in the kiln also determine the length of the firing. We have seen vents overpower smaller kilns - so it is important to adjust the amount of venting in some cases. On the other hand an example of an e23T seven cubic foot kiln firing an 85 pound load on Fast Glaze program to cone 8 took 7 hours and 4 minutes with a vent on and 6 hours and 24 minutes without a vent. The vent was on the whole time.

What does it cost to operate the vent system?
The vent system typically costs less than 1 cent/hour to operate (electricity costs). Vent systems save on heating and cooling costs when compared to hoods. Hoods remove massive amounts of air from the kiln room - air that may have been heated or cooled, depending on the time of year. Downdraft type vents remove 80% less air in the kiln room than a hood. (It does cost more to run the vent because it does take heat out of the kiln. For instance an e23T in the example above took 70 KW hours with a vent on and 62 KW hours without a vent. At 8 cents per KW hour that would be a cost of $0.64. The vent was on the whole time).

Will the cold air entering the kiln damage the product?
The amount of air that is entering the kiln is so small that it does not cause problems with the ware. The top holes are placed toward the outside of the chamber area so that no air comes down directly onto ware that is placed near the top of the kiln. (L&L NOTE: This is fine but we do not normally recommend holes in the lid - a kiln is porous enough).

Will faster cooling crack the ware if I leave the vent on during the cooling Cycle?
No. Some kilns can cool an average of 4-1/2 hours faster with the use of the vent system. The cooling is faster but it is taking place at an even rate throughout the kiln avoiding uneven stresses being placed on the ware. Most ceramic ware can be cooled more quickly if the cooling takes place at an even rate. The rate of cooling increase will depend on the kiln size and the density of the load. The vent will remove more molecules of air and hence heat as the kiln cools. This is because the density of the air increases the lower in temperature you go. This is one reason why kiln vents are so efficient - they don't remove too much heat when you don't want them too at the higher temperatures).

What should I do if I still smell fumes?
You should check your duct work to make sure it is properly connected and that the joints are sealed. You can also check for extra air leaks around your kiln and repair these if necessary.

Note: These Frequently Asked Questions are provided courtesy of The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation with some modification based on our Vent-Sure vent system and experience.

This shows several small kilns hooked up with one Vent-Sure using two Vent-Doublers. (Up to 20 cubic feet can be ventilated with one vent).

VENT-SURE Downdraft Vent

L&L VENT-SURE DOWNDRAFT KILN VENT SYSTEM

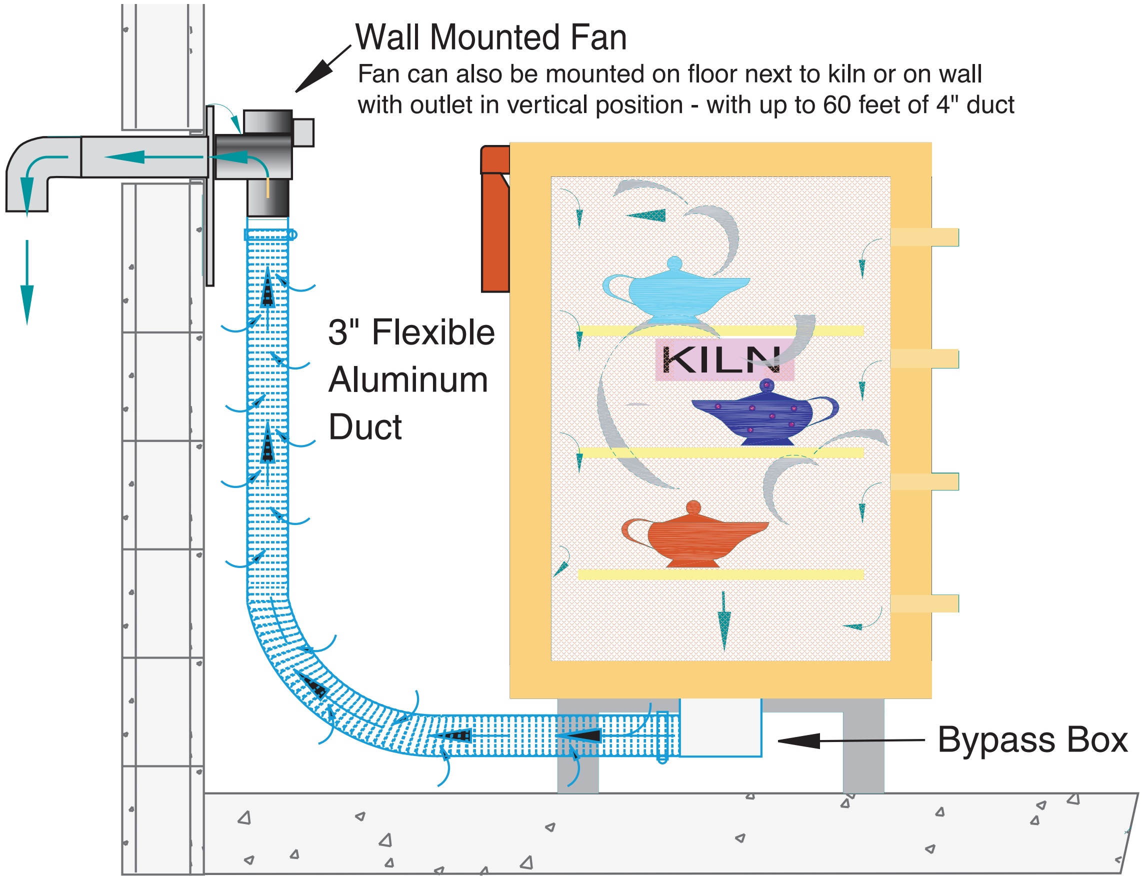


TABLE OF CONTENTS

L&L VENT-SURE DOWNDRAFT KILN VENT SYSTEM

READ THE INSTRUCTIONS

You are now the proud owner of an L&L "VENT-SURE" kiln ventilation system, engineered to give you the utmost in performance and results. This is an expensive and potentially hazardous appliance (if not used with proper caution). PLEASE TAKE THE TIME TO READ THESE INSTRUCTIONS. There is important information that you need to understand to operate your L&L kiln ventilation system safely and properly.

CHECKING SHIPMENT

Your ventilation system was carefully packed and inspected prior to shipment to make sure that all accessories were in perfect condition.

When carrier makes delivery, you should immediately unpack your ventilation system and accessories to determine whether or not any damage has occurred in transit.

If damage has occurred, retain all of the packaging material and notify the delivering carrier at once, requesting an inspection report. Retain all papers to insure that a proper claim can be filed. We will assist you in any way possible with your claim; however, filing and collecting on freight claims is the receiver's responsibility.

INTRODUCTION

WHAT DOES THE VENT DO?

The Vent-Sure Kiln Ventilation System is designed to pull air contaminated with carbon monoxide and other fumes including those of volatile metals, decals, sulfur oxide, and others in a down draft fashion out of the kiln and then vent it outside or to a central vent system.

MOUNTING OF THE VENT BLOWER

The vent blower is mounted on an outside wall or window, or near an existing exhaust ducting system. (With the special “Multi-Mounting Bracket” the vent motor may be mounted on the floor or a wall with the outlet pointing up and then connected to an existing vent system or 4” wall outlet). The Bypass Collection Box mounts to the kiln either on the side of the bottom kiln section, or underneath the kiln on the kiln stand. (Jupiter and Easy-Fire kilns have studs on the stands to accept this box). It covers holes drilled through the brick. The blower is then connected to the Bypass Collection Box with the flexible aluminum duct, and the blower is plugged into a 120 Volt receptacle for operation.

NEGATIVE PRESSURE

When operating, the Vent-Sure system creates a negative pressure (partial vacuum) in both the Kiln and the flexible aluminum duct, so that fumes are pulled out of the kiln as well as out of the flexible duct. No taping of joints is necessary (although it is OK to do this). Should a leak develop in the duct, air will be sucked <u>into</u> the duct rather than blown <u>out</u> of it. This is a major advantage of the L&L Vent-Sure vent system.

AIR INLETS

Normally no holes are necessary in the lid brick for fresh air inlet as the leaks in most kilns allow sufficient fresh air to be drawn into the kiln through element end penetrations, peephole plugs, leaks between the lid and the top section, leaks between sections, and leaks between the bottom section and the bottom brick. Holes may be drilled in the lid brick at any time if later found necessary. If you decide to drill holes in the lid start with a 1/4” diameter hole drilled about 4 inches in from an edge of the lid (and then add other holes as necessary in the back of the lid and then on the sides). BE SURE NOT TO DILL ANY HOLES WITHIN 6” OF THE THERMOCOUPLES. You do not want cold air flowing onto the thermocouples.

HEAT IS AWAY FROM MOTOR

Other important advantages of the L&L Vent-Sure downdraft kiln vent system are that the motor, being mounted away from the kiln (and the floor), will not pick up brick dust (which could destroy the motor), will not cause the kiln to vibrate (which can cause ware to move, damage to the kiln, and misfiring of cones on a Dawson Kiln Sitter) and will not be affected by the heat of the kiln. Because the motor is not under the kiln you can turn the vent off whenever you want. It is not necessary to keep it on to cool the motor as in some other kiln vents.

IMPORTANT CAUTION

DO NOT OPEN ONE OF YOUR PEEPHOLES WHEN USING A THE VENT-SURE VENT (regardless of what it may say in the Dawson Kiln Sitter manual). Opening a peephole is acceptable ONLY when venting your kiln manually by opening the lid. Also do not open the lid when venting with the Vent-Sure. It will let in far too much air when you are using a motorized vent. THIS CAN BE DANGEROUS because the cold air can cool down the thermocouples or Dawson tube assembly and trick the thermocouple or cone into thinking that the kiln is much cooler than it really is. THIS COULD LEAD TO AN OVERFIRED KILN OR OVERFIRED WORK!

Note: The stand is not included as part of the vent system. It is included with the kiln or can be ordred separately.

L&L Easy-Fire or Jupiter Kiln Stand with Bypass/Collection Box & Flex Duct

WHAT IS INCLUDED

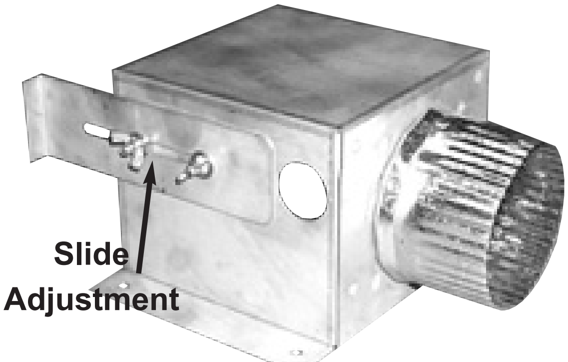
One (1) wall-mounted blower mounted on a bracket with vent pipe to go through outside wall and a Motor Inlet Duct. An 8 foot power cord with an attached On/Off switch plugs into a 120 volt standard receptacle.

One (1) Bypass Collection Box to be mounted to the kiln or on the kiln stand, with mounting hardware.

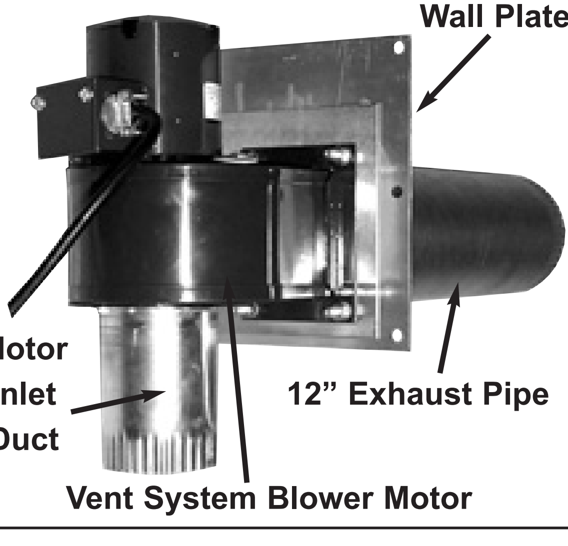
One (1) length of flexible aluminum ducting (expands to 15 feet).

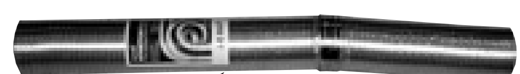
Two (2) hose clamps.

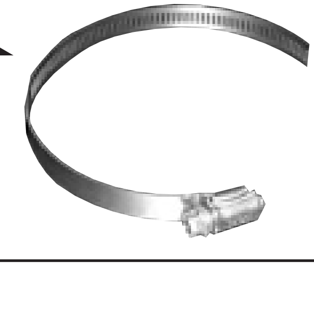
One (1) 4” diameter 90 degree elbow (for outside the building.



Bypass/Collection Box







FEATURES AND SPECIFICATIONS

ADJUSTABLE AMOUNT OF VENTING

A sliding adjuster on the vent Bypass Collection Box adjusts the amount of venting from the system (see photo on page 3). Vent only what you need to vent - don't waste heat and energy by venting more than you need.

EXTERNAL VENTING

External venting is safer and surer than venting to the inside of your kiln room with a filter.

REMOTE MOUNTING OF MOTOR

The vent blower motor is mounted to a wall plate with a 12” length of exhaust pipe that mounts on the wall (see photo). This keeps the heat of the kiln away from the motor (for longer motor life) and keeps the motor vibration away from the kiln. (With the special “Multi-Mounting Bracket” the vent motor may be mounted on the floor or a wall with the outlet pointing up and then connected to an existing vent system or 4” wall outlet. If you decide to mount it this way see the caution on page 5).

MOUNTS ON ANY KILN

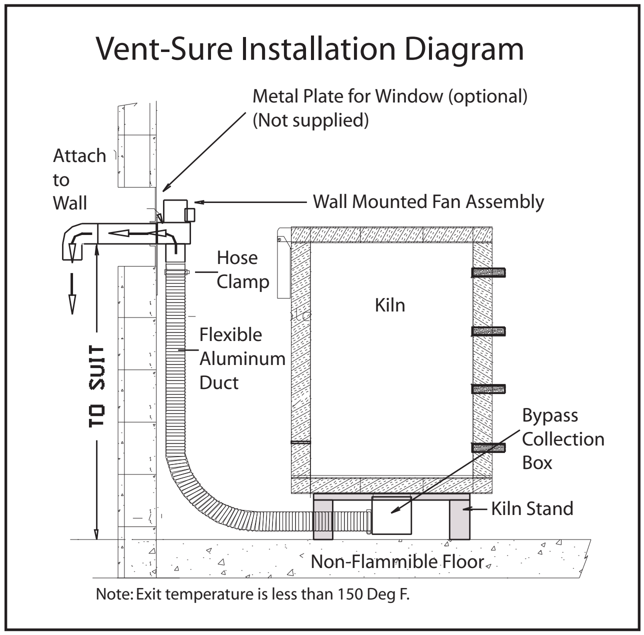
The Vent-Sure vent system can be installed on almost any kiln. It requires only that you drill several small vent holes through the kiln wall (or floor) and four mounting holes to mount the bypass collection box to the kiln wall (note that if mounting the bypass/collection box to the stand, that four studs are factory installed on the bottom of the new stand that L&L is using as of 3/2000, see photo on next page). Mounting hardware is included. You can also order one of L&L’s heavy-duty aluminized stands to mount the vent on and support your kiln. (See the separate PDF file *www.hotkilns.com/vent.pdf*).

POWERFUL VENT MOTOR

The blower vents up to 146 CFM (cubic feet per minute at 0 static pressure and 110 CFM at 0.500-In. static Pressure). Remember - not all of this air comes from the kiln - some comes from the Bypass Collection Box.

OUTLET TEMPERATURE UNDER 150^{o}F

The outlet temperature of the air is less than 150^{o}F as long as you do not exceed the recommended holes in the kiln.



FLEXIBLE DUCT INCLUDED

15 feet of flexible expandable aluminum 3" diameter duct is included along with necessary hose clamps. Longer lengths or lengths of 3" stove pipe can be used as well.

LOW ELECTRICITY USAGE

The Vent-Sure vent System uses only 0.75 amps.

VENTS UP TO 20 CUBIC FEET OR MORE

The Vent-Sure vent System was designed to be used with all L&L model kilns. We recommend one vent system for kilns up to approximately 20 cubic feet. On larger kilns, depending on how much venting you need, you may need more than one vent system. (This really depends on how much venting you need for your situation). Even our largest 35 cubic feet DaVincis have usually been adequately vented with one Vent-Sure. Note that you can always add another vent if you find you need more venting.

INSTALLATION

IMPORTANT CAUTION
MAKE CERTAIN KILN POWER IS OFF BEFORE PROCEEDING WITH INSTALLATION.

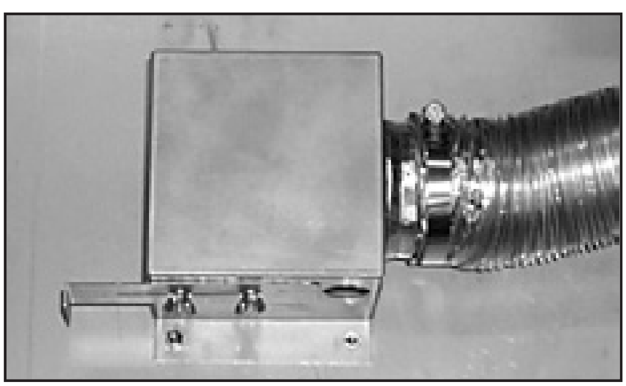
Step 1. Turn Off Kiln Power
This is critical for safety reasons.

Step 2. Install Bypass/Collection Box
If mounting on a new L&L kiln stand, simply place the box on the studs on the bottom of the kiln stand and tighten with the provided nuts (and lock washers). If you are mounting the box on a section of the kiln, position the bypass/collection box in desired location, mark the four mounting hole locations with a marker, move the box and drill the 4 holes with a 1/16" drill bit.

Next you will drill the venting hole or holes through the floor or the kiln section. Note that this is already done on kilns that come from the factory ordered with the Vent-Sure vent system. See the chart in these instructions for the number of holes. If you later decide that that you want more or less ventilation, you can add or plug the holes accordingly. Be conservative. It is easier to add holes than plug them up (although that can be done with a brick repair kit). If mounting the box on a kiln section, be sure not to drill through a element holder. To prevent this, measure down on the inside of the kiln ring, then mark holes on the outside to clear the holders, then drill.

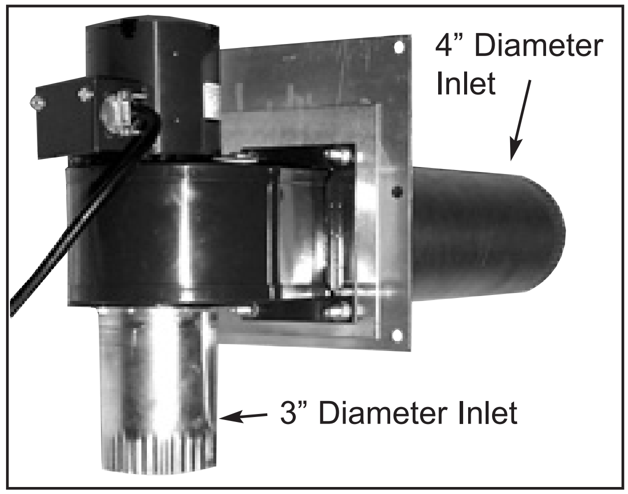
Attach the box to the kiln section using the provided hardware.

The Bypass Collection Box is mounted to the bottom of the stand with provided hardware.



Step 3. Install Blower System
Install blower system by penetrating outside wall or setting into a window with appropriate support. Attach the provided 90 degree elbow to point down on the outside of the building (this is to prevent rain water from getting into the duct). (Note: this procedure will change if you use the Multi-Mount bracket). Mount securely because motor may vibrate over time especially if it builds up any dust in the blower.

The motor assembly comes pre-mounted onto the Wall mount bracket:



CAUTION: Make sure that the vent outlet is at least four feet from any open windows or doors. This is to make sure hazardous fumes do not get back into your building. Also the fumes can hazardous to plants within a few feet.

A CAUTION ABOUT MOUNTING VERTICALLY
If the discharge duct of the vent is mounted pointing up (as shown on the photograph of the Vent-Doubler system) water that condenses in the duct may drop down and rust the motor. We recommend having a water trap in the bottom of a vertical duct run to drain off the water before it runs into the motor. This is not a problem when the vent has been mounted horizontally. The Multi-Mount bracket will allow you to mount the motor horizontally as well. You can then use 90 degree bends or flexible duct to go vertically. Just remember that there is water in the exhaust that will condense somewhere as it cools after it discharges from the vent motor.

A special Multi-Mount bracket is available from L&L for $20 which will allow you to mount the vent on the floor or wall with the outlet of the vent pointing up. This is useful when you want to use an existing penetration in a wall that won't support the vent (like a window) or when you want to have the vent go out of a roof or into a central vet system.

Step 4. Connect Flexible Duct
Attach blower system to bypass/collection box by stretching the flexible aluminum duct carefully (it can extend up to 15 feet) and securing to both the blower housing and the bypass/collection box with the provided hose clamps. **NOTE: You may want to firmly attach this to the Bypass Collection Box before installing the kiln on the stand because it can be hard to maneuver under the kiln.**

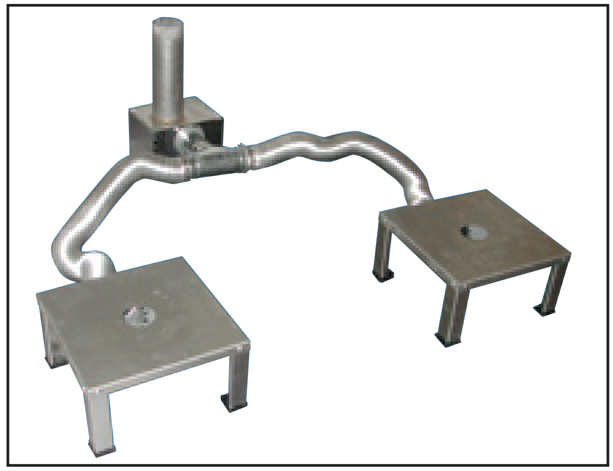
Step 5. Plug In Vent
Plug in the switched cord to a standard 120 volt receptacle. **If need be you can safely use a grounded extension cord because of the small amperage required.** Be sure to secure cord away from heat of kiln.

ROOM AIR REPLACEMENT

ROOM AIR REPLACEMENT:
The Vent-Sure system moves up to 130 cubic feet of air per minute. We suggest opening a window slightly, or bringing other fresh air source into the room, to replace this room air.

INSTALLATION OF MULTIPLE VENTS

VENT DOUBLER SYSTEM
This shows a photograph of the Vent Doubler System available from L&L:



The Vent Doubler system includes a bracket for mounting the vent motor on the floor or wall (as shown), an extra Bypass Collection Box, an extra Flexible Aluminum Duct and a "T" Connector with dampers. You can vent two 10 cubic kilns with one Vent-Sure plus this Vent Doubler System.

CENTRAL VENT SYSTEMS
Multiple Vent-Sure systems may be installed individually, or each system may be connected to a central duct. The following information is provided to help the installer make decisions concerning the size and length of the central duct.

CENTRAL DUCT SIZING

QTY OF SYSTEMS	SIZE OF CENTRAL DUCT
1	4"
2	6"
3	8"
4	8"
5	10"
6	10"

EXTENDING DUCT LENGTH
The duct may be 60 feet in length, and include up to four 90° bends, without a significant drop in static air flow or a reduction in kiln air pull.You may use any galvanized, stainless or aluminum duct. The outlet duct size (after the motor) is 4" diameter. The inlet duct (before the motor) is 3" diameter.

TYPICAL NUMBER AND SIZE OF HOLES TO BE DRILLED IN L&L KILNS

MODEL	CUBIC FEET	NO OF HOLES	HOLE DIAMETER
GS1714	1.7	1	1/4”
e23S	4.7 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
e23T	7.0 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
e28S	6.9 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
e28T	10.3 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
J18	2.6 Cu Ft.	1	1/4”
J18X	3.9 Cu Ft.	1	1/4”
J23	4.7 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
J230	7.0 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
J236	9.4 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
J245	11.75 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
J2918	6.9 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
J2927	10.3 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
J2936	13.8 Cu Ft.	4	1/4”
J2945	17.2 Cu Ft.	5	1/4”
X1818	3.4 Cu Ft.	1	1/4”
X1827	5.1 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
XB2318	5.0 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
X2327	8.1 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
X2336	10.8 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
X2345	13.5 Cu Ft.	4	1/4”
XB2818	7.8 Cu Ft.	2	1/4”
X2827	11.7 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
X2836	15.6 Cu Ft.	4	1/4”
X2845	19.5 Cu Ft.	3	5/16”
XB3218	10.0 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
X3227	15.0 Cu Ft.	4	1/4”
X3236	20.0 Cu Ft.	3	5/16”
X3245	25.0 Cu Ft.	4	5/16”
TB2318	9.7 Cu Ft.	3	1/4”
T2327	14.6 Cu Ft.	4	1/4”
T2336	19.4 Cu Ft.	3	5/16”
T2345	24.3 Cu Ft.	4	5/16”
TB3418	13.8 Cu Ft.	4	1/4”
T3427	20.7 Cu Ft.	3	5/16”
T3436	27.6 Cu Ft.	5	5/16”
T3445	34.5 Cu Ft.	6	5/16”

OPERATION

Plug blower cord into 120 Volt receptacle. Close all kiln apertures such as peepholes, etc. (See important caution regarding this on page 3). Close the lid and fire. For heavy loads with lots of fumes you may want to avoid firing faster than 150°F per hour to prevent the generation of more fumes than the system can eliminate. Use the flow control on the Bypass Box to modify the flow of exhaust - a larger flow control opening reduces the flow of exhaust fumes from the kiln, and a smaller flow control opening increase the exhaust.

IMPORTANT CAUTIONS

CAUTION: Check duct occasionally to see if there is wax or other residual build up. Wax could condense in the duct, which is a potential fire hazard. This is especially important if you are using a wax resist.

CAUTION: Be sure that the exhaust of the vent is not being brought back into your building. Keep exit of vent at least four feet away from any open windows or doors.

CAUTION: We recommend the use of a carbon monoxide monitor in your kiln room. These are available from good hardware stores, Graingers or Home Depot for about $50 (This is another good way to be sure you are getting proper venting).

CAUTION: Disconnect power cord from power source when doing any maintenance on the fan motor. Do not put your fingers inside the blower without disconnecting power. Blower may start unexpectedly because of automatic thermal shut off switch built into the motor.

ADJUSTING THE BYPASS SYSTEM

The sliding adjuster allows you to fine adjust the amount of venting that is done to your kiln. It is easy to adjust but hard to know just how to adjust it. The problem is that there are many factors that contribute to the amount of “pull” required. For instance, the amount of fumes that are being given off by your specific work is one factor. Some clays have a lot of carbon in them; others do not. Depending on the size of the load, and the ingredients in the clay/glaze, there will be more or less fumes generated. Another factor is the "static pressure" in your vent ducts. If you have a lot of curves, 90 degree bends, or long runs of duct this will increase the static pressure (back pressure) and hence increase the need for more venting force. One suggestion is to start with the valve in the half open position and see what happens.

The Smell Method:

To some extent you can go by fumes that you smell. However, carbon monoxide is odorless. You should get a carbon monoxide warning alarm for your kiln room in any case so if this goes off you will know you need more venting. Also, if the kiln is in a damp spot, the bricks can absorb moisture, and grow some mold. The mold will burn off, and you would smell it burning. As soon as the kiln goes on, you may well smell stuff that can't be taken away by the vent, and you won't be able to prove it's not a faulty vent. Smell is therefore not a foolproof method to verify the success of a vent.

Industrial Point of View:

A typical rule of thumb for purging panels of hazardous fumes (in explosive environments) is four volume changes of air per hour. This seems intuitively the same for fumes in a kiln. However, there is no easy way to measure these volume changes and we mention this fact as a point of reference only.

The Smoke Method:

1) With power disconnected from the kiln and with the kiln empty, turn the vent on.

2) Start with the bypass valve in the fully closed position. This will give it the maximum suction in the kiln.

3) Light a piece of paper on fire or something that will create smoke. Blow it out, and hold it near the cracks around the closed lid.

4) If the smoke is being pulled into the kiln around these door cracks, open the Bypass (decreasing flow from the kiln) until the smoke stops being pulled in, then back up the valve slightly, so the draw increases just slightly again. Try this when kiln is at about 100 deg F.

5) You can do the same test directly at the bottom hole with the kiln open also to test the differential between the pull at the actual suction hole from the kiln and the pull around the lid.

For Gross Adjustment:

Remember that the sliding adjuster is for fine adjustment. Drilling or plugging the holes in the floor (and possibly adding or plugging holes in the top) is how you would dramatically change the amount of air vented.

VENTING CODES

The following information is provided courtesy of The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation.

OSHA has set standards for carbon monoxide exposure of 35 ppm (parts per million) for long-term exposure and 200 PPM for short-term exposure. Independent testing has shown that fumes near the kiln can exceed 200 PPM near the kiln during the firing of greenware. This can cause headaches, fatigue, sore throats and nausea. When properly installed and operated, a downdraft vent removes all harmful fumes and provides a safer working environment.

Most states and localities have set venting requirements for firing kilns in public places. Your local and state health board should have this information. The Uniform Mechanical Code says that you must vent ceramic kilns. It says that you can use a canopy-type hood (and gives specific requirements for such use) or that "listed exhaust blowers may be used when marked as being suitable for the kiln and installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions." Our Vent-Sure vent is UL listed and is appropriate to meet this ventilation requirement. L&L takes no responsibility for improperly installed vents or kilns nor do we take responsibility for the use of other vents with our kilns.

REGULAR MAINTENANCE

Occasionally check for leaks in the aluminum duct. Replace if necessary. Check for corrosion especially if you are using clay with a high content of sulfur, phosphorus or fluorine. Check for wax or carbon build up if you are using a wax resist process or a high carbon content clay.

We recommend unmounting the fan and blowing out the squirrel cage with compressed air every two years or so especially if you are in a very dusty or if you have it mounted on the floor where it is more likely to pick up dust.

If the discharge duct of the vent is mounted pointing up you may get water that condenses in the duct drop down and rust out the motor. Taking it apart and spraying with WD-40 can restore the motor in some cases. We recommend having a water trap in the bottom of a long vertical duct run to drain off the water before it runs into the motor. This is not a problem when the vent has been mounted horizontally.

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

The following Frequently Asked Questions are provided courtesy of The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation. L&L licenses the downdraft technology from Orton and many of the operating characteristics of the vent systems are similar. The main differences are that the L&L Vent-Sure kiln vent system has an externally mounted blower, which keeps the vent blower away from the kiln. This eliminates the chance of vibration affecting the kiln and ware, extends blower life and keeps the vent duct under vacuum instead of pressure. Our blower is also more powerful. We add our own comments in parenthesis below.

How do I determine the size, number and location of holes in the top and bottom of the kiln?

As a general rule, you should have one 1/4 inch hole for every 4 cubic feet of kiln volume. The holes are normally placed within a 4 inch circle in the center of the kiln floor. The same number of holes is used in the top of the kiln, but they are placed about 1 inch in from the inner edge of the kiln wall. (L&L NOTE: L&L does not normally recommend drilling holes in the top like Orton does. Also see our hole chart on page 7 which is specific to our kilns).

How do I know if the system is working?

The easiest way to test the operation of the vent system is to turn the unit on and to place a lighted match directly over and level with one of the holes in the lid of the kiln. The flame from the match should be gently pulled into the kiln as a result of the draft. (L&L NOTE: See our comments under “Adjusting the Bypass Valve”).

How hot does the duct get during the firing?

Due to the introduction of fresh air through the plenum of the vent system mixing with the hot gases being drawn from the kiln, the temperature of the duct of the duct is below 150^{o}F. This will prevent burns from occurring in the event of the duct being touched. (This is also true for the Vent-Sure - even more so because we are pulling a higher volume of air through the Bypass Valve).

How long can the duct be and how many bends can it have?

Up to 60 feet of ducting containing four 90 degree bends may be safely used with no drop in static air flow at the duct exhaust point or a reduction in draw at the kiln. The ducting can be run either horizontally or vertically. (The Vent-Sure should handle more static pressure than the Orton vent because of the stronger motor. This translates into longer lengths of pipe and more 90 degree bends. If you have a choice run two 45 deg bends rather than one 90 degree bend or use flexible duct which has a gentler bend).

Do I need double wall duct when going through the roof?

You do not normally need double wall ducting when going through the roof since the pipe or duct does not reach high temperature. It is always advisable to check your local building codes for their requirements.

What type of duct do I use if I need more than 8 feet?

You can use more of the flexible aluminum dryer ducting or you can use galvanized furnace ducting. We have also had people using "pvc" plastic piping with good results. (L&L NOTE: L&L does not recommend PVC pipe. We recommend using 4” diameter galvanized duct).

Will the fumes coming through the vent damage my plants, the neighborhood pets or disturb the local environment?

No. The fumes and the gases coming from the kiln have been diluted with enough fresh air to make them safe for the environment. (L&L NOTE: Do not, however, place the outlet of the vent below an open window. Also we have heard of plants near the vent outlet being affected by the vent fumes so keep this in mind when locating vent outlet).

Will using the vent cause my firing to take longer?

The vent system pulls only a very small amount of air out of the kiln, so very little heat is removed and firing times will change very little. For some kilns, a high firing may take a little longer. The insulation value and the number of air leaks in the kiln also determine the length of the firing. (L&L NOTE: We have seen vents overpower smaller kilns - so it is important to adjust the amount of venting in some cases. On the other hand an example of an e23T 7 cubic foot kiln firing an 85 pound load on Fast Glaze program to cone 8 took 7 hours and 4 minutes with a vent on and 6 hours and 24 minutes without a vent. The vent was on the whole time).

What does it cost to operate the vent system?

The vent system typically costs less than 1 cent/hour to operate (electricity costs). Vent systems save on heating and cooling costs when compared to hoods. Hoods remove massive amounts of air from the kiln room - air that may have been heated or cooled, depending on the time of year. Downdraft type vents remove 80% less air in the kiln room than does a hood. (It does cost more to run the vent because it does take heat out of the kiln. For example an e23T 7 cubic foot kiln firing an 85 pound load on Fast Glaze program to cone 8 took 70 KW hours with a vent on and 62 KW hours without a vent. At 8 cents per KW hour that would be a cost of $0.64. The vent was on the whole time).

Will the cold air entering the kiln damage the product?

The amount of air that is entering the kiln is so small that it does not cause problems with the ware. The top holes are placed toward the outside of the chamber area so that no air comes down directly onto ware that is placed near the top of the kiln. (L&L NOTE: This is fine but we do not normally recommend holes in the lid).

Will faster cooling crack the ware if I leave the vent on during the cooling Cycle?

No. Some kilns can cool an average of 4-1/2 hours faster with the use of the vent system. The cooling is faster but it is taking place at an even rate throughout the kiln avoiding uneven stresses being placed on the ware. Most ceramic ware can be cooled more quickly if the cooling takes place at an even rate. The rate of cooling increase will depend on the kiln size and the density of the load. (L&L NOTE: The vent will remove more molecules of air and hence heat as the kiln cools. This is because the density of the air increases the lower in temperature you go. This is one reason why kiln vents are so efficient - they don’t remove too much heat when you don’t want them too at the higher temperatures).

What should I do if I still smell fumes?

You should check your ductwork to make sure it is properly connected and that the joints are sealed. You can also check for extra air leaks around your kiln and repair these if necessary. (L&L NOTE: See our comments on “Adjusting the Bypass System”).

L&L VENT-SURE DOWNDRAFT KILN VENT SYSTEM

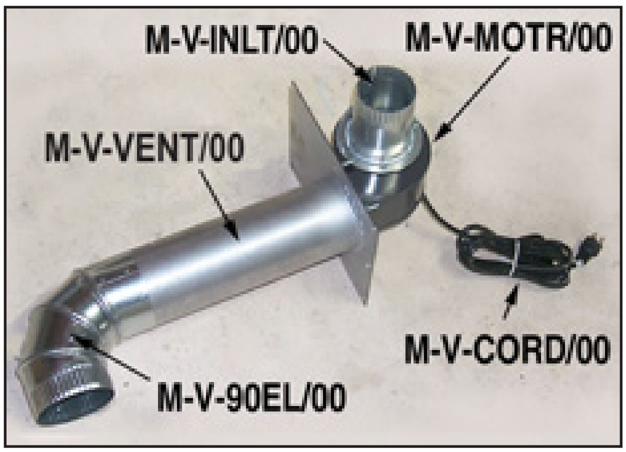
PARTS

Complete Vent-Sure Kiln Vent System

M-V-VENT/00 ....$440.00
VENT-SURE Vent. Complete System as described above and on our separate **Vent-Sure** brochure. This includes the motor, an 8 foot cord with a rocker type On/Off switch mounted in line in the cord, the inlet duct attached to the motor, the wall mounting bracket, a 90 deg elbow for mounting on the end of the outlet pipe (to keep rain water out), the Bypass Collection Box for attaching to the kiln stand or kiln side along with mounting hardware for mounting to an L&L kiln stand and one section of 15 foot flexible aluminum duct with hose clamps.

You can also purchase individual parts to suit your own configuration or as replacements:

Below shows the vent system blower assembly with the motor, cord and switch set, 3" inlet duct to hold the flexible duct, 12" duct to go through a wall and 90 Degree elbow.



M-V-FAN0/00 ....$220.00
Fan/Blower Motor for Vent-Sure. This is just the motor with no attached brackets or inlets. Cord is not included.

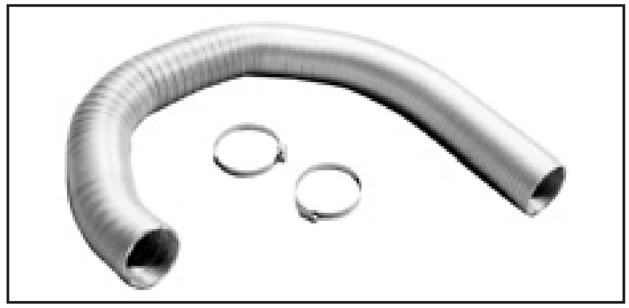
M-V-BRKT/00..$82.00
Wall mount bracket that goes through wall and onto which the fan motor mounts. (Note: This will also attach to the Mult-mounting bracket (M-V-BRCK/00) if you want to mount the vent on the floor or on the wall with the outlet pipe going up.

M-V-INLT/00 ....$25.00
Motor Inlet Duct. This is the piece of duct that attaches to the inlet of the motor. The expandable aluminum duct fits onto this.

M-V-90EL/00 ....$9.25
90 Deg 4" elbow. Used for attaching to motor mount duct to the outside to prevent water from getting into duct.

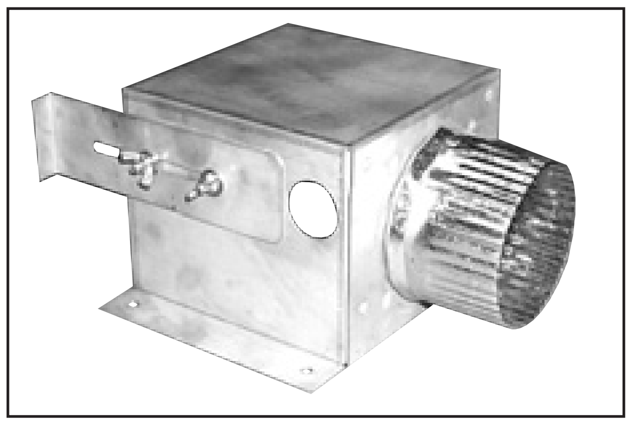
M-V-DUCT/00...$31.00
Flexible Vent Duct 2-1/2 to 15 Feet Expandable, Flexible Aluminum 3" duct with two hose clamps.

Flexible Aluminum Duct shown with hose clamps:



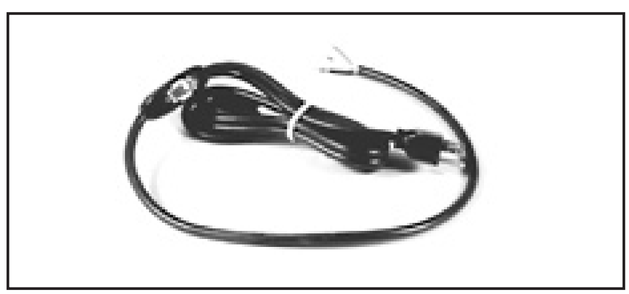
M-V-BBOX/00 ....$62.00
Bypass Collection Box. Includes hardware for mounting and slide control. Note: This has the proper mounting hole configuration to be mounted to any L&L kiln stand. It can also be mounted to the side of other kilns (typically on the bottom section).

Bypass Collection Box:



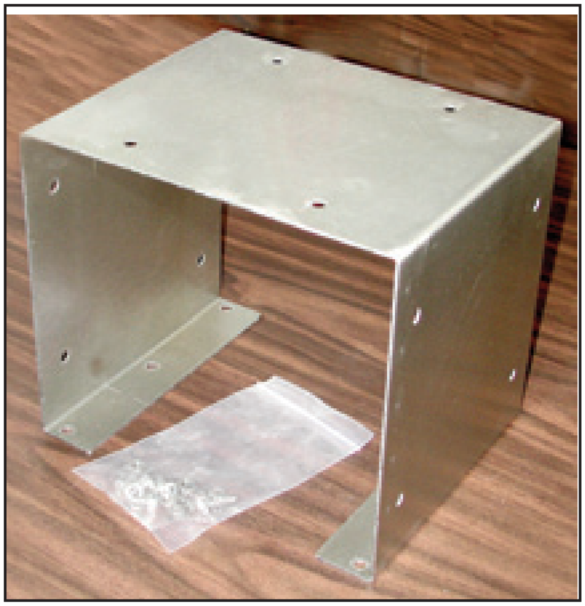
M-V-CORD/00 ....$48.00
Power Cord for Vent-Sure. Includes a cord mounted on/off switch.

Power Cord with On/Off switch:



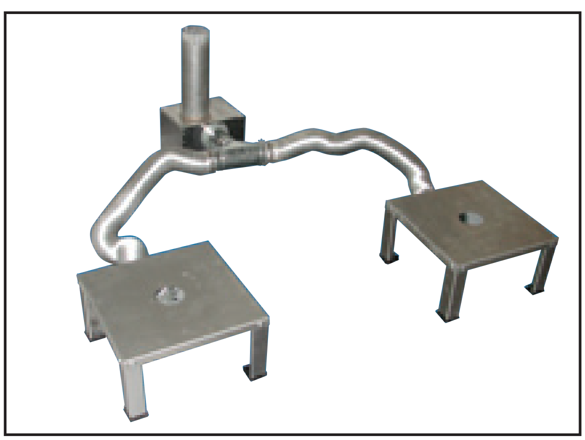
M-V-MULT/00 ....$22.00
Mult-Mounting Bracket. Comes with six (6) sets of 1/4-20 bolts, nuts and lock washers for mounting this to the "Wall mount bracket" (M-V-VENT/BK).

This special "Multi-Mounting Bracket" will allow you to mount the vent on the floor or wall with the outlet of the vent pointing up. This is useful when you want to use an existing penetration in a wall that won't support the vent (like a window) or when you want to have the vent go out of a roof. There are mounting holes on the bottom (for floor mounting) and on the side as well (for wall mounting):



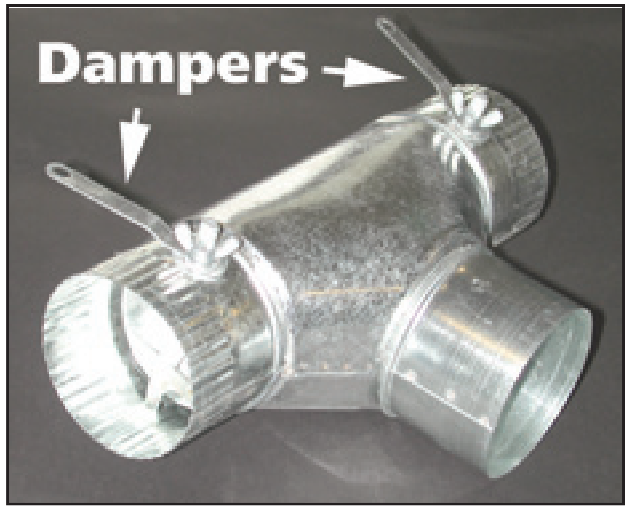
M-V-VENT/DB..$135.00
Vent Doubler System for Vent-Sure. Includes a "T" duct with dampers, an extra Bypass Collection Box, Extra Flexible Duct and the Multi-Mount Bracket.

Vent Doubler System:



M-V-TDUC/00 ....$43.00
"T" DUCT to attach two aluminum flexible ducts to. Includes dampers on the two inlets. The outlet fits onto the Motor Inlet Duct of the Vent-Sure and the Flexible Vent Duct(s) fit onto the inlets of this "T" Duct.

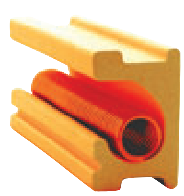
Special "T" duct for doubler system:



JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

ASSEMBLY

L&L Kilns
hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

ASSEMBLY INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L JUPITER AUTOMATIC KILNS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

VIDEOS OF SELECT PROCESSES CAN BE FOUND ON YOUTUBE AT:
www.youtube.com/LLKilns

TOOLS NEED FOR THE JOB

You will need the following tools for the job:

1) Philip's head screw driver (medium size head)

2) Knife

3) Needle Nose pliers

4) Adjustable Wrench

5) Level

6) Safety Gloves

WHAT SHOULD YOU READ?

The information in these installation instructions is as complete as we can make it - which means that there is more than most people will need to read. Each heading is self-contained (for instance "Assembling the Stand") Most people will be able to figure out how to assemble their stand by looking at it - so only read this heading if you get stuck.

First of all be comfortable with where you are putting your new kiln. If you have any questions about that read the information about clearances, ventilation, etc. in the "Installation" section. Do that first so you don't have to redo your work.

If there is anything we feel you must read we will call it to your attention with one of these shaded boxes.

CAN YOU MOVE THE KILN WITHOUT DISASSEMBLING IT?

The kiln is shipped mostly disassembled (except for the hinge). It is possible to move the kiln without disassembling it. However, these kilns, particularly the JD2900s are very heavy and awkward to move. If you decide to move it without disassembling the sections first be absolutely certain you have at least two or three strong people who are familiar with proper lifting techniques. Serious back injury could result if such a heavy object is lifted improperly. See page 9 for details on how to do it - there are specific instructions depending on which model you have.

CAUTION: L&L stringently insists that *no Jupiter kilns with more than three rings* be moved without disassembly as they are very heavy and personal injury could result.

CAUTION: Do *NOT* attempt to disengage the spring hinge without first reading the detailed instructions as listed on pages 7-8.

UNPACKING

Inspect for visible damage

The carton should arrive without visible damage. If the carton was damaged in transit, you should either refuse shipment or unpack the kiln in the drivers presence in order to file a damage report with the freight company. **Call our office immediately if there is a problem. SAVE ALL MATERIALS UNTIL YOU ARE SURE YOU WON'T NEED THEM. AT THE VERY LEAST NOTE DAMAGE ON THE BILL- OF-LADING - WITHOUT THIS YOU HAVE NO PROTECTION!**

Below is a picture of how your kiln should arrive:

Unpack Instructions, Vent and Furniture Kit

1) Remove the two separate Furniture Kit and Vent-Sure vent system boxes, if ordered, from the top of the kiln carton.

2) If you ordered a Vent-Sure vent system you will find the following items inside the cardboard box:

a) flexible ductwork
b) bypass collection box
c) galvanized 90 degree elbow
d) vent motor with bracket that holds it to the wall

3) If you ordered the Furniture/Accessory kit you will find the following:

For a JD18:
a) One 15-1/2'' full round shelf
b) four 15-1/2' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get 15" Diam. Shelves

For a JD18X:
a) two 15-1/2'' full round shelves
b) four 15-1/2'' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get 15" Diam. Shelves

For a JD23V:
a) one 21'' full round shelf
b) four 21'' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get 20" Diam. Shelves

For a JD230V:
a) two 21'' full round shelves
b) four 21'' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get 20" Diam. Shelves

For a JD236V:
a) three 21'' full round shelf
b) four 21'' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get 20" Diam. Shelves

For a JD245V:
a) four 21'' full round shelf
b) four 21'' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get 20" Diam. Shelves

For a JD2918:
a) two 21'' full round shelves
b) four 21'' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get same size Shelves

For a JD2927:
a) two 20'' full round shelf
b) four 20'' half shelves
c) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
d) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
e) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get same size Shelves

For a JD2936:
a) six 26'' half shelves
b) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
c) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
d) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get same size Shelves

For a JD2945:
a) eight 26'' half shelves
b) six each 1/2'', 1'', 2'', 4'', 6'' and 8'' square posts
c) five pounds of Cone 10 kiln wash
d) a pair of temperature resistant gloves
NOTE: Models with 3" Brick get same size Shelves

Below is a picture of the cardboard box with a Vent-Sure system enclosed. NOTE: Depending on where you bought your kiln, your vent system and/or kiln furniture may arrive packed differently.

Below is how the cardboard box with a Furniture Kit enclosed will arrive.

Remove Top from Carton

1) Remove the packing slip from the packing list enclosed envelope.

2) Cut the banding around the kiln box and remove the top.

3) You are looking at the heavy duty kiln stand containing a white box, the kiln manual, with the heavy duty kiln stand legs positioned around it. This will be slightly covered by the foam packaging tubes.

Below is the first thing you will see when you open the box - foam tubes securing the kiln:

Unpacking the kiln

1) With a screw driver pry off the staples holding the bottom box tray to the box sleave.

2) Next remove the cardboard inset from the carton, and remove the carton sleeve from the skid.

Interior packaging with the inset removed:

3) Push the foam tubes away from the kiln body. If desired, these can be completely removed by using a knife to carefully cut the plastic tubing by the base of the kiln. There should be little to no foam there. Be careful not to scratch the kiln with your knife.

Removing foam tubes:

4) Carefully cut off the stretch wrap that is around the kiln. Be careful not to scratch the kiln with your knife.

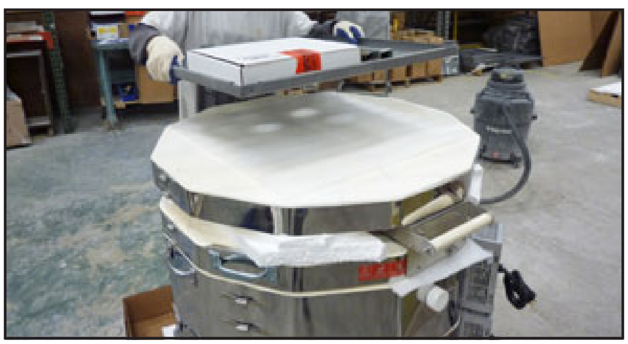
Carefully cut off shrink wrap:

5) Remove the brown cardboard box that is packed against the kiln in one of the cartons corners. This contains the control panel for your Jupiter kiln, set it aside for now.

The packed control panel:

6) Remove the kiln stand base from the top of the kiln. The kiln manual, in a white cardboard box, surrounded by the four kiln stand legs should be resting within the edges of the kiln stand base.

Removing the kiln stand:



7.a) If you ordered a three, or more, section kiln, your kiln floor will be on top, remove it now.

Removing the kiln base:

7.b) If you ordered a two-section kiln, the floor of the kiln will not be on the top, it will be on the bottom of the kiln as it helps secure the spring hinge bracket which is assembled for shipping.

The base as attached to the hinge bracket:

8) Notice that the spring on your spring hinge *IS* engaged.

NOTE ABOUT JD1800 SERIES KILNS: These kilns employ simple hinges, thus the kiln base will always be packed on top.

ASSEMBLING THE STAND

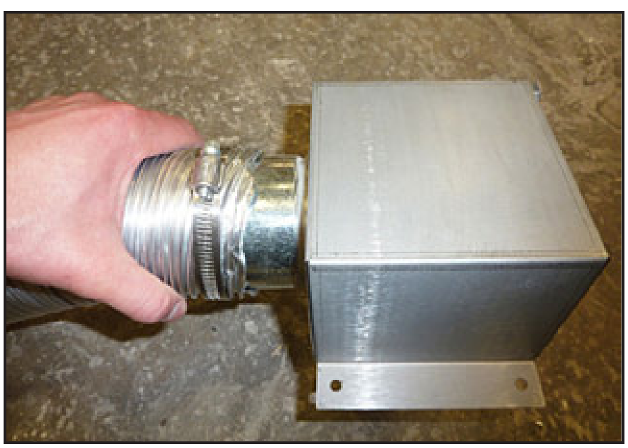
Next, using the enclosed stand hardware, assemble the kiln stand. If ordered, also use the vent system components and hardware to finish assembly of the kiln stand.

1) Assembly the stand legs. **Make sure all the stand legs are tight.** Use a nut driver or an adjustable wrench to do this. NOTE: If you did not order a vent then your stand is completely assembled after this step.

Each leg gets bolted to the stand with two 1/4-20 bolts provided. They do not need nuts:

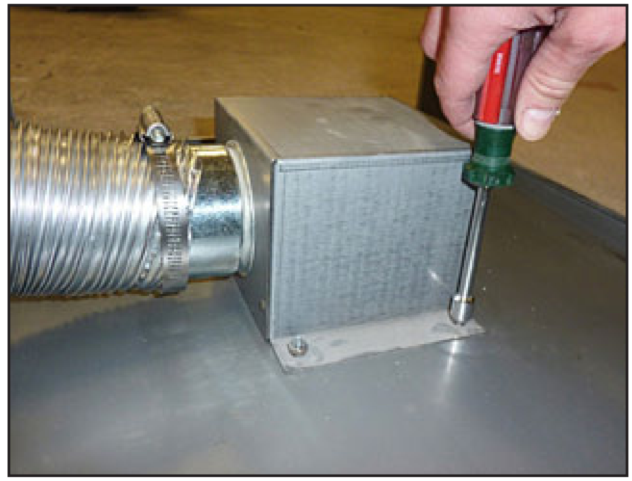
2) Attach the flexible vent tube to the outlet of the vent collection box. It takes some patience to get the flexible tube around the fitting. Tighten the Breeze clamp to secure the duct to the outlet.

Installing the flexible duct onto the Bypass Collection Box of the Vent-Sure Vent System:

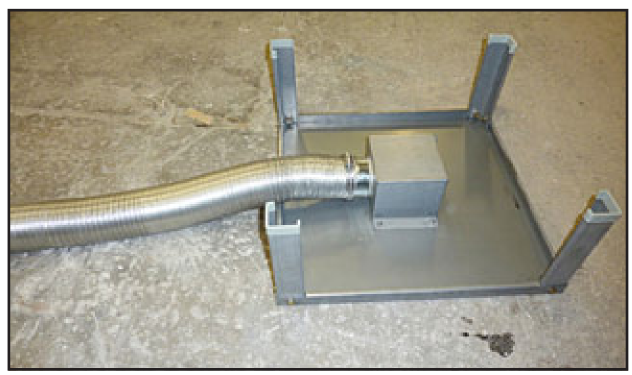


3) Attach the bypass collection box using the studs that are secured to the bottom of the stand and the supplied mounting hardware, four 10-24 nuts and lock washers.

The Bypass Collection Box fits over four studs on the bottom of the stand:



The fully assembled stand:



DISENGAGING THE SPRING-HINGE AND REMOVING THE LID

The next step is to remove the lid from the kiln which can only be done once the spring hinge has been disengaged.

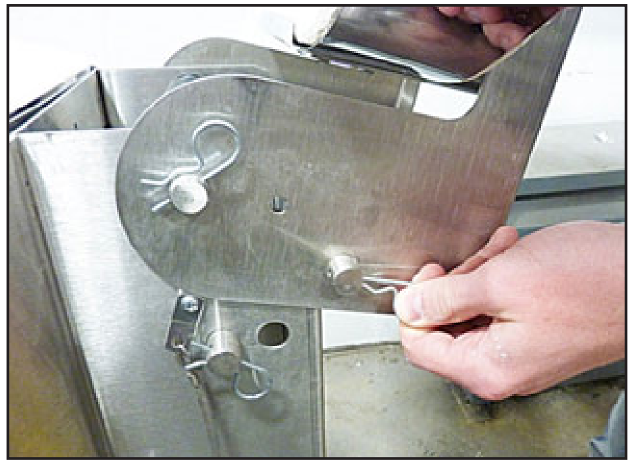
The hinge is shipped assembled (with the spring engaged). This way you can see how it all goes back together:

1) Unclasp the latch underneath the lid handle and open the kiln lid to its fullest extent.

The kiln with the lid opened:

2) Remove one of the cotter pins from the top-most hinge bar that only goes through the lid bracket.

Removing a cotter pin from the top-most bar:



3) Slide out the top-most hinge bar, set this aside with the cotter pin that you already removed.

Removing the top-most bar:

4) Carefully close the lid of the kiln. **NOTE:** By removing the top-most hinge bar the springs have been disengaged and the full weight of the lid will now be present.

The closed lid without the top-most hinge bar:

5) Remove one of the cotter pins from the middle hinge bar. This is the one that runs through the springs.

Removing a cotter pin from the middle bar:

6) Grasp both of the springs with one hand and carefully slide out the middle hinge bar. The springs will be freed once the bar has been removed. Set this all aside, along with the cotter pin that you already removed.

Removing the middle bar and springs:

7) Your lid is now free of the kiln rings and can carefully be removed.

Lifting the lid off of the kiln body:

NOTE ABOUT JD1800 SERIES HINGES: These standard hinges are simple and are shown on page 14

MOVING THE KILN WITHOUT DISASSEMBLING IT

SEE THE CAUTION NOTE ON PAGE 1 OF THESE INSTRUCTIONS. THIS TAKES TWO OR THREE STRONG PEOPLE TO DO.

Moving a Three Section Jupiter Kiln with Spring Hinge (Also a JD1800 Series Kiln):

1) Remove the lid because this is easy and removes much of the weight. 2) Prepare the stand and place the floor slab on the stand. 3) Pick the the kiln up by the handles on the bottom kiln section and place the connected sections on the floor slab.

Moving a Two Section Jupiter Kiln with Spring Hinge:

1) Remove the lid because this is easy and removes much of the weight. 2) Prepare the stand. 3) Pick up the kiln by the front chest handle attached to the kiln floor and by the hinge. 4) Place the entire unit on the prepared kiln stand. NOTE: It is important to lift the two-section kilns up by the handle on the floor slab because the hinge is attached to the floor slab in the back of the kiln. You will damage the floor slab if you do not follow this procedure.

CAUTION: L&L stringently insists that *no Jupiter kilns with more than three rings* be moved without disassembly as they are very heavy and personal injury could result.

Go to "LOCATING THE KILN" on page 14.

REMOVING THE HINGE

1) Loosen the screws of the large hinge piece that holds the three rings together (or the two rings and bottom).

WE RECOMMEND NOT REMOVING SCREWS. The teardrop holes will allow you to remove the hinge piece without taking the screws out. If you take the screws out it increases the chance of stripping a screw. Even though there are plenty of screws to take the load it is best to avoid stripping them.

2) Gently pull the ring hinge piece up and away from the kiln

Pulling the hinge piece up and away from the kiln. It should slide up easily. If not check all the screws because it only takes one screw that is not loose enough to prevent the hinge piece from sliding up:

LOCATING THE KILN

1) Place the stand on the floor in the desired location. This should be set so that the outside stainless steel surface of the kiln will be at least 12” to 18” from any combustible wall. Floor must be nonflammable.

> Information concerning clearances, ventilation and electrical requirements is detailed in *jupiter-install.pdf*. Read now if you are uncertain about any of these issues. DON’T PROCEED UNTIL YOU ARE COMFORTABLE WITH THE LOCATION THAT YOU SELECT. You don’t want to do this job twice.

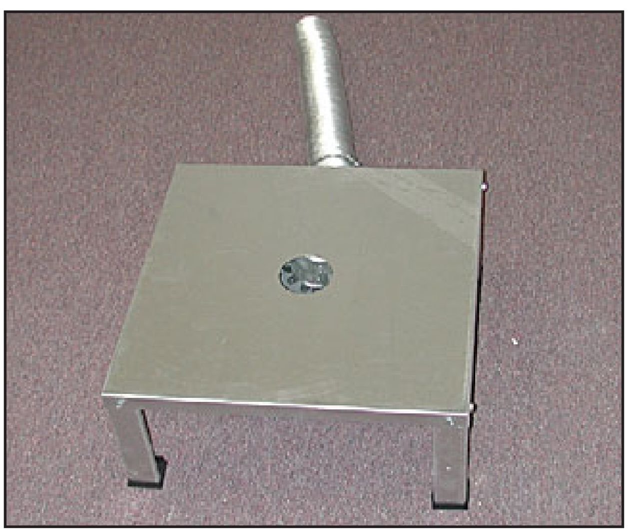
2) Place bottom floor section of kiln on the stand, making certain it is centered properly.

3) Note that the kiln bottom is packed on top of the kiln so it is easily removed first without moving the kiln.

SETTING UP THE KILN

1) Place the stand in your desired location making sure to face the flexible duck work toward the wall that the kiln will be vented through.

The stand in position on the floor:



2) You're now going to build the kiln from the bottom up.

3) Place the bottom of the kiln on the kiln stand, make sure the holes for the vent line up with the large 3" hole on the kiln stand. Center the bottom brick on the stand. It is not critical how the polygonal corners are oriented to the square stand.

The kiln base positioned on the stand:

4) LEVEL THE KILN NOW! Do this before proceeding because at this point it is easy to put a level on the flat bottom. Use metal shims under the legs to accomplish the leveling. We suggest using a carpenter's level for this job. Make sure that the base will not wobble.

WHY IS LEVELING SO IMPORTANT?

If the stand and the bottom are not level your kiln shelves will not be level and loading will be difficult. Kiln shelves loaded with ceramic ware are like a house of cards to begin with - don’t make it any harder!

Also - an uneven floor will quickly become a cracked floor. There should be equal support under each leg of the stand so the floor does not rock back and forth.

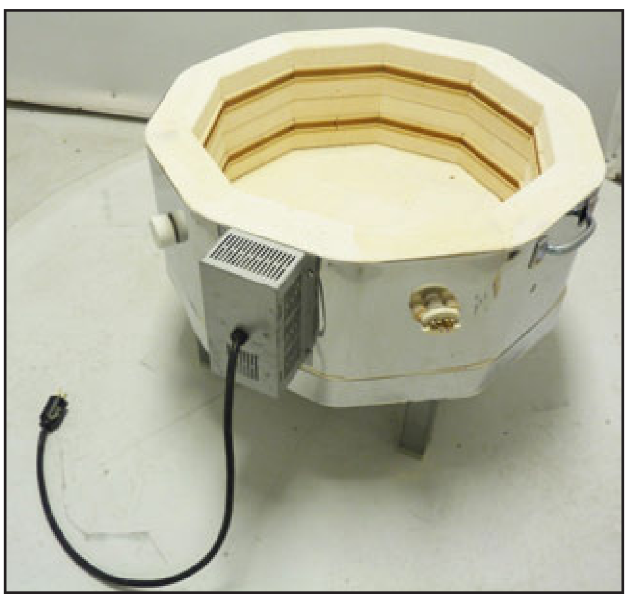
Be patient about doing this right as you are assembling the kiln. Once you have put the kiln sections on the bottom of the kiln you will not feel like taking it off - so it is important to have this base be level to start with.

5) Notice that each of the kiln sections ahve have numbered power cords (referred to as Element Box Jumper Cords). The top kiln section will always be the one with "1" on it's cord. Conversely, the bottom kiln section will always be the one with the highest numbered cord, "3" for a three section, "4" for a four section, etc.

Top-most element jumper cord:

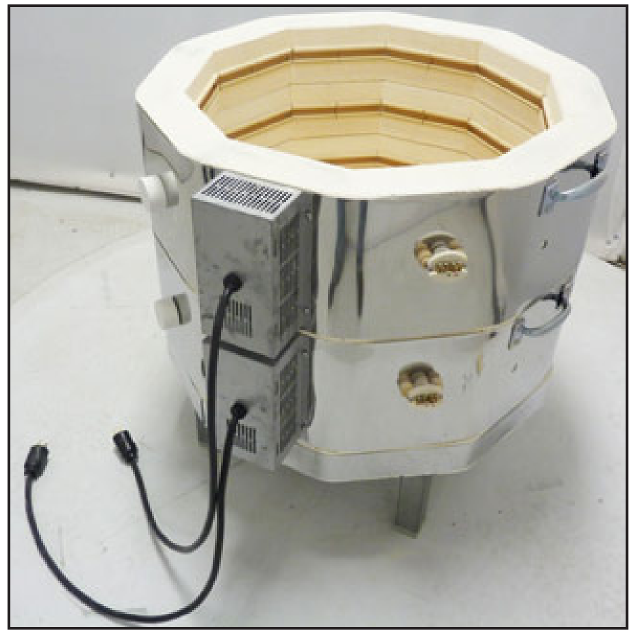
6) Place the kiln section with the highest number on the element jumper cord on top of the kiln stand. A JD230V is show being assembled, this is number "3" for the JD230V.

Positioning the bottom ring on the base:



7) Place the kiln section with next lowest number on the element jumper cord on top of the previously placed ring, this is number "2" for the JD230V.

Positioning the middle ring:



8) Place the kiln section with the next lowest number on the element jumper cord on top of the stack. This is number "1" for the JD230V.

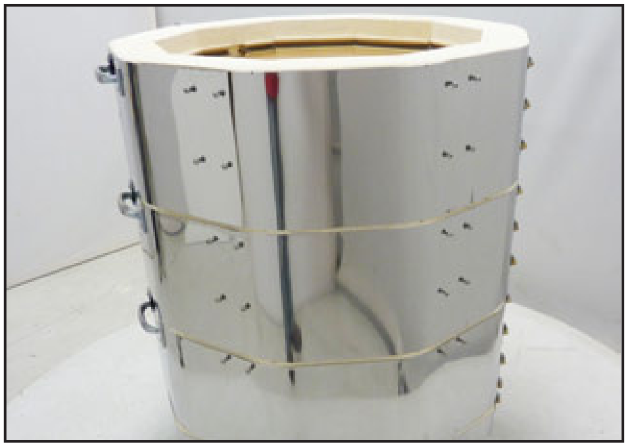
Positioning the top ring:

9) You are now ready to reattach the hinge.

SETTING UP THE HINGE

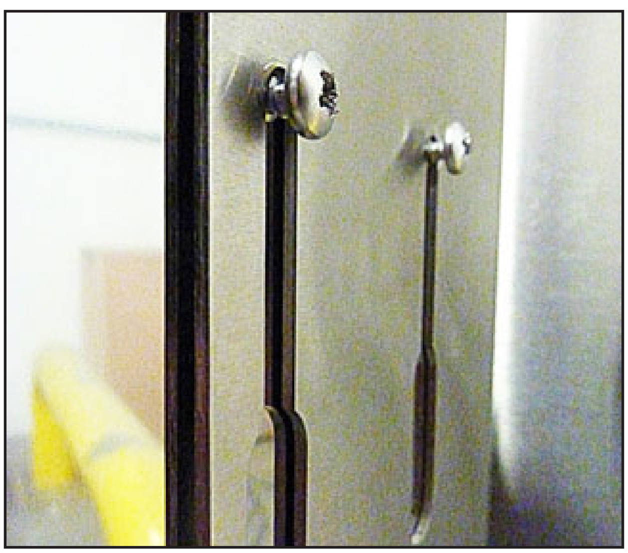
1) Notice that on the back of the kiln that the mounting screws for the hinge line up. There should be 20 total, 10 on each side.

The mounting screws lined up:



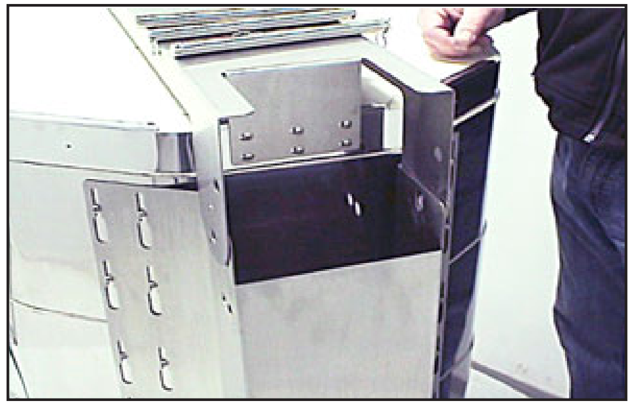
2) Reattach the Kiln Bracket to the back of the kiln by dropping it onto the screws on the kiln sections. If the screws on the kiln don't perfectly line up with the holes in the bracket, gently maneuver the bracket until you have all the screw heads into the keyhole slots. Let the bracket drop so that the top of the slots rest against the screws. **Do not tighten the screws at this time.**

The slots resting on the loose screws:



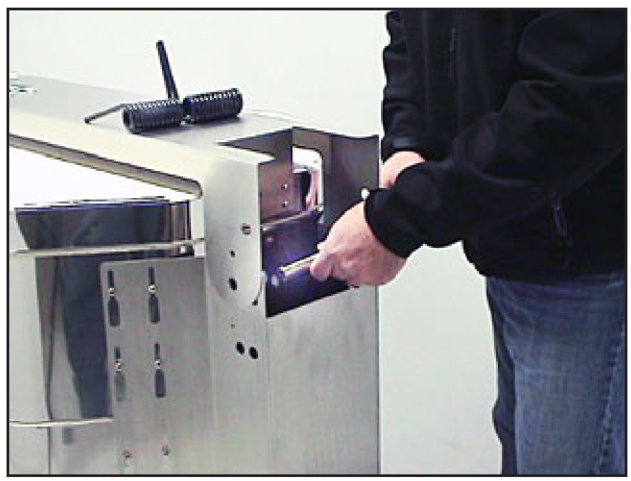
3) Set the Lid onto the top ring of the kiln, making sure the lid flange fits around the outside of the kiln bracket.

The lid as ready for hinge installation:



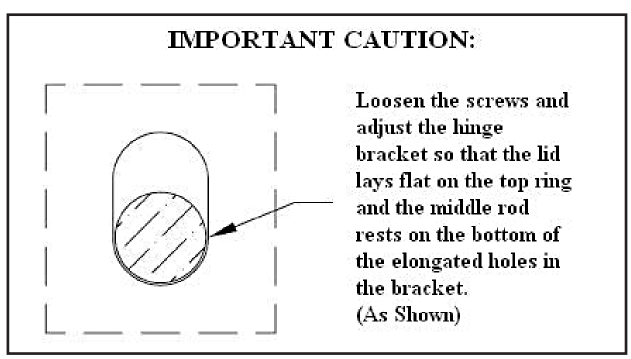
4) Slide one of the 3 metal rods through the middle set of holes. You will notice that the holes on the kiln bracket are elongated circles.

Sliding in the middle rod:



4) Adjust the height of the bracket by sliding it upwards until the metal rod you inserted in the middle set of holes rests on the bottom ends of the elongated circular holes.

Positioning the hinge bracket:



5) Tighten each of the 20 screws to secure the Hinge Bracket in this position.

> **CAUTION:** It is critical that the hinge bar sits in the bottom of the slot. This is to allow the lid to rise and lower slightly as the kiln heats and expands with out putting stress on the lids connection points and potentially damaging the lid.

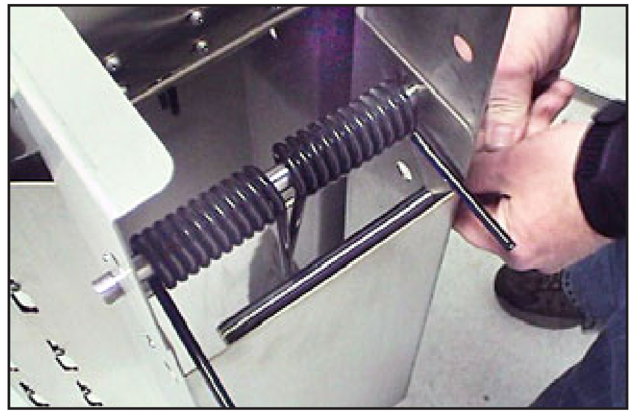
6) Remove the middle metal rod. Hold the two hinge springs on the inside of the hinge bracket chamber and slip the rod back through the holes and through the center of the springs. Ensure that the outer spring ends are sitting on either end of the back of the bracket.

Installing the middle rod and springs:

7.a) If you left the bottom metal rod in the kiln bracket ensure that the inner spring ends rest against the inside face of the rod, closest to the kiln body.

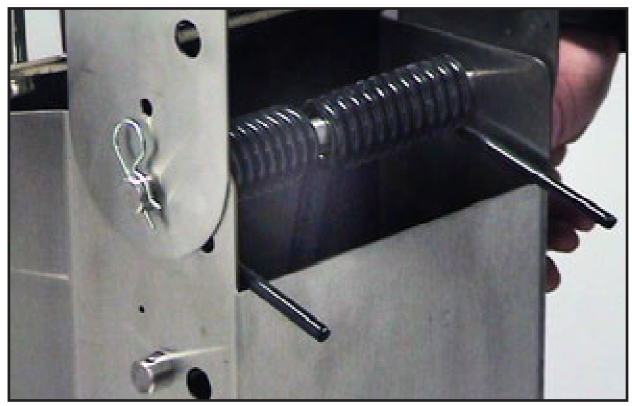
7.b) Take the second metal rod and run it through the bottom set of holes on the kiln bracket. Make sure that the inner spring ends stay towards the kiln. This will create tension when the spring is loaded.

Installing the bottom-most rod:



8.) Once the two metal rods are set in place, set the Cotter Pins in place at each end of the rods.

Setting the cotter pins:



9) Carefully raise the lid until the top set of holes passes below the spring ends that are resting on the back of the bracket. Once this occurs, slide the third and final metal rod through the holes on the lid flange.

Installing the top-most rod:

10) Once the metal rod is set in place, set the Cotter Pins in place at each end of the rod.

The properly installed spring hinge open:

11) You will see that when the lid is lowered, this metal rod will catch the spring ends and the weight of the lid will be reduced as the lid is now properly installed.

The properly installed spring hinge closed:

OPTIONS:

There is another set of holes on the Kiln Bracket if you find that the tension provided from the original configuration is insufficient. Simply try the second set of holes in the same manner as in step 5.

WARNING:

Only use one of the two sets of hole configurations. Never use both

ADJUSTING THE STANDARD HINGE

1) The standard hinge is a very simple system that employs a hinge bar, brackets for the top ring and lid, and support chains between the lid and top ring.

2) To take apart the hinge simply pull out one of the cotter pins, remove the hinge bar, and unscrew the screws that hold the support chains in place.

Closed lid with a standard hinge:

3) If the brackets are ever adjusted you must ensure that the hinge rod rests on the bottom ends of the elongated circular holes. Move the ring bracket up or down to achieve this result.

Positioning the hinge bracket:

CAUTION: A Screw Hook is included with the standard hinge. This should be secured in a stationary position behind the kiln and be used in conjunction with the chain on the lid handle to prevent the lid from falling when open.

ASSEMBLING THE CONTROL PANEL

1) Notice the slots just off the front edges of the Element Connection Boxes. In some of these slots there will be screws. These screws have been positioned in the slots with which you should hang your control panel.

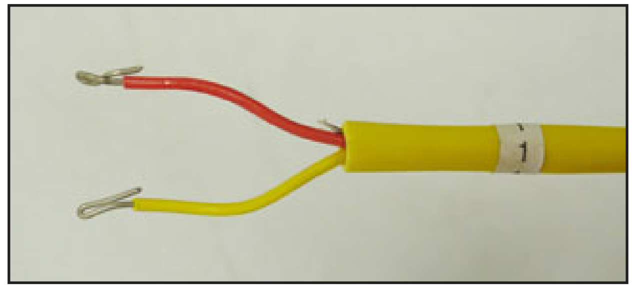
The proper mounting slots:

2) Remove these Mounting Screws and position the control with it's mounting holes over the slots from which the screws were removed. Replace the screws.

Feeding the wires back through the holes:

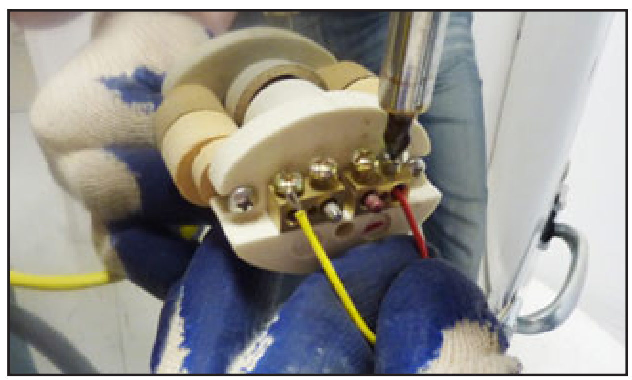
3) Uncoil the yellow Thermocouple Lead Wires, if you haven't already, and locate the numbers indicated on them,as with the Element Jumper Cords. The wire labeled with "1" pertains to the top-most Thermocouple whereas the wire labeled "2" pertains to the next lowest, there are three per kiln at most. It is very important that these are installed properly.

Top-most thermocouple lead wire:



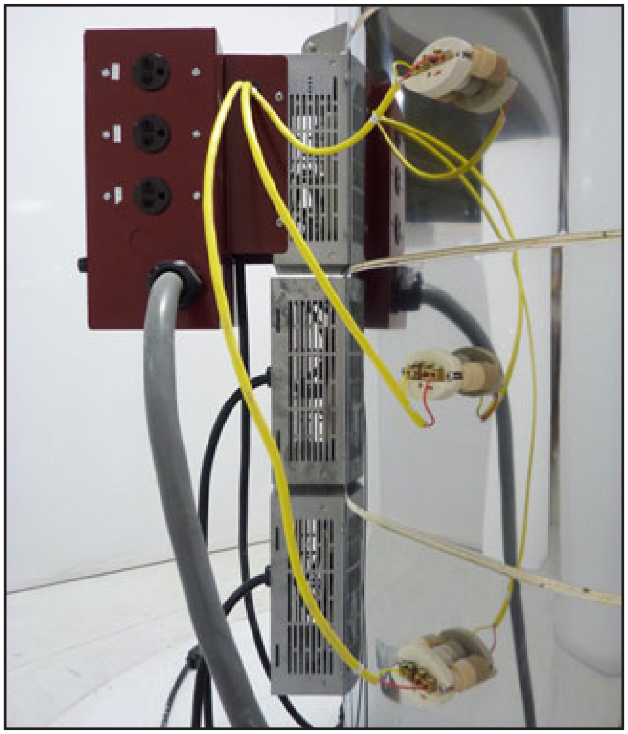
4) Take the Thermocouple Lead Wire labelled "3" and locate the bottom-most Thermocouple. Now simply place the red wire into the negative slot, marked (-), tighten the screw to hold it down, then place the yellow wire into the positive slot, marked (+), and tighten the screw to hold it down. The negative symbol has been highlighted in red to correspond to the red wire for added ease of installation.

Thermocouple lead wire properly installed:



5) Repeat this process with the Thermocouple Lead Wire labelled "2", and then with the Lead Wire labelled "1". Once completed the kiln should look similar to the below picture, a JD230V is shown.

All thermocouple lead wires installed:



> **CAUTION:** Ensure that the Lead Wires are not touching the kiln body. If these wires burn the control will not function properly..

6) Relocate the Element Jumper Cord labelled "1". Plug this into the top-most recepticle on the right side of the Control Panel, this should also be labelled "1".

Element jumper cord properly installed:

7) Repeat this process with each higher numbered Jumper Cord until they are all plugged into their respective recepticles. A JD230V is shown.

All element jumper cords installed:

8) Your Jupiter kiln is now fully assembled and ready to operate. A JD230V is shown

The completely assembled kiln:

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

INSTALLATION & PREORDER INFORMATION FOR L&L KILNS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INSTALLATION & PRE-ORDER CHECKLIST FOR NEW KILNS

Please review and fill out the checklist at the end of this form, to avoid unpleasant surprises after your new kiln is installed. Make sure of your electricity and your physical environment, then you can place your kiln order with complete ease of mind! This checklist should be used for anyone specifying a kiln, including architects. Kilns are appliances with a few special characteristics, such as high power draw, ventilation requirements and unusually hot surfaces. A few hours work up front can save lot of trouble and expense later. There is a more specific installation guide for EASY-FIRE kilns *(hotkilns.com/easy-fire-install.pdf)*.

KILN CAUTIONS

See *cautions.pdf* in the CAUTIONS section for a complete list of cautions associated with electric kilns.

DATED INFORMATION

The information in these Installation Instructions is believed to be correct to the best of our knowledge at the time of publication (see the date at the bottom). You can download the most recent update from our web site at *www.hotkilns.com/install.pdf* at any time.

SAFETY APPROVALS & LISTINGS

LOCAL CODES

Local fire and safety codes superceed information that is provided in these Installation instructions or in our Caution instructions.

UL LISTING

You may want to check with your local building inspector if you are uncertain what codes may apply to the installation of a kiln. This does vary from place to place. It may also be a requirement of your insurance policy. In any case, you will never go wrong in having a UL499 listing label on any appliance. Most building inspectors will accept this as adequate evidence of proper adherence to national safety standards.

All Jupiter, Easy-Fire, and DaVinci (except the Model TB644754) are listed to UL 499 Standards for both the US and Canada by MET (An NRTL - Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory). The Vent-Sure vent is listed in both the US and Canada for use with L&L listed kilns. UL 499, CSA C22.2, No. 122, CSA C22. Listing No E112742.

Easy-Load and Renaissance kilns are listed to UL499 Standards in the US only.UL 499. Listing No E112742.

The Doll/Test Kiln, Liberty-Belle, Chamelion, and GS1714 are not listed.

NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE

Be sure your electrician follows the National Electric Code and any other local requirements when hooking up the kiln. One of the requirements of this code that bears particular mentioning is the fact that you must fuse your kiln appliance for 125% of its rated maximum amperage draw. This explains why you see fusing requirements in our electrical specifications that are in excess of the amperage draw of the kiln. The fuse for the kiln is either a circuit breaker or a fused disconnect switch.

NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION

To the best of our knowledge, the NFPA has nothing specific about the installation of kilns. The NFPA 86 goes into considerable detail about industrial furnaces and ovens but generally with respect to internal processes and gas-fired equipment. There is one section in the NFPA 86 (Section 2-1.5 concerning Floors and Clearances) that might be construed as applicable to kilns. It requires that temperatures at combustible ceilings and floors be kept below 160°F (71°C). In general the NFPA recommends installing furnaces on noncombustible surfaces and has specific requirements if this is not possible. You can order a copy of this by going to their web site at *www.nfpa.org* or by calling 617-984-7249.

UNIFORM MECHANICAL CODE

Section 920.0 specifically discusses Small Ceramic Kilns and their installation. Some of the clearance information from this is given further on. However, it is best to refer to this book for complete details. This is published by the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials and can be purchased online at *www.iapmo.org/iapmo/publications.html* or by calling 800 85-IAPMO (800-854-2766) / Fax (909) 598-4720.

ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

VOLTAGE AND POWER

The first item on the checklist is electricity. Make sure that you know your voltage and phase before placing an order for a new kiln! We can supply kilns with either 208, 220, 240, 380 or 480 volts, single or three phase - all depending on your power characteristics. If you do not know for sure what your power is, have an electrician check it for you.

WHAT VOLTAGE DO YOU REALLY HAVE?

L&L makes different heating elements for 208 volts, 220 volts, 240 volts, 380 volts and 480 volts. It is not easy or cheap to change the kiln from one voltage to another once it is installed. A kiln supplied from the factory for 240 volts will have 25% less power if operated on 208 volts - and this will result in slow firing, and perhaps underfiring if not corrected. Many schools and factories in the United States have 208 volts whereas almost all homes in the United States have 240 volts. (Nominal 240 volts can actually be as low as 220 volts). Some people think they have 220 volt power because many appliances are designed to run off either voltage and are labeled 220. Even if you only measure 220 volts (if you are in the United States), this is probably due to an under-voltage condition. You wouldn't normally want to have 220 volt elements because if the power does go up from the measured 220 volts then the kiln would be over-powered and it could draw too many amps for the circuit. Note that utility companies typically allow for a 10% voltage fluctuation. The most common voltage outside the United States is either 380/3 phase or 220/1 phase.

WHAT PHASE DO YOU HAVE?

Also check for proper phase. Most residential buildings have single phase power which consists of 2 hot wires, a neutral and a ground wire. Many commercial areas have 3 phase power available which consists of 3 hot wires, a neutral and a ground.

You also need to make sure that your home or building has enough ampere capacity to carry the electrical load of your new kiln. Each kiln model is listed with voltage, phase, KW, and amperes. Using these electrical specifications, check the listed amperes and check that your building power supply is adequate. A trickier thing to know is the real capacity of your power grid. We have sometimes seen situations (rarely, but very annoying when it happens) where the demand put on a specific power grid ends up lowering the voltage of the entire grid. For instance you might go in and test the lines and find you have 238 volts and then, when a large kiln is firing, have only 218 volts. Again, if you do not know for sure whether your power supply can handle this new load, have an electrician check it for you. NOTE: like anything else there are good and bad electricians. Chose one with care by getting a few references.

USE A FUSED DISCONNECT

We recommend having a separate fused disconnect box with a lockout provision mounted near the kiln, even if you also have a separate circuit breaker for your kiln. This way you can easily turn off power to the kiln and prevent unauthorized people from turning it on. We recommend this even for kilns with plugs because it makes it so much easier to disconnect all power to the kiln when not using it. Note that if you unplug a kiln frequently the spring tension in the outlet can weaken over time. A Fused Disconnect switch allows you to positively turn off power to the kiln without unplugging it.

USE PROPER FUSES

Fuses and circuit breakers are overcurrent devices designed to protect electrical circuit components. If a circuit develops too many amperes, they are designed to open, interrupting the flow of current in the circuit. Fuses self-destruct when they sense an overload in the circuit. Circuit breakers are commonly used in new construction; they trip (turn off power) when they sense an overload, and can be reset (turned back on) when the circuit is returned to normal.

Circuit breakers are more convenient because of this feature. However, they can cause nuisance tripping and ruin kiln firings when they trip part way through a firing. This is because most circuit breakers are activated thermally; if the circuit breaker temperature rises above a preset level, a bimetallic element inside the circuit breaker opens, and the power is turned off. This works well most of the time; however, over time the bimetallic element becomes weaker because resistance heating circuits are at their rated load longer than other types of electrical loads such as motors. Eventually the circuit breaker becomes too weak to hold itself closed over a long enough time to finish a kiln firing, unless the circuit is drastically oversized to compensate for this gradual aging process.

For protecting kiln circuits, 'one-time' general-purpose type fuses should be used. These are inexpensive, have no appreciable time delay, and are available in a large variety of sizes. They are also widely and easily available, and are made by several large fuse manufacturers.

LOCATE KILN WITHIN 50 FEET OF BREAKER

Try to locate the kiln within 50 feet of your breaker box. For longer runs you will probably have to increase the size of the hook up wire that we recommend in our literature. In any case, be sure to have a licensed electrician who knows the National Electrical Code hook up the kiln and size the hook up wire.

USE PROPER GROUNDING

Make sure your electrician properly grounds the kiln and then tests for proper grounding after the installation.

USE COPPER WIRE FOR HOOK UP

Don't use aluminum wire. It is cheaper to use aluminum wire and you may be tempted to do so. Many electricians will tell you that, with the new types of connectors, it is OK. However, it is of particular importance with kilns not to use aluminum wire for the hook ups. The specific reason particular to kilns is that the wire tends to get hotter near the kiln than it might going into some other types of appliance. Also, being a resistive load, there is constant heat being generated by the conductors for quite a few hours. When aluminum wire gets hot it accelerates oxidation. Aluminum oxide is a resistor; copper oxide is not as much. If the connection at the terminal board gets oxidized it will really heat up - to the point where it could cause a fire. Note: Depending on local codes it may be OK to use aluminum wire to your subpanel - as long as that wire is not exceeding its temperature rating while kiln is firing on full power for an extended period of time.

USE THE PROPER WIRE GAUGE

Hook-up wire sizes are provided for many of our kilns in the electrical specifications. However, this can vary depending on ambient temperature conditions and length of wire run.

Running power for your kiln over a long distance will result in a drop in voltage. This chart gives some approximate idea of this:

7 volts per 100 feet with 10 awg wire
21 volts per 300 feet with 10 awg wire
6 volts per 100 feet with 6 awg wire
18 volts per 300 feet with 6 awg wire
3 volts per 100 feet with 1 awg wire
9 volts per 300 feet with 1 awg wire

These estimates are dependent on the kiln operating at 50% to 100% of its capacity, with the temperature of the wire no more than 167°F.

INSTALLING A PLUG RECEPTICLE

If you a plug in your kiln install the receptical in such a way that the cord hanges down (not up). Do not place the outlet so close to floor that the kiln cord bends up at a sharp angle. The principle to pay attention to is make sure the plug seats securely in the receptical. Otherwise it could overheat and corrode which could cause an electrical fire.

PROTECT POWER CORD FROM KILN CASE

Rout Power Cord away from kiln in such a way that it can not touch the hot case of the kiln. Secure it so it can not move. If cord touches the hot case it could melt and cause a short circuit and/or fire.

DIRECT HOOK-UP KILNS

If you are getting a "direct hook up" kiln (all kiln sizes above 48 amps and most 3 phase kilns) be sure to have the kiln wired so that the final connection to the box is flexible (for instance, by using liquid tight flexible conduit). Ideally, the kiln should be wired to a fused disconnect box located within 15 feet of the kiln. This way, if you ever need to remove the control panel for factory service you can turn off power to the kiln, unhook the 3 or 4 wires from the control box terminal block, and remove the panel.

Use a supply wire size large enough for the whole circuit amperage - not just the amperage that the kiln is pulling under load.

All L&L power cords are rated for 105°C. Anything less than this can cause a malfunction and possible fire where the power leads connect to the control box.

It is OK, and will not void the warranty, to remove the plug that comes with the kiln and direct wire the kiln. However, the connection wires must be rated for a minimum of 105°C.

Protect the wire with flexible or ridgid conduit.

DO NOT USE EXTENSION CORDS

Extension cords are only OK to use for the 120 volt vent system. Do NOT use an high power extension cord for the kiln.

OFF-PEAK ELECTRICAL USAGE

Some utilities offer special rates for running energy intensive appliances (like kilns) during off-peak hours. Check with local utility. This would require a special time-of-use electrical meter.

WHERE TO GET MORE INFORMATION

See *hotkilns.com/volts.pdf* for a complete description of electrical theory, fusing, hook-up wire sizes, etc. as they apply to kilns. See the section on POWER SUPPLY in *troubleshoot-general.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING section of your manual.

CLEARANCES & SURFACES

DOORWAY CLEARANCES FOR MOVING

All Jupiter, Easy-Fire, Liberty-Belle and DaVinci kilns can be dissassembled and carried in sections through any standard 30” or larger doorway. Doll kilns and the GS1714 will fit through a 30” door. The

Easy-Load front loading kilns vary in door width requirements (see the brochure for specifications).

CLEARANCES IN KILN ROOM

Make certain floor is not flammable and install no closer than 12" to any wall. (18" is strongly recommended). Note that, when we did our testing for UL, temperatures where measured 12" from the walls of the kiln and found to be safe from a flammability standpoint. The Uniform Mechanical Code 2000 Edition states that "the sides and tops of kilns shall be located a minimum of eighteen (18) inches (457 mm) from any noncombustible wall surface and three (3) feet (914 mm) from any combustible wall surface." The National Fire Protection Agency states that temperatures at combustible ceilings and floors be kept below 160°F (71°) near industrial furnaces (which are like kilns).

WALL MATERIALS

Check with local building codes for recommended non-combustible wall materials for walls that are adjacent to the kiln. Cement board, cinderblocks, and masonary tile are possible choices.

FLOORS

The Uniform Mechanical Code 2000 Edition states that "kilns shall be installed on noncombustible flooring consisting of at least two (2) inches (51 mm) of solid masonry or concrete extending at least twelve (12) inches (305 mm) beyond the base or supporting members of the kiln." Recommended floor surfaces are cement, ceramic tile, stone, slate, cinder blocks or brick. Do not install on a wood floor or on carpet. Vinyl flooring may be combustible. Protect linoleum flooring from discoloration with a noncombustible covering. BE VERY CAREFUL ABOUT IMPLEMENTING THESE SUGGESTIONS. Remember that the kiln is putting out heat over a long period of time and that this could very well start a fire under certain conditions. Also, if an overfiring occurs, materials like glass and glazes can be super-heated and electrically conductive and they can melt right through the kiln floor. If there is a combustible floor, this could cause a fire. Also keep in mind the continued heat of the kiln can dry out combustible surfaces over time and reduce their flash point. The NFPA 86 (Section 2-1.5 concerning Floors and Clearances) that might be construed as applicable to kilns requires that temperatures at combustible ceilings and floors be kept below 160°F (71°C). In general the NFPA recommends installing furnaces on noncombustible surfaces and has specific requirements if this is not possible.

AIR CIRCULATION UNDER THE KILN

It is CRITICAL to have air circulation under the kiln. This prevents heat from being directly conducted to the floor surface. If the floor (or subfloor) is combustible a fire could result. Even if the floor is non-combustible (like solid cement) you would create a very inefficient system by placing the kiln directly on the floor. The supplied stands (which typically raise the kiln 8” from the floor) have been tested to ensure a minimum of heat transfer. It is important to use the kiln with its supplied stand. Any substitutes must be carefully tested by the user.

OTHER CLEARANCES

Make sure there is adequate clearance in the room for opening the kiln lid, and for periodic maintenance such as opening the element connection boxes, opening the control panel, thermocouple replacement, etc. 18" to 24" clearance around the outside wall of the kiln is usually sufficient.

KILN ROOM ENVIRONMENT

KEEP KILN DRY & IN PROTECTED SPACE

The kiln must be kept dry so it must be kept in an enclosed room away from inclement weather. The electrical circuits must not get wet. If for some reason they do get wet they must be thoroughly dried before operating the kiln. Kilns can corrode fairly rapidly if kept in rooms that have no climate control. The constant heating and cooling in an unheated shed, for instance, can cause dew to form on the cold metal and this can cause corrosion. Also exposure to salt air will accelerate corrosion dramatically. Also failure to adequate vent the kiln will allow the corrosive fumes that are generated in the firing process to corrode the metal, the wiring and even the firebrick. This sort of damage is specifically excluded from warranty coverage.

AMBIENT TEMPERATURE

The kiln should operate in an environment that is between 0°F and 100°F. Some people keep their kilns in unheated garages or sheds. This is OK as long as the room is dry. The DynaTrol has a specification that says it can work from 32°F to 125°F. These limits can be exceeded on the low end. (The control won't deal with negative numbers so if you go below 32°F you must have the control set up for Deg F - not Deg C) On the low end it has more to do with the accuracy of the control. As the kiln reaches the point where accuracy is an issue then the control will most likely be warmed sufficiently by the kiln to insure that it is operating within specification. However, on the high end, the electronics could degrade if operated for long periods above 125°F.

FIRE EXTINGUISHER

We would recommend that an adequate fire extinguisher be kept near the kiln and checked on a regular basis. You may want to check with your local fire authorities to see if there are any specific requirements they have such as sprinkler systems, automatic foam extinguishers, etc. Use a fire extinguisher that is rated for electrical fires. We recommend an ABC fire extinguisher.

FIRE SPRINKLERS

If you have a fire sprinkler system position the sprinkler heads in the ceiling away from the kiln(s). The rising heat from the kiln, under normal operating conditions, could set off the sprinklers which will cause water damage. Consider using a higher temperature sprinkler head or one that is set off by smoke. Also consider using the canopy type vent system in this type of environment which will lower the temperature above the kiln. Test the installation under the worse conditions to be sure that you are not creating a hazard.

VENTILATION REQUIREMENTS

VENTILATION IS ESSENTIAL

Kilns generate harmful fumes when firing ceramics. Fumes can include carbon monoxide, formaldehyde, sulfur dioxide , heavy metal vapors, and fluorides (all of which can be very toxic). Install kiln in well-ventilated area. Never operate in an enclosed space such as a closet unless you have good ventilation. Aside from issues of ventilating the fumes from the firing, the heat build up in an enclosed room could present a significant fire hazard. Severe corrosion can be caused by kiln fumes, salt air or other environmental conditions. Good venting can minimize these problems. **Ventilation must be to the outside.** We recommend room ventilation of at least 10-25 times the cubic feet of the kiln per hour. For example, if a kiln has 10 cubic feet then 250 cubic feet per hour (about 4 cubic feet per minute) should be adequate. Our suggestion is to get a variable speed fan for ambient room ventilation and keep a thermometer on the wall. That way you can vary the ventilation to suit the needs of ambient heat conditions in the room. Grainger is an excellent source for ventilation equipment. (See *www.grainger.com*)

VENTILATION FOR THE KILN

In addition, we recommend our VENT-SURE downdraft kiln vent system. This will take care of most of the venting of the fumes of the kiln, will improve uniformity of firing in the kiln, and will help maintain the oxygen level in the kiln (which is important for certain glaze effects as well as good element life). See the separate instructions in this book for the VENT-SURE vent system. Although you can use other kiln venting systems please note that the VENT-SURE is c-UL-us listed for use with the Easy-Fire kilns. If UL listing is an issue then you may want to ensure that another brand of vent will be acceptable to your local authorities. Also if you use another brand of vent be sure to check with the vent manufacturer for specific installation requirements with our specific kiln model. <u>We specifically do not recommend a plate mount type vent (like the Envirovent or Orton Plate Mount Vent) for use with our kilns.</u> We have seen kiln bottoms crack from lack of support. Although the Orton Stand Version of their Kilnvent is sturdy and provides good support for at least a 23” diameter kiln like the e23S and e23T or JD230, the largest Orton stand mount vent is only 24” square vs our 29” square stand for the e28S and e28T or JD2927. If you must use the Orton vent then we recommend you use the

24" square Stand Version for all Easy-Fire and 23" or 29" Jupiter kilns. You can use there Junior Vent for the Doll kiln and the 18" Stand Vent for the J18 and J18X. Do use an Orton Vent with the DaVinci Series because there is no way to get good support for the kiln.

CARBON MONOXIDE MONITORING

We recommend the use of a carbon monoxide monitor in your kiln room. These are available from good hardware stores or from Graingers for about $50. (See *www.grainger.com*)

VENTING CODES

The following information is provided courtesy of The Edward Orton Jr. Ceramic Foundation.

OSHA has set standards for carbon monoxide exposure of 35 ppm (parts per million) for long-term exposure and 200 PPM for short-term exposure. Independent testing has shown that fumes near the kiln can exceed 200 PPM near the kiln during the firing of greenware. This can cause headaches, fatigue, sore throats and nausea. When properly installed and operated, a downdraft vent removes all harmful fumes and provides a safer working environment.

Most states and localities have set venting requirements for firing kilns in public places. Your local and state health board should have this information. The Uniform Mechanical Code says that you must vent ceramic kilns. It says that you can use a canopy-type hood (and gives specific requirements for such use) or that "listed exhaust blowers may be used when marked as being suitable for the kiln and installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions." Our Vent-Sure vent is UL listed and is appropriate to meet this ventilation requirement. If you decide to use a vent other than the UL listed Vent-Sure vent make sure you check with the manufacturer of the vent to be certain that it is an approved application. L&L takes no responsibility for improperly installed vents or kilns nor do we take responsibility for the use of other vents with our kilns. The manufacturer of the vent must specifically approve it for use with our kiln.

Note about canopy type vent hoods: While canopy type vent hoods can be suitable for venting a kiln from a safety point of view, they will not give you the superior advantages of a downdraft type vent like our Vent-Sure. A downdraft type vent pulls the rising hot air down to the bottom of the kiln which helps even out the firing. In addition it provides uniform distribution of oxygen in the kiln. You don't have to open the lid or the peepholes when using a downdraft vent.

See ASTM Standard C1023 Appendix for ventilating an electric kiln. xxxx. This states "Ventilation is recommended when firing an electric kiln. Adequate ventilation may be achieved by means of air exchange through cross ventilation, exhaust hoods or self-contained air handling systems. To determine the appropriate ventilation, it is recommended that you consult a local licensed Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning Contractor." (put in Easy-Fire as well)

HVAC AND AIR CONDITIONING ISSUES

Kilns put out a lot of ambient heat. If you need to size HVAC units to handle this see the BTU chart in the INSTALLATION section of your manual (*jupiter-btu.pdf* or *davinci-btu.pdf*) for a chart of maximum BTU output for each of our kiln models.

OTHER ACCESSORIES NEEDED

SHELVES AND POSTS

You will of course need an appropriate number of shelves and posts to load your ware. If you are buying a replacement kiln you may already have the correct shelves. Check the sizes and make sure they will fit into your new kiln. For instance, if you are buying a new 10 sided kiln that has 3" brick and you had a 10 sided kiln with 2-1/2" brick the old shelves will not fit (21" diameter shelves vs. the newly needed 20" diameter shelves. Note that shipping can be expensive for a shelf kit and that you will save a considerable amount of money if you order a shelf kit with your kiln.

GLOVES AND GLASSES

It is usually a good idea to have a pair of heat resistant gloves for removing peephole plugs and unloading the kiln. If you intend to observe witness cones while the kiln is firing you should wear shaded safety glasses. See *parts.pdf* in the PARTS section of your manual.

CONES

It is a very good idea to fire your kiln every time with witness cones. See the whole LOG, CONES, TIPS & CERAMIC PROCESS section in your manual for more information on this. They can easily be purchased after you get your kiln. You can buy pyrometric cones from either your local clay or ceramic supplier or directly from Orton see (*www.ortonceramic.com*).

SELECTING AN ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR

You will need a quality electrical contractor who is knowledgeable, skilled and qualified to handle the job. A quality electrical contractor:

1) Complies with state and local codes and regulations.

2) Carries the proper business and workers compensation insurance.

3) Is knowledgeable on a wide range of new equipment, technology and design procedures.

4) Has a local facility, and is willing to have you visit.

5) Is prompt and courteous and provides fast, reliable service -- attempting to perform service at your convenience.

6) Is neat and well groomed. This neatness should be reflected in their vehicles and offices as well as their personal appearance.

7) Provides a detailed written proposal, clearly outlining the work to be done and the agreed upon cost, including labor and materials. Make sure you understand every word of any contract before you sign it.

8) Asks in detail about any problems and offers understandable solutions.

When considering an electrical contractor:

1) Ask for references. Find out if other customers were satisfied. Check with the local Better Business Bureau regarding any filed complaints.

2) Compare price. Get bids from a few contractors. Make sure you give each contractor the same specifications and materials needed for the job.

3) Remember! How a company treats you now reflects how they will treat you if there's a problem. A quality electrical contractor listens to your problems, understands what you want accomplished and is willing to follow up after the work is completed.

FINAL CHECKLIST

VOLTAGE

- ❑ 208 Volts
- ❑ 220 Volts (non US)
- ❑ 240 Volts
- ❑ 380 Volts (non US)
- ❑ 480 Volts

PHASE

- ❑ 1 Phase
- ❑ 3 Phase

AMP CAPACITY

❑ I have checked the amperage rating of the kiln with the intended voltage and checked (or had an electrician check) to see that I had enough amps available in my building power supply.

VENTILATION

❑ I have a room fan

❑ I will also be using a kiln vent

❑ I am going to manually vent the kiln but I have adequate room ventilation for this.

FLAMMABILITY ISSUES

❑ I can install the kiln at least 12" away from any wall (18" is preferred). 36" is required from any combustible walls.

❑ My kiln room floor is non-flammable.

❑ I will use an insulated floor and check temperatures when the kiln is at its highest point

❑ I have a dedicated fire extinguisher or sprinkler system for the kiln room or kiln.

SAFETY STANDARDS & CODES

❑ UL or c-UL-us listing is required.

❑ UL or c-UL-us listing is not required.

❑ You are using a licensed electrician who knows the National Electrical Code and any other local codes.

OTHER SAFETY ISSUES

❑ Children will be adequately protected from hot kiln.

❑ There will be wall or other permanent fixture to attach the kiln lid safety chain (on the Jupiter kilns without the Easy-Lift Hinge) to a nearby wall or post. (This is self contained on the DaVinci kilns).

BTU ANALYSIS FOR L&L JUPITER KILNS FOR HVAC CALCULATIONS

These tables can be used to calculate maximum BTU output into a room when firing a kiln at various temperatures. It is meant for HVAC calculations.

The following table is for Jupiter kilns with 2-1/2" thick brick:

MODEL NUMBER 2-1/2" Brick	INTERIOR DIMENSIONS DIAM	HIGH	CUBIC FEET	K.W	Total Internal Sq Feet	Total Internal Sq Inches	Watts per internal Sq Inch	Total BTU loss/Hr at 1800F	Total BTU loss/Hr at 2000F	Total BTU loss/Hr at 2350F
J18	17 1/2	18	2.6	5.5	10.8	1552	3.54	6723	7876	9772
J18X	17 1/2	27	4.0	8.3	14.4	2074	4.00	8985	10526	13060
J23	23 3/8	18	4.6	7.0	15.7	2265	3.09	9816	11499	14267
J230	23 3/8	27	7.0	10.6	20.5	2952	3.59	12791	14985	18593
J236	23 3/8	36	9.3	14.0	25.3	3639	3.85	15767	18471	22918
J245	23 3/8	45	11.6	17.6	30.0	4325	4.07	18743	21957	27243
J2918	29	18	7.0	9.1	21.0	3023	3.02	13098	15343	19038
J2927	29	27	10.5	13.7	26.8	3860	3.55	16725	19592	24309
J2936	29	36	14.0	18.2	32.6	4697	3.88	20352	23841	29581
J2945	29	45	17.6	22.8	38.4	5534	4.12	23979	28090	34853

BTU'S HEAT LOSS PER SQ FT PER HOUR AT 1800 DEGF: 624 BTU's per Square Foot per hour with 2-1/2" brick
BTU'S HEAT LOSS PER SQ FT PER HOUR AT 2000 DEGF: 731 BTU's per Square Foot per hour with 2-1/2" brick
BTU'S HEAT LOSS PER SQ FT PER HOUR AT 22350 DEGF: 907 BTU's per Square Foot per hour with 2-1/2" brick

The following table is for Jupiter kilns with 3" thick brick:

MODEL NUMBER 3" Brick	INTERIOR DIMENSIONS DIAM	HIGH	CUBIC FEET	K.W	Total Internal Sq Feet	Total Internal Sq Inches	Watts per internal Sq Inch	Total BTU loss/Hr at 1800F	Total BTU loss/Hr at 2000F	Total BTU loss/Hr at 2350F
J18-3	16 1/2	18	2.5	5.5	10.6	1523	3.61	5561	6502	8067
J18X-3	16 1/2	27	3.7	8.3	14.2	2045	4.06	7468	8732	10833
J23-3	22 3/8	18	4.4	7.0	15.5	2227	3.14	8135	9511	11800
J230-3	22 3/8	27	6.7	10.6	20.2	2914	3.64	10643	12444	15439
J236-3	22 3/8	36	8.9	14.0	25.0	3600	3.89	13151	15377	19077
J245-3	22 3/8	45	11.1	17.6	29.8	4287	4.11	15660	18310	22716
J2918-3	28	18	6.8	9.1	20.7	2976	3.06	10871	12710	15769
J2927-3	28	27	10.2	13.7	26.5	3813	3.59	13928	16285	20204
J2936-3	28	36	13.6	18.2	32.3	4650	3.91	16985	19859	24639
J2945-3	28	45	17.0	22.8	38.1	5487	4.16	20043	23434	29073

BTU'S HEAT LOSS PER SQ FT PER HOUR AT 1800 DEGF: 526 BTU's per Square Foot per hour with 3" brick
BTU'S HEAT LOSS PER SQ FT PER HOUR AT 2000 DEGF: 615 BTU's per Square Foot per hour with 3" brick
BTU'S HEAT LOSS PER SQ FT PER HOUR AT 22350 DEGF: 763 BTU's per Square Foot per hour with 3" brick

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

WIRING

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

ACCESSORIES

HIGH TEMPERATURE (CONE 10) KILN WASH

TECHNICAL DESCRIPTION

L&L High temperature (cone 10) kiln wash is available in one pound and five pound boxes. It is made from a mixture of Silica, kaolin, and Alumina Hydrate.

DIRECTIONS FOR USE

Kiln wash is applied to kiln shelves to protect them from glaze drips. On a washed shelf, drips can be easily removed without gouging or marring the kiln shelf.

Some people also apply the kiln wash to the kiln bottom. Because this has both its benefits and detractants, we recommend that it only be done based on the kiln user's individual preferences.

Mix the kiln wash with water to a thin cream consistency. Apply only one coat at a time. Use a wide paintbrush or utility brush (a 2" - 3" wide, soft bristle brush generally works best). Three individually fired-on coats of kiln wash are preferable.

APPLYING KILN WASH

1) Make sure the tops of the shelves are coated with kiln wash. This will protect these surfaces from melting glaze and ceramics. If desired, also apply to the kiln bottom.

2) Do not coat the bottom or sides of the shelves.

3) Do not apply kiln wash to the brick sides or element holders.

4) Apply the kiln wash to the thickness of a post card.

5) The only purpose of kiln wash is to prevent any glaze that drips from a piece from sticking to the floor or shelves. This saves both the piece and the floor or shelves. If dripping should occur, simply remove dripping and cover the spot with new kiln wash.

6) When you are applying kiln wash to your shelves for the first time, it helps to dampen the top of your shelves with a wet sponge or a water-filled spray bottle first. This makes the kiln wash go on easier and more evenly.

7) For the kiln wash to really protect the kiln shelves it is best to apply three separate coats. In addition it is best to fire each coating separately. (If you brush one coat on, let it dry and then brush on another, you could actually be brushing off the first in the process, so ideally each coat should be fired on). The shelf can be used while firing the kiln wash on, so theoretically you would put one coat on, load the shelves and do your test firing of the kiln. The second coat would be fired on in the first bisque and the third coat in the second bisque or first glaze (whichever comes next). Fire at least to cone 018 - hot enough to give the kiln wash enough adherence to the shelf to prevent it from coming off in the second coating. Note that some people get away fine without three firings of the kiln wash. However, we include this recommendation as a "best practice".

8) If you notice that your kiln wash is flaking off, use a paint scraper (or something similar) to remove any loose bits, then reapply kiln wash. If glaze drips onto your shelf, use the paint scraper to pop the glaze drip off and clean up any loose areas around the area, then dab some more kiln wash in the bare area.

PROGRAM TO QUICKLY DRY KILN WASH

Here is a program that will dry the kiln wash in a hurry:

In the Vary-Fire section:

Press **Enter Prog**, Press '**1**'

Press **Enter**, Press '**1**'

Press **Enter**, Press '**60**'

Press **Enter**, Press '**200**'

Press **Enter**, Press '**600**' (for 6 hours, 400 for 4 hours, 800 for 8 hours etc of hold time at 200 degrees)

Press **Enter**, Press **9999**

Press **Enter**, Press **START**

APPLYING KILN WASH TO A KILN SITTER

If you have a kiln sitter/timer, put kiln wash on the cone supports (not sensing rod) for accurate cone action. Clean off the old wash and reapply new wash each time you fire or when it begins to chip away.

IMPORTANT CAUTIONS

1) Kiln wash contains silica. Long term exposure to silica dust could cause lung damage.

2) Reference *http://hotkilns.com/msds.pdf* for the material safety data sheet for kiln wash.

3) Exercise proper caution when mixing the dry powder and when removing it from your shelves.

4) Use a NIOSH approved particulate respirator for dust and use proper ventilation. You can buy these from safety supply houses. (NIOSH_approval #TC-21C-132 is an example).

5) Store kiln shelves in a dry location. Shelves can absorb moisture and this can cause them to explode when they are fired.

6) Do not fire cracked shelves. They can fail in the middle of a firing causing the whole load in your kiln to collapse.

7) We recommend attending the kiln during all firings, as no automatic safety device is foolproof.

PRICES

One Pound Box of Kiln Wash

M-G-WASH/01 . . . . $3.45 each.

Five Pound Box of Kiln Wash

M-G-WASH/05 . . . . $9.75 each.

INDUSTRIAL GRADE CERAMIC THERMOCOUPLE PROTECTION TUBES

A standard 8 gauge Type K Thermocouple:

The ceramic mullite protection tube it goes in:

PRICES

These are standard on Easy-fire, Easy-Fire XT, School-Master, Renaissance, Jupiter, eQuad-Pro, Hercules, Easy-Load, DaVinci, and Doll kilns. We are also offering these as a retrofit for older kilns.

8 Gauge Type K Thermocouple

T-G-E800/00 . . . . $32.00 each.

Industrial Mullite Protection Tube

T-G-TUBE/00 . . . . $29.00 each.

ADVANTAGES

- Longer life than the metallic sheathed thermocouples or exposed thermocouples
- No metal spalling in the kiln
- Protection from contamination found in clay such as sulfur
- Cheaper replacement cost for thermocouples

SAVE MONEY ON TC REPLACEMENTS

One major advantage of these protection tubes is that you can replace your old thermocouples with the cheaper standard 8 gauge thermocouples without changing the protection tube. A replacement 8 gauge thermocouple is less expensive than the metal-sheathed thermocouples. Over time the protection tubes may have to be replaced if they get contaminated from materials in the kiln; however, it should take a long time for contaminants to leach through the relatively impervious 1/8” thick mullite tube. The tube can be easily replaced independently from the thermocouples - they are not sealed or cemented together.

SIZE AND DESCRIPTION

The protection tubes are ¾” in outside diameter with a

½” inside diameter (which accommodates the standard 8 gauge Type K thermocouple). There is a flange on the back end of the thermocouple to prevent it from going into the kiln. If you are retrofitting an older kiln you will have to drill out the brick to ¾”. This is no problem. In fact the stainless steel where the thermocouples go through is, in most cases, punched at 1” diameter.

L&L TEST PROGRAM

The industrial 2300mi thermocouples that had been used for several years are no longer available because Hoskins, who made the material, is no longer in business. This is L&L’s careful response to this issue.

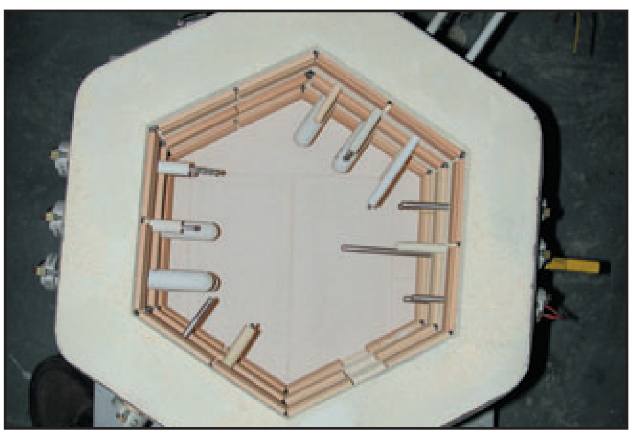
Mullite ceramic protection tubes over 8 gauge type k thermocouples offer superior life than 2300mi thermocouples.

L&L tested 23 different thermocouples in a kiln by firing them to Cone 10 (2350°F) and soaking the kiln for one hour repeatedly and then measuring the thermocouples with a sophisticated datalogger. The main thermocouple to control the kiln was a platinum Type S. The various test thermocouples were our standard 8 gauge thermocouple with a butt-welded end, one with a twisted end, both in a heavy mullite protection tube and exposed to air, 14 gauge Type K exposed thermocouples, Type N thermocouples of various types, a Hoskins 2300mi, several metallic sheathed thermocouples with inconel and various grades of Pyrocil (the replacement for the 2300mi), etc.

One of our standard Type K 8 gauge thermocouples in the industrial protection tube achieved 139 firings. The standard 8 gauge thermocouple without a protection tube made it to 100 firings. The metal-sheathed Pyrocil was good but not as good as the 8 gauge with the protection tube (it worked for 130 firings). An 8 gauge Type N did slightly better (143 firings) but the potential confusion of using this outweighed the simplicity and backward compatibility of the Type K.

The conclusion from the test is that a standard 8 gauge thermocouple with an industrial mullite ceramic protection tube offered the best combination for cost of replacement, cleanliness (there is no contamination of the kiln with metal spalling), resistance to contaminants in the kiln like sulfur, backward compatibility, and long life.

The kiln the thermocouples were tested in, before and after the test:



THERMOCOUPLE & CONE OFFSETS

A thermocouple in a protection tube has a slightly delayed response and hence an offset from a more sensitive thermocouple like the metallic sheathed thermocouple. However, our test indicated that every thermocouple measured slightly different temperatures anyway. A detailed analysis of responses after about 130 firings showed the 8-gauge Type K thermocouple in the protection tube to be between the control Type S platinum thermocouple and the metallic sheathed Pyrocil Type K. In any case the DynaTrol control has thermocouple offsets and cone offsets to allow you to compensate for any such effects. For ceramic work we recommend calibrating the kiln performance with cones and adjusting the control to match the performance of the firing cones. The most important thing is to get a consistent reading from the thermocouples. In a separate series of tests in our Easy-Fire kilns we came up with the exact offsets that seemed to work time and again. We ran various Easy-Fire cone programs on the DynaTrol with various offsets programmed into the control and measured accuracy of results with Large Self-Supporting Cones. The "Blue" DynaTrol (in use since April 2003) comes with these Thermocouple Offsets and Cone Offsets preprogrammed. From cone 022 to cone 017 the cone offsets are set at 9020. All other cones are preset at 0000. The Thermocouple Offset comes programmed into the control at 0018 (+18°F) when it leaves the factory. Note the room temperature will show around 90°F to 100°F. You can easily program these settings into the older "Green" DynaTrol. If you do not use the thermocouple protection tubes then you need to change thermocouple and cone offsets to 0000. See *dynatrol-basic-operation.pdf* in the OPERATION section for more information on calibration. (Note that we used a greater offset from April 2003 to Oct 2004 because the protection tubes were not as sensative as the ones we currently use.)

METALLIC PYROCIL TC OPTION

For those who prefer the metal-sheathed thermocouples for greater sensitivity they will still be available by special order (free for a Easy-fire, Easy-Fire XT, Renaissance, Jupiter, eQuad-Pro, Hercules, Easy-Load, DaVinci, and Doll kilns. See the separate PDF file on this (*hotkilns.com/tc-metallic.pdf*)

INDUSTRIAL METAL SHEATHED THERMOCOUPLES FOR L&L KILNS

METAL SHEATHED THERMOCOUPLES ON L&L KILNS

The standard thermocouple used on the DynaTrol is Type K. The most common thermocouple configuration that we use is an 8 gauge exposed Type K thermocouple protected with a mullite ceramic protection tube (standard on Easy-fire, Easy-Fire XT, School-Master, Renaissance, Jupiter, eQuad-Pro, Hercules, Easy-Load, DaVinci, Liberty-Belle and Doll kilns).

An alternative to the standard 8 gauge thermocouple is the Type K industrial Pyrocil metal-sheathed thermocouples. You can special order an Easy-fire, Easy-Fire XT, Renaissance, Jupiter, eQuad-Pro, Hercules, Easy-Load, DaVinci, or Doll kiln with Type K pyrocil thermocouples in place of the 8 gauge Type K thermocouple at no extra charge. There is a slight upgrade charge for a Tru-View Pyrometer system when requesting this option.

Below is metallic sheathed Pyrocil thermocouple:

APPLICATION

These thermocouples are useful where greater responsiveness is required than you will get with the 8 gauge inside of a 1/8" wall thickness ceramic protection tube. This is typically for industrial applications. Most ceramic firing does not need quick response.

We do not recommend using these above cone 6 temperatures (2232°F, 1222°C).

According to our life testing they got about 130 cone 10 firings vs. the 139 cone 10 firings of the 8 gauge thermocouple with the industrial mullite protection tube (a 100 firings for an exposed 8 gauge thermocouple).

DESCRIPTION

Industrial Grade Pyrocil Metal Sheathed Thermocouples are made with a high temperature alloy called Pyrocil.

L&L provides these special thermocouples with a 1/4" diameter sheath. These will last longer than the smaller 1/8" diameter thermocouples that some manufactures use. We use a high quality ceramic terminal block on the end.

The standard Pyrocil thermocouple is 6-1/2" long.

Because the Pyrocil thermocouples are still Type K, no changes need to be made with the control board to use them.

PRICES

One Type K Pyrocil thermocouple is used for each zone in a kiln using a DynaTrol control board. The number of zones are dependent on the kiln model; typically a kiln will have two or three zones.

One Type K Pyrcocil thermocouple is used for any kiln using a One-Touch™ control board.

Type K Pyrocil Thermocouple Upgrade Price

T-G-E23M/UG . . . . $0.00 each.*

*Price only applies at the time of purchase of a new kiln.

Pyrocil Sheathed Type K Thermocouple

T-G-E23M/05 . . . . $70.00 each.

TYPE S PLATINUM THERMOCOUPLES FOR L&L KILNS

THE BEST THERMOCOUPLE

The standard thermocouple used on the DynaTrol is Type K. The most common thermocouple configuration that we use is an 8 gauge exposed Type K thermocouple protected with a mullite ceramic protection tube (standard on Easy-fire, Easy-Fire XT, School-Master, Renaissance, Jupiter, eQuad-Pro, Hercules, Easy-Load, DaVinci, Liberty-Belle and Doll kilns).

The very best thermocouple for constant high fire applications is a Type S platinum thermocouple with an alumina sheath. This is standard on the JH Series kilns and is recommended for the most extreme conditions (like firing crystalline glazes) because of its expense. You can special order a DynaTrol with Type S thermocouples. The control is hard programmed for this (to avoid potential misfiring) and special calibrated wire connects the platinum thermocouples with the control.

Below is Type S Platinum Thermocouple:

TECHNICAL INFORMATION

Type S thermocouples are composed of a positive leg which is 90% platinum and 10% Rhodium, and a negative leg which is 100% platinum. It is usable from 32°F to 2700°F. (0°C to 1480°C). It has a different EMF output than Type K thermocouples (meaning the same temperature will produce different voltages to the control which must then be interpreted differently).

At temperatures used in pottery kilns (even the highest 2400°F) these thermocouples can last for a very long time (as long as they are not mechanically broken).

The lead wires that go from the Type S thermocouple to the control are a special grade that is not interchangeable with Type K lead wire.

On DynaTrols used before Jan 1, 2006 this is not a retrofittable option. In other words, you need to order these thermocouples when you order the DynaTrol. (If you want to convert your old DynaTrol to Type S there will be a $150 charge - plus the cost of the thermocouple - which will include the cost of replacing the lead wires and putting a new chip in the control board).

On DynaTrol 700 controls (used after Jan 1, 2006) the control can be easily converted from Type K to Type S in the field. You will still need to change the lead wire. Contact factory for more information.

DESCRIPTION

The Type S thermocouples that we provide have a 5/16" OD alumina sheath. They are ungrounded. There are two lengths. The short one used in the Easy-fire, Easy-Fire XT, Jupiter, eQuad-Pro, JH Series, DaVinci, and Doll kilns is 120mm (4.75") long. The long one used in the front-loading kilns like Renaissance, Hercules, and Easy-Load kilns is 160mm long (6.3"). Termination is in a ceramic terminal block.

PRICES

One Type S Thermocouple is used for each zone in a kiln using a DynaTrol control board. The number of zones are dependent on the kiln model, typically a kiln will have two or three zones.

Type S thermocouples are not available on any kilns using a One-Touch™ control board.

Type S Platinum Thermocouple Upgrade Price

T-G-SJUP/UG .... $150.00 each.*

*Price only applies at the time of purchase of a new kiln.

120mm (4.75") Type S Thermocouple

T-G-SXXX/00 .... $175.00 each.

160mm (6.3") Type S Thermocouple

T-G-SXXX/06 .... $200.00 each.

KILN INTERFACE & DATALOGGER SOFTWARE SYSTEM (K.I.S.S.)

FEATURES

K.I.S.S. (kiln interface software system) connects up to 50 DynaTrol controllers to a personal computer running Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Vista, and Windows 7 (just not Windows NT).

K.I.S.S. is an easy-to-use interface for programming and monitoring of the controller from a computer up to 4000 feet away. You can see the state of all 50 kilns at a glance or view the in depth status of any individual kiln.

The "collect data option" turns your computer into data acquisition system to store the set-points and the kiln temperatures in a file for graphing. The summary report will keep a history file of the date, program fired, firing time and final temperature for each firing of each kiln to help with maintenance records.

WHAT'S NEW IN VERSION 2.0

Selectable number of kilns, with a maximum of 50.

Constant data collection of the information in the kiln, allowing the user to record the cooldown temperatures after the controller has actually completed a firing.

Display of firing time estimates in the status screen and as the user is entering a ramp/hold type of firing.

Capability to store firing programs on the user's personal computer storage area and reload those firing programs from the computer onto the controller.

Capability to send firing programs to a printer for a hard copy.

Capability for the user to select which program information is to be written to the data collection file, such as cone number, firing speed, preheat time, hold time and alarm temperature for cone programs.

Improved graphing capabilities, such as the ability to select which thermocouple data to be graphed, the ability to zoom in on portions of the graph and the ability to see the actual data on the screen with the graph.

Capability to mark kilns that are temporarily not being used as "Unavailable", in order to speed up communications with kilns that are being used.

STARTER KIT

You need one K.I.S.S. starter kit to connect one kiln to your computer.

The starter kit includes:

- K.I.S.S. Software on CD
- An opto-isolated RS232 to RS485 converter with power supply and USB converter
- A 25 foot cable to connect between the computer and the kiln
- A modular panel connecter to go on the kiln
- One RS485 communications chip to insert in the controller

KILN KIT (for extra kilns)

A K.I.S.S. kiln kit is needed for each additional kiln.

The kiln kit includes:

- 25 foot cable
- A modular panel connector to install on the kiln
- An RS485 communications chip to install in the controller
- A duplex connector to daisy chain to the previous kiln.

PRICES

L&L must add the modular jack into your control box and connect it to the controller. The hole for this is already prepunched in the handheld box, however a hole will need to be drilled into any standard control panels to accommodate the modular jack. If ordered on a new kiln this work is included in the price. This can be done as a retrofit for a charge of $35.00 in addition to the price of the starter kit. You must return the panel to us (at your shipping expense) to do this work.

K.I.S.S. Starter Kit with USB Converter

N-G-KISS/US .... $550.00 each.

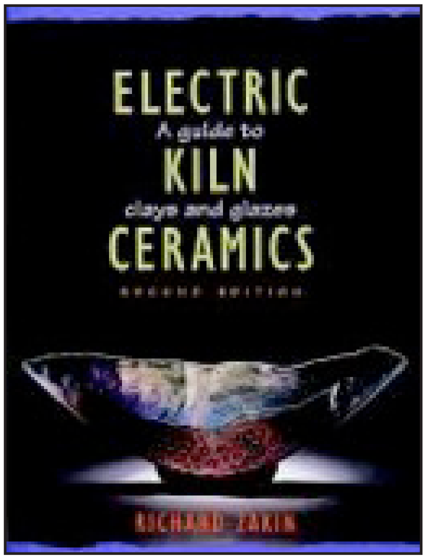
K.I.S.S. Kiln Kit for Extra Kilns

N-G-KISS/KK .... $85.00 each.

*Prices for individual components (for replacement) are available upon request.

CERAMIC BOOKS FOR SALE FROM L&L KILNS

ELECTRIC KILN CERAMICS



Author: Richard Zakin

Length: 284 Pages

DESCRIPTION

Over the last decade, the safety, convenience, and economy of the electric kiln have made it extremely popular for the home studio. Electric Kiln Ceramics,Second Edition, contains information for the potter available nowhere else: an exhaustive review of clays, glazes, and techniques developed exclusively for use in the electric kiln.

Electric Kiln Ceramics begins with an introduction to the electric kiln and the various clays and glazes best suited to its use. Both commercial and homemade clays and glazes are discussed, and recipes are provided for slips and glazes for different firing temperatures. Special glazes (wood ash: majolica, tzu chou, and crystal glazes), the application of oxidation surfaces (intaglio glazing, painting, wax resist, and sgraffito methods), and loading and firing are also explored in depth.

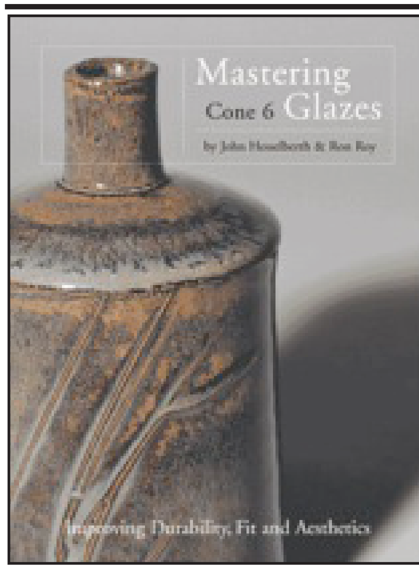
This second edition provides state-of-the-art health and safety information. AII-new photography showcases the work of artists from around the world with more than 200 color and black-and-white exam-ples of contemporary electric-fired work. Also included are the history of the electric kiln, how to purchase or build your own kiln, and advice on routine maintenance.

This inclusive guide will assist you in using the electric kiln to produce clear, brilliant colors and richly textured surfaces. Provides you with completely revised glaze recipes, information on commercial glaze for low fire and updated health and safety information.

Richard Zakin has repeatedly stretched the capabilities of oxidation fire, not only as an artist, but as an investigator. He demonstrates in this book that the electric kiln potter can obtain clear, brilliant colors, richly textures surfaces, and complete control over a range of effects. He supports the assertions through compounds, formulas, and examples to produce the most thorough reference ever published on the silent fire.

Zakin is a professor of art at the State University of New York as Oswego, and is a prolific writer, highly regarded for his technical articles.

MASTERING CONE 6 GLAZES



Author: Ron Roy & John Hasselberth

Length: 168 Pages

DESCRIPTION

Ron Roy and John Hesselberth, two potters well known for their expertise in glaze chemistry and for their concern for helping potters make glazes that are suitable for their intended use, have collaborated to write a book that is certain to become a classic for the potters working at Cone 6.

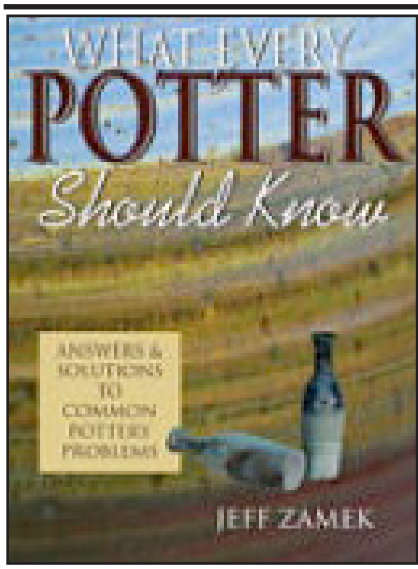
Do you want your glazes to be durable in use and attractive? Do you want to be sure they will not leach significant quantities of metals into food or drink? This is the first book to address these questions in-depth. A wide variety of extensively a wide variety of extensively tested glaze recipes are included as well as detailed guidance on formulating your own glazes.

Do you want to be sure glazes don't craze for on coming out of the kiln or after extended use? Or perhaps you do not want glazes that craze for a decorative effect. This is the only book that gives an in-depth discussion of how to prevent (or causing) crazing and the related problems of shivering and dunting,

Do you want to know how you can test your glaze and pottery to be sure they are suitable for their intended use? A number of practical, inexpensive., in-studio test are described that you may want to use.

All of this information and more is explained in terms potters can readily understand, along with forty two color photos and fifteen graphs. This is a ground-breaking book that studio potters, teachers of ceramics, students and others will find to be and invaluable source of useful reference information on cone 6 glazes. A lot of the material is also applicable to Cone 10.

WHAT EVERY POTTER SHOULD KNOW



Author: Jeff Zamek

Length: 222 Pages

DESCRIPTION

For every successful pot you create, chances are there are a few you abandoned along the way. Now you can save many of those spoiled pieces by learning solutions to some of the most common pottery problems. No longer will you waste time and money on a piece that requires only minimal repairing, if only you knew the right techniques. Author Jeff Zamek has researched just about every mishap that can occur in ceramics and has learned how to either prevent or correct them. He provides information in easy to grasp segments to guide you through new glaze formulas, new clay body formulas, kiln firing techniques, clay/glaze defects, and much more.

Jeff Zamek began making pots in 1968 and received B.F.A./M.F.A. degrees from Alfred University, College of Ceramics in Alfred, New York, in ceramic art and design. Zamek then spent several years teaching college level ceramics in the Northeast. He has developed clay body and glaze formulas for ceramics supply companies throughout the United States.

PRICES

Electric Kiln Ceramics

B-G-ELCM/00 .... $40.00 each.

Mastering Cone 6 Glazes

B-G-CON6/00 .... $40.00 each.

What Every Potter Should Know

B-G-WHAT/00 .... $28.00 each.

GENERAL L&L KILN TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

TABLE OF CONTENTS

GENERAL L&L KILN TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

CAUTION - ELECTRICITY CAN KILL

Many of the tests described in here are performed under power. They should be done ONLY by someone who is familiar with electrical safety such as an electrician or trained maintenance person. We identify any test that is live with a **CAUTION** statement. We describe these tests in detail so that an electrically trained person who doesn't specifically understand kilns can do the troubleshooting - the level of simplicity described is not

GET A DIGITAL MULTIMETER!

If you want to do much of the troubleshooting described here and not be dependent on a kiln service person then get this tool. It is not hard to use! Without it you are only guessing at the origin and severity of an electrical problem based on how the kiln is acting. A slow-firing kiln may just have old elements, or the elements could be fine but the incoming voltage from your power supply could be low, or fluctuating. Unless you test with a multimeter, you could purchase new elements and run the risk that you might be wasting money and time without solving the problem. Be forewarned however: Testing electrical circuits is very dangerous and potentially deadly if you do it incorrectly. It could result in electrocution! If you don't feel comfortable doing this hire an electrician or get someone to do it who is qualified. That being said - many of the tests described in here just require testing for resistance - which is done with the kiln unplugged. **AS LONG AS THE KILN IS UNPLUGGED YOU ARE SAFE.**

Radio Shack or any good hardware store will carry inexpensive digital multimeters for around $40-$50. The meter shown below was purchased at Home Depot for about $120 and includes an amp probe to measure amperage. The meter you buy should be digital simply because the analog type is not very accurate. You must be able to see ohm (resistance) readings to the first decimal place. Being able to see that ".7" on the meter is the difference between "I think it may be your elements…" and "I know it is your elements…".

GENERAL L&L KILN TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

This manual is meant to assist and educate kiln owners and service technicians. This is mostly specific to Jupiter, DaVinci and Doll kilns. For older L&L kilns see our more general troubleshooting guide: *hotkilns.com/trouble.pdf.* The Easy-Fire kilns have their own separate troubleshooting instructions (*easy-fire-trouble.pdf*) and so does the Liberty-Belle (*liberty-belle-trouble.pdf*)

Please email or fax any corrections or suggestions that you have so that we may incorporate this information into our next revision. We have gone into great depth in many areas and, while some of this may seem overwhelming, much of this is geared towards helping customers who want to be as self-sufficient as possible. Our basic philosophy at L&L is to make kilns that last. No small part of having a reliable well-firing kiln is good maintenance. This information is provided as a service and is believed to be accurate. However, it is the reader's sole responsibility to interpret and use this information correctly. Please visit our web site to download the latest versions of all our instructional and technical information.

RELATED L&L GUIDES

CAUTION INSTRUCTIONS

See *cautions.pdf* in the OPERATION section of your Instruction Manual. THIS IS SOMETHING YOU MUST READ.

REGULAR KILN MAINTENANCE

See *maintain.pdf* in the OPERATION section of your Instruction Manual. THIS IS SOMETHING YOU MUST READ.

BASIC ELECTRICITY FOR TROUBLESHOOTING

See troubleshoot-electricity.pdf in the TROUBLE-SHOOTING section. Also see *hotkilns.com/volts.pdf* for more in-depth information about electricity for kilns.

TROUBLESHOOTING BRICK PROBLEMS

See *troubleshoot-brick.pdf* in the TROUBLE-SHOOTING section for information on firebrick problems and instructions on how to repair firebrick problems.

TROUBLESHOOTING ELEMENT PROBLEMS

See *troubleshoot-elements.pdf* in the TROUBLE-SHOOTING section for information on elements problems and instructions on how to install elements and element holders.

TROUBLESHOOTING FIRING PROBLEMS WITH CONE PACKS

See *troubleshoot-cones.pdf* in the LOG, CONES, TIPS section.

THE CERAMIC PROCESS

See *ceramic-process.pdf* in the LOG, CONES, TIPS section.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

See *parts.pdf* in the PARTS section. .

SERVICE

See *service.pdf* in the SERVICE section.

GENERAL TROUBLESHOOTING TOOLS AND METHODS

BASIC TOOLS REQUIRED

The minimal toolkit necessary for effective troubleshooting and fixing of electric kilns contains a digital multi-meter to measure ohms and AC voltage, and an assortment of screwdrivers, nutdrivers, wrenches, pliers, cutters, wire strippers and wire terminal crimpers. As you work on your kiln you will see what types of tools you need, like a 3/8" nut-driver, needle-nose pliers without the cutting part so the tips will close all the way. wire cutters heavy enough to cut the element terminals, wire strippers and wire terminal crimpers. No special tools are required for maintenance on L&L kilns.

KEYS TO GOOD TROUBLESHOOTING

SAFETY FIRST

Pay attention to electrical safety. Don't get electrocuted and don't guess.

DEFINE THE VARIABLES

Define all variables of the situation, and how they could potentially interact with and affect each other in each unique case you come across.

ELIMINATE VARIABLES ONE AT A TIME

Eliminate variables one by one to expose the problem variable(s). Asking questions can do this to some degree. Electrical testing, examining shards of ware or cone, or examining the interior of the kiln usually can supply the rest of the story. Good troubleshooting is based on logic.

TROUBLESHOOTING CHECKLISTS

TROUBLESHOOTING CHECKLIST

The following checklists are shorthand methods for troubleshooting your kiln. Much of what is in here is also covered more extensively in the rest of this troubleshooting guide but in a more theoretical and in-depth way. These checklists can help simplify the process.

CONTROL DISPLAY DOESN'T SHOW ANYTHING (AUTO KILN)

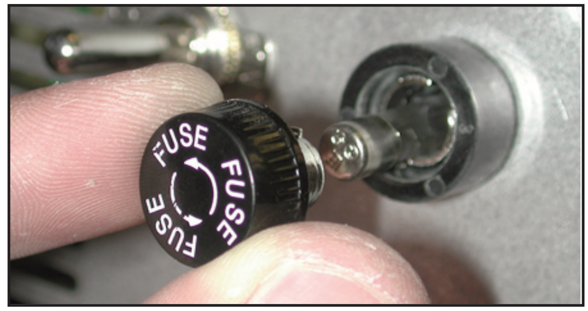
On/Off Switch

1) Make sure the On/Off Switch is turned on. Turn it on and off.

Control Fuse

1) Check control fuse in side of control box. Twist open the fuse holder and physically check the little fuse. You can see if the metal element inside is melted if it is blown. You can also use your digital multimeter to check continuity across the fuse.

Picture of the on/off switch and fuse holder opened.



Branch Fusing

1) Check the branch element circuit fuses inside the control box. All kilns with more than 48 amps and many 3 phase kilns have branch fuses.

Plug & Cord (if you have one)

1) Make sure the power cord is plugged into the receptical. Reseat plug.

2) With power off examine the electrical cord. Look for burned or melted areas and breaks or pinched sections. Look closely at the head of the plug. If there is an internal problem with the wires and the plug parts you won't be able to see it but you may detect a softening or melting of the plastic at the plug head.

3) With power turned on and panel open check voltage at the Power Terminal Block. If you see no voltage there then you know something is wrong with the power source. **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers.**

Circuit Breaker / Power Source

1) Check voltage at the receptical. **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers.**

GENERAL L&L KILN TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

A Fused Disconnect Switch:

2) Check circuit breaker or fused disconnect switch to make sure they are turned on. Sometimes circuit breakers need to be turned on and off to reset them.

3) If you have a fused disconnect check the fuses with your voltmeter for continuity. **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers.**

4) Make sure fuses or circuit breaker is the proper amperage and type. See wiring diagram for details.

5) Test for voltage at the main power supply as close to the kiln as possible. **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers.**

6) **CAUTION**: If you have a 208 volt rated kiln and are trying to run this on 240 volts you will create a dangerous situation. **This is dangerous because the kiln will draw more amps than it is rated for which will overload the power wires and other components and could cause a fire.** Chances are the circuit breaker will trip or the fuses will blow first.

7) Check voltage to the kiln. MAKE SURE YOU ARE NOT USING A 3 PHASE KILN ON A SINGLE PHASE CIRCUIT.

Internal Wiring

1) Unplug kiln or turn off at circuit breaker or fused disconnect and open up panel. CHECK VOLTAGE TO BE SURE. Make sure that all the wires inside the control panel are connected. See photograph on page 2 and also the Wiring Diagram. Specifically look at the wires that go from the power connection block to the on/off switch, then to the control fuse and then to the control transformer.

Short Circuits

Do all the following with the kiln unplugged.

1) Check for short circuits. Look for any signs of burnt wires. This might indicate a short circuit. A way this might happen, as an example, is that frayed wires at the end of a wire connector might touch each other.

2) Check for worn wires that may have shorted against the case. Examine wire insulation. If the wire insulation has become frayed or deteriorated from heat, the wires could short to the metal casing which is electrically grounded.

3) Look for dirt. Some dirt (such as carbon compounds) are electrically conductive. This is generally not the case with ceramic materials but some can be. Vacuum out if you see dirt.

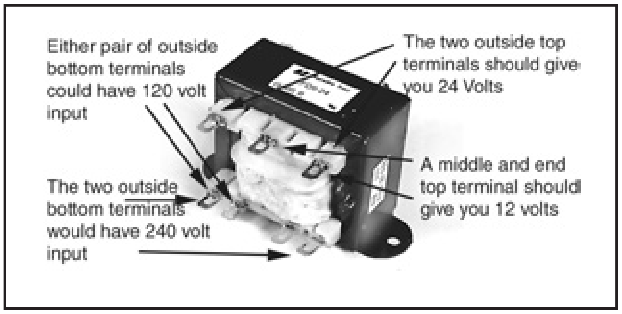
NOTE: Usually a short circuit will trip the circuit breaker for the kiln or the fuses in the fused disconnect switch if you have one. You will then not see any display on the DynaTrol. Turn your circuit breaker on and off, and check fuses on the fused disconnect and control fuse.

Control Transformer

CAUTION: These tests should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers.

1) If none of these solve the problem then you could have a bad control transformer. To check the transformer operation test with your digital multimeter. It should read 240 volts across terminals 4 & 7 and 24 volts across terminals 5 & 8. This is a live test so be very careful not to touch any of the wires - remember there is 240 volts in the panel and this can electrocute you. If you are not getting proper voltage (or any voltage from the transformer and you are getting it to the transformer then you need to replace the transformer.

Control Transformer:



2) If there is 240 (or 220 or 208) volts coming into the control transformer (terminals 4 & 7) and there is no voltage coming from the transformer (across terminals 5 & 8) then you have a bad control transformer and it needs to be replaced.

3) If there is no voltage coming into terminals 4 & 7, then test for it at the Power Terminal Block where the power cord comes in. If there is power there then look for a bad connection or wire between the power connection block and the transformer, i.e. a bad toggle switch, wire, or ½ amp fuse holder. If power is not there then go further back on the line and measure the voltage. Keep going until you find voltage, then look for the problem between that point with the voltage and the last point checked that had no voltage.

Control Board

1) If the transformer is OK and you know you have voltage going to the control board but the control still shows no display then the control board needs to be replaced.

THE KILN DOESN'T HEAT AT ALL (MANUAL KILNS)

1) Check many of the same things in the above section on Automatic kilns - power supply, branch fuses, short circuits, cord, etc.

2) Make sure the infinitely variable zone input switches are turned on (if included on your kiln). There is a "click" in the "off position at "12 O'clock". Full on is the "click" position just to the right of this (1 O'clock).

3) Infinitely Variable Zone Input Switches may have failed.

4) Check to see if Dawson Timer is set properly. (If it is at "0" the kiln will not fire.

5) Check to see if the Dawson plunger is not pushed into place.

DISPLAY READS FAIL (AUTO)

1) Usually **FAIL** will be seen flashing along with a **tC1**, **tC2** or **tC3** indicating which thermocouple has failed.

2) Remove the offending thermocouples connection wires from the Terminal and bind the red and yellow wires together with electrical tape. The control should read room temperature for that thermocouple (approximately 130°F because of the thermocouple offsets).

3) If it does read room temperature then the thermocouple is probably bad and needs to be replaced. If the control does not read room temperature then there is either a bad thermocouple extension wire or the control is bad.

4) Redo the test by putting a small jumper like a paperclip across the thermocouple terminals directly on the Dynatrol board. If the control now will read room temperature then you have a bad thermocouple wire. If it does not read room temperature then the control is definitely bad and needs to be replaced.

DISPLAY READS 2400 or CPLt WHEN IT STARTS UP (AUTO)

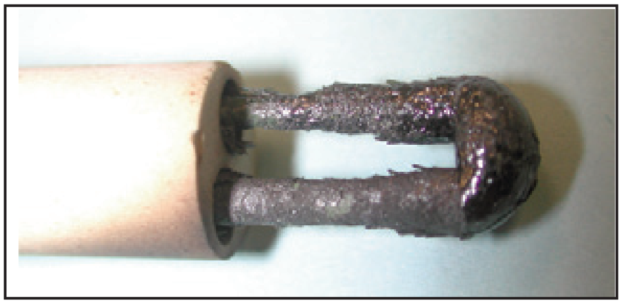
Even though you know the kiln is not that hot. This indicates thermocouple circuit failure.

> **TECHNICAL NOTE:** This is called thermocouple upscale protection. If the control senses a lack of millivoltage (an open circuit) it interups this as the highest temperature the control could reach. This automatically ensures that the control will not call for power.

1) Check thermocouple end. Examine end carefully. Sometimes there can be a crack that opens up while the kiln is hot but appears to be normal when the kiln

is cold. If the end of the thermocouple looks severely corroded and you are getting Error codes then it is best to replace the thermocouple.

A thermocouple end that will still work but is getting close to creating a problem:



2) Check thermocouple circuit. For instance check to make sure that all the thermocouple lead wires are firmly connected. Check where the thermocouple lead wires go into the ends of the thermocouples. Are the wires loose? Tighten the screws on the ends of the thermocouples to be sure you have a tight connection. Check for corrosion. Check where the thermocouples connect to the Dynatrol. Try pulling off each connection and reseating it. This can scrape away corrosion that may have built up. Check for melted wires.

3) A very easy check is to check resistance (ohms) . Remove the thermocouple lead wires from the thermocouple head and check resistance with your meter. If the thermocouples and circuit is normal then you will see a resistance of about .9 or 1.0. If you see an **OL** in your meter then you have an open circuit somewhere which is probably a bad thermocouple.

DISPLAY IS NORMAL BUT KILN WON'T HEAT UP (AUTO)

Programming

1) Make sure you have programmed the kiln properly and it is supposed to be firing. Do you have a **Delay Time** or a **Preheat Time** in your program? (Hit **Review Prog** button to find out).

Wiring

1) Unplug kiln or disconnect from live power by turning off circuit breaker or fused disconnect switch. Open panel. Check all power wires for firm connections.

2) Visually inspect the power wires coming from the Power Terminal Block to the inputs of the Power Relays. Reseat all the spade connectors to rub off any oxides and to ensure a good connection.

Control Board Outputs

1) It is possible that the the internal switches on the control board could be bad. You can test that by checking to see if you find voltage (12 volts DC) between any of the output contacts on the control board to ground (any green wire). **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers.**

Bad Power Relays

1) You should be able to hear contactors going on and off with a clicking noise when you first turn on the kiln and it is supposed to be heating up. If not try turning the kiln off and then back on again and restarting the program. Of course if you don't hear the relays it only tells you that they aren't firing. The problem could be in the control for instance not telling the relays to fire. If you do hear relays and the kiln is not heating then you know the problem is in the power circuit AFTER the relays.

2) With power on and panel open check voltage before and after each of the contactors while the kiln is firing. **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers.**

Bad Elements

See *troubleshoot-elements.pdf* in the TROUBLE-SHOOTING section.

KILN FIRES UNEVENLY

Peepholes

1) Plug up Peephole holes in the kiln to prevent drafts.

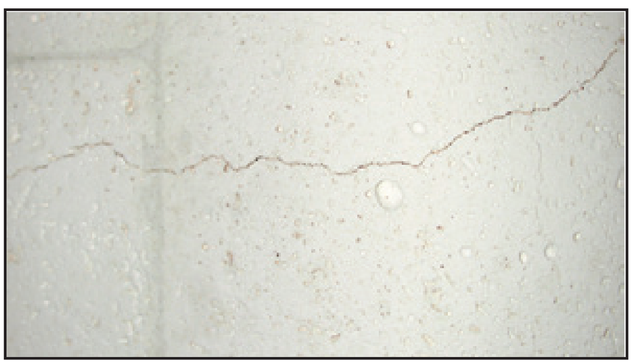
Lid Seal

1) Check to make sure that door/lid is sealing properly. If door/lid is not sealing against top brick correctly a bright red glow will be visible around the

door/lid seal when kiln is operating. (A little of this is OK). Also excessive heat loss can be felt around seal. Rub seal high points down with sandpaper until no more than l/l6 of an inch gap is found at any point along seal. Note that the gap at the top will definitely appear larger than any gap you see between the kiln sections. This is partly because the lid actually bows down in the center of the lid when it heats up and the edges consequently rise slightly. Just check for an UNEVENESS in this gap which will cause an excessive heat loss.

2) If door/lid is excessively cracked or worn or has holes in it this may cause drafts in the kiln. Replace door/lid.

This shows a crack in a lid that is OK. Cracks are a natural event with refractory slabs. As long as the crack does not create a large pathway for heat to escape and remains stable it is OK to leave as it. See the section in the back called CRACKS IN THE TOP & BOTTOM:



Elements

1) Elements may have differentially changed in resistance. Check element resistance (see *troubleshoot-elements.pdf*).

2) Empty the kiln. Then turn kiln on using a fast program like FAST GLAZE until elements are red. Open the door carefully and observe the elements to see if they all seem to be glowing about the same amount. **CAUTION: The power does not turn off when you open the lid. Be careful not to put your hand inside the kiln while it is on. Dangerous electric shock could result if you touch an element.**

3) There is a neat diagnostic program within the Dynatrol. This is handy to use when your kiln is first delivered and set up to make sure it was done properly. It can also be useful in seeing if an element has burned out. To use this diagnostic program enter the following sequence when the display says **IdlE**.

4) Press **OTHER, 4, 4, 3**

5) Keep pressing **OTHER** to cycle through the menu options until you get to **dIAG** and then press **ENTER**.

6) Open the lid of your kiln. You will see each zone of the kiln turn on for one minute each, starting with zone #1, the top zone. The control will display **OUt1**, then **OUt2**, then **OUt3** as it cycles through this sequence. **CAUTION: The power does not turn off when you open the lid. Be careful not to put your hand inside the kiln while it is on. Dangerous electric shock could result.** This will tell you if the kiln sections are in the wrong order or if the wires are somehow crossed in the control panel. If this is the case the zones will not turn on in the proper 1, 2, 3, order.

Loading

1) The Dynamic Zone Control of the EASY-FIRE kilns can compensate for many uneven loading situations. However, if you are having a problem with uneven firing try to vary the way you load it to match the firing characteristics of the kiln. For instance if it typically fires hot at the top them put more weight in the top to absorb that heat.

2) Be sure to put posts under the bottom shelf. The bottom shelf should be at least 1/2” to 1-1/2” above the floor of the kiln.

Firing with Cones

1) Try using cone packs in all sections (top, center, bottom) of the kiln and keep records of what happens. See *troubleshoot-cones.pdf* in the LOG, CONES, TIPS section of your Instruction Manual.

Thermocouple Offsets

Thermocouples can drift in in their accuracy over time and this can happen at different rates for each thermocouple. If one thermocouple reads at a different temperature than another thermocouple this can cause uneveness in the kiln. Read about Thermocouple Offset in section 4.3.1.8 in the

DynaTrol Reference Manual (*dynatrol-instruct-blue.pdf* in the CONTROL section) and the Calibration section in the *dynatrol-basic-operation.pdf* in the OPERATION section of your Instruction Manual.

Vent System

1) Is your vent system on and pulling air? You can check this with a source of smoke in a cold kiln. (If you burn a small piece of paper near the holes on the bottom of the kiln with the vent on and THE KILN OFF you can see if the smoke is being drawn into the holes. You can also check this by feeling the output of the vent when the kiln is at high temperatures. The air coming out should be quite warm to the touch (about 110 Deg F to 140 Deg F). The Vent-Sure will aid in keeping your kiln uniform by drawing hot air from the top of the kiln towards the bottom. It counteracts the natural rising of the heat. If you want to increase draw first close the Bypass valve on the Bypass Collection Box under the kiln. See the Vent-Sure vent instructions. You can also increase the size of the vent holes in the bottom of the kiln. You can also try taking out the top peephole plug. See *ventsure-instruct.pdf* in the OPTIONS section of your Instruction Manual.

LAG & AUTOLAG SETTINGS

Check the LAG setting (see information in these instructions under "KILN FIRES SLOWLY". To get the kiln to fire more evenly you may want to decrease the LAG setting and perhaps turn the AUTOLAG OFF.

CONTROL ERROR CODES (Auto)

See the control instructions and the explanation later in these instructions.

THE KILN FIRES UNEVENLY (MANUAL)

1) Many of the above issues for automatic kilns also apply to manual kilns.

2) Multi section kilns like our J Series, X or T Series DaVinci, older G Series Colorado and SQ Series Dyna-Kilns have infinite control over the input to each section or zone. Firing chamber uniformity depends upon how a kiln may be loaded and how the input to each zone is adjusted. Normally a kiln is on "low" for a period of time, then set to "medium" for the next period of time, and finally on "high" until shut-off by either Dawson kiln sitter or other control device such as a program control. Often firing as above may end up with a difference in temperature in various sections of the fired load or zone. To correct this without the use of a pyrometer system requires a trial and error method, such as using multiple cones in various zones of the kiln. After shut-off carefully note the temperature variations and by small adjustments to the sectional input controls when on "high" attempt to tune this difference out. Since cones only indicate end of firing temperature one has no idea of how the uniformity is developing as the temperature is increasing. We recommend a TRU-VIEW multi-thermocouple pyrometer system which indicates the temperature of each zone. (These are available from L&L). The system includes a thermocouple located in each kiln section. A switch allows the operator to switch from zone to zone very rapidly and thereby indicating each zone temperature. Adjustments to the infinite control will then be indicated. This method indicates zone temperature at all times and is also a great help in cooling a kiln. Often a kiln should cool slowly requiring a period on "low" heat. In such a procedure the Dawson Kiln Sitter is reset carefully to "on" position (ignore the cone which has initially shut this kiln off) but make absolutely certain you are on "low" heat to prevent overfiring. Do not leave your kiln; keep checking. CAUTION: Such a procedure requires knowing the temperature of the kiln and kiln sections and requires manual shut-off of the kiln. Simply shut-off power manually (by turning off the various input/zone switches) and cause the Dawson to manually shut-off by depressing the weight of the Dawson Kiln Sitter.

KILN FIRES TOO HOT OR COLD

Firing with Cones

1) On the next firing make up "cone packs", one for each thermocouple. A cone pack is a set of three cones, standing in a line. The target cone is the cone

number you are firing to and is in the middle. The one in front of it is one cone number lower, and the one behind it is one cone number higher. Use Large Self-Supporting Cones. You can purchase these through your ceramic supply distributor. They come 25 cones per box and are quite inexpensive. See *troubleshoot-cones.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING section of your Instruction Manual.

Easy-Fire vs Vary-Fire (Auto)

Keep in mind that the Easy-Fire programs feature Orton software that adjusts the final temperature based on the speed of firing. This in effect adjusts the heat-work and hence the actual cone that the kiln fires to. This feature is not in the Vary-Fire programs. You have to input the final set point temperature in a Vary-Fire program.

Hold Times

Be very careful with hold times. Even a fairly short hold time of 10 minutes can dramatically increase the amount of heat work and hence the cone that the kiln fires to. On the other hand you can use the hold time to increase the heat-work to compensate for under-fired work. Just test this in small increments. There is a great program available for free from Orton's web site that allows you to calculate this with some precision.

Control Settings

1) The ceramic thermocouple protection tubes introduce a known error into the system. This is covered in the Operational Instructions but bears repeating here. The temperature that is measured by the tip of the thermocouple is approximately 70 Deg F cooler than the actual kiln temperature. We have found through extensive testing that the best way to compensate for this is to put in a Thermocouple Offset of + 50 Deg on each thermocouple (setting is **0050**) and a Cone Offset of of -20 (setting is **9020**) for EACH cone that you fire to (on the Easy-Fire Programs or **9030** on cones 022 to 017). We have already programmed the control with this information so that you don't have to do it. However, we also provide step-by-step instructions on how to do it in the Operational Instructions. If you are using the VARY-FIRE programming then use a Thermocouple Offset of plus 70 (setting is **0070**).

Thermocouple Drift

Thermocouples drift in their accuracy with time. You may have to make further adjustments in the Thermocouple Offset or Cone Offset settings over time.

KILN STALLS

1) If for some reason the thermocouple wires touch the hot kiln case they may melt and fail. The result of this is that the kiln can "stall out", say **CPLt** prematurely or display any other number of other random error codes. It may refuse to increase in temperature, and the kiln will just run on and on. If it is re-started it may work fine for a while. What happens is that the millivolt signal in the TC wire goes to ground, or the two wires in the TC wire are "electrically" connected by the stainless steel melting through the insulation and the "temperature" is then taken right there, not in the kiln. However, the signal received can be so foreign to the microprocessor that the kiln will just stall. The specific Thermocouple Lead Harness needs to be replaced.

2) Thermocouples close to end of their useful life can cause some of these same problems.

3) Sometimes excessive ambient temperatures (over 125°F) around the control can cause stalling too.

4) Corroded connection points can also cause stalling.

KILN FIRES SLOWLY

Bad or Wrong Voltage

1) Check your voltage. Do this at the kiln at the Power Terminal Block with the control panel open or check it at your fused disconnect box. **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers. You need to see what the voltage is when the kiln is firing.** Low voltage will make the kiln fire considerably slower. For instance a kiln designed for 240 volts will have 25% less power when operated on 208 volts. Check voltage at your panel and where the kiln is

connected. Check the voltage when the kiln is firing and when it is not firing. Sometimes the high amperage draw of the kiln will cause a voltage drop at the kiln. A voltage drop of 5 to 10 volts is not uncommon and is to be expected. If your voltage drop is more than that then you may have a problem with your electrical supply.

2) Make sure no other large electrical appliances such as a clothes dryer or electric oven are on when you are operating your kiln. This may cause a voltage drop which would slow the kiln down.

3) Voltage may vary in your area depending on season and time of day. Frequently there are "brown outs" during the summer months in some areas. This is when the electric utility reduces the voltage. Try firing at night after peak electrical use hours. You can use your Delay feature to do this easily. Find out from your local utility company when the end of the peak period of electrical use is. Some utilities offer preferential rates for using electricity at night because it is cheaper for them.

Element Aging

See *troubleshoot-elements.pdf.*

Power Relays

1) Power Relays may cause poor transfer of power to elements when they have been used for a long period of time. It is not always a total failure - which is of course harder to troubleshoot. If these are suspected replace them.

Bad Wiring

1) Have an electrician check your wiring. We have seen aluminum wire cause intermittent problems with allowing enough voltage through. We do not recommend aluminum wiring although some electricians will swear by it. The problem with it is that aluminum oxide, which is formed from heat, is a resistor while copper oxide is not a resistor. With kilns you will often develop some heat in the electrical lines. If all connections are perfect and the wire is oversized you probably will not have a problem - but why take that chance? Make sure your wires are of the proper size and that all connections are good.

WIRES WILL GET HOT

Unlike many other appliances that use electricity (like motors) kilns are called a "resistive load." This means that there will be a continuous pull of steady electrical power for many hours. Even with properly sized wire this will generate SOME heat in the wires. This is one reason we recommend against using aluminum wire for a power feed. If you look carefully you will see that we have OVERSIZED our internal power wires far in excess of their rated capacity. In addition all our power wire is rated for very high temperatures. The larger the wires the less resistance in the wires and the cooler they will operate.

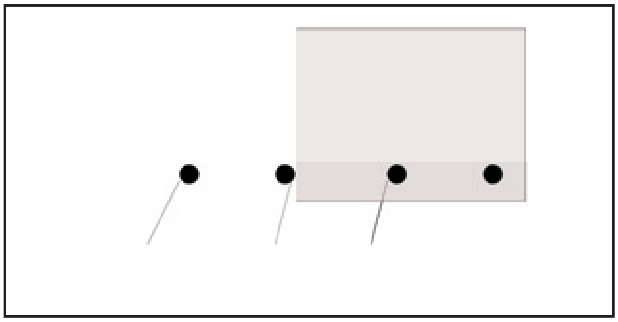
2) Check your circuit breaker for proper operation. These sometimes go bad over time.

3) If all the elements are firing and the kiln is still firing too slow check the amperage draw of the kiln under a full load. **CAUTION: This test should only be done by an experienced person familiar with electricity and its dangers. You need to see what the voltage is when the kiln is firing.**

4) You can tell if all zones are firing by pressing the number **8** on the control numeric pad. You will see one little light per zone under the numbers on the control display. If you see two dots on an e23S or e28S then you are firing at full load. If you see three dots on an e23T or e28T then you are firing at full load. See if the amperage drawn is the same as what the kiln is rated for. See the product literature and/or data nameplate on the kiln for the rated amperage draw. There is also a complete table of this information in the Installation Instructions part of this manual. For instance, a model e23T rated for 240 volts, Single Phase should draw 48.0 amps. If it is substantially less than the rated amperage draw and your voltage is within 5% of the rated voltage (for instance 230 volts for a 240 volt unit), then chances are the elements have changed in resistance. This will require element replacement.

GENERAL L&L KILN TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

Pressing the number "8" will turn on 2 or 3 small LEDs that indicate whether the various zones are firing.



Wiring in the Kiln

1) Unplug kiln.

2) Trace wiring for missing or bad connections.

3) Check wiring against wiring diagram.

4) Check for corroded connectors or connectors that have frayed wires. Replace if you see this.

5) Make sure all kiln sections are plugged in (if applicable to your model). Make sure ALL plug connections are good and not oxidized.

Element Connections

1) The holes where the elements go through the firebrick walls are too large. This could cause too much heat to escape from the kiln thereby overheating the element terminals. This can be remedied by lightly stuffing non-RCF ceramic fiber in the element holes. (See the Parts List for for non-RCF fiber). You can stuff this in from the inside of the kiln using a sharp tool like a very small screw driver.

2) Check to see if the element ends are twisted properly. They should be twisted clockwise around the terminal screw. If the twist is too loose this could generate extra heat at the element ends. Check for corrosion on the terminal. If there is corrosion sometimes you can remove it with a wire brush.

Photo of element terminal with element end twisted around it properly:

3) The element connection hardware may not be tight enough. A loose connection can generate heat and cause oxidation of the hardware which in turn will cause a worse electrical connection (because of resistance) and more heat. Replace with new hardware.

Heat Leakage & Vents

1) Make sure peephole plugs are in.

2) Make sure hole for vent is proper. Check Vent-Sure instructions for proper hole sizes.

3) If you are using a different brand of vent make sure it is the appropriate size for your kiln. Check with the vent manufacturer and tell them how many cubic feet are in your kiln.

4) If your lid or bottom is cracked check to see if it seems to be leaking much heat at high temperatures. Patch or replace if extreme. (SOME IS OK).

Single vs Three Zone Control

1) Three zone control will slow a kiln down. It helps even out the temperatures in a kiln by shutting off one or more zones while firing. In addition zone control introduces other issues like **LAG** that sometimes complicate a firing. **The first thing to try if you are getting a slow firing is to switch the kiln to single zone operation.** That may get you back into operation quickly. Then, if that makes the problem go away you can fine tune the specific issue within the zone system that is causing the problem.

2) Normally Jupiter and DaVinci kilns are

programmed to be either two or three zones. You can easily change this to be single zone operation.

3) Press **OTHER, 4, 4, 3**

4) The display says **notC** This stands for "number of thermocouples".

5) To run the kiln using only one thermocouple press **ENTER** at the **notC** prompt**.** You will then see **0003** or **0002** (depending on whether it is currently programmed for three zones or two zones). Then press **1**, then **ENTER.** The display will then say **StOP.** All the zones of the kiln will turn on and off simultaneously when you program the Dynatrol to use only one thermocouple.

6) To run the kiln using only two thermocouples press **ENTER** at the **notC prompt.** You will then see **0003** or **0001** (depending on whether it is currently programmed for one zone or three zones). Then press **2**, then **ENTER.** The display will then say **StOP.** When you program the Dynatrol to run using only two thermocouples the bottom zone and the middle zone go on and off simultaneously. If you have a three section kiln the bottom section and the middle section will work off the middle (#2) thermocouple and they will fire together. This configuration can be an interesting option to help speed up the kiln but still get some advantage from the zone system.

7) To run the kiln using three thermocouples press **ENTER** at the **notC prompt.** You will then see **0002** or **0001** (depending on whether it is currently programmed for one zone or two zones). Then press **3**, then **ENTER.** The display will then say **StOP.** If you choose to do this thermocouple #1 must be in the top zone, thermocouple #2 in the middle, and #3 in the bottom. All three zones will operate independently, tied to their respective thermocouples.

8) To exit the **OTHER-4-4-3** series of menus without doing anything press **OTHER** until you come to **PCt**. Then press **ENTER** twice. You will then see **CPL**, and then **IdLE**, **tC2**, and the current temperature cycling in the display again.

LAG Setting

1) **LAG** is the zone control setting that determines the temperature differential allowed between zones.

2) The lower the **LAG** number the more even the firing. However, this can slow the kiln down considerably. It is somewhat like a convoy - the kiln can only move as fast as its slowest zone (although of course it is more complicated than this because the faster zones help heat the slower zones).

3) The default **LAG** setting is **25**. If you increase this to **50** or even **75** is allows the kiln to fire its zones with a greater differential which will speed the kiln up.

4) Press **OTHER** until you see **LAG**.

5) Hit **ENTER**.

6) You will see **LAG** and a number such as **0025** flash.

7) Input a new number (from 5 to 99) with the keypad and hit **ENTER**. We do not recommend less than **25** unless you have a very critical process and where speed is not an issue like on low fire. A very low number like **0005** could really slow the kiln down. If you want lower than **0025** try **0015** or **0010.**

8) **AUL6** (Autolag) will now display, flashing with either **On** or **OFF**. See next section.

Autolag Setting

1) **Autolag** automatically disables the **LAG** control until the end of the firing.

2) Having **Autolag** turned **On** speeds up the firing considerably. Most ceramics applications do not require exceptional uniformity until the end of the firing. With **Autolag On** the **LAG** feature is disabled until the last 45°F of the firing when it comes back on to it's programmed setting. Basically this allows the faster sections to help pull the slower sections along.

3) However, for glass and other industrial applications turning **OFF** Autolag is probably recommended.

4) Press **OTHER** until **LAG** appears.

5) Press **ENTER**.

6) As soon as you press **ENTER** after entering the **LAG** setting (you can leave it as is - just press **ENTER**) you will see **AUL6** for approximately two seconds, and then see either **On** or **OFF**.

7) Press **1** to toggle between **ON** and **OFF**.

8) Then press **ENTER**

ShtO (Shut-Off) Setting

1) This option is used to shut off the automatic feature in the Dynatrol that holds the hottest part of the kiln at each segment's set point until the average of the three (or two) thermocouples reaches that set point. This can have a dramatic effect on speed of firing and is worth trying to see if it helps you if you are having a problem.

2) When you press **OTHER, 4, 4, 3**.

3) Press **OTHER** until **ShtO** is displayed.

4) Pressing **ENTER** here allows you to toggle, using any number key, between **On** and **OFF**.

5) **On** means that as soon as the hottest zone gets to the segment's set point the entire kiln switches to either the "hold time" or the next segment. This will result in a quicker firing.

6) **OFF** means that the Dynatrol will not let the hottest zone's temperature rise until the average temperature of the three zones reaches that segment's set point. Then the kiln can begin the "hold time" or the next segment. This will result in more even firing.

7) When you have the setting you want shown in the display (**On** or **OFF**) press **ENTER**. **CPL** will display for a few seconds and then **IdLE** , **tC2** and **current temperature**.

PId Setting

1) This setting generally should be left at its factory default because it is hard to predict the changes that it will create in your firing. However, a full explanation is given for more advanced users who want to experiment with this.

2) This setting comes pre-programmed at the factory for 65%. Basically this setting determines how much help the middle zone of the kiln gives the bottom zone of the kiln when the bottom zone is lagging behind during heating. This comes into play when the bottom zone is on 100% of the time. With this feature, the middle zone of the kiln will come on the programmed percent (Pld) of the time that the TOP zone comes on, if the bottom zone is on all the time. Tests showed that if the bottom was on 100% of the time, the top zone was generally on 90% of the time, but the middle zone was on only about 40% of the time. By programming a higher percent you can greatly speed up your firings. (you will have to experiment, try the factory setting 65% then try maybe 100% and compare your results). Basically the higher the **PId** setting the faster the firing at the potential price of uneveness.

3) As your elements age firing by firing, this setting will activate earlier and earlier in the firing because the bottom will be working at 100% earlier and earlier. This will allow the artificial inflation of the center's temperature sooner and sooner. Because this center is heating based on mathematics now and not it's own thermocouple's reading, it will have a longer and longer period of time to get hotter than the top and the bottom. In some cases this can lead to gross uneveness. You may find yourself dialing down the PId to something like 50% or 60%. Remember that if it is set around 40% (it's normal operating percentage) or below, the thermocouple's reading then will be the control for that section, not the mathematics of the **PId** feature.

4) When display flashes **IDLe**, **tC2** press **OTHER** see **rSEt.** Press **4, 4, 3.** See **notC**

5) Keep pressing **OTHER** to cycle through the menu options until you get to **PId**.

6) Press **ENTER**. See **PCt**, **0085** cycling.

7) Press any number from **0** to **150**, see the number you have entered preceded by a zero like **0120** if you entered **120**. Press **ENTER**, see **CPL** or **StOP** for a few seconds, then **IDLE**, etc.

8) Pressing **ENTER** here allows you set another percent setting that can help a slow, heavily loaded kiln fire faster.

Adding More Insulation

1) In L&L's top loading kilns an additional bottom may be placed under the original bottom. This will improve the insulation in the kiln, thereby slowing heat loss and speeding the firing time. You can also put a 2” layer of calcium silicate on top of the stand beneath the bottom of the kiln.

2) Also try raising the height of the kiln from the floor or putting a reflective stainless steel or aluminum sheet under the kiln. All these things keep the floor from absorbing the radiant energy from the kiln and will improve heat up times (as well as bottom of the kiln uniformity).

3) Put a 1” layer of non-RCF ceramic fiber on the lid. This is completely non-hazardous which is important in this application because you will be releasing fibers into the air when you move it while loading. While this is a somewhat extreme measure we have found that a disproportionate amount of the heat loss from a kiln is through the top. Non-RCF ceramic fiber is soluble in the body and is considered totally safe. (See the Parts List).

4) Whatever you do be sure NOT to put the kiln directly on the floor. If the floor is cement or other hard non-flammable material it will absorb the heat from the kiln. If the floor is wood or other flammable material you will create a very DANGEROUS situation which could cause a serious fire.

KILN HEATS TOO FAST

Voltage

1) Check your voltage. Some people may have high voltage like 245 volts where you should nominally have 240 volts.

2) Make sure you don't have a 208 volt kiln hooked up to a 240 volt circuit. **This is dangerous because the kiln will draw more amps than it is rated for which will overload the power wires and other components and could cause a fire.**

Elements

1) Check element ohms and compare with factory values. (See CHECKING ELEMENT OHMS).

THE KILN FIRES SLOWLY (MANUAL)

1) Check many of the same things as you would for an automatic kiln like element resistance, wiring, etc.

2) Switches are sometimes defective.

3) Relays or contactors may cause poor transfer of power to elements when they have been used for a long period of time. Examine contacts for wear. Replace contactors if contacts are worn or pitted.

4) Make sure all elements are firing. You can do this by simply looking inside the kiln while the elements are on. They should all be glowing a similar color red. CAUTION: In most kilns the power does not turn off when you open the lid. Be careful not to put your hand inside the kiln while it is on. Dangerous electric shock could result.

12) If all the elements are firing and the kiln is still firing too slow check the amperage draw of the kiln under a full load, i.e. with all Infinitely Variable Zone Input Switches on 100%. See if the amperage drawn is the same as what the kiln is rated for. See the product literature and/or data nameplate on the kiln for the rated amperage draw. For instance, a model J230 rated for 240 volts, Single Phase should draw 43.93 amps. If it is substantially less than the rated amperage draw and your voltage is within 5% of the rated voltage (for instance 230 volts for a 240 volt unit), then chances are the elements have changed in resistance. This will require element replacement. You can check element resistance by disconnecting the elements and checking the elements with an ohmmeter. See your instructions or check with factory for proper resistance.

TROUBLESHOOTING VARIABLES

For most L&L kiln problems the variables can be organized into these categories:

1) The Kiln Body

a) firebrick
b) element holders
c) lid and floor
d) metal case
e) stand
f) hardware

2. Elements
a) elements
b) element connections
c) element configurations
d) element replacements.

3) Atmosphere
a) atmosphere in the kiln while firing.

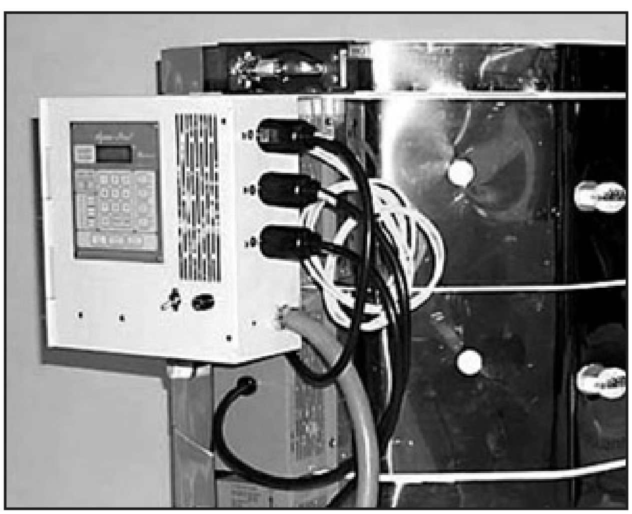
4) The Control
a) switch box
b) automatic control
c) kilnsitter
d) cones
e) thermocouples and pyrometers.

5) The Power Supply:
a) main power cord and receptacle
b) or the powerblock
c) wire and breakers.

Nearly all kiln related problems stem from one or more of these variables. We will go in-depth, starting with "The Kiln Body"

THE KILN BODY

The top of a JD230 showing the three sections that sit on top of each other and the control box mounted.



From the floor up most L&L kilns have a metal stand, a firebrick floor (sometimes containing an bottom element), a firebrick body containing ceramic element holders in grooves, heating elements in the holders and a firebrick lid. Either an automatic or manual control and various accessories (such as vents and pyrometers) are used as well.

Layout and Configurations

In sectional, polygonal kilns, the kiln body rests on the upper-outer edge of the kiln floor. It should sit flat, but if it does not, you can carefully slide it back and forth on the kiln floor, sanding the high spots away until it does sit flat. The kiln body should also be level, particularly if the Dawson kilnsitter is being used. The kiln body is typically made of 9" high sections on the polygonal (J and K Series) and DaVinci (X & T Series) L&L kilns. In the past we have made 14" high and 6-1/2" high sections for J models. We continue to make 4-1/2" unheated sections for Jupiter kilns. The sections are stacked on top of each other up to 5 high (and for some special units even higher).

The bricks are not cemented together in these models, but are cut to fit exactly together to form a very stable, multi-sided (polygon), or gently curved, symmetrical shaped (DaVinci). No latches are used to connect the sections but these can be added if required. The new "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" Jupiter hinge does allow you to attach up to three sections rigidly together.

Firebrick

The firebrick used on almost all top loading electric kilns is very soft and fragile. It is typically K-23 firebrick either 2 ½" thick or 3" thick. This brick is used because of its remarkable insulating efficiency. It is much greater than some of the harder firebricks available. All L&L kilns have a special compound called brick facing applied to the inside surface of the firebrick to harden it once it is fired. It is a good idea to reapply this coating every so often over the years. A very thin coating is recommended for deep penetration of the compound into the brick.

Over the years, the brick will achieve a fine network of cracks throughout its body. This is caused by the expansion and contraction of heating and cooling. The geometry of polygon kilns is such that their shape (and the stainless steel bands) will hold them together long after the brick itself would normally fall apart.

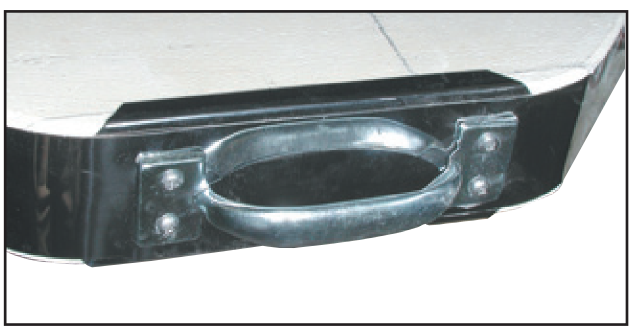
Firebrick Problems and Repair

See *troubleshoot-brick.pdf* for information on firebrick problems and instructions on how to repair firebrick problems.

Lids and Floors

The bricks in the lid and floor of the polygon and DaVinci kilns are cemented together, dried, cut and sanded flat. Then they are bound around the outside edge with a stainless steel band. These bands, like the ones surrounding the sections, have worm gear clamps attached to them which allow them to be tightened or loosened. These do get loose over time and need to be tightened periodically. The lids come with stainless steel "clips." which help to hold the lid in place. There are metal plates with a small 90° bend that are pinched between the stainless steel band and the brick to screw handles, door chains/supports and hinges into. The 90° bend on the clips also helps support the lid during lifting and lowering.

This shows typical clips that hold top firebrick to the stainless steel band, keeping the brick from slipping out of a band that becomes slightly loose.

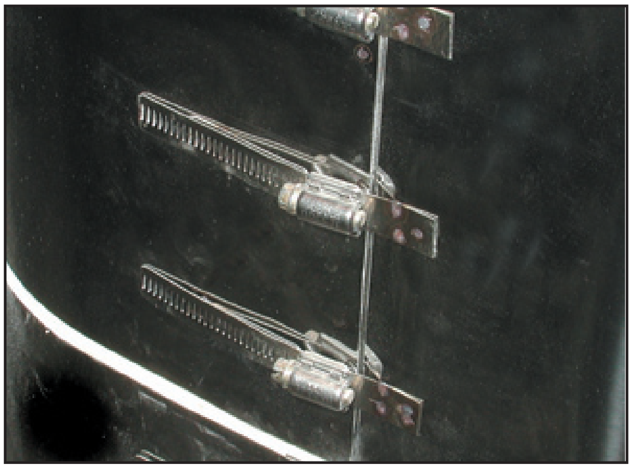


Cracking in lids and floors is common in kilns, even new ones. It is almost unavoidable and mostly does not matter a great deal. The geometry of the lid or floor, the tightness of the stainless steel band and the fact that firebrick expands as it heats up and fills the cracks combine to render a cracked lid or floor almost a non-issue. In fact, L&L's largest kiln lids (for the T3400 Series) are made in two halves to allow for the heat expansion. The only concerns may be if the stainless steel band cannot be tightened (in which case long metal shims may be needed between the stainless steel band and the brick) or if the crack is letting tiny chips fall into the ware. Two good solutions for the latter problem are either a shelf on posts placed over the ware to protect it or a very thin mixture of “brick facing” allowed to penetrate into the lid or floor around the crack to harden the brick. Too much brick facing on the lid can spall or flake off and cause problems.

Stainless Steel Bands

Each kiln section and the top and bottom have a stainless steel band wrapped tightly around them. This is how the kiln sections retain their shape. The steel has holes punched in it to locate peepholes, thermocouple holes, Dawson kilnsitter holes, etc. The bands are the same on the top section of the kiln as they are on the bottom section; different holes are used in different places and the firebrick may not be drilled through even though there is a corresponding hole in the stainless steel band. Worm gear clamps tighten the bands so that they fit snugly around the shaped bricks. Hinges are screwed into flat, galvanized or aluminized metal stiffening plates located behind the stainless steel bands.

Photo of the worm gear clamps used on L&L kilns. Sometimes welds holding these onto the case can fail. You can screw them on in most cases or, if all else fails you can screw the two ends of stainless steel together to make a repair. We recommend using a stainless steel screw. Keep in mind that, if you do screw the case together, that you may have to redo the repair at sometime in the future because it will not be adjustable.



Kiln Stand

The kiln stand is usually galvannealed or aluminized steel (on Jupiter and Doll kilns), or painted angle iron(on DaVinci kilns). **It should be leveled before putting the kiln on it.** This can be done by placing metal shims under the legs of the stand, but not between the kiln floor and the stand. Be sure to use a level when doing this. Some older stands that L&L made were not galvanized or aluminized. These may have rusted over the years particularly under the corrosive conditions of kiln firing. You should replace a corroded stand because you could have a major disaster if the kiln were to fall over while it was firing.

Once the stand is level, place the kiln floor on it. If it wobbles at all you must shim the stand legs to correct this. If you fail to do this you may crack the kiln floor prematurely. It is imperative to use a proper stand. Without it, the non-flammable concrete/brick/tile floor will act as a "heat sink," transferring heat from the bottom of the kiln throughout the floor; this will result in cooler bottom zones and uneven slow firings and could also result in a fire.

If you want to add more insulation to the bottom (something we recommend in the case of slow firing) you can put another kiln bottom under your new kiln bottom (people often have old kilns around that can be cannibalized for this purpose) or you can put a layer of calcium silicate under the kiln stand. See our parts list for information on this.

Jupiter Stands with Vent Collection Box

New stands have mounting studs in place around a hole in the middle of the stand for the attachment of L&L's venting system. See the section in this guide on “Venting” for more information as well as the vent system instructions for the specific requirements pertaining to size and number of exhaust holes for each different size kiln. Sometimes the studs on the stand do not quite line up with the holes in the vent system's “by-pass collection box”. If this is the case try to determine which studs are not correct and either enlarge the holes in the bypass collection box (with a drill), or put a nut on the stud and tap it with a hammer, bending it slightly to go into the hole.

Hardware

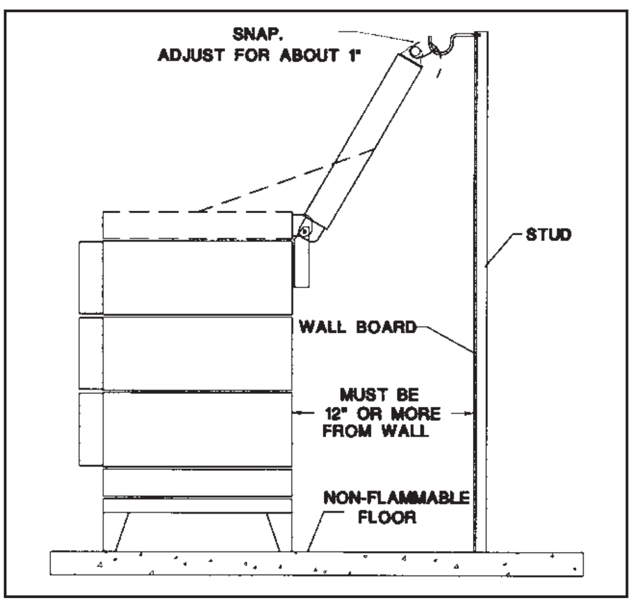
The older L&L kilns had zinc plated steel hardware on the kiln case. The newer models use much more expensive stainless steel hardware because it will not rust like zinc plated steel. Old hardware can always be replaced with stainless steel hardware of the same type. (Also, the electrical hardware that we used to use before 2000 was nickel plated rather than all stainless steel).

Econo/Jupiter Standard Lid Hinge

The hinge for the lid has a pin connecting the lid to the kiln body. When the kiln is cool, it is critical that the pin pass through the bottom of the oval-shaped holes on the part of the hinge that is mounted to the kiln body. If the pin passes through the middle or top of these holes the lid may not sit properly, will rise up as the kiln heats up, and might crack. The firebrick expands as the kiln heats. The oval-shaped holes allow for this expansion by giving the hinge pin room to rise up as the bricks expand. If the pin cannot rise, brick will continue to push upward, and the back edge of the lid will suddenly become a pivot point that will mangle the brick and force all the lid’s weight to ride on that point, possibly cracking it. Check this hinge pin position occasionally! To adjust it, loosen the mounting screws on the kiln body's part of the hinge assembly (not the lid's section) and slide that part of the assembly up or down. The mounting holes here are oval shaped as well.

Close-up of a hinge assembly. It is important to have the hinge bar rest on the bottom of the oval hole in the hinge when the kin is cold. This allows the lid to move up when the kiln expands.

The standard J Series lid (on J14 through J245 kilns) is meant to be used with door chains to stop the door from opening too far; a safety chain from the door handle to a hook secured in the wall keeps the lid from accidentally closing.



Older J2900 (29" diameter) Econo and Jupiter kilns have a tall metal backstop protruding from the hinge to keep the lid from opening too far. These have no door chains, but still use the safety chain to the wall hook system. This has been replaced with the new "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" spring loaded hinge system as standard on all 29" diameter Jupiter kilns as of April 2001.

Jupiter "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" Spring Loaded Hinges

In April 2001 L&L started using spring loaded hinges as standard equipment on the twelve-sided (29") Jupiter kilns. These hinges are available as an option on the ten- and eight-sided Jupiters as well. They make opening the lid considerably easier, especially on the larger kilns. Do not consider using these hinges if you rely on being easily able to remove sections of your kiln to load it. These hinges cover about 20 inches of the height of the kiln body, or about two and one quarter sections of the kiln, and complicate the simplicity of removing the individual kiln sections. The 12- sided Jupiters already use a hinge that covers two sections, so the simplicity of removing sections on these models is not really compromised by the use of this better hinge. These new hinges also feature the ability to tie together up to three sections (or two sections and the bottom on 2 section kilns). The hinge itself is made from galvannealed steel for corrosion resistance and is then powder coated.

There is no easy way to retro-fit an older kiln with one of these hinges, but it can be done. When these are installed at the factory, we use aluminized metal backing plates tapped in behind the stainless steel bands to give the hinge mounting screws something to latch onto.

DaVinci Lid Hinge and Counterbalance

The DaVinci hinges include a pole mounted counterbalance. These hinges still have the oval-shaped holes for the hinge pin to accommodate the expansion of the hot brick. The difference is a spring-loaded pole(s) and cable(s) that pulls up on the front of the lid. Normally these lids are maintenance free and quite safe when used with the safety chains that are attached to the pole(s).

A DaVinci with lid up and safety chains on

However, the lids are very heavy and the counter-balance will NOT keep them from closing on their own. They can be adjusted to do so, but this usually results in the lid lifting up during firing. There may be a fine line where the lid will not raise up during firing, and also may not fall down right away from its upright position. This fine line will be different for every kiln; even two identical kilns built at the same time will not act exactly alike. Always adjust the tension on the lid so it will not open up during firing, and ALWAYS use the safety chains when the lid is up.

The easiest adjustment points are the threaded connectors between the eyebolts on the front of the lid and the cable that connects to that point from the counter balance. A longer cable adjustment will mean a heavier lid, a shorter one will mean a lighter lid. A more crude adjustment would be to lengthen or shorten the entire cable itself. Do not try to shorten the springs or make adjustments to the cable inside the counter balance poles. Be sure to read the DaVinci Set-Up instructions that came with your kiln. (*davinci-setup.pdf*).

Element Holders

Each kiln section has a number of heating elements in it. These elements sit in ceramic element holders or channels that are set in the brick. They go all the way around the kiln.

A J2900 Brick set which includes two bricks and three rows of holders.

Elements are held in place by two small flanges on the back of the element holder that slide into specially routed channels in the brick. These eliminate the need for pins to hold the elements in place. These holders also help to retain the heat in the kiln during firing. The harder ceramic holders reflect the radiant heat of the elements back into the kiln better than the firebrick. When ordering replacement element holders it is best to measure their length and include that along with the kiln model number. There are "old-style" element holders in kilns built before January 1996. After January 1996 the element holders were made with a slightly larger channel for the elements. We recommend replacing the “old-style” holders with the more recent version. The reason for the “new- style” element holders was to accommodate the larger diameter of the “Heavy Duty” elements, which are still available for SQ, B, J and JD model kilns only if they were built after January 1996, or have had all their element holders replaced since that date. Note that the new and the old style holders fit into the exact same milled slot that we have always put in our brick. Therefore you can put new holders in your old kiln. There is a slight offset between the two styles when you mix them but this won't cause any problems for the elements.

DaVinci kiln element holders (gray-colored) are rated for a higher temperature than the J model element holders. They are interchangeable in terms of their composition for most uses. It is the lengths which are different. They can be custom cut using a wet diamond saw if necessary. The DaVinci element holders will not slump together in the event of an over-fire as soon as the J model holders will, which is at about 2450°F. The DaVinci element holders are rated for about 3000°F, but are not quite as impervious to heat shock as the J model holders. Very sudden changes in temperature will cause them to crack sooner than the J model holders would. Since 2350°F is the maximum temperature for any L&L kiln, the higher-rated DaVinci holder would never see its temperature rating of 3000°F. In the event of an over-fire, however, the cost of repair is considerably less if the element holders have not slumped.

Element Holder Replacement

See *troubleshoot-brick.pdf* for instructions on how to replace element holders.

HEATING ELEMENTS

If you are having a problem heating your kiln up first look at the following issues:

CIRCUIT

Make sure the elements are wired according the wiring diagram. Some elements are in series, other kilns have parallel circuits. This makes a HUGE difference in how the kiln fires. See the explanation of circuits in *troubleshoot-element.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING Section.

POWER SUPPLY

With the digital multimeter, the voltage to the kiln can be tested. The condition of the power supply lines and connections can be determined visually.

INSULATION

Another variable is the condition of the insulation. Are there significant leaks? Large cracks in the lid or bottom? Do you fire with the peephole plugs open? The condition of the firebrick can be determined visually.

ELEMENTS

The elements are the least stable variable and should be examined before anything else. Use the multimeter to test the elements' resistance (ohms). Note that element resistance changes over time, the hotter and more often you fire the quicker they change. As the resistance goes up the kiln will slow down because it is getting less power.

You may not need to replace any elements, but you must eliminate or implicate them as a potential source of the problem.

ELEMENT TROUBLESHOOTING

See *troubleshoot-elements.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING section of your instruction manual for more information on element problems, how to change elements and how to change element holders. See the section later in these instructions for a complete "walkthrough" of how to check elements in a manual kiln.

KILN ATMOSPHERE & VENTING

An electric kiln atmosphere rich in oxygen will make elements, kilnsitters, and thermocouples last as long as possible. All the materials used in L&L kilns like to be in oxygen. Fumes are generated by carbonaceous materials in clay, china paints and glazes containing oils, glue from decals, and certain glazes and other miscellaneous products. Fumes include carbon monoxide, sulfur oxides, hydrogen fluoride and metal vapors. These fumes are unhealthy and can adversely affect your work.You MUST VENT YOUR KILN if you are doing ceramics.

INSTALLATION CODES

See *install.pdf* in the INSTALLATION section for more information on venting and codes.

GENERAL ROOM VENTILATION

Your kiln room should be dry and well ventilated. Never operate in an enclosed space unless you have good ventilation. Aside from issues of ventilating the fumes from the firing, the heat build up in an enclosed room could present a significant fire hazard. We recommend room ventilation of at least 10-25 times the cubic feet of the kiln per hour. For example, if a kiln has 10 cubic feet then 250 cubic feet per hour (about 4 cubic feet per minute) should be adequate. Our suggestion is to get a variable speed fan for ambient room ventilation and keep a thermometer on the wall. That way you can vary the ventilation to suit the needs of ambient heat conditions in the room. Grainger is an excellent source for ventilation equipment. (See www.grainger.com)

MANUAL VENTING

For many years people only vented their kilns by propping up the lids for the first part of the ceramic firing and taking out peepholes. You can still do this if you want. However, be sure to have proper room ventilation at least to get rid of the fumes that get vented to the room. Also be sure

POWER VENTING

We recommend our VENT-SURE downdraft kiln vent system. This will do most of the venting of the fumes of the kiln, will help cool the kiln, will improve uniformity of firing in the kiln, and will help maintain the oxygen level in the kiln (which is important for certain glaze effects). See our catalog for more information as well as hotkilns.com/vent.pdf. The complete installation instructions are at *ventsure-instruct.pdf.*

With a downdraft vent system air is pulled from tiny holes in the bottom of the kiln, which creates a slight negative pressure in the kiln. Just enough fresh air is drawn into the kiln to continuously replace the air being sucked out.

The heat in the kiln is then forced to move about. The slight downdraft effect of the vent system counteracts the tendency of heat to rise in the kiln (which would otherwise lead to uneven temperatures top to bottom in the kiln). The amount sucked out should not be enough to compromise the rate of temperature climb, but must be enough to suck out all impurities (i.e. carbon, fluorine, water vapor etc.). L&L's Vent-Sure system only requires between one ¼" hole and four 5/16" holes, depending on the size of the kiln. Too many holes can cause slower firings and a lower maximum temperature. In addition, the vent system ductwork could get too hot, and potentially melt, if there are too many holes. The Bypass Collection box (included with the Vent-Sure vent system) allows to adjust the amount of air being sucked from the kiln. Basically you want it to just vent the fumes.You may need to turn the vent off near the end of the firing especially if you are having a hard time reaching final set point.

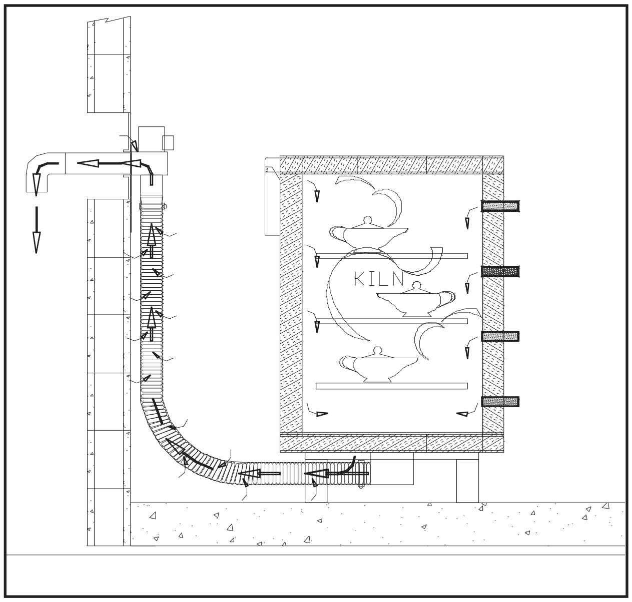
One thing to keep in mind about venting at high temperatures is that you are actually venting less air the higher in temperature the kiln goes. This is because the air in the kiln expands with temperature so less molecules of air (which hold the heat) are being removed from the kiln the hotter the kiln gets.

Keep in mind that even the best vent systems cannot handle lots of smoke from newspaper or a lot of wax resist, and still let the kiln reach its highest temperature. To be sure you have not created an unsafe situation, you should check the temperature of the flexible ductwork while the kiln is at its maximum temperature. Most flexible aluminum ductwork is rated for at least 350°F, so if it is hotter than the rating you must plug up at least one hole. High Temperature Cement (available from L&L) works well for this. Kao-wool and other high temperature fiber products can work too. However, the fibers may get stuck in the fan motor, and potentially burn it out.

Other residue, particularly wax resist, can build up on the fan motor and the inside of the ductwork. A periodic cleaning will help. CAUTION:Be careful if you are doing wax resist. The wax will condense on the inside of the aluminum ductwork and this could be dangerously flammable. Check this periodically if you are doing this.

It is not necessary to put air-intake holes in the lid on sectional L&L kilns, although you can if you prefer. If the kiln is not sectional, or fits together extraordinarily well, you will want to drill air intake holes in the lid. The number and size of these holes should never exceed the number and size of the air exhaust holes.

A schematic drawing showing the Vent-Sure:



THE CONTROL

There are two basic types of control systems on L&L kilns.

MANUAL CONTROL

One is a “manual”control. The “manual” control refers to the siwtches which need to be adjusted during the firing. Even in a “manual” kiln the actual shut-off device is a simple automatic pyrometric device (the Dawson Kiln Sitter-timer). The manual control system consists of the switch box with either Hi-Med-Low switches or infinite type switches, one for each zone of the kiln, the Dawson Kiln-sitter, and possibly branch fuses and contactors (in larger kilns).

AUTOMATIC CONTROL

An “automatic” kiln consists of the switch box, an electronic temperature control, thermocouples, contactors and branch fuses in larger kilns. The electronic temperature control both automatically turns up the heat based on a program and shuts off the kiln when it reaches the correct final temperature. The thermocouples measure the temperature in the kiln.

SERVICEABILITY

L&L has designed their controls to be as far from the heat as possible, easy to repair on site and simple to remove and return to the factory if factory service is required or preferred.

SAFETY WARNING

In the United States and Canada, most electric kilns use high-voltage electricity, either 208 or 240 volts. Some small ones (such as our Doll-Baby kilns) use just 120 volts. Most non-US voltage supplies are either 220 single phase or 380 three phase. Kilns need a lot of power to run and being around that much electricity can be dangerous. Always physically disconnect what you are working on from the power supply. If it is not possible to disconnect physically, be sure to turn off the power supply and take a voltage reading to ensure there is no power on. Ideally you would be able to see the power disconnect closest to you and monitor it to make sure no one turns it on while you are working. Lock-out-tag-out padlock type devices are available if you cannot see the power disconnect. (This is required for commercial, industrial and institutional users). These allow you to lock a power supply while you are working on the kiln. Once the kiln is unplugged, all the parts are safe to handle, provided they are not too hot. See *cautions.pdf* in the CAUTIONS Section.

GENERAL INFORMATION

See *troubleshoot-electricity.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING section for a good simple explanation of how electricity works in a kiln.

Making visual comparisons between circuits in the control or between sides of the same circuit will often point to the problem.

Electricity travels in a circle, hence the word “circuit”. It is easiest to visualize your kiln circuitry in terms of a circle. Electricity always chooses the easiest path, as well. It always tries to go to “ground” before anything else, but if this is not possible, it will flow into your circuit as soon as you turn the circuit breaker on. Think of the kiln elements as part of the “circle”. They are termed the (electrical) load. Everything else in the control box just provides the route for the electricity to travel on; this is termed the (electrical) line. Like a wall receptacle in a house, the electricity just sits at the edge of your circuit breaker until you turn it on. As soon as you turn it on, the electricity will rush into the kiln circuitry, stopping at a turned-off switch, or a turned-off kiln-sitter; once you turn the switch or kiln-sitter on, then the electricity goes further, until it hits the elements. The nature of the material that the elements are made of provides a consistent amount of resistance per unit of measurement, depending on the thickness of the wire gauge and length of element wire. Good element design is complicated by the need to balance coil diameter, wire diameter, total resistance needed, stretch ratio, watt density and other variables to create an optimal design. Basically, however, the resistance provides the heat, the special alloy withstands the high temperatures, and the engineering of the kiln can maximize these and other variables by providing the correct ingredients to create the whole system.

REPLACING WIRE TERMINALS

When you replace any electrical component there will be wires with terminals on each end connecting the component to the circuit. If you just replace a component such as the switch, and not the terminals that attach the wires to the switch, your new switch may not last very long. Replacing both the "male" and the "female" parts of any electrical connection is the best way to repair it. For this you will need a good wire crimper. Do not use pliers except in an emergency repair. You must have total contact between the wire and the terminal or you will create a resistance which will heat up the terminal, wire and component and cause an eventual failure.

MANUAL KILN SWITCHBOX

L&L sectional kilns make visualizing kiln circuitry easy. K, J, JD and DaVinci models -- as well as most kilns on the market -- are all just parallel branch circuits stacked on top of each other. There is one power source coming in and it branches out into two to six (or more) branch circuits in L&L kilns. Each branch circuit has two or three elements in it and these are wired in parallel or in series. “Current proportioning” can change the element configuration from series to parallel to achieve low, medium, and high. . They were used on the old K models and other old models, and on some newer manual kilns. Manual Davinci, Doll and Jupiter kilns, and the older Econo J kilns use “time proportioning switches” (also called Infinite or INF switches). These time proportioning switches sometimes (in smaller J Series kilns up to 15 amps per circuit) control power directly. On higher amperage models, like the J236, J245, J2900 Series and the DaVinci kilns, the switches control power contactors. These switches give the operator more control, as one may set them for low, medium or high and anything in-between. They also allow the resistance of a branch circuit to be measured easily (to diagnose element problems). There is no different resistance at low, medium or high like there is with a current proportioning switch. It will be the same reading regardless of what the switch is set for (except Off), depending, of course, on where you are reading the resistance from. (Note: our use of the phrase “current proportioning” here refers to fact that the actual wattage of the whole element circuit is changed by the switch; it does not imply the use of an industrial device known as an SCR which incrementally changes the current in a circuit).

DIAGNOSE A SLOW-FIRING MANUALLY CONTROLLED KILN & GENERAL TACTICS

Manually controlled L&Ls without electronic controllers are set up for easy measurement of resistance and voltage. Most other manually controlled kilns are set up in a similar fashion. The following steps will outline the process of diagnosing one of these kilns with, say, a slow-heating problem.

#1) Look for the nameplate data

Every kiln should have a nameplate containing model number, voltage, phase and amperage needed, as well as the watts that it will produce. This is the key and is often the only information you may have on how much power to make available when hooking the kiln up, and how the kiln should act. Plug the Amps and Volts labeled here into Ohms Law to see what the resistance for the whole kiln should be. There is a photograph of a typical nameplate later in this troubleshooting guide.

If the nameplate is missing you can call or email the factory to try and figure out what model it is. Measure the inside dimensions of the kiln, take whatever resistance readings you can, let us know whether it has Hi-Med-Low switches on infinite type switches and describe anything else you can about the kiln. A digital picture emailed to us can be very helpful.

#2) Measure the total resistance of the kiln

Always unplug the kiln or turn off the power if you cannot unplug it when measuring resistance in these circuits. Now turn all switches to high, and turn the kiln-sitter on. Measure the ohms from the prongs on the main powercord -- from the two 'hot" blades, not from the ground or neutral. The reading should match within about 9% of what you calculated it should be from the nameplate data.

A) If there is no reading, or a reading that makes no sense like .031 ohms or any reading that has KOhms (Kor MOhms after it then;

1) The meter is not set to the correct setting or is low on batteries. Change the batteries and set it for either "auto-range", or 0-200 Ohms , or a similar setting.

2) Kilnsitter or switches are not ON (turn infinite switches to 100% on)

3) Kiln is equipped with an automatic control or there are contactors with open contacts between your measurement point and the elements.

4) There is a short to ground somewhere. Part of the circuit is in contact with ground.

5) All the elements have failed.

6) There is a break in the powercord, kiln-sitter connections or in the main power line somewhere before the point where the branch circuits begin.

7) There is a chance that different or the same components in the branch circuits could all fail at the same time. Although the chances of this happening are pretty slim, it should be considered if none of these other factors are applicable.

B) If there is a reading, it should be within 9% of what you mathematically determined from the nameplate label. If it is not, the reading will almost always be higher than what you calculated. Only if the wrong elements were installed in the kiln - or if the elements are so old that they are squashed into each corner all the way around the kiln (old elements expand in size) - can the resistance be lower than what the nameplate calculations would indicate. Low resistance is very bad because it means more electricity is being pulled in through your components than they were designed to handle. Look for overheated connection points if this situation continues for any length of time and replace elements immediately. With a high resistance reading, you want to see how much higher it is and what the relationship between the calculated resistance and the actual resistance really means.

1) If the reading is just a bit more than 9% over the calculated resistance, the elements are probably all still connected but are badly oxidized. Check the actual voltage from where the kiln was plugged in or connected to power. Divide the resistance you have measured into that number and compare the result to the amperage on the nameplate. It will be lower. Problems can also arise if the actual voltage is considerably different than the nameplate voltage. A 240 volt kiln running on 208 volts will have about 25% less power. A 208 volt kiln running on 240 volts will burn up the elements and the switches quickly.

2) More testing is needed if the readings are considerably higher.

3) The meter is properly set but there is a considerably high ohms reading at the powercord.

C) Double check your math. Be sure that your calculated resistance for the whole kiln is a result of the nameplate voltage divided by the nameplate amperage.

D) Know the kiln's history. Were the elements just replaced? If so, check the rewiring. You will need a wiring diagram for the kiln and a switch schematic if it is a four position switch (Low, Medium, High, Off). There is also a chance that the wrong elements were installed.

#3) Measure the resistance of each branch circuit

Turn the switches OFF. The switches must be off or else the meter will read all the branch circuits at once. What this does is reads the resistance of just the elements in each circuit, not the entire kiln. On a many L&L kilns there are plug and receptacle connections between the elements and the switches or contactors. Measure branch circuit resistance with the kiln power OFF from the two flat prongs (not the ground) of the plug-heads of each kiln section. On other kilns you want to determine how many elements are in each circuit and how the elements in each circuit connect together and to each circuit's power wires. Take the branch circuit resistance reading at the point where the power wires connect to the element(s).

#4) Determine Series or Parallel

Look to see if the elements are wired in series or in parallel with each other. Even in L&L's latest kilns you would still have to either take the element box off or look at the kiln's wiring diagram to determine this. See *troubleshoot-element.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING Section.

#5) Check individual element resistance

Try to get a single element's resistance reading by either calculating it if they are in parallel or by measuring it with the meter if they are in series. You may need to disconnect wires to isolate as much as possible each element. Keep in mind that on some kilns, like our B Series kiln and many other kilns currently on the market, elements can be graded from top to bottom and may have different resistances.

#6) Take a voltage reading in each branch circuit

Do this either at the element connection to the power wires or at the control box receptacles on later L&Ls.

A) Usually a kiln with 240, 220, or 208 volts supplied to it will still have 240, 220, or 208 volts at the elements. Sometimes, though, the "240" volts will be split using a Neutral line (this comes in with the main power line in K18, and K18R kilns only. Some other kiln companies make use of this as well. Usually they would be labeled "220/110 VAC"). This happens right at the point where the branch circuits begin. By using the Neutral line, the "220" volts are split into two 110 volt circuits. When plugging each branch circuit resistance into Ohms Law you must calculate using the actual voltage in the branch circuit, not just what the nameplate says.

B) Another reason to test the branch circuit voltage is that corroded element connections (and corroded connection points in general) will cause a slight - or not so slight - voltage loss, in the form of heat. The voltage can drop considerably as it goes through the control to the elements if there are too many corroded connection points. Measure the voltage at the main power supply. Then measure it at the element connections to the power wires. If there is a considerable voltage drop then you have a corrosion or connection problem. Kilns in general corrode easily, even the "stainless steel". Heating and cooling, baking off moisture, and all sorts of fumes and particle matter combine to create a corrosive environment. Using a down-drafting vent system combats this. Badly corroded connections need to be replaced immediately. Both parts of a connection should be replaced at the same time. It is possible to "clean up a connection" by using an emery board or a gentle file to remove corrosion. But once corrosion starts, it generates heat, which in turn generates further corrosion, and more heat, etc, - this vicious cycle will continue until you smell something awful, trip your breaker, or possibly start a fire. In particular check your plug and receptacle connections, especially the main powercord and receptacle.

#7) Add it all up

Note and compare what the whole kiln's resistance is, what the branch circuits' resistance is, what an individual element's resistance is, and whether the branch circuits' elements are wired in series or parallel. If the branch circuit voltage is different from the whole kiln's voltage supply (220/110), then it will be easier to compare the numbers of each branch circuit individually like you would for the whole kiln if the voltage was the same all the way through. Draw and label a picture of the wiring and the elements. Check yourself using the different formulas in Ohms Law.

#8) By now you have determined if the elements are the problem or if the

components or connections are the problem.
A) If this kiln had a calculated resistance of, say, 7 ohms, and an actual resistance of 8 ohms, you have determined that you need elements if none are broken and no circuits are out. The ohms are a bit more than 9% over the calculated resistance and this correlates with the problem (slow kiln), considering the fact that no circuits or elements are out. Ideally you should replace all the elements; at least replace those with readings that are too high. If you do not replace them all at once, the kiln may heat unevenly. (However, with the zoned design twith ungraded elements his is much less of a problem than with kilns that have graded elements).

B) If this kiln had a calculated resistance of, say, 7 ohms, and an actual resistance of 15 ohms, you would have to assume that either the elements are really far gone or a circuit is out. When going through the steps above you will establish (for the sake of this example) that this kiln has three equal parallel branch circuits and each branch circuit contains two elements wired in series. With a calculated resistance of 7 ohms and the knowledge that the kiln is made up of three equal parallel branch circuits, you know that each branch circuit's resistance should be 21 ohms. Because your actual resistance reading is 15 ohms, you should be able to see that the relationship between one branch circuit and 21 ohms, and three parallel branch circuits and 7 ohms (21/3=7), would point you to the fact that 15 ohms is about what only two branch circuits would measure; hence, one is probably not working. The extra ohm is here because nothing ever comes together that perfectly. The other elements are probably aged also, or the small percentage of error inherent in even the most precise measurements can be blamed for this extra ohm.

#9) What if the element ohms are OK?
Lets say it turns out the element ohm readings taken at the elements come up fine. However, the whole kiln resistance is 15 ohms, not 7 ohms, as it should be. The problem must be in a branch circuit because the kiln will work partially, so we know the main power wire is not the source of the problem. The element ohms are all OK, so the problem must lie somewhere between the two. To determine why a branch circuit is not working:

A) With the kiln on, run a voltage test on the receptacles or at the connections to the elements in each branch circuit to see which it is the bad one.

B) Making sure the power is off, open the control panel and visually inspect the branch circuits. Check branch fuses if the kiln has them.

C) Locate the two wires that begin the bad branch circuit from the bunch that come from L1 and L2 on the main powerblock.

D) Follow those wires to where they connect to the first component in line, probably either a fuse block, a relay or a switch.

E) With the power ON, and any kiln-sitters or switches on High (so that the elements would come on if they could), take a voltage reading at the point where these two wires connect to the first component in line. The reading normally should be the same as what it is at the main powerblock. If it is not, one of the wires between the main powerblock and the first component is bad. Replace it.

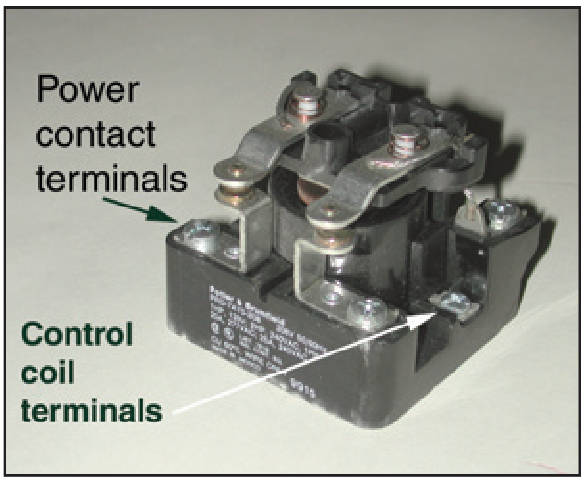
F) If there is voltage there then take another reading after the first component at the point where the two wires continue onto the next component or to the element connection. If there is voltage after the component then the component is working.

1) Note: Low/ Medium/ High switches in some L&Ls and in other kilns have three wires running from them to the element connections. With these switches on High, take your voltage reading at any two of the three connections. Take all three readings, though. (for example: the two left connections, the two right connections, and the two outside connections).

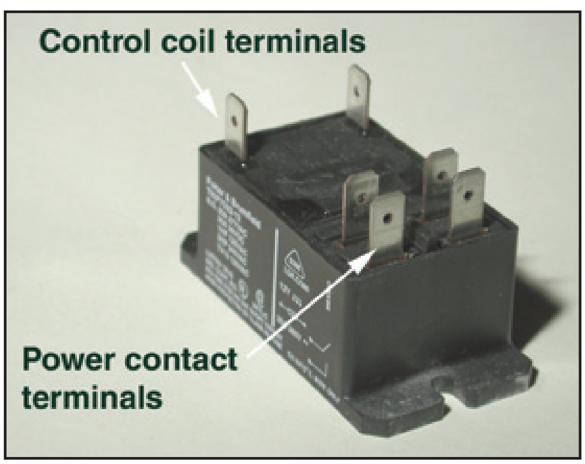
2) Note: If the component is a relay or a contactor, the switch controlling it would have to be on High for voltage to be able to be read after this component. There are contactors connected by infinite switches in all L&L manual kilns with sections that draw more than 15 amps. L&L's infinite switches can only handle up to 15 amps, so contactors must be used for larger loads. If you cannot read the voltage after a contactor even if the switch controlling it is on High and there is voltage before the contactor, the problem could be either the switch or the contactor. The

contactors L&L uses contain what is essentially an electromagnet, called a coil. The coil in the contactor completes the circuit that is being controlled by the switch. When the coil is activated by turning on the switch, it creates a magnetic field which pulls the contacts together in the contactor, allowing electricity to pass through to the elements. This allows the higher-rated contactor to handle the power to run the elements, while the lower-rated switch just handles the very minor amount of power necessary to energize the coils of the contactors.

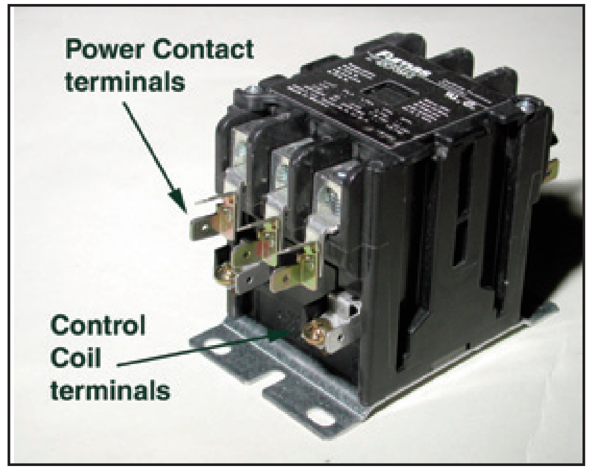
Picture of a PRD-7AYO relay used on most J Series manual kilns that require contactors.



Picture of an enclosed 25 amp relay that we currently use on most Jupiter automatic kilns and some manual kilns.



Picture of a 50 amp contactor used on DaVinci kilns.



a) To determine whether the contactor or the switch is bad, first follow the wires from the load side of the switch to the contactor.

b) With the power all on and the switch on high, take a voltage reading where the two wires from the switch to the contactor connect to the contactor. Normally there will be the same voltage before the switch (on the switch's line side, or at the main powerblock) as at the test point. If these voltage readings are the same, then the contactor is bad.

c) If there is no voltage present, then follow those two wires back up to the load side of the switch and measure the voltage there. If the voltage reading is the same, then one of the wires is bad.

d) If there is no voltage present at the load side of the switch (power all on, switch on high), then be sure voltage is coming to the switch; if it is, then the switch is bad. Replace the switch and if the problem still persists then repeat the test; you will most likely have to replace the contactor as well.

e) If there is no voltage after the first component in line and it is not a relay/contactor, then just replace it. If it is a fuse holder, just replace the fuse (usually a bad fuse means there is a short somewhere in the circuit). Use a “continuity” tester to test for bad fuses. Always check tightness of connections in a questionable circuit.

f) If there is voltage after the first component then move along the circuit from the main powerblock towards the element connections, testing for voltage before and after every component until you isolate the problem. Do not bother taking voltage readings at the element connections anywhere other than where the power wires connect to the elements. Voltage readings taken from between the elements (and from between resistors in general) give a reading that reflects voltage which is half the supply voltage with two elements in series, and either one-third or two-thirds the supply voltage with three elements in series (depending on which side of the middle element in the series the test lead is placed).

MANUAL DAWSON KILN SITTER

See the Dawson Kiln Sitter Instruction Manual in the CONTROL section of your Instruction Manual.

BASICS

L&L has used the W.P. Dawson company's kiln-sitters and sitter/timers for many years. A “kiln-sitter” is a device that incorporates spring-loaded electrical contacts coupled with a mechanical start-up and shut-off assembly. This assembly uses a long ceramic tube that extends through the wall of your kiln and protrudes about 1-1/2” into the firing chamber. A small pyrometric cone or bar is placed in the mechanism at the end of this tube in the kiln. When the pyrometric cone melts enough to bend, the mechanism moves and sets off a spring-loaded lever whose movement allows the contacts to pop apart, cutting power to either the kiln or the branch circuits' contactor coils. Timer models incorporate a timer into this assembly. The timer uses a fixed stop to essentially push the spring-loaded lever (see "How the Kiln-Sitter/Timer Works" in this manual for more information and see also the Dawson instruction manuals). Dawson models such as the model P and K have no timers and are still available from L&L. We use the model P on the automatic kilns as an optional back up safety device. The LT-3 and the LT-3K have timers in addition to the shut-off mechanism; they are now used on all L&L manually controlled kilns. The P and the K are essentially the same except the P is housed in its own metal box. The LT-3 has a 240 volt AC timer motor and the metal box to house it, and the LT-3K has a 120 volt AC timer motor and no metal box (this is the one we use in the Doll-Baby kilns). Both the K and the LT-3K were designed to be attached directly into an existing control panel, while the P and the LT-3 mount in their own box and are connected electrically to the switch box or other control. Any of these four models can be housed in the metal box or attached directly to an existing box.

The kiln-sitters are used either as a safety backup or as the primary turn-off control.

Many people who are using manual kilns will want to pay great attention to the end of the firing. These people will be adjusting switches throughout the firing to even out the heat top to bottom, and will have self-supporting cones that can be seen through the peepholes to know at the end of the firing that all the sections are even in temperature. The kiln-sitter will turn off the kiln once its cone has melted, with no regard to the temperature in the rest of the kiln. What this means is that there is the potential for the ware in the bottom of the kiln to be under-fired if the kiln-sitter is in the top of the kiln, or over-fired if the kiln-sitter is in the bottom of the kiln. You will also be able to turn off the entire kiln yourself when you see the target cone slump over. In this scenario, you would have the kiln-sitter cone be one or two cones higher than the cone you are firing to. Of course, if you are not very fussy about the final result you can have the kiln sitter do the shut off automatically. Just be sure to be near the kiln when it is supposed to stop. Kiln Sitters are not fool-proof devices! REMEMBER: They need periodic cleaning and adjustment.

Safety Note: Unplug/ disconnect the kiln from power if you are working with it!

How the Kiln-Sitter/Timer works

A) The timer

A) The timer is a limit timer, counting down the hours you set it for until it reaches zero, at which point it turns off the kiln regardless of what is happening with the cone device. This part of the device is usually thought of as a back-up for the shut-off part. (Note: some people do not like this feature and disable it by removing the wires that power the timer motor)

B) The shut-off mechanism

This is a bit more complicated. There is a set of contacts similar to those in a power contactor except there is no electro-magnetic coil to be energized. There is a spring-loaded button with a slot cut around it on the outside of the kiln-sitter that, when pressed, pushes the electrical contacts together. This allows electricity to pass through to the elements. There is a spring-loaded, sliding, flat piece of metal that is forced into the button's slot once it is pressed in, which keeps the button from popping back out.

There is a hinged weight hanging off of the front, directly over the button. When the weight hangs all the way down, the button will not stay in when pressed because a small piece of the weight is now holding the flat piece of metal out of the buttons' slot. When you raise the weight, the button will stay in if pressed. If you raise the weight all the way up you will find it will not stay up on its own. There is a small claw-like piece at the end of a long rod which sits directly above the weight when it is in the up position. This is called the "claw" and the rod is called the "sensing rod". The sensing rod moves easily up and down and raises the claw up and down with it. When the weight is all the way up, the claw can be lowered to trap the weight under its edge; this keeps the weight up and allows the button to stay in.

CAUTION: You should not press the button in until you are ready to fire the kiln. Setting the kiln-sitter requires you to have your hands inside the kiln. If the power is on, there is a risk of electrocution with the kiln-sitter button pressed in.

CAUTION: If the power is on and there is a "fused contactor" (a condition in which a contactor has essentially failed by welding its contacts together in the intense heat of electrical arcing between dirty contacts), some or all of the elements will be on even if the kiln-sitter and all the switches are off. So be sure the power is turned off at the main disconnect or circuit breaker.

Now the weight is up, you are holding the claw down to keep the weight up, the button is out and the power is off.

There is a ceramic tube going from the back of the kiln-sitter through the wall of the kiln, ending with an oval-shaped hole, the other end of the sensing rod and two angled, flat pieces of metal called "cone supports". In order to use this kiln-sitter, a small pyrometric cone or pyrometric bar must be slid in place here. The cone lays flat across the tops of the cone supports. The sensing rod rests in the middle, on top of the cone. When the cone is in place the weight should still be up, trapped behind the claw. The cone will melt and bend at a specific temperature (actually after a specific amount of what is known as heat-work) and there are different cones for different temperatures or different amounts of heat-work. As the cone begins to melt, the sensing rod resting on top of the cone begins to force its way down, slowly bending the cone. As the sensing rod moves down on the inside of the kiln, it is slowly moving up on the outside. The claw attached to the outside end of the sensing rod moves up and eventually the weight is freed. It falls if the kiln is level and the device is operating properly (dirt or corrosion can impinge on proper operation). In falling, it knocks the spring-loaded metal plate out of the button's slot, allowing the button to pop out, which turns off the kiln. If this does not work, the timer will run down, and the timer motor will push the spring-loaded metal plate out of the button's slot, thus turning off the kiln.

With all this cause and effect there are many ways this device could not work properly. With a maintenance schedule, though, it can work well for years. The user's manual from Dawson is excellent for maintenance and troubleshooting. Usually, the biggest problem we see is either the button not staying in or the kiln-sitter not turning off the kiln.

Potential Problems with the Dawson

A) If the button will not stay in, the weight is up, and the kiln-sitter is relatively new, there is probably a wire pressed against the spring-loaded, flat metal piece; this keeps the piece from sliding into the button's slot. Or maybe the spring has come out of its tiny hole in the flat piece of metal. If the flat piece is older, corrosion may also keep it from sliding.

B) If the kiln-sitter does not shut off the kiln but the timer does, then usually either the wrong cone was used, the weight or the claw are out of adjustment, or the kiln is not level and the weight cannot fall once it is released.

C) If neither the kiln-sitter nor the timer shut off the kiln then either the corrosion inside is so bad that nothing moves easily, or the contacts behind the button are fused together. This can be fixed with a wire brush and some lubricant or with a new contact block, but it may be time to replace the whole Dawson kiln sitter or, at the very least, the tube assembly.

D) The tube assembly can get filled with condensed glaze residue or other debre. It may be possible to clean it out but most likely you will need to replace it.

E) The actuator rod can become so corroded that it does not work properly. This will typically require a change in the tube assembly.

FOR MORE INFORMATION

The Dawson instruction manuals have very good diagrams that are important to have.

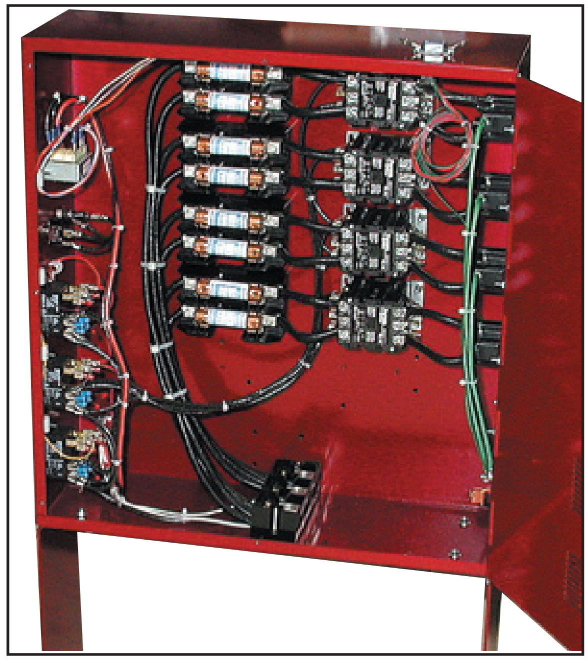
dawson-LT3.pdf
dawson-pk.pdf

AUTOMATIC CONTROL BOX

General Information

The similarities between the automatic controls and the manual controls are most easily seen in the power circuits. Just like in a large manually-controlled kiln with contactors controlled by switches, all the automatic kilns contain contactors which are controlled by the automatic controller. Early controls just had one output which turned all the contactors (as well as the elements) on and off together. Later controls (used after September 1998) typically have 3 inputs and outputs, which allows each contactor, and the element circuit connected to it, to be turned on and off individually as needed, based on the the various inputs. (See *dynatrol-instruct-blue.pdf* in the CONTROL section of your Instruction Manual for more information on the DynaTrol).

DaVinci Control Panel. This shows branch fusing.



The control knows when to turn the contactors on and off because of the signals it receives from the inputs. The inputs are the thermocouples (TCs), also known as the temperature sensors. In early controls only one TC was used. The micro-processor (the brain) in the control compared the TC reading to the map of the programmed firing it was following and decided whether to activate the output to turn on all the elements or not. The later versions of these controls, like our DynaTrol, have three of these thermocouples inputs. Each is connected to its own part of the processor and has its own separate output.

The thermocouples are meant to be positioned in the wall of the kiln near the middle of the zone whose temperature they are reading; the tips should be about 1” to 1-1/2” in. A zone is the area in a kiln controlled by just one of the controllers outputs. For example, a model JD230 has three zones, each controlled by one of the three main outputs. In its control panel there are three branch circuits, each containing a contactor. Branch circuit number one's contactor is controlled by output number one from the DynaTrol controller. Output number one comes on or off depending on readings from thermocouple number one (input number 1), which is located in the top (#1) section of the kiln. The electricity in branch circuit number one feeds the elements in the top section (number one zone). Number two zone is the middle section and number three zone is the bottom section; each is individually controlled by their respective contactors and thermocouples. Essentially, each zone is like its own kiln, with its own temperature sensor and power supply. When stacked on top of each other the zones operate independently, yet they all follow the same path and more or less do the same thing by comparing the actual temperature in each zone to what is on the program map and then either leaving the elements on or turning them off accordingly.The DynaTrol computer-controlled kilns use calculations to determine some functions. These calculations are performed in the micro-processor with data fed from: A) your choices in programming; B) the thermo-couples; C) the internal clock. The various calculations performed throughout the firing result in the complex firing programs, uniformity and the consistent automatic shut-off or controlled cooldown.

A) Your choices in programming fill in the blanks on the map of the firing (i.e. how fast the kiln will climb in temperature and to what temperature, if there is a hold, a preheat, a delay, etc). The Easy Fire programs have most of these settings pre-programmed. The Vary Fire programs can be completely programmed and altered as you wish.

B) The thermocouples measure the temperature in the kiln by emitting a specific linear millivolt signal for each degree of temperature. The microprocessor equates this milivolt signal to a specific temperature in °F or °C. The location of each thermocouple is important because the signal emitted will reflect the temperature in that part of the kiln. The DynaTrol takes these signals (typically one from the top zone in the kiln, one from the middle zone, and one from the bottom zone) and compares each in turn to the "process variable" or "setpoint". This is the temperature that the kiln is supposed to be at any particular point in the firing program. This "point in time" is constantly being modified as time passes. Based on where the firing map says the kiln should be, the appropriate corresponding outputs to the TC inputs are activated. In other words, when each TC reading is compared to the firing map, a decision is made by the micro-processor to either turn on the elements in that particular thermocouple's section, or to turn them off. In this way, the kiln temperature closely follows the programmed rises, holds and ramp-downs.

C) The internal clock is really never seen except when the control is counting down hours and minutes during a hold time, a preheat or a delayed start. However, its information is used in nearly every calculation.

D) The Orton Firing Institute has devised and patented a way to calculate a final temperature for a firing, based on the relationship between how many degrees the kiln is climbing per hour, and what temperature is presently in the kiln. This calculated final set point temperature is the temperature at which the pyrometric cone that the firing has been programmed to go to will melt, given that specific rate of climb and current temperature. Near the end of firing, the DynaTrol slows the kiln's rate of climb down proportionally in order to avoid an overshoot. This means that the calculated final temperature is constantly being adjusted at the end of the firing to account for the slowing down of the kiln. This is only used in the "Easy-Fire" mode. It is an elegant way for the control to measure heat-work that is so important for ceramic firing and consistently and accurately fire correctly even given different loading conditions and the changing character of the kiln itself.

Needless to say, these controllers are more complicated than the older infinite or Hi-Medium-Low switches. In order to properly control the kiln, they also need a lot of self-diagnostics. If a thermocouple is burned out there needs to be a way to alert the user. If the kiln is climbing so slowly that the calculations reach an impossible scenario, there must also be a way to alert the user. All the error codes are explained in Appendix G of the DynaTrol Instructions (*dynatrol-instruct-blue.pdf*). They all refer to a specific situation, but the reasons that the situation exists is often due to more than one different cause.

E) Calibrating the control: See the section on calibrating the control in *basic-dynatrol.pdf* in the OPERATION section of your Instruction Manual. There is a good explanation of the thermocouple offsets and how to change them.

This is a handheld DynaTrol control - standard on the DaVinci automatic kilns. Normally the DynaTrol is directly mounted in the control box of a Jupiter kiln. This handheld box plugs into a special receptical mounted on the top of the DaVinci control box or on the front of the special optional Jupiter control box. There is a6 foot cable and typically it is hung on a hook on the wall.

Diagnosing Error Messages

Error codes can appear at any time during the firing. They always refer to a problem that, if allowed to continue, could end with unknown or even disastrous results. **Errd, Err1, ErrP** and the **FAIL** message seem to make the most frequent appearances. Errd means there is a temperature difference of more than 100 degrees between the zones. **Err1** indicates that the kiln is climbing too slowly in an Easy-Fire program to calculate what the final temperature should be, based on what cone you have programmed it to fire to. **ErrP** indicates that there was either a very quick power outage (**ErrP** will flash along with the temperature and the kiln will still be heating), or there was a longer power outage (**ErrP** will be the only thing in the display and the kiln will not be heating). **FAIL** refers to a specific thermocouple failure. It will appear after displaying a "**tC**" (thermocouple) number 1, 2 or 3.

Can you restart the kiln?

You can try to restart the kiln after getting an error code. Some messages, like flashing **ErrP** and **FAIL**, will not necessarily turn off the kiln. Depending on the problem though, re-starting it may or may not let it finish the firing, or even start up again. An Errd will usually not re-start easily because the temperature top to bottom is drastically different. An **Err1** at the end of the firing will re-start but will probably re-occur in about 22 minutes. A **FAIL** message will not go away even if the problem is fixed during the firing. The kiln can still be firing with the **FAIL** message flashing along with the number of the TC that failed. Stopping and then re-starting the kiln after fixing the problem with the TC circuit is the only way to erase the **FAIL** message. **ErrP** flashing with the temperature means that the kiln is still firing, after just a short power outage or interference. Just press any number to clear the **ErrP**. An **ErrP** which is not flashing must be re-started.

Worst Case Scenario for Restarting After an Error Code

Keep in mind that you run the risk of over-firing if you re-start while the kiln is very close to the final temperature. A pyrometric cone melts with the proper combination of time and temperature. Add more time and you don't need as high a temperature, go to a higher temperature and you don't need as much time. When an error code shuts down the kiln near your final temperature (within about 50 degrees) and you do not know exactly how long it has been cooling, or what temperature it reached before the error code appeared, you run the risk of having too much unaccounted for time in your time-temperature equation. The DynaTrol calculates this equation automatically after determining how many degrees per hour the kiln is climbing (time) and to what temperature it is climbing to (temperature). However, it cannot do this accurately after a high temperature re-start.

If you have cones in the kiln that you can see through the peepholes, then use these after you re-start and turn off the kiln manually when the target cone bends over.

If you do not have cones visible then you can gamble and estimate a final temperature based on how many degrees per hour the kiln has risen, including the time it was off.

For example, you come in and the control says tC 2, 2200 (degrees F) and everything seems fine in your slow glaze to cone 6 firing. But twenty-five minutes later you come back and see Err1.

The first thing you want to do is press #1 to clear the error code. Look for tC 2's temperature and write it down. It might be 2175. You have no cones in the kiln but you really need these pieces fired.

Wait a few seconds until you see "**IdLE, tC 2, 2175**". Press Start to re-start the program and note the time on your watch. Note the 25 minutes the kiln was "holding" from the last time you saw it at 2200°F until this time, where it says **2175**. It must have continued to climb somewhat, but because the **Err1** will appear after 22.5 minutes of holding when the kiln is programmed to be climbing, it probably never got over 2210°F. So the kiln has held at an average of about 2195°F for about 25 minutes, instead of continuing on to 2232°F (cone 6) to finish the firing.

The relationship between time and temperature allows you to estimate how much hold time to add to get the same amount of heat work as the kiln would have achieved by climbing to 2232°F. Assuming a 108°F per hour temperature rise, a good rule of thumb is to add about a 20 minute hold to the maximum temperature; this will allow you to lower the final temperature by about 20°F. An hour hold time would mean a final temperature of about 40°F lower. A two hour hold time would be about 60°F lower. (This same information and more about time and temperature is in the section on pyrometric cones)

In this example, the kiln has already held at about 35 degrees lower than the final temperature for 25 minutes. It would need another 25 minutes of holding to give the ware the same amount of heat work that 2232°F (cone 6) would have.

In reality, however, an **Err1** that close to the end of a firing probably means you need new elements. So re-starting the kiln will probably not enable it to climb much higher in temperature. Keeping track of the time, let it run, and when it shows **Err1** again just keep re-starting it until the firing finishes. Meanwhile call and order new elements.

Be very careful if you try this method. On loads that are very important always use cones you can see through the peepholes in case of a failure of some kind. If you have to use this method without the cones, remember that almost all your calculations are based on estimates and the results could be disastrous to your ware and/or the kiln if you are not accurate enough. The further away the temperature that the kiln is holding at is from the cone that the firing was trying to get to, the less accurate an estimated amount of time will be to achieve the amount of heat work necessary. If you can wait and re-fire from room temperature, you should. If you depend in any way on your kiln you should keep spare parts around for it. You could replace the elements easily yourself after the kiln cools and then re-load it and re-fire it to the proper cone without losing much time at all. Or consider that most glazes have an entire cone's temperature range that they can mature within. Weigh your options and decide.

In general though, Error Codes mostly appear after the kiln has been disassembled and set back up improperly, has had its power supply altered (like moving to a new studio with different voltage), or has had an element or a thermocouple burn out.

Errd

If the kiln was just re-assembled and **Errd** is the error code, then double-check that the kiln sections are plugged into their appropriate receptacles and the thermocouples are in the proper zones:

-Two section kilns: Top ring is in #1 receptacle on the control, bottom is in #2. Top ring gets TC1, bottom ring gets TC2.

-Three section kilns: Top is in #1 receptacle, middle is in #2, bottom is in #3. Top ring gets TC1, middle ring gets TC2, bottom ring gets TC3.

-Four section kilns: Top is in #1 receptacle, next section down is in #3, next is in #4, the bottom is in #5 (the cords and numbers go 1,2,3,4, but the second receptacle down on the control box is skipped; there are five circuits on the control, but only four sections.

The top ring gets TC1. Either the upper-middle or the lower-middle section can have TC2 in it. The bottom ring gets TC3. All five circuit controls have the center three circuits tied into TC2. Therefore, skipping #2 receptacle with the four ring kilns would be the same as skipping the #3 or the #4 receptacle. TC1 must always be in the top section and TC 3 must always be in the bottom section. TC2 can be in either of the middle sections.

-Five section kilns: Top is in #1 receptacle, upper-middle is in #2, middle is in #3, bottom-middle is in #4, bottom is in #5 receptacle. The top ring has TC1 in it. The middle ring has TC2 in it (receptacles #2,#3,#4 go on and off together), the bottom ring has TC3 in it.

If you are sure the kiln is set up properly, nothing is out of place and none of the thermocouples are partially out of the kiln, then one of the following situations may apply:

-You were firing with the lid open and you got Errd either while the lid was open or right after you closed it. For drying with the lid open, only about two inches is needed to adequately vent off water vapor. This is plenty if all the peep holes are open. The DynaTrol will attempt to compensate for the heat loss, and it usually can. The trouble may happen when you close the lid. The elements in the top of the kiln are already much hotter than the ones nearer the bottom due to their need to compensate for the heat loss from the top. When you close the lid it can take as long as eight seconds for the DynaTrol to respond to the rise in temperature in the top of the kiln, and shut off those elements. This can quickly cause an uneven temperature in the kiln, which will usually result in **Errd** (possibly an **Err2** in a smaller kiln **-Err2** is when the entire kiln temperature is more than 50°F over the hold time's temperature for longer than 18 seconds).

-There was a lot of air being exhausted from your kiln when **Errd** appeared. If a vent system pulls too much air from just one point in the kiln, say, to down-ramp the load very quickly to a lower hold time for crystal formation, an uneven temperature can result. The firing will go slowly as it will be difficult to compensate for the heat loss; eventually, however, the **Errd** (or **Err1**) can appear.

-Errd just appeared, the middle TC reads about 130°F lower than the other TCs. In order of most likely to least likely;

1) Something is too close to, or is touching, TC2 in the kiln. Allow almost an inch between everything for thermal expansion. Fix and re-fire the kiln.

2) A TC wire has melted against the kiln case (the yellow TC lead wire can melt and send weird signals to the DynaTrol). The wire must be replaced, which is cheap and easy to do.

3) A TC is about to fail. Perform a physical inspection if possible, or just re-start the kiln and monitor it carefully.

4) Element(s) just burned out. Perform an ohms test for more information.

5) A relay has just failed. Perform a voltage test.

6) There is a bad connection point somewhere. This will become more of a possibility as the kiln ages. Examine all points carefully for melting, corrosion, discoloration and/or bad smell.

Err1

If **Err1** is the error code on the screen when you check on the firing, then for some reason the kiln could not generate enough heat to counter the heat loss. If the kiln can get no hotter (even though all the elements appear to be on and the program is not holding), then **Err1** is what you will see. If one of the elements or one of the circuits in the control fails while the kiln is at a high enough temperature then it will probably display an **Err8** code (which means temperature is falling when it should be rising) **Err1** or **Err8** can mean either you need new elements or a new component in one of the circuits. An ohms test and a voltage test can tell you which it is. If you recently changed locations, power supplies, elements, or did any repairs, then closely examine what changed between your last successful firing and this one. There may be some other issue besides bad elements or a bad component.

-A new location can mean a 208 volt power supply rather than a 240 volt supply (about 25% less power).

-In re-wiring the power supply you may not have used thick enough copper wire (line, conduit and connection points will be very hot).

-The elements you got from some other supplier who said "these'll work fine" have too much resistance, or you did not hook them up properly (leaving the jumper wire out of a J230 section will double the resistance in that circuit and only one of the two elements will be used. Always use an ohms meter on the element and on the circuit)

-If you rewire anything improperly or incorrectly the potential for anything from a blown breaker to just no power at all is possible. (Using wire with a temperature rating of less than 150°F can seriously limit the life of the circuitry and can be dangerous as well, especially when the wires are close to the kiln. Use a wire diagram and trace every wire to check yourself). You can buy high temperature wire from L&L.

FAIL

If, upon inspection, the error code **FAIL** turns out to be a burned out TC then the solution is simple. Change the thermocouple. You should not mix unsheathed thermocouples with sheathed ones. (because their response rates are slightly different). A spare on hand is a good idea as well.

Sometimes the code **CPLt** will be displayed. This code is always displayed after a successful firing to mean “complete”. If it appears after you attempt to restart the kiln after a **FAIL** message, or at any other time except for the end of the firing to mean “complete”, then it will have a different meaning. If **CPLt** appears randomly it means either your TC wires are burning against the kiln case or your TCs are so close to failing that they are giving a reading that is so high that the DynaTrol thinks the firing is over.

If the TCs are not bad (you just replaced them and they worked fine for at least one complete firing) but the **FAIL** message still appears, it may be that the TC wire is bad (melted or broken at a point) or the electronics have partially failed. If you are not electrically inclined then call the factory and send the entire control panel in for service. If you are electrically inclined then try the following:

A) Turn OFF the power, unplug or (if it is hardwired) turn the breaker off.

B) Open the cover of the control. On controls without hinged cover plates you want to loosen the TC clamp on the bottom or side of the control to give the TC wires inside some slack.

C) Number the TC wires inside so you will know which sets of screws they attach to. Then remove the TC wires from the TC connections on the electronic board.

D) In their place put tiny jumper wires. A paper clip cut into three “U” shaped pieces works well. Insert one “U” per TC circuit tightening the screws down as you go. You are simply completing each TC circuit without using the TC wire or the TC. Do not let the “U”s touch anything other than the TC connection points. Note: the fact that a paperclip is not the proper type of metal to use in a Type K TC circuit is not an issue for a test like this.

E) Cover (with electrical tape) the loose TC wires so they will not short anything out if they touch connection points and carefully close up the control.

F) Turn the unit on. If it still says **FAIL** then the electronic board has failed. If it reads room temperature then the TC wire or the TC has failed.

G) If it reads room temperature with these jumpers in, and you are not sure if it is the TC or the TC wire, just re-attach TC2's wire to TC3 and re-attach TC3's wire to TC2. If the **FAIL** message is still on TC2 then it is the wire, not the TC. If it says that the **FAIL** is now at TC3, then you know it is the TC, not the wire (there are many other ways to determine this as well).

There are many other trouble scenarios that are unique to computerized kilns. Understanding how the DynaTrol and other controls work will give the user some insight into why there is a problem. Two major trouble scenarios and their solutions are as follows:

No display (power) at all, even after 15 seconds.

1) Turn on any other control devices like switches to HIGH, Kiln-sitters ON, limit timers ON.

2) On SQ and some G models, and on a few custom L&Ls check the operation of the open door shut-off switch. Re-form the flexible metal trip bar if necessary.

3) Examine the electrical cord and its connection points coming to the kiln. Look for burned or melted areas and breaks or pinched sections.

4) Reset the your circuit breaker in your house, studio or factory.

5) Make sure toggle switch is ON.

6) Check the control fuse next to the toggle switch. Turn power off, push the knob in and then turn it to remove the fuse.

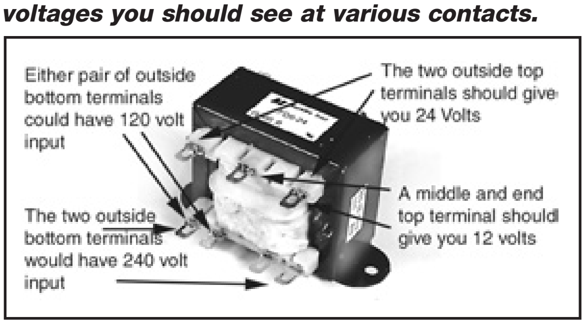
7) If none of these possibilities fixes it then there is definitely a problem. Test for voltage at the main power supply as close to the kiln as possible.

8) Unplug or disconnect the kiln from power.

9) Open the control, check for potential short circuits because the front is hanging open and then carefully apply power to the control.

10) Locate the control circuit transformer and measure the voltage at the two bottom, outside terminals for 208/240 vac kilns, and at the two bottom left, or bottom right for 110/120 vac kilns. Look for either the 208/240 power supply or the 110/120 power supply.

Picture of typical control transformer showing what voltages you should see at various contacts.



Note: If there is no voltage there, then test for it at the Power Connection Block where the power cord comes in. If there is power there then look for a bad connection or wire between the power connection block and the transformer, i.e. a bad toggle switch, wire, or ½ amp fuse holder. If power is not there then go further back on the line and measure the voltage. Keep going until you find voltage, then look for the problem between that point with the voltage and the last point checked that had no voltage.

11) There probably will be voltage at the bottom of the transformer, so test for voltage at the top two outside terminals of the transformer. On L&L THP and DynaTrol controls the voltage here should be about 21 to 25 vac (older units that used the Perfectfire control will have transformer readings of about 12 vac because they use a different type of transformer). Look for half of the 21 to 25 vac with one test lead on the top center terminal of the transformer. Test both outer terminals with the center terminal. The DynaTrol will still work with one of these two 10.5 to 12.5 vac circuits not working, but keeping an extra transformer on hand will be a good idea. Probably there will be no voltage at the top here. Usually, if everything else (including the power) is OK then the transformer is at fault. There may be a broken or loose wire that connects from the transformer windings to the connection points on the transformer. You can try to resolder it. However, it is usually easier to just replace the transformer.

11) If there is the proper voltage at the top of the transformer then follow the wires from the top of the transformer to the DynaTrol. To eliminate the wires as culprits, take another voltage reading the same way as before, just at the other end of the same wires. If there is still voltage, but still no display, then the DynaTrol board itself is bad. If the unit is still under warranty for service or replacement, then contact L&L. If the unit is older you can still have it repaired or replaced by L&L.

Seems like the kiln is under-firing or over-firing slightly

See *troubleshoot-cone.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING section of your Instruction Manual.

Calibrating the DynaTrol

See the section on calibrating the control in *basic-dynatrol.pdf* in the OPERATION section of your Instruction Manual. There is a good explanation of the thermocouple offsets and how to change them.

Stalling caused by shorting of thermocouples

L&Ls JD and DaVinci computer-controlled kilns have the thermocouple(s) mounted away from the control, making them simple to replace. The downside to this arrangement is that TC wire must be used to route the signals from the TCs to the DynaTrol. These wires will melt and fail if allowed to touch the kiln case when it is hot. The result of this is that the kiln can “stall out”, say **CPLt** prematurely or display any other number of other random error codes. It may refuse to increase in temperature, and the kiln will just run on and on. If it is re-started it may work fine for a while. What happens is that the millivolt signal in the TC wire goes to ground, or the two wires in the TC wire are “electrically” connected by the stainless steel melting through the insulation and the “temperature” is then taken right there, not in the kiln. However, the signal received can be so foreign to the microprocessor that the kiln will just stall. You can cut out the bad section in the wire and crimp or solder the wires together (making sure red goes to red and yellow to yellow) as a temporary fix. Note that thermocouples close to end of their useful life can cause some of these same problems.

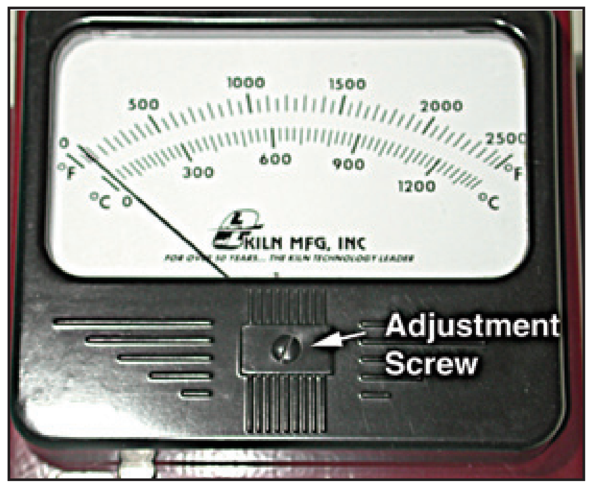
Prevention and education is the best way to keep this possibility to a minimum. The yellow wires come zip-tied and more can be used to keep them away from the side of the kiln. It is not recommended to tie them to the kiln powercords or any wires carrying higher voltage. The magnetic field in high voltage wires can transmit voltages into the thermocouple wires if they run parallel next to the high voltage wires. The problem will not happen as long as everyone who uses the kiln understands about the TC wires. It may be good to keep some wire on hand just in case.

Note: Sometimes excessive ambient temperatures (over 125°F) around the control can cause stalling too. Corroded connection points can also cause stalling.

PYROMETERS

Pyrometers are very useful for monitoring manually fired kilns. L&L used to sell only analog pyrometers (now we sell only digital pyrometers). An analog pyrometer has a needle and a printed scale under the needle to interpret the needle's position. Most clay and glazes will mature over at least two cone numbers and these pyrometers are at least that accurate. In time however, they loose their accuracy. They can be calibrated by using a large cone visible in the kiln. Compare the pyrometer reading when the cone melts to a cone table temperature equivalent for that cone number and adjust the calibration screw on the front of the pyrometer accordingly. We now only sell digital pyrometers now because of their superior accuracy.

Picture of an older Tru-View Pyrometer system. All new pyrometers sold are digital because of their greater accuracy.



Tru-View Pyrometer System

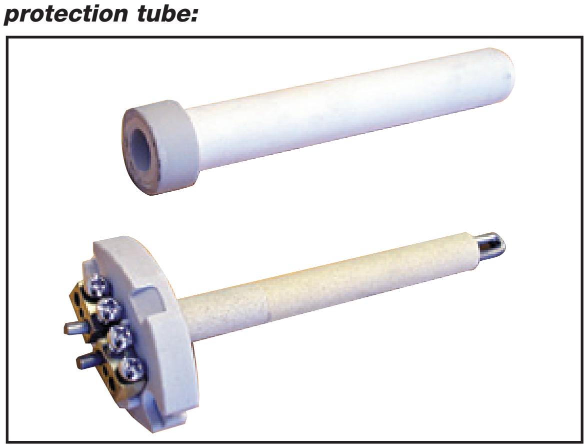
L&L's TRU-VIEW pyrometer systems can have as many as five thermocouples connected to them. The pyrometer can only read one at a time, though, so a thermocouple selector switch is wired into the yellow side of the TC circuits. The TC selector switch that was originally used was replaced by the one currently in use. The new one is a simple 12 position switch. The trick when working on these is to use a continuity tester to match the lead in question on the inside to the position of the knob on the outside. For example, the knob may point to “TC 1” on the label. On the inside there is only one lead from the switch that corresponds to TC 1. If you do not connect that lead to TC

1, then when the knob points to "TC 1" on the label it may be reading some other TC besides TC 1. Note: the common wire comes from the center of the switch. See *truview-instruct.pdf* for more information.

THERMOCOUPLES

The pyrometers and all of the electronic kiln controllers for L&L kilns work with a "Type K Thermocouple". (Although we do make available a Type S platinum thermocouple. See stc.pdf). There are all different "types" in the entire range of thermocouples available to the consumer and to industry. Type K is just one type covering the temperature scale from 32°F to 2500°F (0°C to 1372°C). Type K thermocouple circuits are made of one kind of wire on one side if the circuit, and another kind of wire on the other side of the circuit. The point at which the two kinds of wire meet is right at the end of the sensor - the thermocouple probe's tip in the kiln. This is where the temperature is read. All types of thermocouple circuits are set up this way, with two dissimilar metals making up each half of the circuit. In the case of the Type K the metals are called Alumel and Chromel. They are usually either 14 awg (American wire gauge) or the thicker 8 awg wire. The thickness of the wire is only important inside the kiln. Thicker wire lasts longer, but is more expensive and more difficult to work with. Our standard Type K thermocouples in the Easy-fire, Jupiter, DaVinci and Doll kilns now come with a ceramic thermocouple protection tube. (These last longer because they are protected from the kiln atmosphere).

An 8 gauge Type K thermocouple next to a ceramic protection tube:



Metal Sheathed Type K Thermocouples

These have a metallic sheath on the outside of the thermocouple and are 1/4" OD. See *tc-metallic.pdf* for more information on these. If you retrofit these into a kiln with larger diameter thermocouples be sure to plug up the larger hole around the thermocouple especially if a venting system is in use. Otherwise they could read cooler than the real temperature of the kiln and this could result in a disastrous firing.

Type S Platinum thermocouples

Type S thermocouples are also available with the DynaTrol. This option must normally be ordered with the kiln as the millivolt signals from a Type S thermocouple are different than the millivolt signals from a Type K thermocouple and the DynaTrol must be preprogrammed to recognize the different signals.

A Type S thermocouple will last considerably longer than a Type K thermocouple. However, it does cost considerably more money to replace it when it does fail or break. The dissimilar metals that make up a Type S are Platinum/Rhodium and Platinum. It is these precious metals that makes the type S thermocouple cost so much more.

Over time the difference in the money spent using Type K vs. Type S is negligible. Type K will burn out faster than Type S but they are inexpensive to replace. Performance of one over the other is not an issue (except that the Type S will not drift as much when the kiln is fired to high temperatures). See *stc.pdf* for more information.

For More Information on Thermocouples

ktc.pdf
ktc-14 gauge.pdf
stc.pdf
tc-metallic.pdf
tc-protect.pdf

Thermocouple extension wire

From the TC to the pyrometer there is insulated Type K thermocouple wire containing one very thin alumel wire, one very thin chromel wire and usually an uninsulated ground wire with aluminum foil wrapping the three wires together with the thicker plastic type insulation over that. The entire circuit needs to keep this same type of wire from the pyrometer to the thermocouple. There can be no sections containing other types of wire (like copper, or alumel where chromel should be). There is a polarity as well. The chromel side is generally referred to with the color yellow and a "+" positive designation. The alumel side is referred to with the color red and a "-" negative designation. If the polarity is reversed the pyrometer will read in reverse -temperatures will decrease when they should be increasing. Accidentally doing this will not damage anything if the problem is fixed promptly. Note that we use a special high temperature TC extension wire inside the Easy-Fire control cabinet.

Cones measure heat-work

Cones are not temperature measuring devices. They measure how much heat has been absorbed by the ware in the kiln, which is the result of the combination of time and temperature. A particular piece of clay needs a certain amount of time at a specific temperature to properly fire it, lower temperature if the time is longer, higher temperature if the time is shorter. An example of this would be if you added about a 20 minute hold to the maximum temperature of a cone 6 firing, you would be able to lower that final temperature by about 20°F. An hour hold time would mean a final temperature of about 40°F lower. A two hour hold time, about 60°F lower.

See *troubleshoot-cones.pdf* in the LOG, CONES, TIPS Section of your Instruction Manual.

THE POWER SUPPLY

This consists of the main power cord, receptacle, powerblock, wire, and breakers.

Safety Warnings

NOTE: If you are not sure about some part or procedure in creating or testing a power supply line for a kiln, DO NOT GUESS! If you wire something improperly, you might just blow the circuit breaker, or burn the place down. Get an electrician or someone who knows.

NOTE: There are many different ratings on the wire and components that make up the supply line that need to be considered (along with proper and safe installation) when creating or testing a kiln power supply. It is beyond the scope of this manual to properly educate someone to fully understand the potential variations and variables involved in this. Often a building like a school or a recreation facility (or even a home) will be inspected for electrical code and fire code enforcement. If you do not own the building, or if the kiln is in anything other than a free standing private workshop for yourself, get permission to do what you want to do from the owner and get an electrician to properly wire the circuit so you are not liable.

The Data Nameplate

A typical data nameplate:

Every kiln has a data nameplate, usually a sticker on the side of the control box, that specifies model number, serial number, voltage required, phase required, amperage required, watts produced and the recommended maximum temperature. This is the information to get from L&L for your particular kiln if you do have not received it yet or if it has no data nameplate. If you have the information from the data nameplate, then that is what you show to your electrician, or use to procure the proper wire and components to create the power supply line. Here are some things to keep in mind if you are the "electrician":

If you are the electrician:

-As of January 2001, National Electric Code Handbook says that a resistive heater this size, on for more than three hours at a time, should be provided a circuit that is rated for 125% of the total amperage drawn by the unit when it is on High. So a kiln drawing 43.98 amps would require a service of no less than 54.98 amps. As wire and components for power supply lines are usually rated in increments of 10, the next higher rating is 60 amps. Therefore everything in the line must be rated at least for 60 amps.

Note about the 50 amp power cord used on kilns with up to 48 amps: the cord is built to take at least 60 amps, (6AWG wire for the hot leads - good per NEC table 310-16, 8 AWg for the ground, plus oversize copper blades on the plug, and high temp. rating.) In addition this configuration has been examined by UL and approved for use not only with L&L kilns but most other UL listed kilns on the market. Do size the rest of the circuit for 60 amps (i.e. the wires, circuit breaker, etc.).

-Most L&L kilns require a specific voltage to operate properly. The Data Nameplate will say in the voltage column either 120, 208, 220, 220/110, 240, 380/220, or 480. Most of the USA is residential- 240 vac, with schools and industry- sometimes having 208 vac. Often, however, residential can be 208 (downtown NYC, south-central Idaho etc). There are usually no issues with 120 volts. 220 and 380/220 are usually found overseas. 480 is sometimes available for schools or industry. The biggest problem we see is the issue of 208 vs. 240: The kiln that says 208 volts will overheat the elements and burn them out quickly if it is run on 240 volts. Older 208 volt kilns have 208 volt switches also. They will burn out quickly if run on 240 volts. If the kiln is made for 240 volts then it will have about 25% less power and a maximum temperature of about cone 5 (maybe) if run on 208 volts. You should only run a kiln on the voltage that the Data Nameplate specifies if you are to expect the best results. Plus or minus six or seven volts is OK, but keep in mind that the higher the actual voltage is over the recommended voltage, the higher the surface temperature of the element is at any given time, and therefore it is more likely to burn out early. Likewise, the lower the actual voltage is below the specified voltage, the lower the maximum temperature will be.

Voltage is specific to the building and to time of day. It will probably be a bit lower during the day, and higher at night. You can carefully test it to see what it is with your multi-meter. It is costly to change the voltage, but this can be done with a transformer. You'll definitely need a good electrician, though. The cheapest way to fix the problem is to replace the elements (and possibly the switches) with the proper voltage ones. The switches are marked INF 240, INF 208, INF 120 or something similar. You will probably need to remove one to see the markings. The computerized controls will work on either 208 or 240 unless 120, 380/220 or 480 is specified. (Note that we use 240 volt INF switches now on 240 and 208 volt kilns. 208 volt INF switches have slightly different timing because of the way the voltage affects the internal heater in the switch).

Use copper wire

Always use copper wire with the highest temperature-rated insulation you can find. 150°C is what the internal wiring up next to the kiln is rated for, so hook-up wire with that rating would be excellent; however, 105°C is adequate. Note: our power cords, which are approved by UL, are rated for 105°C. Keep in mind that for different amperage services, different thickness of copper hook-up wire is required. The following chart should give an idea of what is necessary:

Chart of wire and amperage

Service required	Gauge of wire required (american wire gauge)
15 amp	14 awg copper
20 amp	12 awg copper
30 amp	10 awg copper
40 amp	8 awg copper
60 amp	6 awg copper
70 amp	4 awg copper
80 amp	3 awg copper
90 amp	2 awg copper
100 amp	1 awg copper
125 amp	1/0 awg copper
150 amp	2/0 awg copper
175 amp	4/0 awg copper

200 amp	250mcm copper (1000 circular mils)
225 amp	350mcm copper
250 amp	350mcm copper

Voltage is not really an issue here. Usually wire like this is rated for at least 300vac if not 600vac. Look for the wire specifications on the insulation or ask the supplier to be sure. The voltage rating is based on the electrical resistance of the wire insulation (to prevent voltage leak).

Voltage Drop over distance

Running power for your kiln over a long distance will result in a drop in voltage. The amount is about:

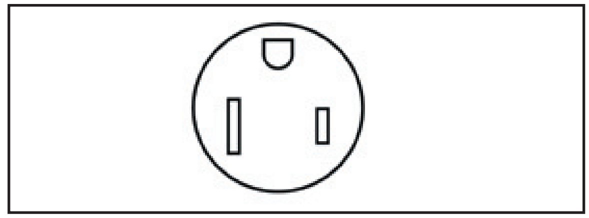
7 volts per 100 feet with 10 awg wire
21 volts per 300 feet with 10 awg wire
6 volts per 100 feet with 6 awg wire
18 volts per 300 feet with 6 awg wire
3 volts per 100 feet with 1 awg wire
9 volts per 300 feet with 1 awg wire

These estimates are dependent on the kiln operating at 50% to 100% of its capacity, with the temperature of the wire no more than 167°F. Be sure to test the voltage before the run has been installed so you know what you are working with.

Power cords

The industry name for the supplied power cord on many L&L kilns is: Nema 6-50P for all single phase 208, 220, and 240 models drawing less than 50 amps. A few exceptions are the later G models (GD, GT, GQ, and GS) with the 30 amp, four-prong plug. This is a Nema 14-30P plug. The Doll kilns and other 120 vac kilns use Nema 5-15P plugs for up to 15 amps, and Nema 5-20P plugs for 15 to 20 amps. The three phase Easy-fire kilns use a 15-50P cord. Various types of 30 amp plugs are used on the Libery-Belle kilns. To get the appropriate receptacle just substitute the “P” at the end of the Nema code for an “R”. P for plug, R for receptacle.

Diagram of a NEMA 6-50 receptical. The hole shown at the top is the ground.



TROUBLESHOOTING AN EXISTING POWER SUPPLY

Circuit breakers

Circuit breakers that have tripped and have been reset continually will be more apt to trip at a lower amperage than they are rated for. They get worn out. Also, a breaker in a small kiln room will trip sooner because of the higher ambient temperature. An inductive amp meter will indicate whether the kiln is pulling more amperage than the breaker allows. Remember to size it for 125% of the total amp load.

Wire size too small

Using a wire size that is too small for the amperage draw will cause the wire and conduit to heat up and either the voltage to the kiln will drop (some voltage will be lost in heat) or the breaker will trip from the local heat. Without a properly sized breaker, the connection points will start to corrode and this may cause an electrical fire.

Corrosion

Any visible corrosion - especially on a plug and receptacle connection - will result in heat generated at that point. Heat leads to corrosion, which leads to more heat and eventually the melting of the component or connection point. This could start a fire if the breaker fails to trip.

Dedicated circuit

The kiln should be on its own circuit. If anything else is on the circuit the voltage will drop when the other device is turned on. The circuit breaker must be rated for the combined amperage of all the devices if the kiln must share a circuit.

Melting power cord

Look for the power cord melting if it is close to the kiln. Also look at the receptacle that it plugs into (there is often oxidation there). Look for signs of overheating; these include bulging, discolored, swollen or flattened insulation (like a slice from the side of the cord). If the cord is only slightly melted it may be OK to use if the situation that caused the melting is rectified. If the cord appears to be getting worse, replace it. If the insulation on the cord has deteriorated it is possible that the power wires could short out and cause a fire.

CONCLUSION AND REMINDERS

Remember, SAFETY FIRST. Always assume the circuit is live until you check it, the wiring is wrong until you trace it out, and that there is always more going on than what someone tells you. Slow and methodical, step-by-step with an overview of the entire situation is the best way to deal with any problem.

In most cases, your local distributor can replace parts and repair your kiln. A good electrician may also be able to diagnose and repair your kiln. L&L's technical service department can handle any type of inquiry pertaining to the kiln's theory and design, construction and use. We can also repair or retro-fit most older controls if they are sent back to the factory.

FEEDBACK

PLEASE send us your feedback and questions. We are particularly responsive to email because it allows us to research problems, questions and concerns at a less hectic pace. We will get back to you. We want to make this Troubleshooting Guide and all our documentation the very best in the industry. You can send your email to service@hotkilns.com. You can email the president of the company direct at steve@hotkilns.com. Although we like email don’t hesitate to call or fax. We are here to help.

BASIC ELECTRICITY FOR TROUBLESHOOTING KILNS

BASIC ELECTRICITY

Ohms Law: Amps, Volts, Ohms, and Watts
Ohms Law governs electricity. It provides formulas that show the mathematical relationships inherent in the nature of the phenomenon we call electricity.

Electricity is analogous to water
Electricity is easiest to understand when compared to water flow and pressure. As far as your kiln is concerned, its supply of electricity is like a huge reservoir of water. Imagine that a kiln is like a bucket with small holes for the water to leak out of (which would represent the heat loss of the kiln). Imagine that the water flowing into the bucket is like electricity. To fill two different sized buckets with the same porosity (i.e. same number of small holes per square inch which would be like the standard heat loss in firebrick) you will need different flow rates of water. If you turn on the small 2.6 cubic foot model J18, electricity will flow into the kiln at one particular rate, measurable in “watts” per hour (actually Kilowatts per hour, or kWh, 1000 watts = 1 kWh). If you turn on L&L's largest kiln, the 34.5 cubic foot model T3445, electricity will flow into it at a much greater rate, still measurable in watts per hour. Likewise the larger bucket needs more gallons per hour than the smaller bucket not only to get filled at the same speed but to get filled up at all (because of the porosity). This analogy can help you to understand why it takes longer or might even be impossible for some kilns to heat up to very high temperatures. Note that the heat loss gets greater as the kiln gets hotter so it takes more and more electricity to heat a kiln the hotter it gets. It is like the porosity increasing over time as you fill up the bucket in the above analogy.

Amps (amperes) = flow
If the volume of water can be measured in gallons per second, then the volume of electricity flowing is measured in “amps”, a particular amount of electrons flowing through a wire in one second.

Volts (voltage) = pressure
Water is forced through the pipes by water pressure. A water tank at the top of a hill will provide you with more water pressure than a water tank only half-way up the hill. Electricity is forced through the wires by electrical pressure, called volts. A 12 volt battery is like the lower water tank: there is not much voltage to push the electrons along the wire. A 120 volt house power source is like the higher water tank, pushing a much greater volume of electricity (many more amps) down the same diameter wire than the 12 volt source.

Ohms (resistance) = resistance to flow
Say your house in the valley is somehow fed by both of these two water tanks. Sink number one has water from the top-of-the-hill water tank flowing to it. Sink number two, which is right next to sink number one, has water from the half-way-up-the-hill water tank flowing to it. Sink number one will have much greater water pressure and much more water coming from it than sink number two (assuming the same size orifice in the faucet). To get them to flow at the same rate, you must use a smaller diameter pipe to connect the water to sink number one than the pipe connecting the water to sink number two. By restricting the heavier flow of water with a smaller pipe, you can make the same amount of water come out of each sink. Electricity can be restricted (or “resisted”) as well. A small diameter wire can resist electricity like the smaller pipe resisted the water. In the same way that a large pipe will let more water through than a small pipe, a thick wire will have less resistance and will allow more electricity through than a thin wire. A short wire will have less resistance and let more electricity through than a long wire. This amount of electrical resistance can be measured in terms of “ohms”. The higher the number of ohms, the higher the resistance of the circuit.

Watts (power) = work
In the same way that the combination of water pressure and the actual water itself (measured in gallons per second) comes together to perform “work”, the combination of voltage (pressure) and amps (volume) comes together to perform “work” as well. This electrical work is measured by multiplying the values of the volts and the amps together. The result is called “watts”. Watts are a measurement of the work done by electricity.

Mathematical Relationships (formulas)

For use with single phase only:

The electrical industry has designated letters to stand for amps, volts, ohms, and watts.

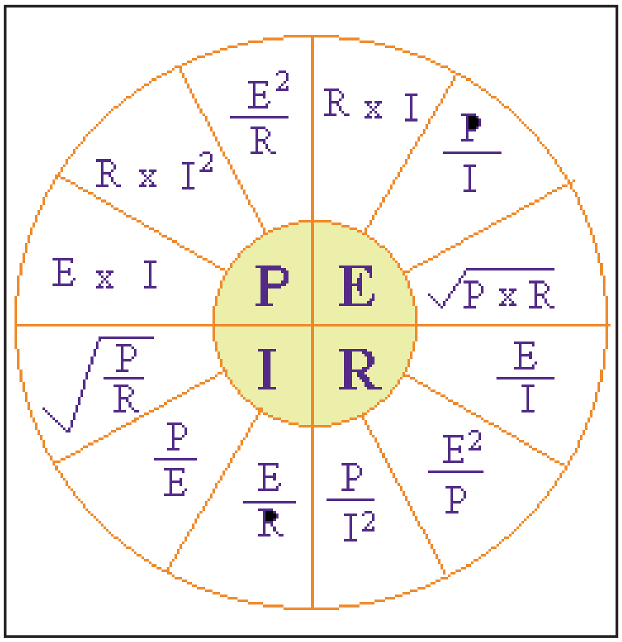
Amps = “I” (think “intensity of amperage”)

Volts = “E” (think “energy”)

Ohms = “R” (think “resistance”) (Ω is the symbol used to indicate ohms)

Watts = “P” (think “power”)

Ohms Law in diagram form:



Where you can get more information about electricity

www.hotkilns.com/volts.pdf
www.elec-toolbox.com

Single Phase Power

Like voltage, the phase is specific to each location. The huge electrical lines you see across the country use three “hot” lines, what is termed “three phase”, with 1000’s of volts running through them. From these three “hot” lines any two can be tapped (eventually, after stepping down the voltage through transformers) to provide power for any single phase circuit. To use a small electrical appliance as an example, if you trace the two wires that make up the cord for the appliance back through the lines you will eventually end up at two of the three wires from some main power line, and from there back to the generating plant. Often the power for a residential area is all single phase, from a junction station to a single house in the neighborhood. There may be no way for three phase power to be obtained without the equipment (mainly the extra line) in place. Industrial areas, large facilities, and schools usually have access to three phase power. Even then, sometimes the three phase ends at the main junction box in the building and the single phase power supplies branch out from there.

Three Phase Power

Three phase power uses three “hot” wires to supply electricity to the circuit. From the main power supply, the three lines remain three lines all the way through to the circuit. The same amount of electricity is simply split over three wires instead of two. The benefit of three phase is not a lower electric bill, since the kilowatts used are still the same. The benefit is in the cost of setting up the supply line itself. For example, a model T3427 208 volt in single phase draws 119.88 amps. It will need two “2/0” awg wires to supply it with power. The circuit breaker would need to be a two pole, 150 amp breaker, and any safety switches would need to be rated for at least 150 amps, if not more. That same kiln in three phase will draw 69.21 amps. It would only need three 2 awg wires to supply it with power. The circuit breaker would only need to be a three pole, 90 amp breaker, and any safety switches would only need a 90 or more amp rating. The cost of material and components for creating electrical lines are expensive. This cost increases exponentially with the size of the service. A 2/0 awg wire costs considerably more per foot than a 2 awg wire. The size of the conduit that houses the wires costs more as the diameter increases. A 150 amp circuit breaker is large and has a heavy protective housing. It has mechanical arms to provide leverage and physically move the electrical contacts together or apart. A 90 amp breaker is more familiar looking, with its plastic switching arm and the way it sits side-by-side with the other breakers in the box. The total cost (especially if power needs to be run for some distance) is much less for three phase than for single phase. The cost for another wire in the three phase is almost always offset by the potentially vast difference in total cost between installing single and three phase.

SERIES CIRCUITS

A circuit that only has one path over which current can flow is a series circuit. A break in any part of a series circuit stops current flow. All components in a series circuit see the same amount of current; therefore, each component must be capable of carrying that number of amperes.

RULES FOR SERIES CIRCUITS

1) The value of a current flowing in a series circuit is the same through all parts of the circuit.

2) The total voltage of a series circuit is equal to the sum of the voltages across each part of the circuit.

3) The total resistance of a series circuit is equal to the sum of the resistances across each part of the circuit.

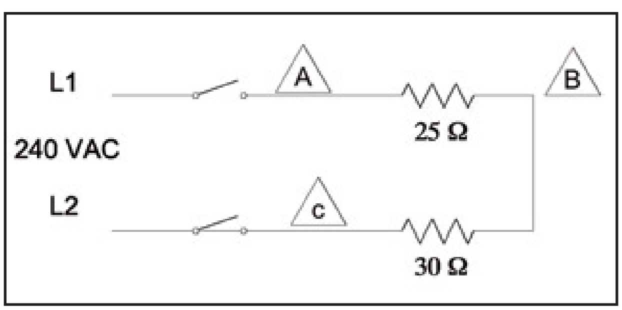
4) Line voltage is divided across each component in a series circuit in proportion to the component resistance values. Referring to the schematic below, the total resistance is (25Ω + 30Ω = 55Ω). Voltage measured between points A and B is:

240 x (25Ω/55Ω) = 109 Volts.

Voltage measured between points B and C is:

240 x (33Ω/55Ω) = 144 Volts.

Series Circuit:



If there were (2) resistances whose values were equal, the voltage would be divided equally in half, and would measure 120 Volts.

Measuring Resistance in Series Circuits

The total resistance of the circuit is the sum of all individual resistances.

PARALLEL CIRCUITS

A circuit that has two or more current paths is a parallel circuit. Each component is connected to line voltage, and current still flows through part of the circuit if one component fails. Each component must be capable of withstanding line voltage. The number of amperes varies according to the resistance of the component.

The more circuit paths, the less opposition to the flow of electrons. Total circuit resistance decreases when more paths are added.

RULES FOR PARALLEL CIRCUITS

1) The total current supplied to a parallel circuit is equal to the sum of the currents through the branches.

2) The voltage across any branch of a parallel circuit is equal to the supply voltage.

3) The total resistance of a parallel circuit is always less than the resistance of any of the branches.

4) The following parallel circuit is typical of the DaVinci, Doll and J2900 kiln rings; there are (3) elements per ring, connected in parallel.

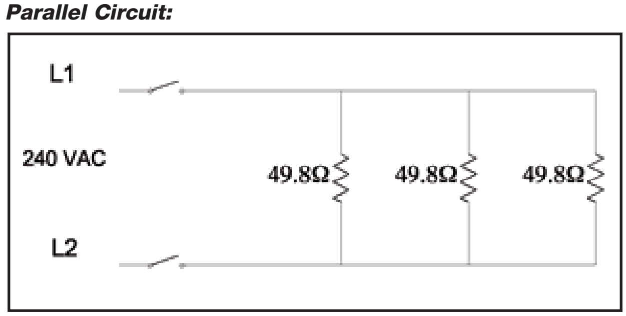
In this example, each element has a resistance of 49.8Ω. At 240 VAC, each element develops

(240 VAC/49.8Ω) = 4.82 Amperes

The total circuit amperes, then, is

4.82 + 4.82 + 4.82 = 14.46 Amperes.

Parallel Circuit:



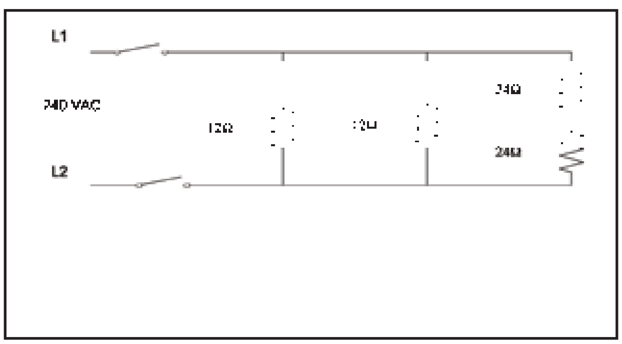
Measuring Resistance in Parallel Circuits

The total resistance is always less than the lowest reading of a single element. Often this is difficult to measure if all the elements in the circuit are connected to two points with no way to isolate them. If they are known to all have the same resistance then you can multiply the number of elements by the resistance value of the entire circuit to get one element's approximate resistance. If the elements in the circuit have different resistances, like in B model kilns, there is no easy way to determine the individual resistances of the elements. The best way to solve an element problem with these kilns is to replace all the elements in the troublesome circuit

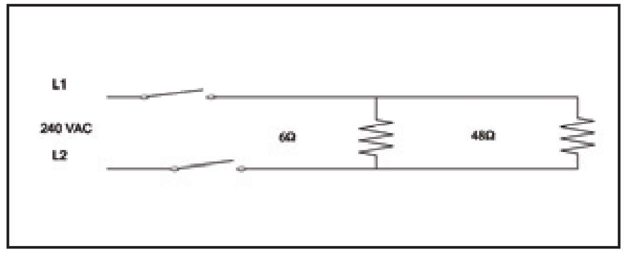
SERIES/PARALLEL or COMBINATION CIRCUITS

Certain circumstances require the use of Series/Parallel, or Combination, circuits, in which series and parallel circuits are combined. In some front-loading industrial furnaces these circuits are used to combine, for instance, sidewall heating elements and backwall heating elements (often shorter than sidewall) in a branch circuit that is controlled by a power relay.

Series/Parallel Circuit:



In the above example, the total resistance can be found by first dealing with each branch circuit individually. Starting from the right, this circuit is a series circuit; add the (24Ω + 24Ω = 48Ω). The other two circuits are parallel and are equal in value (12ΩW each); therefore, the resistance value of these two circuits is equal to (12Ω/2 = 6Ω). Drawing an equivalent circuit with (2) parallel circuits, one of 6Ω and one of 48Ω, looks like the following:



Solving for this circuit:

R = (6Ω x 48Ω) / (6Ω x 48Ω) = 5.33Ω.

The total resistance is lower than that for any of the branch circuits.

ELEMENT TROUBLESHOOTING & INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ELEMENT TROUBLESHOOTING

Why does an older kiln slow down?

Old elements generally increase in their resistance. Mathematically this increase in resistance will decrease the amount of amperage and, ultimately, the amount of heat given off by the elements. This is why older kilns sometimes go so slowly and may not reach their maximum temperature. Periodic element resistance readings using the multimeter will allow you to check the “health” of your elements. Of course, a slow firing kiln is the first indication that you have an element problem.

Elements expand and grow with age

If you fire low-fire clay and glazes and never get above cone 4 or so, your elements will last a long time, especially if you are only bisque firing. This is good, to a point. If you only low-fire, the problem you are most likely to encounter over time is that the elements expand as they age. The length and the coil diameter increase. Meanwhile the atmosphere in the kiln slowly eats away at the metal of the element. Although the total resistance usually increases as the elements age, sometimes it decreases, or reverses itself. This usually only happens when the elements are very old but have not yet failed completely. As the element expands, it binds up in the corners. This can make the individual coils push together and touch each other in the corners, making a short cut for the electricity, reducing the amount of element material the electricity must pass through, and therefore reducing the resistance in the whole element. This may make it hotter in the kiln, but if there is a lot of element material jammed in the corners there will not be enough material left in the coiled form to radiate the heat generated by the increased amperage and decreased resistance. Only the parts of the wire not touching the coils on either side of them will emit heat. More amperage through the electrical components in the control could cause damage if the situation continues or the resistance drops far enough.

In addition, the expanding diameter of an element can make it difficult to get it out of the holder. Usually this will not happen to those firing to higher temperatures because the maximum temperature of the kiln is quickly compromised by increases in the resistance, requiring the elements to be changed long before they can jam up in the corners. Also, high temperatures and glaze firings are more prone to eating through the element, causing it to fail, before the element can expand enough to cause the problems mentioned above. Use the multi-meter. Visually inspect your elements.

What if I see charred and blacked corners?

The coils that sometimes get squashed together in the corners do not always touch each other, but they may be close enough to allow the electricity to 'arc' across the gap. An electrical arc can generate extreme temperatures for the millisecond it arcs. Charred and blackened corners of the kiln are warning signs for this problem.

Do not confuse this with what can be observed even with new elements; which is randomly sized sections of the coils glowing more quickly than other sections of the same coil. The annealing process of the wire causes this, and does not adversely affect the elements' operation in the kiln.

Factors shortening element life

1) Contamination (such as glaze or kiln wash). Silica, a main ingredient of both of these, attacks the element wire.

2) Tightly wound areas on element coils resulting from improper stretch. Have the elements been stretched evenly? This is important. If the element coils are bunched up along the length of the element the element will overheat where the coils are too close. Some replacement elements are shipped un-stretched. Even prestretched elements may need some stretching. See section below on stretching elements.

3) Glaze accidentally rubbing off into holder and on element in loading kiln. If this occurs immediately vacuum the kiln and element holders thoroughly. **Glaze will cause very rapid element failure.**

4) Blow ups or explosion of bisque ware cause small pieces of clay to be blown into holder and element. If not immediately removed clay may melt, contaminating the element and element holder. Keep in mind that temperatures are considerably higher right next to the element so that you may very well exceed the clay melting temperature next to the element even if the kiln temperature is correct for the clay body.

To avoid explosions make certain clay is very dry before firing and, in the case of heavy handmade pieces, fire on low for a long period until you are sure ware is dried out thoroughly. If you hear a "pop" when firing such pieces, stop firing, cool the kiln. If blow-up has occurred, vacuum all element grooves very thoroughly. If you have the DynaTrol use the PreHeat feature for this final forced drying.

5) Firing pieces too close to elements. We recommend at least 1-1/2" from piece to element. Further if large flat surfaces are parallel to kiln wall.

6) Reducing atmospheres will destroy elements. Do not use wood chips, oils and other materials to generate a reducing atmosphere. A very rapid element failure may result. NOTE: Reducing atmospheres are the opposite of oxidizing atmospheres (plain air is an oxidizing atmosphere). The word reducing comes from the ability of a reducing atmosphere to "reduce" oxides.

7) Are any waxes, oils, carbon, fluorine, fumes present? Are you using any lead glazes? Iron-Chrome-Aluminum elements require an oxidizing atmosphere to give dependable service. The aluminum in the element forms a protective aluminum oxide. Oil from tools or carbon from wax burnout will attack the element coating. Halogens such as chlorine or fluorine will attack the elements. Molten metals, for instance, zinc, aluminum and copper, react with iron- chrome-aluminum elements. Moreover, these metals oxidize easily and their oxides have an unfavorable effect on iron-chrome-aluminum. The salts of the alkali metals, halogen salts, nitrates, silicates, and compounds of borax, disturb the formation of oxide and are, therefore, harmful to these elements. This is also true of the oxides of such metals as copper, lead and iron. Do not use with free carbon. Lead oxide attacks the protective alumina oxide coating on the element. If you are using lead glaze (or are creating any of these other problems) be sure to use a kiln vent. **Also try firing every other load or as often as you can with a non corrosive load (such as a bisque firing).** This will help the element restore its protective alumina oxide coating. Note that clay almost always has organics (which will create a

slightly reducing atmosphere, sulfur (which will also attack elements) and fluorine which is also corrosive. **This is one reason why proper venting is critical for long trouble-free operation of your kiln.**

8) Excessive soaking time will accelerate increase in element resistance. The higher the temperature, the longer the soak, the sooner the element will decrease in life. Usually short soaks work fine.

9) Are they genuine L&L elements? There are a number of people selling "replacement elements" for kilns. These people do not have access to the proper design information for L&L elements. Designing an element is a complicated process which balances such things as voltage, wire diameter, watt density, stretch ratio, etc. It is very easy to make an element that has the same watts as an L&L element and have nowhere near the other design qualities that result in long element life.

10) If the failure is taking place at the element end it may be twisted too tightly, causing stress at terminal through holes. This causes local overheating at the "through hole", and element failure. (Contact factory).

11) Make sure all elements are heating. If all elements are not doing their share of the work then the other elements will not last as long.

Element Terminal Burn-out

Sometimes the ends of the elements can burn out at the element terminals (connections). This can be due to any or all of the following causes:

1) The element ends are not twisted properly. If the twist is too loose this could generate extra heat at the element ends.

2) The holes where the elements go through the firebrick walls are too large. This could cause too much heat to escape from the kiln thereby overheating the element terminals. This can be remedied by lightly stuffing ceramic fiber (we have non-RCF ceramic fiber available in our parts list) in the element holes.

3) The element connection hardware may not be tight enough. A loose connection can generate heat and cause oxidation of the hardware which in turn will cause a worse electrical connection (because of resistance) and more heat. Replace with new hardware. There should be a lock washer (so the screw terminal does not turn), and a washer on either side of the element as it is turned around the screw.

4) The hardware should be stainless steel or at least nickel plated. Check to see if the hardware is in good shape. If not replace at least the hardware with stainless steel hardware or better yet replace the whole terminal board assembly with one of our new ones.

CHECKING ELEMENTS

Elements

The elements are the least stable variable in a kiln and should be examined before anything else. Use the multimeter to test the elements' resistance (ohms). Note that element resistance changes over time, the hotter and more often you fire the quicker they change. As the resistance goes up the kiln will slow down because it is getting less power.

You may not need to replace any elements, but you must at least eliminate them as a potential source of the problem. There are a couple different tests you can perform on the elements while they are still in the kiln. But keep some important points in mind. Each element only goes around the kiln once in its ceramic holder. It is important to know the factory resistance value of one element for the kiln you are testing if the elements are all the same. B models and older G models (not the GS1714) use different elements within the same kiln. Likewise, the 6 ½" high JR18 and KR18 sections use different elements than the 9" high sections in the same J and K model kilns. (This is NOT true for the 6-1/2" high J14R and K14R sections). In these cases the factory resistance values for all the elements involved is needed. This information is located in the appropriate instruction manual (all can be downloaded from *hotkilns.com/pdf.htm* (our PDF library).

With these values in mind, **and all power OFF**, place the test leads of the multimeter on the two flat prongs of each section's jumper cord, one on each prong, OR on both connecting wires, at the connection points with the elements. Compare the reading you get to the readings you get from the other jumper cords or connecting wires.

If all the readings are the same, compare the readings to the factory resistance value of one element. If the kiln section has two or three elements in it you can divide or multiply the factory resistance value of the one element by the number of elements in the section and match this to what readings you have taken from the jumper cords. The total resistance of each kiln section - as wired- is provided in our instruction manuals so you do not need to do the math. If the readings on your elements are more than 10% over the factory resistance values the kiln will climb in temperature very slowly and may not reach maximum temperature.

How to check ohms of an entire L&L kiln section. Put the test leads of the multi-meter on the two "hot" plug terminals:

Element Connections

When running these tests, keep in mind that power to the elements is transmitted from your house, through the control panel and into the jumper cords or connecting wires. Then, either inside the element boxes (J, JD, automatic D, and DaVinci models), or behind the baffle in the control (Easy-Fire, SQ, B, K, H, G, and manual D models) these cords or wires end at the element connections. In general we have used element connections with screw terminals as shown below. The element's tail is wrapped around an element connection bolt. Then one wire of the connecting wires or jumper cord is attached to that same bolt. The other wire (not the ground wire if you have a jumper cord) goes to another bolt in the same circuit where another element tail is wrapped. In some kilns these elements are wired in series and in some kilns the elements are wired in parallel.

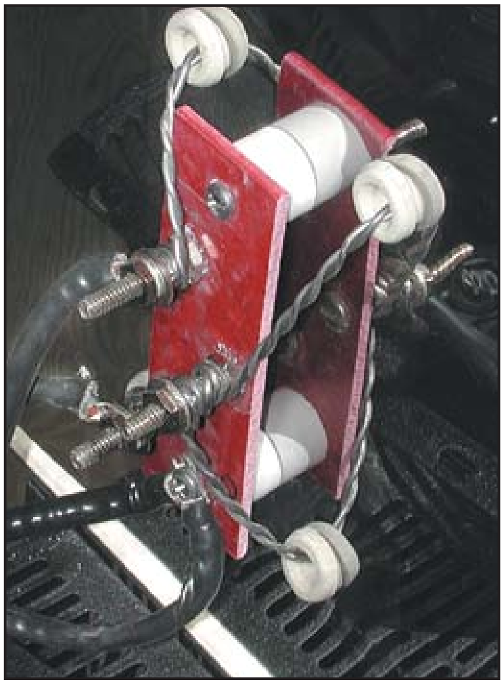
HOW ELEMENTS ARE WIRED

Why is this important?

The way the elements in a particular kiln are wired is important. Different wiring schemes with the same resistance elements will yield drastically different results. For example, if a kiln section or group of elements is out, and the kiln is made up of series circuits, you would first look at the elements because even one element out in a series circuit can make all the elements in that circuit appear to be burned out. If this same kiln had parallel circuits you would first look at the switch or relay. This is because in a parallel circuit, if one element is out the others will still light, so for all the elements in the parallel circuit to be out would mean that whatever controls the circuit (i.e. the switch or the switch by way of a relay) or the wires in-between would be suspect. CAUTION: Accidentally wiring a kiln with parallel element circuits will make it heat up incredibly fast, until the breaker trips. For instance, A J18 kiln wired properly, in series, draws 23 amps at 240 volts. Wired in parallel it would draw around 90 amps at 240 volts, which would be disastrous.

Series Circuits

A typical element terminal board on an older J kiln. The grounding jumper wire that goes from one of the mounting screws to a stud on the element cover box MUST BE ATTACHED FOR SAFETY! This shows elements wired in a series circuit (you can tell because two elements are tied together on one of the terminals and no power wires go to that terminal). You can see that the two elements are connected in series.



From the above photograph of a series circuit (typical on our smaller kilns with only two elements per section) you can see that the two elements are connected at one of the bolts. This means that power flows in series from one element to the next as if it were one long element.The bolts with only the element tails wrapped around them are simply connecting points within the series circuit. Rather than actually stretching the same element twice or three times around the kiln, L&L connects a series of elements together -- usually just two per series -- on the element connection board. Power is applied to the beginning of the first element and to the end of the last element. The electricity must travel through one element to get to the next one. The resistance of the entire circuit would be the number of elements in the circuit multiplied by the factory resistance value of one element.

Parallel Circuits

This is the new all-ceramic terminal board we are using on the Doll, DaVinci and J2900 Series kilns. It shows a parallel circuit.'You can also see the sheathing over the wires from the jumper cord as well as the ground wire.

Parallel circuits are another way of wiring elements in the kiln. The element connection bolts in these circuits have two or more element tails wrapped around them; all the bolts have power wires attached to them. Parallel circuits use only two element connection bolts per circuit. The power is applied to the beginning and end of ALL the elements at once. Thus the resistance of the entire circuit is the number of elements in the circuit divided into the factory resistance value for one element.

Series-Parallel

Sometimes element wiring can be termed series-parallel. L&L's model J14 is a good example of this. It has two series circuits, wired in parallel. The model J230 is wired the same way, but its two series circuits are not as easy to recognize because each series circuit has only one element in it.

The J14, however, has series circuits with two elements in each one. Power still comes through the two wires inside the jumper cord, and goes to both ends of each circuit. At one of these ends, another wire, a 'jumper', conducts the electricity to the end of the other series circuit, which begins at the end of the first circuit so they can share one power wire. Thus, both series circuits get power at the same time, making them series-parallel circuits. What this does to the total resistance of the J14's element circuit is intriguing. If each element has 10 ohms, each series circuit has 20 ohms (2 elements multiplied by 10 ohms each). Two 20-ohm circuits wired in parallel equals 10 ohms total resistance, just like with one element, except now there are four.

Specific to non-sectional kilns:
In non-sectional kilns it can be difficult to tell the element circuits apart since the element connection board runs the entire length of the kiln and covers all the circuits. Trace the connecting wires to discover the beginning and end of each element circuit on the element connection board. Ideally, you would draw a picture of each element circuit before dismantling it. If you are just replacing the elements it is not necessary to know if they are wired series or parallel; it is imperative, though, that they go back together exactly how they came apart.

For a more in-depth description of Series, Parallel and Series-Parallel circuits, along with descriptive diagrams see *troubleshoot-electricity.pdf* in the TROUBLESHOOTING Section for more information on circuit wiring. If you want even more information about electricity for kilns see *hotkilns.com/volts.pdf.*

POWERED BOTTOMS

The elements on the powered bottoms are exactly the same as used in the kiln sections. One is used on the JB2300 and two are used in the JB2900 and in all the powered bottoms in the DaVinci series.

OTHER TYPES OF ELEMENTS

Heavy-Duty elements

If your kiln was made after January of 1996 (the year and month are coded into the serial number) it has larger crossection element holders. These new holders are capable of holding a larger diameter, heavy gauge element. These high grade heavy duty elements feature lower watt density than the standard elements and that, coupled with the heavier gauge wire, results in longer element life. If you are experiencing short element life because of your duty cycle (frequent firing, high temperature firing, long soak times) you should try these heavy duty elements. They have the same ohm rating (resistance) as the standard elements. This means that the power rating of the kiln does not change. It also means that you can use them with the standard elements. One consideration with mixing the standard and heavy duty elements is that the heavy duty elements will age more slowly than the standard elements and may have an effect on uniformity in the kiln. This is really no different than what you would experience when you change just one element and so have a new element (unaged) with older elements. Dynamic Zone Control will automatically balance your system and compensate for this problem. We do suggest, however, that you put any newer elements in the bottom ring where temperatures tend to be cooler and hence need as much power as they can get. Keep in mind that L&L can not keep track of which elements you have and that you must specify heavy duty elements when ordering. If you don't specify heavy duty elements you will get standard elements.

APM Elements

APM is a special version of the Kanthal A-1 alloy used on kilns. It is sintered and resists the crystallization that normal Kanthal type alloy experiences. As a result it makes sense to use this when you are doing processes that require long holds at high temperatures (like crystalline glaze for instance). On the other hand these elements are very expensive and a subject to the same problems like glaze contamination that any elements can experience. See *apm.pdf* in our web PDF library for more information.

Increasing Power in Your Kilns

If you have a JD230 you can retrofit the new Easy-Fire e23T elements in that specific model and increase the power rating of the kiln. That will give you about 10% more power to start with and therefore, as elements age, the lowering power will have less impact on your firings. See *e-jd-element.pdf* in our web PDF library for more information.

REMOVING OLD ELEMENTS

1) Unplug kiln or turn off the kiln at the fused disconnect switch.

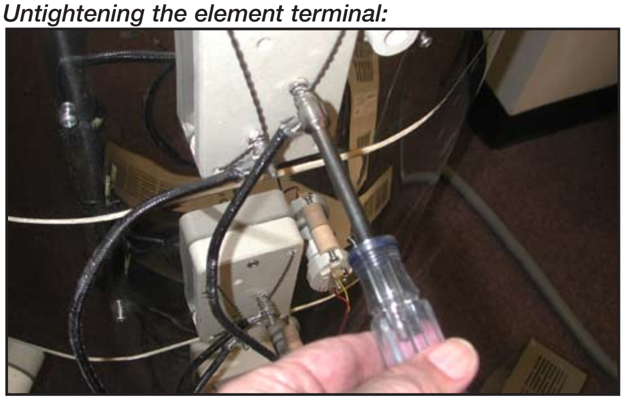
2. First remove the control box or element boxes and their wire connections from the kiln. Before undoing any wires, however, label how the wires and the elements are configured inside the element boxes or behind he control panel. (You could also draw a picture or take digital pictures). To do this, remove the control or element boxes but do not take off the wires. Draw a picture of or photograph the inside of the box and/or label which wires go where. After you are certain you have documented the wiring then you can carefully remove the wires.

3) Using a 3/8" nut driver remove the nuts that hold the element end onto the Element Terminal Bolt. If you don't have this tool you can use an adjustable wrench - it will just take longer.

A 3/8" nut driver:

4) Untwist the element end from around the Element Terminal Bolt. Straighten it out as much as possible.

Untightening the element terminal:

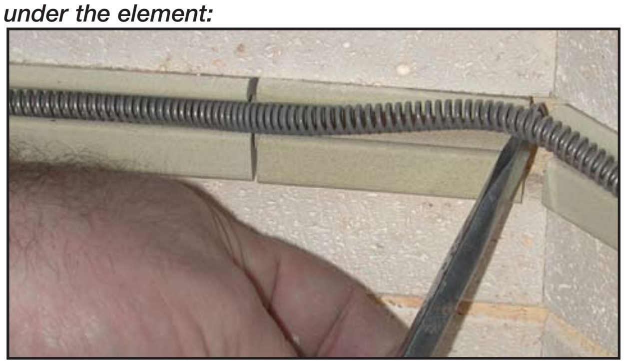


5) Cut the old elements off as close to the "through hole" on the outside of the kiln as possible. You want a straight element tail to pull through the through hole, not a crooked one.

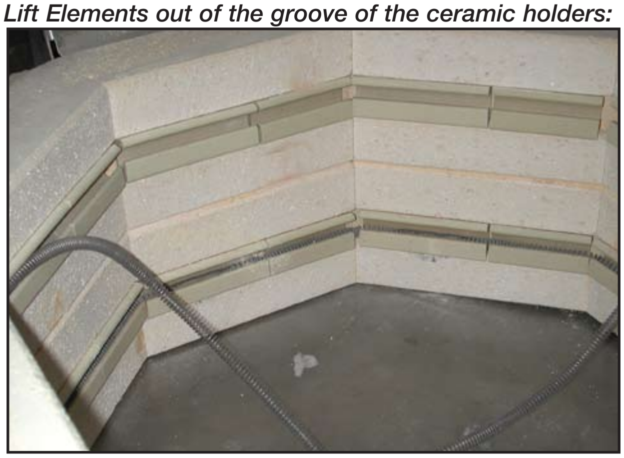
FOR OLDER NON-CERAMIC TERMINAL BOARDS: Remove all the old tails from the element connection bolts and re-tighten these bolts to the element connection board. You may have to remove the element connection board from the kiln to do this. If the bolts are corroded, replace with new stainless steel terminal bolts, nuts, and washers. If the terminal board itself is burnt or broken replace that as a complete unit with new hardware.

6) In most cases you can just lift the element out of the holder at this point. Sometimes, if the element has really disintegrated, you need to remove it in pieces with needle nose pliers.

Using a sharp tool like a screw driver lift the elements out of the ceramic grooves at the corners. You can slide the holder over to make enough of a gap to get the tool under the element:



Lift Elements out of the groove of the ceramic holders:



Sometimes very old elements can become wedged in the element holders, making it necessary to carefully pry/twist/ break them out. A propane torch or just turning the kiln on for a few minutes (if it will come on) will soften the wire of the elements and make them easier to get out. Use heat protecting gloves such as welding gloves or heat treating gloves (you can buy these from L&L) and a pair of needle nose pliers to pull out the softened element. DANGER: You could burn or electrocute yourself if you get the elements too hot or forget to unplug the kiln after warming them up. **IF YOU DECIDE TO USE THIS METHOD BE VERY CAREFUL OF THE POTENTIAL FOR BURNING YOURSELF.**

7) Be sure to check for failure points for evidence of contamination on the element and the element holder. If the element holder is contaminated it will cause rapid failure of the new element. Replace contaminated holders with new ones (See later in this sheet how to do this).

8) From the inside of the kiln, using needle nose pliers, grab the element as close to where it goes through the brick wall to the Terminal Block. Pull the element end through the hole. Be careful not to enlarge the hole in the firebrick. The brick is quite soft and will not take much abrasion.

Removing element from inside the kiln:

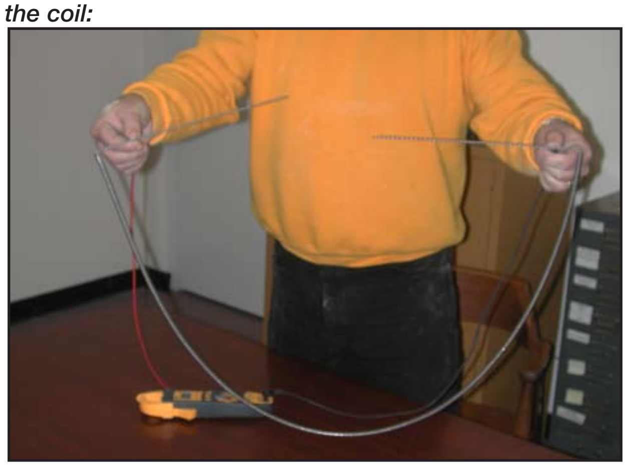
9) **FOR OLDER MODELS WITHOUT CERAMIC TERMINAL BOARDS:** There are normally ceramic insulator bushings on the outsides of the through holes that the elements pass through. On some models (particularly older J2900 kilns and DaVinci kilns) there are spacers to keep these insulators in place. These may fall out (and chip or break) if you are not careful. Be sure not to lose these spacers when replacing elements. Note carefully how they are positioned so you can replace in the same way. Note that on the new all ceramic terminal boards used on the J2900 and DaVinci kilns there are no bushings or spacers - it is all one integrated piece.

10) Once the old elements are out, carefully vacuum all the element holders. Watch for any glaze or material contamination. Anything that will melt (i.e. glaze, slip, porcelain, etc).will cause rapid failure of the new element. Chip or scrape carefully to remove the contaminant, or replace the affected element holders. DO NOT replace the element if there is foreign material stuck in the element holders. You must fix that problem first by either cleaning or replacing the contaminated element holder.

CHECKING ELEMENTS

Examine your new elements. Look to see the wire thickness is similar to that of the old ones. Look to see that the coils per inch and the diameter of the coils are also similar. Using your mulitmeter check the resistance of your new element. Compare to the factory resistance value(s) for your kiln's elements. Your reading should be no more than one ohm off (less for elements with ohm readings of less than 10 ohms). If you have received the wrong element in error call the factory to get it exchanged. This is the time to deal with the problem. DO NOT WAIT UNTIL YOU HAVE STARTED THE JOB, STRETCHED THE ELEMENT OR EVEN INSTALLED IT BECAUSE AT THAT POINT YOU WOULD NOT BE ABLE TO RETURN IT.

Checking resistance of the elements before you put them in. This is a good double-check and can save you a lot of trouble if there is a mistake. Put the probes on the twisted element ends about 3" from the beginning of the coil:



STRETCHING ELEMENTS

NOTE: Most replacement elements come prestretched. All elements are slightly understretched and will have to be adjusted for final fit. The following are instructions for how to stretch unstretched elements:

To determine total length to stretch an element measure total length of element grooves. The following are the dimensions for elements that go in the ring sections. The dimensions given are only the coiled part of the element and does not include the twisted pair ends.

JUPITER ELEMENT STRETCH LENGTHS

J1800	55-1/2”
J2300 (Side Rings)	72-1/2”
J2900 (Side Rings)	92”
J2300 (Bottom)	158”
J2900 (Bottom)	87”

IF ELEMENTS NEED TO BE STRETCHED

1) Mark floor with two marks for stretched length. Have a helper stand on the tail of one element, and pull the other tail until the element is the proper length. The assistant must stand very firmly because a flying element could cause severe injuries. **WEAR SAFETY GLASSES WHEN YOU DO THIS.** Alternately clamp the end to something with vice-grips.

2) Initially stretch element about 50% of length of its final fully stretched length. Examine for evenness of stretch. Selectively stretch close wound sections to provide uniformity of stretch.

3) Repeat this procedure several times.

4) You will have to pull element beyond last mark in order to obtain full stretch.

5) If overstretch occurs insert a metal rod or small diameter dowel into the element coil and compress with needlenose pliers.

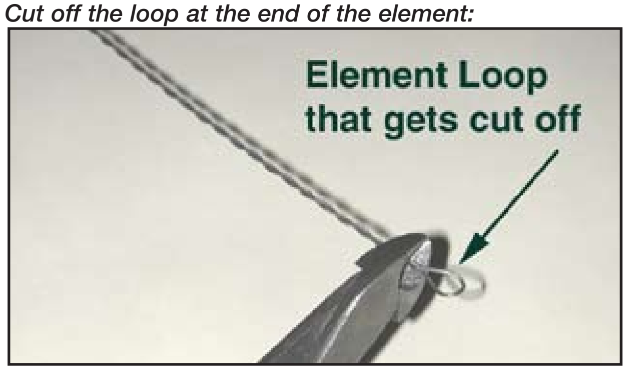
6) Stretch uniformity is necessary for satisfactory element life.

INSTALLING NEW ELEMENTS

1) Replace one element at a time so that you do not make a mistake with the wiring.

2) Clip any loops off the end of the tails and insert them through the through holes from the inside out. Element ends should be straight at this point.

Cut off the loop at the end of the element:



2) Pull them up tight up to the wall of the kiln by pulling from outside the kiln.

3) Lay the element into the groove. Note that the unfired element is going to have some springiness to it before it is fired for the first time. You may need to use a screw drive to press the element into the holder. YOU DO NOT NEED PINS.

4) FOR KILNS WITH NON-CERAMIC TERMINAL BLOCK OR ON RETROFITTED KILNS WHERE YOU HAVE ADDED A CERAMIC TERMINAL BLOCK BUT STILL NEED BUSHINGS: Be sure to replace the insulators and spacers over the element tails.

5) Consulting your picture or labeling, wrap the appropriate element tails around the appropriate element connection bolt, clockwise, once around, and cut off the excess tail.

6) Install the elements and hardware:

a) A washer goes under the first element

b) Twist the first element end CLOCKWISE around the Terminal Bolt.

c) The next element gets twisted around the Terminal Bolt on top of the first element.

d) Then another washer goes over the Terminal Bolt.

e) Then the nut goes over it and get tightened.

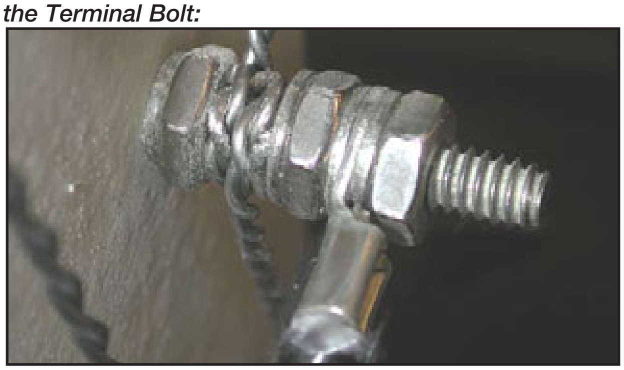
f) Then a washer goes on.

g) Then the Ring Terminal of the Power Lead Wire goes on.

h) Then a washer goes on.

i) Then another nut goes on and gets tightened. How tight you can make this is dependent on how tight you got the element connection bolt onto the element connection board. A tight connection is very important, but if you tighten too much and twist the element on the bolt too far you could break the element, the bolt, or the insulator.

Detail showing how all the hardware gets assembled on the Terminal Bolt:



7) Place the wires from the jumper cord or connecting wires onto the appropriate bolts and tighten with stainless steel nuts.

8). Reattach the ground wires and the element box if the kiln has them. DO NOT FORGET TO ATTACH GROUND WIRES. IF EACH KILN SECTION IS NOT GROUNDED THIS CAN BE VERY DANGEROUS.

9) Test the ohms at the jumper cord's plug head or at the other end of the connecting wires.

10) Reattach the control box, turn the kiln on and make sure all the elements come on.

FIRST FIRING WITH NEW ELEMENTS

NOTE: You may experience some smoking from the kiln on its first firing with new elements. This, if it occurs, is due to residual oil left on the element wire when the wire was made. We recommend firing the kiln empty to cone 5 once to oxidize the new elements (no particular speed is necessary).

REPLACING ELEMENT HOLDERS

1) When ordering a new holder provide model number of kiln and length of the element holder. See the Parts List for this information.

2) Note that if the holder has melted badly you may need to either replace the brick that holds it or at least patch the brick with our Brick Repair Kit.

Method #1

1) This method leaves the kiln in tact. You break up the holder and remove it in pieces and then modify the new holder to snap into the groove.

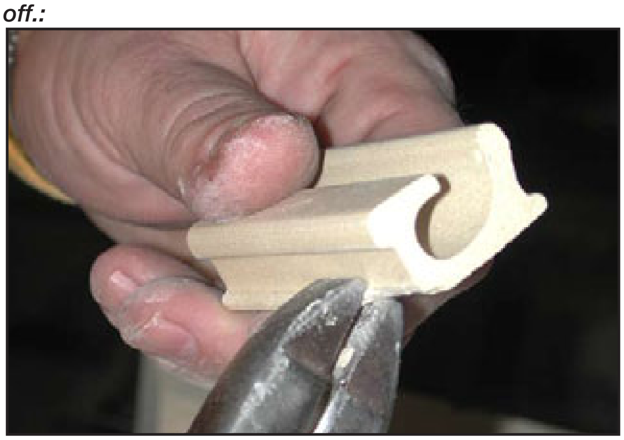
2) Using a chisel or large screw driver and a hammer carefully crack the holder that needs to be removed.

Just take your time with this. You can break the holder into little pieces so that it comes out:

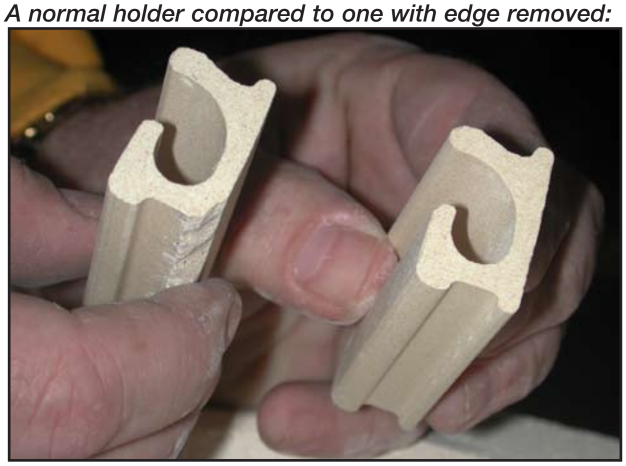
The holder shown with about half the job done:

The groove is shown with the holder removed:

Using Linemen's Pliers snap off the BOTTOM edge of the holder (note carefully the fact that the BOTTOM of the groove is closest to the edge that you are breaking off.:



A normal holder compared to one with edge removed:



You can now just snap the new holder into the slot in the firebrick. It will hold in place with no cement:

Method #2

This method requires you to take the kiln sections apart.

1) Take the section with the bad holder off the kiln and put it on a flat surface like a flat floor or table.

2) Carefully pull the elements out of the element holders of the brick section involved and allow them to hang loose. Take great care not to "break" the element as they are very brittle after firing.

4) Loosen up the adjustable clamps that hold the stainless steel wrapping. Loosen them just enough to allow the brick to slide out with slight hand pressure (so that the other bricks stay in place). NOTE: If you don't have the section on a flat surface then the bricks will all come out of proper alignment at this point.

5) Pull up the brick with the bad element holder just enough to allow removal of the defective element holder and replace with new one. Slide the bad brick(s) out and put in new brick(s). Be sure the element holders line up with the other holders on either side. Note there is a top and a bottom in the element holder so be sure to get the orientation correct.

6) Retighten the clamps on the wrap. Alternately tighten the bottom and top clamp so that you don't cock the stainless casing.

TROUBLESHOOTING AND FIXING BRICK PROBLEMS

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USING BRICK REPAIR KIT

GENERAL NOTE: Firebrick is a very fragile material and subject to breakage, spalling and heat shock. The good news is that it is very easy to repair and maintain with the proper materials and techniques. Our Brick Repair Kit has all the materials you will need to do a first class job.

LIST OF BRICK REPAIR KIT MATERIALS

(1) Firebrick piece

(1) 1/8 pint of Phosphate Cement (in a ½ pint container)

(1) Quart container of Brick Dust

(1) ½ print Brick Facing

MIXING A BATCH OF GROUT

The grout should be mixed up JUST prior to use. (Otherwise it will dry out). Mix the ingredients with a small spatula in a container (like a glass jar or plastic cup). Mix in the following:

½ cup firebrick dust

¼ cup water

1 tablespoon Phosphate Cement

NOTE ABOUT GROUT

The special grout material is firebrick dust mixed with water and a small amount of cement. The cement makes a matrix of the firebrick dust. This compound dries into a material almost exactly like the original firebrick with the same color, consistency, texture and insulating properties.

CAUTION:PHOSPHATE CEMENT

The special cement that is used by itself and with the grout is a phosphorous based cement. It has unusually strong adhesive properties which makes it ideal for repair work. It is different from the cement we normally use for cementing our firebrick. The phosphorus makes phosphoric acid. It is best to use rubber gloves. Be sure to wash your hands with soap and water immediately following your use. **Phosphoric acid is very hazardous to your eyes. Protect your eyes with glasses.**

BRICK PROBLEMS

EXCESSIVE BRICK WEAR

1) Excessive brick wear can be the result of various conditions. Most common is improper curing of the brick when first fired. FOLLOW THE INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE FIRST FIRING AND CURING CYCLE. (See *first-firing.pdf* in the Operation Section).

2) All insulating firebrick expands and contracts when heated and cooled. Over time this will lead to cracking and spalling. Spalling is the continued cracking of the brick which eventually results in large pieces of the brick falling out from the brick section. This is a normal condition as long as the emphasis is on eventually. Factors such as how close the kiln is operated at or near maximum temperature, how often and how fast the kiln is cycled up to heat and then cooled, how heavy the loads are, all figure into the brick wear equation. There is no set rule as to how long a brick lining will last. There are some L&L kilns which are 25 to 40 years old with the original lining still in usable shape.

3) Frequent door openings when the kiln is at high temperatures can cause thermal shock, leading to excessive cracking and spalling.

4) For light to moderate spalling, re-coat the brick with the Brick Facing available in the Brick Repair Kit or separately in the Parts List. This procedure can allow the brick to remain operational.

TROUBLESHOOTING AND FIXING BRICK PROBLEMS

BRICK REPAIRS

APPLICATION OF BRICK HARDENER

1) First brush and vacuum the surface of the brick clean to remove any loose material or crumbling firebrick.

2) Next wet the brick surface lightly. Use a paint brush or spray bottle (make sure there is no soap residue in the bottle).

3) Then apply a thin coat of the brick hardener with a soft brush over the surface of the firebrick. Do not make too thick a coat of the hardener or it will spall off.

4) Let the hardener dry for 24 hours.

5) Run the First Firing Cycle (See *first-firing.pdf* in the Operation Section).

REPAIRING SMALL HOLES & CHIPS IN BRICK

1) Dig out any loose particles with a small knife.

2) Brush and vacuum the surface of the brick clean to remove any loose material or crumbling firebrick.

3) Next wet the brick surface lightly. Use a paint brush or spray bottle (make sure there is no soap residue in the bottle).

4) Apply a thin coat of brick cement all over the hole. This is defined as about 1/32" to 1/16" thick. Do this with your finger or a small brush.

5) Fill hole with the special grout material. Apply grout with a spatula (like plaster.) You can also use your finger. Push it into the hole. It is OK to let it be a rough surface or slightly larger than the hole it is filling.

6) Let dry for 24 hours.

7) Take some rough sandpaper and sand surface to even it out with the rest of the firebrick.

8) Run the First Firing Cycle (See *first-firing.pdf* in the Operation Section).

9) You can brush on hardener or facing afterward if you desire.

REPAIRING VERY LARGE HOLES IN BRICK

1) Cut out an area around the brick chip with a small knife, saw or router. The hole that you make should have 90° angles so that a square or rectangular block will fit in the hole.

2) Cut a piece of firebrick to fit into this cut out hole. The piece should be slightly smaller than the hole (by about 1/16" to 1/8").

3) Both the hole and the brick piece should be brushed and vacuumed clean.

4) Wet the brick surface lightly. (Both the hole and the surface of the block that you are going to insert in the hole). Use a paint brush or spray bottle (make sure there is no soap residue in the bottle).

5) Apply the Kiln Cement to the surface of the the piece that you are going to put in the hole. Use only about 1/32" to 1/16" of an inch of cement.

6) Let dry for 24 hours at a minimum.

7) Cut off and/or sand off excess brick and cement.

8) Cover with Brick Facing and allow to dry for another 24 hours.

9) Turn kiln onto low for 3 hours to dry totally.

10) Run the First Firing Cycle (See *first-firing.pdf* in the Operation Section).

FIRST FIRING AFTER REPAIR

(See *first-firing.pdf* in the Operation Section). The only modification is that you can fire to a lower temperature because you do not need to reseat the elements. However, firing to cone 5 instead of 05 is OK.

On the first firing of the kiln fire it empty.

For kilns with the manual control fire the kiln on low (setting #2) for two hours to bake out any moisture. Then set to medium (setting #5) for two hours and then increase enough to reach final temperature. Fire it to cone 05 (1888°F).

If you have the DYNA-TROL program control fire the following program: Using the "Easy-Fire" mode fire on Slow Bisque to Cone 05 with a PreHeat setting of 3 hours and a hold of 1 hour.

TROUBLESHOOTING AND FIXING BRICK PROBLEMS

CRACKS IN THE LID & BOTTOM

1) It is quite normal to get hairline cracks in both the lid and the bottom firebricks.

2) They are caused by the expansion and contraction of the firebrick as it heats and cools.

3) As long as the bottom is fully supported by the stand the cracks in the bottom will not adversely affect the operation of the kiln.

4) The stainless steel clips we use in our lids also help keep these natural cracks from normally becoming a problem in the lids.

5) Note that it is possible to put another bottom under the original bottom as a second layer (this can also improve performance and heat up rate of the kiln).

6) It generally does not make sense to cement these hairline cracks.

7) You can tighten the stainless steel band.

This crack is OK:

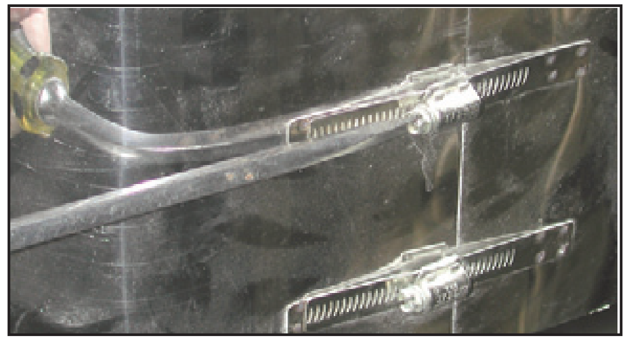
TIGHTENING STAINLESS BANDS

1) The brick will shrink slightly over time. This is more pronounced when using the kiln at higher temperatures like cone 10. If you only use the kiln for low fire bisque you may never notice this condition.

2) If the bricks shrink too much they will become loose.

3) Tighten the case by turning the screws of the case clamps. Do this 1/4 of a turn at a time on each of the clamps. Keep a balanced tightening (i.e don't tighten one clamp too much at one time). Slow is good.

Tightening the bands:



4) You can do this on the bands around the top and bottom also. This will help maintain the integrity of those slabs even if there is a crack.

REPLACING FIREBRICK IN SIDES

1) If you need to replace a firebrick piece in one of the sections do the following. While it does not require a great deal of experience to accomplish it does take time and patience.

2) Order the firebrick precut and prerouted from L&L Kiln. You can order this with the proper element holders already in place or you can reuse the holders from your old brick. Be sure to order it for your specific model kiln. Also, be sure to say whether it is a brick where the element connections come through (because this has different element holders.

3) There are no holes drilled in the brick for either peepholes or element connections. This has to be done in the field.

4) Take the section off the kiln and put it on a flat surface like a flat floor or table. Elements will have to be removed and probably replaced.

5) Loosen up the adjustable clamps that hold the stainless steel wrapping. Loosen them just enough to allow the brick to slide out with slight hand pressure (so that the other bricks stay in place). NOTE: If you don't have the section on a flat surface then the bricks will all come out of proper alignment at this point.

6) Slide the bad brick(s) up and out and put in new brick(s). Be sure the element holders line up with the other holders on either side. Note there is a top and a bottom in the element holder so be sure to get the orientation correct.

7) Retighten the clamps on the wrap. Alternately tighten the two or three clamps (about a 1/4 or 1/2 turn at a time) so that you don't cock the stainless casing.

8) Sand off the top surface of the firebrick to match the surface of the other firebricks. Sandpaper will work fine. Reface with Brick Facing.

DRILLING OUT HOLES FOR PEEPHOLES & DAWSON

1) Some of the bricks that you may need to replace will need to have holes drilled in them in the field. These holes can not be drilled in the factory because the alignment would not be perfect.

2) To drill out for peepholes use a 1" diameter drill bit or hole saw. You can also drill with a smaller drill and then file out with a round hasp type file. Drill slowly through the firebrick using the prepunched hole in the stainless steel. You may have to remove the bit several times and clean it out as you drill deeper. It is a good idea to have someone help you by watching from the side to make sure you are drilling straight. It is hard to see this when you are doing the drilling.

3) For sections that have two element rows: the hole is drilled <u>perpendicular</u> to the stainless case.

4) For sections that have three element rows: the hole is not drilled at a perfect 90° perpendicular angle to the kiln case. It will be drilled at a slightly down angle (about 5° to 7°). This is to miss the element holders.

5) Before drilling, as a precaution, you can measure down from the top of the brick to the top of the existing hole in the stainless steel case. This measurement on the inside will show you where the top of the drill bit will protrude. Adjust your angle of drilling accordingly.

Drilling the peephole:

DRILLING OUT FOR THE ELEMENT CONNECTIONS

1) Use a 1/8” to 3/16" diameter drill bit and drill out from the center of the hole in the stainless steel case. Do this slowly with a speed control.

2) Do this perpendicular to the case.

REPLACING BOTTOMS

1) Remove the kiln sections.

2) Take the old bottom off the stand.

3) Put the new bottom on the stand.

4) Relevel the kiln. (This is important).

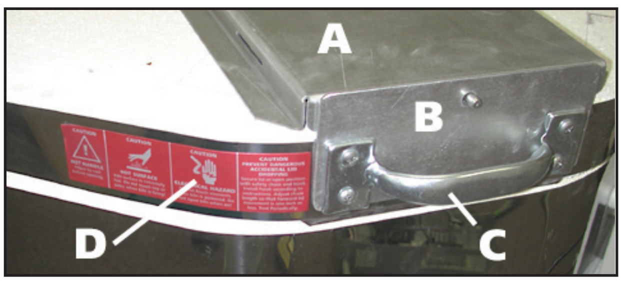
5) Replace the kiln sections.

NOTE: You may want to experiment with using the old bottom as a secondary back up bottom if it is not too badly damaged. Just make sure it is totally flat so that it doesn’t crack the new bottom. Some people find that having this extra insulation thickness helps firing times and bottom uniformity.

REPLACING EASY-LIFT LIDS

1) Remove the Hinge Pin and take the old top off the kiln. See the Assembly Instructions for guidance if you have questions about how to do this. Use the Hinge Tool to take the tension off the spring. **BE SURE TO USE SAFETY GLASSES - THERE IS A LOT OF TENSION ON THE SPRING AND INJURY COULD RESULT.**

2) Remove the Top Hinge Part from the old lid. Note that there are three parts to this. There is the main Top Hinge Part. Then there is the Front Hinge Part (the little 3" x 4" aluminized steel plate with a small hole that gets attached to the front of the top with the screws for the Handle). Then there is the Handle. Note that the hole in the Front Hinge Part should be centered around the the little stud that protrudes from the Top Hinge Part.



A= Top Hinge Part, B= Front Hinge Part
C= Handle, D=Label

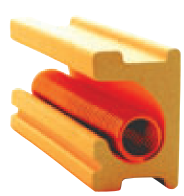
3) Using the old top as a guide, install the Top Hinge Part onto the new lid.

4) Reinstall the top and reset the spring. See the Assembly Instructions if you have questions about how to do this.

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

SERVICE
& WARRANTY

L&L Kilns
hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented
hard ceramic
element holders
protect your kiln.

SERVICE FOR L&L KILNS

SERVICE FOR YOUR KILN

L&L kilns are designed to be as easy to work on and fix as possible.

TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

Check out the "Support" section of our web site, *hotkilns.com* for all of our troubleshooting references. We are constantly adding to our excellent troubleshooting guides and the web site has the most up-to-date information on it.

YOUR LOCAL DISTRIBUTOR

Call your local distributor, most of whom service the kilns they sell. If they don't they may be able to direct you to a local kiln service person.

OTHER KILN REPAIR PEOPLE

Search for a local kiln service person online or try your local yellow pages. L&L may also be able to recommend a local service person. We maintain a listing of kiln service people around the country. If you can't find a person experienced specifically in kiln repair, then a good electrician is often more than adequate to repair most problems that commonly occur.

REMOVABLE CONTROL PANELS

Some of the more difficult problems occur within the control panel. One of the unique features of the most L&L kilns is the easy ability to remove this panel and send it back to the factory for inspection and/or repair. See the parts list or call the factory.

CONTACT US

Email *service@hotkilns.com*. Visit: *hotkilns.com*. Call our office Toll Free at 800-259-1423 (or 856-294-0077) Monday through Friday 8:30 am to 5:00pm Eastern Standard Time. Write to us at L&L Kiln Mfg. Inc. 505 Sharptown Road, Swedesboro, NJ 08085.

WHERE TO BUY PARTS

You can order parts through your local distributor or directly from the factory. L&L stocks almost all parts we sell including elements. We normally ship within one day although some parts do take longer. See the parts list included with these instructions. You can download current parts lists from our web site. A faxable order form is on the parts list.

WHAT WE CAN'T DO

We can not give you advice over the phone on hooking up your kiln to your electrical system. You must have a qualified electrician who can physically see what your specific electrical situation is and who understands any local codes.

SELECTING AN ELECTRICAL CONTRACTOR

A quality electrical contractor:

1) Complies with state and local codes and regulations.

2) Carries the proper business and workers compensation insurance.

3) Is knowledgeable on a wide range of new equipment, technology and design procedures.

4) Has a local facility, and is willing to have you visit.

5) Is prompt and courteous and provides fast, reliable service -- attempting to perform service at your convenience.

6) Is neat and well groomed. This neatness should be reflected in their vehicles and offices as well as their personal appearance.

7) Provides a detailed written proposal, clearly outlining the work to be done and the agreed upon cost, including labor and materials. Make sure you understand every word of any contract before you sign it.

8) Asks in detail about any problems and offers understandable solutions.

CONSIDER THE FOLLOWING

1) Ask for references. Find out if other customers were satisfied. Check with the local Better Business Bureau regarding any filed complaints.

2) Compare price. Get bids from a few contractors. Make sure you give each contractor the same specifications and materials needed for the job.

3) Remember! How a company treats you now reflects how they will treat you if there's a problem. A quality electrical contractor listens to your problems, understands what you want accomplished and is willing to follow up after the work is completed.

STANDARD LIMITED THREE YEAR WARRANTY FOR L&L KILNS

THREE YEAR LIMITED KILN WARRANTY

L&L Kilns are warranted to be free of defects in workmanship for a period of three (3) years, starting on the date of original purchase from L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. (L&L) or from an authorized L&L distributor or dealer, subject to the following terms and conditions, including but not limited to, the exclusions and limitations set forth herein.

1) A sales receipt is required for proof of purchase.

2) In addition, L&L may require you to deliver defective parts to L&L for examination to determine the applicability of these warranty provisions. DO NOT DISCARD PARTS BEFORE CONTACTING L&L FOR INSTRUCTIONS. FAILURE TO ADHERE TO L&L's INSTRUCTIONS, INCLUDING THOSE CONTAINED IN THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL AND AS STATED HEREIN, WILL VOID THIS WARRANTY.

3) L&L will replace or repair any defective part that is covered by this warranty and sent freight-prepaid to L&L. L&L will prepay return shipping cost without charge in the Continental United States.

4) On-site labor is not part of this warranty and is not covered by L&L. Any warranty labor provided by Dealers and Distributors is provided at their own discretion and expense.

APPLICATION

Applies to Easy-Fire, Easy-Fire XT, eQuad-Pro, Jupiter, DaVinci, Renaissance kilns with DynaTrol, Hercules, Easy-Load, Doll/Test, and Liberty-Belle kilns.

EXCLUSIONS AND LIMITATIONS

The following are examples of items that are not covered by and/or circumstances that will void L&L's warranties:

1) Kiln warranty may be voided by firing materials that introduce harmful atmospheres into the kiln. Atmospheres containing carbon, reducing atmospheres (caused, for example, by introducing carbonaceous gasses or solids like graphite or paper into the kiln), binders from lusters and decals, wax burn out effluents, florines, halogens, acids, metal oxides, and salts are some of the corrosive and harmful atmospheres that will damage a kiln. Most ceramic processes will release some of these harmful constituents into the kiln and venting will prevent most of the problems that those processes would cause. Also, depending on the concentration of the harmful gasses, kiln source ventilation (such as our Vent-Sure) may limit the damage to the kiln. It is the customer's sole responsibility to ensure that the materials and the processes used are not harmful. This is of particular importance for industrial uses where processes may be unusual.

2) Over-firing damage for any reason and regardless of cause. IMPORTANT: We specifically warn you not to fire the kiln unattended. Neither the Dawson Kiln Sitter, The Orton Sitter, the DynaTrol, the Bartlett 3-Button control nor any other electronic control used by L&L is designed to be a failproof shut off device. L&L is not responsible for damage caused by failure of any of these controls.

Also note that it is easy to melt clay if you inadvertently fire it hotter than its rating. It is possible in some controls to limit the upper firing limit of the kiln to avoid accidental overfirings of this type. Contact factory or read your control instruction manual if you would like further information on this.

3) Firebrick by its nature is fragile and will chip, crack, and create dust. L&L designs its kilns to minimize the effects of this but can not warrant against cracking, breakage, spalling or dusting. There is specifically no warranty for cracked arches, tops, lids or bottoms.

4) The Dawson Kiln Sitter and Orton Sitter controls are warranted by their manufacturers. L&L is not responsible for damage caused by failure of one of these controls.

5) Corrosion of the case is specifically not warranted. Corrosion is typically due to use of a kiln in an unheated outside shed (where morning dew condenses on the kiln and humidity attacks the kiln) or from an unvented kiln (where the water vapor and fumes generated by firing ceramic materials attack the kiln case). However, even a vented kiln can corrode due to all the environmental and process conditions that a kiln can be exposed to. Exposure to other ambient conditions, including but not limited to rain, snow, dust, and salt air will also cause corrosion.

6) Damage due to neglect, inadequate room or kiln ventilation, mechanical abuse, improper storage, inadequate maintenance, improper use or freight damage.

7) Damage to the elements or element holders due to failure to properly keep the kiln clean (i.e. allowing glaze or ceramic chards from exploding pots) to make contact with the element holders.

8) Damage to the kiln caused for firing in ambient conditions that are too hot for the control or other components in the kiln. The DynaTrol is rated for use up to 125°F (52°C). That means that the room that you fire in should be less than 110°F (43°C) (because the control will be slightly

hotter than room air dues to transferred heat from the kiln). Note that direct sunlight on the control face may raise the temperature of the board beyond what you would expect from the ambient temperature or the kiln heat. Also note that the DynaTrol specifically allows the operator to check the control board temperature.

9) Failure to report defect within fifteen (15) days after it becomes manifest or known.

10) Any alteration of parts or design that vary from factory designs.

11) Use of elements and/or other parts other than genuine L&L parts supplied by L&L or its authorized Distributors and Dealers.

12) Thermocouple Protection Tubes are not warranted against breakage.

13) L&L's warranty is strictly limited to repair or replacement of defective items. Kilns may not be returned.

14) Distributors and Dealers are not authorized by L&L to modify and/or assume any other obligations or liabilities other than those expressed in this limited warranty and any such additional obligations are null and void.

15) EXCEPT AS SPECIFICALLY WARRANTED HEREIN, KILNS ARE SOLD AS IS. L&L MAKES NO OTHER WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, COVERING THE GOODS AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Purchaser acknowledges that certain conditions or circumstances may be created or incurred by Purchaser or user or over which L&L has no control, including, but not limited to, climactic conditions, improper use, inadequate maintenance, and Purchaser, as a condition of purchase or use, assumes responsibility for and releases L&L from liability arising out of the use of the kilns attributable to such causes.

16) L&L SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL, SECONDARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO BODILY INJURY OR DEATH, LOST PROFITS, LOSS OF USE, OR OTHER ECONOMIC LOSSES. Purchaser agrees that L&L's total liability for any damages or remedies arising hereunder shall be limited to direct damages, in an amount not exceeding the purchase price actually paid. Replacement or repair or refund, at L&L's sole discretion, of the purchase price of the equipment purchased shall constitute the exclusive and sole remedy available to Purchaser. Any action for breach of contract or negligence must be commenced by Purchase within one (1) year after delivery of the equipment to Purchaser.

17) L&L's full Terms and Conditions of Sale are available at http://hotkilns.com/standardterms.pdf.

3 YEAR PRO-RATED ELEMENT & THERMOCOUPLE LIMITED WARRANTY

Elements and thermocouples are warranted for three (3) years on a pro-rated basis with the following exceptions:

1) Glaze damage to the elements caused by accidentally scraping edges of unfired glazed ware against element groove. WARNING: causing unfired glaze to contaminate element will damage elements and can lead to element failure, and creates a fire hazard.

2) Firing of kiln to a temperature that exceeds the lower of

a) The maximum rating of kiln

b) 2350°F (1290°C).

3) Damage to elements caused by explosion of ceramic object. WARNING: this may cause damage to the elements and can lead to element failure, and creates a fire hazard.

Following is the pro-rated Schedule for elements and thermocouples:

1) Elements are warranted on a prorated schedule based on the ship date of the kiln. All dates are based on ship date from factory if sold direct or drop shipped to customer. If sold from a distributor's warehouse the date would be based on when it was shipped and/or sold from the distributor. The warranty is not extended for any period of where operation of the kiln is delayed for shipping, warehousing, or other reasons.

2) This replacement schedule is limited to new kilns. L&L does not warrant replacement elements and thermocouples except for catastrophic failure (for instance, a situation where the element end broke off without fault of the operator).

3) Labor to replace elements is not covered.

4) The pro-rated discount schedule only is valid for elements that you are actually replacing. In other words you can't buy a whole set of elements at these prices for anticipated future replacement. We reserve the right to ask for replaced elements in return.

STANDARD LIMITED THREE YEAR WARRANTY FOR L&L KILNS

Date from time of shipment from factory	Price of thermocouples and elements
0-12 Months	No Charge
12-24 Months	25% of full list price
24-36 Months	50% of full list price

3 YEAR LIMITED VENT WARRANTY

L&L VS-1 Vent-Sure is warranted to be free of defects in workmanship for a period of (3) years, starting from date of original purchase from L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. or from an authorized L&L distributor or dealer. A sales receipt is required for proof of purchase. In addition, L&L may require you to send in defective parts for examination to determine the applicability of these warranty provisions. DO NOT DISCARD PARTS BEFORE CONTACTING L&L. L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. will replace or repair any defective part sent freight-prepaid to L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. following L&L's written acknowledgement and authorization regarding the specific issue. L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. will prepay return shipping cost without charge in the Continental United States. On site labor is not covered by the factory; however, local distributors or dealers may offer this service.

EXCLUSIONS & LIMITATIONS

1) The Vent-Sure must be used as instructed in our vent instructions.

2) The use of any wax process that might cause condensation of wax or other similar substance in the vent system will void the warranty.

3) The Vent-Sure is not warranted to vent highly corrosive fumes, and any such use will void any warranties otherwise provided.

3 YEAR LIMITED TRU-VIEW PYROMETER WARRANTY

L&L Tru-View Pyrometer System is warranted to be free of defects in workmanship for a period of (3) years, starting from date of original purchase from L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. or from an authorized L&L distributor or dealer. A sales receipt is required for proof of purchase. In addition, L&L may require you to send in defective parts for examination to determine the applicability of these warranty provisions. DO NOT DISCARD PARTS BEFORE CONTACTING L&L. L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. will replace or repair any defective part sent freight-prepaid to L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc following L&L's written acknowledgement and authorization regarding the specific issue. L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. will prepay return shipping cost without charge in the Continental United States.. On site labor is not covered by the factory; however, local distributors may offer this service.

EXCLUSIONS & LIMITATIONS

1) Thermocouples are not warranted for the Tru-View system.

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

PARTS

PARTS FOR ALL KILNS
(ONLINE DATABASE)

PARTS LIST

A comprehensive and up-to-date listing of parts that pertain to all Kiln Series' built by L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. can now be found on our website at, http://hotkilns.com/parts

Use the "Kiln Series" Parts Filter to narrow down the list of available parts to those that pertain to your specific kiln.

If further brevity is desired, use the "Category" Parts Filter as well.

 505 Sharptown Rd, Swedesboro NJ 08085 P:856.294.0077 F:856.294.0070 sales@hotkilns.com hotkilns.com

FAX ORDER FORM FOR L&L KILNS AND PARTS
Fax to 856.294.0070

ORDERED BY:

Date:________________________________

Company________________________________

Name________________________________

Street Address____________________________

____

City ________________________________

State ________ Zip/Postal Code ____________

Day Phone ____________________________

Fax:________________________________

Email:________________________________

SHIP TO: (if different from "ORDERED BY")

Company________________________________

Name________________________________

Street Address____________________________

____

City ________________________________

State ________ Zip/Postal Code ____________

Day Phone ____________________________

Fax:________________________________

Email:________________________________

QTY	ITEM NO.	VOLTS	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT	TOTAL

PAYMENT METHOD: ☐ COD ☐ Purchase Order:____________

Purchase Orders must have preapproved credit with

CHARGE TO: ☐ Visa ☐ Mastercard

Card Account Number ____________________________

Name on Card ____________________________

Issuing Bank ____________________________

Expiration Date ____________

CSV (3 digit V-code on Card)____________

Customer Signature ________________________________

To be filled out by L&L

Merchandise Total:		
6% sales tax for shipments to Pennsylvania: (unless accompanied by a sales tax exempt form):		
Standard Packing & Handling Charge (See below. To be filled in by L&L)		
UPS, Fed X or Common Carrier Charges. (To be filled in at time of shipment. Based on Actual Cost.)		
TOTAL		

STANDARD DELIVERY & HANDLING CHARGES

Kiln Shelf kits, lids, and bottoms have a $38.00 packing charge plus common carrier shipping charges. Typical packing charge for small parts ranges from $3.00 to $25.00 depending on the physical size of the parts order. UPS or FedEx shipping charges are billed at cost. L&L will add the proper amount onto this order. See *hotkilns.com/ship.pdf* for more information on shipping.

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL

MSDS SHEETS

L&L KILN COMPONENTS MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEETS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PQ Corporation

MSDS
MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

1. CHEMICAL PRODUCT AND COMPANY IDENTIFICATION

Product name:	**KASIL® 6 Potassium silicate solution**
Product description:	**A 2.10 weight ratio potassium silicate, 39.2% solution in water**
Manufacturer:	**PQ Corporation** **P. O. Box 840** **Valley Forge, PA 19482 USA**
Telephone:	**610-651-4200**
In case of emergency call:	**610-651-4200**
For transportation emergency Call CHEMTREC:	**800-424-9300**

2. COMPOSITION/INFORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

Chemical and Common Name	*CAS Registry Number*	*Wt. %*	*OSHA PEL*	*ACGIH TLV*
Water	**7732-18-5**	**60.8%**	**Not Established**	**Not Established**
Silicic acid, potassium salt; Potassium silicate	**1312-76-1**	**39.2%**	**Not Established**	**Not Established**

3. HAZARDS IDENTIFICATION

Emergency Overview:	**Clear to hazy, colorless, odorless, thick liquid. Causes moderate eye irritation, slight skin irritation and digestive tract irritation. Spray mist causes irritation to respiratory tract. High pH of product is harmful to aquatic life. Noncombustible. Spills are slippery. Reacts with acids, ammonium salts, reactive metals and some organics.**
Eye contact:	**Causes moderate irritation to the eyes.**
Skin contact:	**Causes slight irritation to the skin.**
Inhalation:	**Spray mist irritating to respiratory tract.**
Ingestion:	**May cause irritation to mouth, esophagus, and stomach.**
Chronic hazards:	**No known chronic hazards. Not listed by NTP, IARC or OSHA as a carcinogen.**
Physical hazards:	**Dries to form glass film which can easily cut skin. Spilled material is very slippery. Can etch glass if not promptly removed.**

4. FIRST AID MEASURES

Eye:	**In case of contact, immediately flush eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Get medical attention.**
Skin:	**In case of contact, immediately flush skin with plenty of water. Remove contaminated clothing and shoes. Get medical attention.**
Inhalation:	**Remove to fresh air. If not breathing, give artificial respiration. If breathing is difficult, give oxygen. Get medical attention.**

Ingestion:	**If swallowed, DO NOT induce vomiting. Get medical attention immediately. If victim is fully conscious, give a cupful of water. Never give anything by mouth to an unconscious person.**

5. FIRE FIGHTING MEASURES

Flammable limits:	**This material is noncombustible.**
Extinguishing Media:	**This material is compatible with all extinguishing media.**
Hazards to fire-fighters:	**See Section 3 for information on hazards when this material is present in the area of a fire.**
Fire-fighting equipment:	**The following protective equipment for fire fighters is recommended when this material is present in the area of a fire: chemical goggles, body-covering protective clothing, chemical resistant gloves, and rubber boots.**

6. ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

Personal protection:	**Wear chemical goggles, body-covering protective clothing, chemical resistant gloves, and rubber boots. See section 8.**
Environmental Hazards:	**Sinks and mixes with water. High pH of this material is harmful to aquatic life, see Section 12. Only water will evaporate from a spill of this material.**
Small spill cleanup:	**Mop up and neutralize liquid, then discharge to sewer in accordance with federal, state and local regulations or permits.**
Large spill cleanup:	**Keep unnecessary people away; isolate hazard area and deny entry. Do not touch or walk through spilled material. Stop leak if you can do so without risk. Prevent runoff from entering into storm sewers and ditches which lead to natural waterways. Isolate, dike and store discharged material, if possible. Use sand or earth to contain spilled material. If containment is impossible, neutralize contaminated area and flush with large quantities of water.**
CERCLA RQ:	**There is no CERCLA Reportable Quantity for this material. If a spill goes off site, notification of state and local authorities is recommended.**

7. HANDLING AND STORAGE

Handling:	**Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothing. Avoid breathing spray mist. Keep container closed. Promptly clean residue from closures with cloth dampened with water. Promptly clean up spills.**
Storage:	**Keep containers closed. Store in clean steel or plastic containers. Separate from acids, reactive metals, and ammonium salts. Storage temperature 0-95º C. Loading temperature 45-95 º C. Do not store in aluminum, fiberglass, copper, brass, zinc or galvanized containers.**

8. EXPOSURE CONTROLS/PERSONAL PROTECTION

Engineering controls:	**Use with adequate ventilation. Keep containers closed. Safety shower and eyewash fountain should be within direct access.**
Respiratory protection:	**Use a NIOSH-approved dust and mist respirator where spray mist occurs. Observe OSHA regulations for respirator use (29 C.F.R. §1910.134)**
Skin protection:	**Wear body-covering protective clothing and gloves.**
Eye protection:	**Wear chemical goggles.**

9. PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

Appearance:	**Thick liquid.**
Color:	**Clear to hazy white.**
Odor:	**Odorless or musty odor.**
pH:	**Approximately 11.7**
Specific gravity:	**1.39 g/cm_3 (20ºC), 40.4º Bé, 11.56 lbs/gal**
Solubility in water:	**Miscible.**

10. STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

Stability:	**This material is stable under all conditions of use and storage.**
Conditions to avoid:	**None.**
Materials to avoid:	**Gels and generates heat when mixed with acid. May react with ammonium salts resulting in evolution of ammonia gas. Flammable hydrogen gas may be produced on contact with aluminum, tin, lead, and zinc.**
Hazardous decomposition products:	**Hydrogen.**

11. TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Acute Data:	**When tested for primary irritation potential, this material caused moderate irritation to the eyes and slight irritation to the skin. Human experience indicates that irritation occurs when potassium silicates get on clothes at the collar, cuffs or other areas where abrasion may occur. The acute oral toxicity of this product has not been tested. When chemically similar sodium silicates were tested on a 100% solids basis, their single dose acute oral LD_{50} in rats ranged from 1500 mg/kg to 3200 mg/kg. The acute oral lethality resulted from nonspecific causes. This product contains approximately 39.2% potassium silicate.**
Subchronic Data:	**The subchronic toxicity of this material has not been tested. In a study of rats fed chemically similar sodium silicate in drinking water for three months, at 200, 600 and 1800 ppm, changes were reported in the blood chemistry of some animals, but no specific changes to the organs of the animals due to potassium silicate administration were observed in any of the dosage groups. Another study reported adverse effects to the kidneys of dogs fed potassium silicate in their diet at 2.4g/kg/day for 4 weeks,**

	whereas rats fed the same dosage did not develop any treatment-related effects. Decreased numbers of births and survival to weaning was reported for rats fed sodium silicate in their drinking water at 600 and 1200 ppm.
Special Studies:	**The mutagenic potential of this material has not been tested. Chemically similar sodium silicate was not mutagenic to the bacterium E. Coli when tested in a mutagenicity bioassay. There are no known reports of carcinogenicity of potassium silicates. Frequent ingestion over extended periods of time of gram quantities of silicates is associated with the formation kidney stones and other siliceous urinary calculi in humans. Potassium silicate is not listed by IARC, NTP or OSHA as a carcinogen.**

12. ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Ecotoxicity:	**The ecotoxicity of potassium silicate has not been tested. The following data is reported for chemically similar sodium silicates on a 100% solids basis: A 96 hour median tolerance for fish (Gambusia affnis) of 2320 ppm; a 96 hour median tolerance for water fleas (Daphnia magna) of 247 ppm; a 96 hour median tolerance for snail eggs (Lymnea) of 632 ppm; and a 96 hour median tolerance for Amphipoda of 160 ppm. This product contains approximately 39.2% potassium silicate.**
Environmental Fate:	**This material is not persistent in aquatic systems, but its high pH when undiluted or unneutralized is acutely harmful to aquatic life. Diluted material rapidly depolymerizes to yield dissolved silica in a form that is indistinguishable from natural dissolved silica. It does not contribute to BOD. This material does not bioaccumulate except in species that use silica as a structural material such as diatoms and siliceous sponges. Where abnormally low natural silica concentrations exist (less than 0.1 ppm), dissolved silica may be a limiting nutrient for diatoms and a few other aquatic algal species. However, the addition of excess dissolved silica over the limiting concentration will not stimulate the growth of diatom populations; their growth rate is independent of silica concentration once the limiting concentration is exceeded. Neither silica nor potassium will appreciably bioconcentrate up the food chain.**
Physical/Chemical:	**Sinks and mixes with water. Only water will evaporate from this material.**

13. DISPOSAL CONSIDERATIONS

Classification:	**Disposed material is not a RCRA Hazardous waste.**
Disposal Method:	**Dispose in accordance with federal, state and local regulations and permits.**

14. TRANSPORT INFORMATION

DOT UN Status:	**This material is not regulated hazardous material for transportation.**

15. REGULATORY INFORMATION

CERCLA:	**No CERCLA Reportable Quantity has been established for this material.**
SARA TITLE III:	**Not an Extremely Hazardous Substance under §302. Not a Toxic Chemical under §313. Hazard Categories under §§311/312: Acute**
TSCA:	**All ingredients of this material are listed on the TSCA inventory.**
FDA:	**Potassium silicate is regarded as GRAS (Generally Recognized As Safe) as a corrosion preventative in potable water.**

16. OTHER INFORMATION

Prepared by:	**John G. Blumberg**
Supersedes revision of:	**03/24/06**

Thermal Ceramics

MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

MSDS No: 151-1	Date Prepared: 03/28/1995	Current Date: 9/14/2007 Last Revised: (09/14/2007)

1. PRODUCT AND COMPANY IDENTIFICATION

Product Group: **INSULATING REFRACTORY BRICK**
Chemical Name: Aluminosilicate Product
Intended Use: High Temperature Thermal Insulation
Trade Names: K-20, K-22 HS, K-23, JM-20, JM-23, K-24 HS, K-25, K-26, IFB Dust (Low Temp), TC-23, TC-23 HS

Manufacturer/Supplier:

Thermal Ceramics Inc.
P. O. Box 923; Dept. 300
Augusta, GA 30903-0923

For Product Stewardship and Emergency Information -
Hotline: 1-800-722-5681
Fax: 706-560-4054

For additional MSDSs and to confirm this is the most current MSDS for the product, visit our web page [*www.thermalceramics.com*]

2. COMPOSITION/INFORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

INGREDIENT & CAS NUMBER	% BY WEIGHT	OSHA PEL	ACGIH TLV
Anorthite NONE	Up to 70	15 mg/m^3 (total dust) 5 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)	10 mg/m^3 (inhalable dust) 3 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)
Glass 65997-17-3	Up to 30	15 mg/m^3 (total dust) 5 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)	10 mg/m^3 (inhalable dust) 3 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)
Mullite 1344-28-1	Up to 20	15 mg/m^3 (total dust) 5 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)	10 mg/m^3 (inhalable dust) 3 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)
Crystalline silica 14808-60-7 or 14464-46-1	Up to 5	See notes[(1)]	0.05 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)

NOTES:

(1) Depending on the percentage and type(s) of silica in the mineral, the OSHA Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) for respirable dust containing crystalline silica (8 HR TWA) is based on the formula listed in 29 CFR 1910.1000, “Air Contaminants” under Table Z-3, “Mineral Dust”. For quartz containing mineral dust, the PEL = 10 mg/m³ / (% of silica + 2); for cristobalite or tridymite, the PEL = 5 mg/m³/ (% of silica + 2); for mixtures, the PEL = 10 mg/m³ / (% of quartz + 2 (% of cristobalite) + 2 (% of tridymite) + 2).

(See Section 8 "Exposure Controls / Personal Protection" for exposure guidelines.)

3. HAZARDS IDENTIFICATION

EMERGENCY OVERVIEW

WARNING!

Respirable dust from these products may contain crystalline silica, which is known to cause respiratory disease. (See Section 11 for more information)

POSSIBLE HEALTH EFFECTS

Target Organs: Eyes, skin, nose and/or throat
Primary Entry Route: Inhalation
Acute effects: May cause temporary, mild mechanical irritation to the eyes, skin, nose and/or throat. Pre-existing skin and respiratory conditions may be aggravated by exposure.
Chronic effects: Prolonged/repeated inhalation of respirable crystalline silica may cause delayed lung injury (e.g.: silicosis, lung cancer).

HAZARD CLASSIFICATION

Dust samples from these products have not been tested for their specific toxicity, but may contain more than 0.1% crystalline silica, for which the following apply:

The **International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)** has classified crystalline silica inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite from occupational sources as carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).

The Ninth Annual Report on Carcinogens (2000), prepared by the **National Toxicology Program (NTP),** classified silica, crystalline (respirable size), as a substance known to be a human carcinogen.

The **American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH)** has classified crystalline silica (quartz) as "A2-Suspected Human Carcinogen."

The **State of California,** pursuant to Proposition 65, The Safe Drinking Water and Toxic Enforcement Act of 1986, has listed "silica, crystalline (airborne particles of respirable size)" as a chemical known to the State of California to cause cancer.

The **Canadian Workplace Hazardous Materials Information System (WHMIS) –** Crystalline silica [quartz and cristobalite] is classified as Class D2A - Materials Causing Other Toxic Effects.

The **Hazardous Materials Identification System (HMIS) –**
Health: 0* Flammability: 0 Reactivity: 0 Personal Protection Index: X (Employer determined)
(* denotes potential for chronic effects)

4. FIRST AID MEASURES

EYE IRRITATION:
Flush with large amounts of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not rub eyes.

SKIN IRRITATION:
Wash affected area gently with soap and water. Skin cream or lotion after washing may be helpful.

INGESTION:
Unlikely route of exposure.

INHALATION:
Remove affected person to dust free location. See Section 8 for additional measures to reduce or eliminate exposure.

- If symptoms persist, seek medical attention. -

5. FIRE FIGHTING MEASURES

NFPA CODES: **Flammability: _0_ , Health: _1_ , Reactivity: _0_ , Special: _0_**

NFPA Unusual Hazards:	None
Flash Point:	None
Extinguishing Media:	Use extinguishing media suitable for type of surrounding fire.
Explosion Hazards:	None
Hazardous Decomposition Products:	None

6. ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

SPILL/LEAK PROCEDURES:

Avoid creating airborne dust. Follow routine housekeeping procedures. Vacuum only with HEPA filtered equipment. If sweeping is necessary, use a dust suppressant and place material in closed containers. Do not use compressed air for clean-up. Personnel should wear gloves, goggles and approved respirator.

7. HANDLING AND STORAGE

HANDLING

Limit the use of power tools unless in conjunction with local exhaust. Use hand tools whenever possible. Frequently clean the work area with HEPA filtered vacuum or wet sweeping to minimize the accumulation of debris. Do not use compressed air for clean-up.

STORAGE

Store in original factory container in a dry area. Keep container closed when not in use.

EMPTY CONTAINERS

Product packaging may contain residue. Do not reuse.

8. EXPOSURE CONTROLS/PERSONAL PROTECTION

ENGINEERING CONTROLS

Use engineering controls, such as ventilation and dust collection devices, to reduce airborne particulate concentrations to the lowest attainable level.

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION

When it is not possible or feasible to reduce airborne crystalline silica or particulate levels below the PEL through engineering controls, or until they are installed, employees are encouraged to use good work practices together with respiratory protection. Before providing respirators to employees (especially negative pressure type), employers should **1)** monitor for airborne crystalline silica and/or dust concentrations using appropriate NIOSH analytical methods and select respiratory protection based upon the results of that monitoring , **2)** have the workers evaluated by a physician to determine the workers' ability to wear respirators, and **3)** implement respiratory protection training programs. Use NIOSH-certified particulate respirators (42 CFR 84), in compliance with OSHA Respiratory Protection Standard 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.103, for the particular hazard or airborne concentrations to be encountered in the work environment. For the most current information on respirator selection, contact your supplier.

PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

Wear full body clothing, gloves, hat, and eye protection as necessary to prevent skin irritation. Washable or disposable clothing may be used. If possible, do not take unwashed work clothing home. If soiled work clothing must be taken home, employers should ensure employees are trained on the best practices to minimize or avoid non-work dust exposure (e.g., vacuum clothes before leaving the work area, wash work clothing separately, rinse washer before washing other household clothes, etc.).

EYE PROTECTION

Wear safety glasses with side shields or other forms of eye protection in compliance with appropriate OSHA standards to prevent eye irritation. The use of contact lenses is not recommended, unless used in conjunction with appropriate eye protection. Do not touch eyes with soiled body parts or materials. If possible, have eye-washing facilities readily available where eye irritation can occur.

9. PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

ODOR AND APPEARANCE:	Solid brick or block
CHEMICAL FAMILY:	Insulating refractory brick
BOILING POINT:	Not applicable
WATER SOLUBILITY (%):	Not soluble in water
MELTING POINT:	2750℉ to 2800℉
SPECIFIC GRAVITY:	Not applicable
VAPOR PRESSURE:	Not applicable
pH:	Not applicable
VAPOR DENSITY:	Not applicable
VOLATILE BY VOLUME (%):	Not applicable
MOLECULAR FORMULA:	Not Applicable

10. STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

HAZARDOUS POLYMERIZATION:	Will not occur
CHEMICAL INCOMPATIBILITIES:	Powerful oxidizers; fluorine, manganese trioxide, oxygen disulfide
HAZARDOUS DECOMPOSITION PRODUCTS:	None

11. TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

TOXICOLOGY

Dust samples from these products have not been tested. They may contain respirable crystalline silica.

Crystalline silica

Some samples of crystalline silica administered to rats by inhalation and intratracheal instillation have caused fibrosis and lung cancer. Mice and hamsters, similarly exposed, develop inflammatory disease including fibrosis but no lung cancer.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

No studies have been undertaken on humans exposed to these products in occupational environments.

Crystalline silica

Exposure to crystalline silica can cause silicosis, and exacerbate pulmonary tuberculosis and bronchitis. IARC (Monograph vol. 68, 1997) concluded that “crystalline silica from occupational sources inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite is carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)”, and noted that “carcinogenicity in humans was not detected in all industrial circumstances studied” and “may be dependent on inherent characteristics of the crystalline silica or on external factors affecting its biological activity”.

12. ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Adverse effects of this material on the environment are not anticipated.

13. DISPOSAL INFORMATION

WASTE MANAGEMENT

To prevent waste materials becoming airborne during waste storage, transportation and disposal, a covered container or plastic bagging is recommended. Comply with federal, state and local regulations.

DISPOSAL

If discarded in its purchased form, this product would not be a hazardous waste under Federal regulations (40 CFR 261) Any processing, use, alteration or chemical additions to the product, as purchased, may alter the disposal requirements. Under Federal regulations, it is the waste generator's responsibility to properly characterize a waste material, to determine if it is a hazardous waste. Check local, regional, state or provincial regulations to identify all applicable disposal requirements.

14. TRANSPORT INFORMATION

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (DOT)

Hazard Class:	Not Regulated	United Nations (UN) Number:	Not Applicable
Labels:	Not Applicable	North America (NA) Number:	Not Applicable
Placards:	Not Applicable	Bill of Lading:	Product Name

INTERNATIONAL

Canadian TDG Hazard Class & PIN: Not regulated
Not classified as dangerous goods under ADR (road), RID (train) or IMDG (ship).

15. REGULATORY INFORMATION

UNITED STATES REGULATIONS

SARA Title III:	This product does not contain any substances reportable under Sections 302, 304, 313 (40 CFR 372). Sections 311 and 312 apply.
OSHA:	Comply with Hazard Communication Standards 29 CFR 1910.1200 and 29 CFR 1926.59 and Respiratory Protection Standards 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.103.
TSCA:	All substances contained in this product are listed in the TSCA Chemical Inventory
California:	"Silica, crystalline (airborne particles of respirable size)" is listed in Proposition 65, The Safe Drinking Water and Toxic Enforcement Act of 1986 as a chemical known to the State of California to cause cancer.
Other States:	Crystalline silica products are not known to be regulated by states other than California; however, state and local OSHA and EPA regulations may apply to these products. Contact your local agency if in doubt.

INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS

Canadian WHMIS:	Class D-2A Materials Causing Other Toxic Effects
Canadian EPA:	All substances in this product are listed, as required, on the Domestic Substance List (DSL).

16. OTHER INFORMATION

SARA TITLE III HAZARD CATEGORIES

Acute Health:	No	**Pressure Hazard:**	No
Chronic Health:	Yes	**Reactivity Hazard:**	No
Fire Hazard:	No		

DEFINITIONS:

ACGIH:	American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists
ADR:	Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Road (International Regulation)
CAA:	Clean Air Act
CAS:	Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number
CERCLA:	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act
EPA:	Environmental Protection Agency
EU:	European Union
f/cc:	Fibers per cubic centimeter
HEPA:	High Efficiency Particulate Air
HMIS:	Hazardous Materials Identification System
IARC:	International Agency for Research on Cancer
IATA:	International Air Transport Association
IMDG:	International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code
mg/m^3 :	Milligrams per cubic meter of air
mppcf:	Million particles per cubic meter
MSHA:	Mine Safety and Health Administration
NFPA:	National Fire Protection Association
NIOSH:	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
OSHA:	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
PEL:	Permissible Exposure Limit
PNOC:	Particulates Not Otherwise Classified
PNOR:	Particulates Not Otherwise Regulated
RCRA:	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act
RID:	Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (International Regulation)
SARA:	Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act
Title III:	Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act
…Section 302:	Extremely Hazardous Substances
…Section 304:	Emergency Release
…Section 311:	MSDS/List of Chemicals
…Section 312:	Emergency and Hazardous Inventory
…Section 313:	Toxic Chemicals Release Reporting
STEL:	Short-Term Exposure Limit
TCLP:	Toxicity Characteristics Leaching Procedures (EPA)
TLV:	Threshold Limit Values (ACGIH)
TSCA:	Toxic Substance Control Act
WHMIS:	Workplace Hazardous Materials Information System (Canada)
29 CFR 1910.134 & 1926.103:	OSHA Respiratory Protection Standards
29 CFR 1910.1200 & 1926.59:	OSHA Hazard Communication Standards

Revision Summary: MSDS revision date updated.

MSDS Prepared By: THERMAL CERAMICS ENVIRONMENTAL, HEALTH & SAFETY DEPARTMENT

DISCLAIMER

The information presented herein is presented in good faith and believed to be accurate as of the effective date of this Material Safety Data Sheet. Employers may use this MSDS to supplement other information gathered by them in their efforts to assure the health and safety of their employees and the proper use of the product. This summary of the relevant data reflects professional judgment; employers should note that information perceived to be less relevant has not been included in this MSDS. Therefore, given the summary nature of this document, Thermal Ceramics does not extend any warranty (expressed or implied), assume any responsibility, or make any representation regarding the completeness of this information or its suitability for the purposes envisioned by the user.

Thermal Ceramics

MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

MSDS No: **141**	**Date Prepared:** **05/01/1987**	**Current Date:** 4/12/2006 **Last Revised:** (04/10/2006)

1. PRODUCT AND COMPANY IDENTIFICATION

Product Group: **REFRACTORY MORTAR**
Chemical Name: Aluminosilicate Product
Intended Use: High Temperature Thermal Insulation
Trade Names: Air-Set™ (Dry, Wet); Smooth-Set (Dry, Wet); High Temp: IFB (Dry, Wet); SR®-90 Dry; Mul-Set™ F (Dry, Wet); Unistik® A; K®-Bond (Dry, Wet); Cements; Cer-Flex® Mortars

Manufacturer/Supplier:
Thermal Ceramics Inc.
P. O. Box 923; Dept. 300
Augusta, GA 30903-0923

For Product Stewardship and Emergency Information -
Hotline: 1-800-722-5681
Fax: 706-560-4054

For additional MSDSs and to confirm this is the most current MSDS for the product, visit our web page [*www.thermalceramics.com*].

2. COMPOSITION/INFORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

INGREDIENT & CAS NUMBER	**% BY WEIGHT**	**OSHA PEL**	**ACGIH TLV**
Aluminum silicate 1302-76-7	Up to 52	15 mg/m^3 (total dust); 5 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)	10 mg/m^3 (inhalable dust) 3 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)
Aluminum oxide 1344-28-1	Up to 50	15 mg/m^3 (total dust); 5 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)	10 mg/m^3
Silica, amorphous 7631-86-9	Up to 40	(80 mg/m^3 ÷ % SiO_2) or 20 mppcf	10 mg/m^3
Kaolin 1332-58-7	Up to 27	15 mg/m^3	2 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)
Crystalline silica 14808-60-7 or 14464-46-1	Up to 20	See notes[(1)]	0.05 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)
Water 7732-18-5	0 to 11	Not established	Not established
Borate, tetra, sodium salt, decahydrate 1303-96-4	0 to 2	15 mg/m^3 (total dust); 5 mg/m^3 (respirable dust)	5 mg/m^3

NOTES:

(1) Depending on the percentage and type(s) of silica in the mineral, the OSHA Permissible Exposure Limit (PEL) for respirable dust containing crystalline silica (8 HR TWA) is based on the formula listed in 29 CFR 1910.1000, "Air Contaminants" under Table Z-3, "Mineral Dust". For quartz containing mineral dust, the PEL = 10 mg/m³ / (% of silica + 2); for cristobalite or tridymite, the PEL = 5 mg/m³/ (% of silica + 2); for mixtures, the PEL = 10 mg/m³ / (% of quartz + 2 (% of cristobalite) + 2 (% of tridymite) + 2).

(See Section 8 "Exposure Controls / Personal Protection" for exposure guidelines.)

3. HAZARDS IDENTIFICATION

EMERGENCY OVERVIEW

WARNING!

Respirable dust from these products may contain crystalline silica, which is known to cause respiratory disease. (See Section 11 for more information)

POSSIBLE HEALTH EFFECTS

Target Organs:	Eyes, skin, nose and/or throat
Primary Entry Route:	Inhalation
Acute effects:	May cause temporary, mild mechanical irritation to the eyes, skin, nose and/or throat. Pre-existing skin and respiratory conditions may be aggravated by exposure.
Chronic effects:	Prolonged/repeated inhalation of respirable crystalline silica may cause delayed lung injury (e.g.: silicosis, lung cancer).

HAZARD CLASSIFICATION

Dust samples from these products have not been tested for their specific toxicity, but may contain more than 0.1% crystalline silica, for which the following apply:

The **International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC)** has classified crystalline silica inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite from occupational sources as carcinogenic to humans (Group 1).

The Ninth Annual Report on Carcinogens (2000), prepared by the **National Toxicology Program (NTP),** classified silica, crystalline (respirable size), as a substance known to be a human carcinogen.

The **American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH)** has classified crystalline silica (quartz) as "A2-Suspected Human Carcinogen."

The **State of California,** pursuant to Proposition 65, The Safe Drinking Water and Toxic Enforcement Act of 1986, has listed "silica, crystalline (airborne particles of respirable size)" as a chemical known to the State of California to cause cancer.

The **Canadian Workplace Hazardous Materials Information System (WHMIS) –** Crystalline silica [quartz and cristobalite] is classified as Class D2A - Materials Causing Other Toxic Effects.

The **Hazardous Materials Identification System (HMIS) –**
Health: 1* Flammability: 0 Reactivity: 0 Personal Protection Index: X (Employer determined)
(* denotes potential for chronic effects)

4. FIRST AID MEASURES

EYE IRRITATION:
Flush with large amounts of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not rub eyes.

SKIN IRRITATION:
Wash affected area gently with soap and water. Skin cream or lotion after washing may be helpful.

INGESTION:
Unlikely route of exposure.

INHALATION:
Remove affected person to dust free location. See Section 8 for additional measures to reduce or eliminate exposure.

- If symptoms persist, seek medical attention. -

5. FIRE FIGHTING MEASURES

NFPA CODES: **Flammability: 0 , Health: 1 , Reactivity: 0 , Special: 0**

NFPA Unusual Hazards:	None
Flash Point:	None
Extinguishing Media:	Use extinguishing media suitable for type of surrounding fire.
Explosion Hazards:	None
Hazardous Decomposition Products:	None

6. ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

SPILL/LEAK PROCEDURES:
Avoid creating airborne dust. Follow routine housekeeping procedures. Vacuum only with HEPA filtered equipment. If sweeping is necessary, use a dust suppressant and place material in closed containers. Do not use compressed air for clean-up. Personnel should wear gloves, goggles and approved respirator.

7. HANDLING AND STORAGE

HANDLING
Limit the use of power tools unless in conjunction with local exhaust. Use hand tools whenever possible. Frequently clean the work area with HEPA filtered vacuum or wet sweeping to minimize the accumulation of debris. Do not use compressed air for clean-up.

STORAGE
Store in original factory container in a dry area. Keep container closed when not in use.

EMPTY CONTAINERS
Product packaging may contain residue. Do not reuse.

8. EXPOSURE CONTROLS/PERSONAL PROTECTION

ENGINEERING CONTROLS
Use engineering controls, such as ventilation and dust collection devices, to reduce airborne particulate concentrations to the lowest attainable level.

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION
When it is not possible or feasible to reduce airborne crystalline silica or particulate levels below the PEL through engineering controls, or until they are installed, employees are encouraged to use good work practices together with respiratory protection. Before providing respirators to employees (especially negative pressure type), employers should **1)** monitor for airborne crystalline silica and/or dust concentrations using appropriate NIOSH analytical methods and select respiratory protection based upon the results of that monitoring , **2)** have the workers evaluated by a physician to determine the workers' ability to wear respirators, and **3)** implement respiratory protection training programs. Use NIOSH-certified particulate respirators (42 CFR 84), in compliance with OSHA Respiratory Protection Standard 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.103, for the particular hazard or airborne concentrations to be encountered in the work environment. For the most current information on respirator selection, contact your supplier.

PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

Wear full body clothing, gloves, hat, and eye protection as necessary to prevent skin irritation. Washable or disposable clothing may be used. If possible, do not take unwashed work clothing home. If soiled work clothing must be taken home, employers should ensure employees are trained on the best practices to minimize or avoid non-work dust exposure (e.g., vacuum clothes before leaving the work area, wash work clothing separately, rinse washer before washing other household clothes, etc.).

EYE PROTECTION

Wear safety glasses with side shields or other forms of eye protection in compliance with appropriate OSHA standards to prevent eye irritation. The use of contact lenses is not recommended, unless used in conjunction with appropriate eye protection. Do not touch eyes with soiled body parts or materials. If possible, have eye-washing facilities readily available where eye irritation can occur.

9. PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

ODOR AND APPEARANCE:	Concrete like material
CHEMICAL FAMILY:	Refractory mortar
BOILING POINT:	Not applicable
WATER SOLUBILITY (%):	Not soluble in water
MELTING POINT:	Up to 3200°F (depending on the product)
SPECIFIC GRAVITY:	Not applicable
VAPOR PRESSURE:	Not applicable
pH:	Not applicable
VAPOR DENSITY:	Not applicable
VOLATILE BY VOLUME (%):	Not applicable
MOLECULAR FORMULA:	Not Applicable

10. STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

HAZARDOUS POLYMERIZATION:	Will not occur
CHEMICAL INCOMPATIBILITIES:	Powerful oxidizers; fluorine, manganese trioxide, oxygen disulfide
HAZARDOUS DECOMPOSITION PRODUCTS:	None

11. TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

TOXICOLOGY

Dust samples from these products have not been tested. They may contain respirable crystalline silica.

Crystalline silica

Some samples of crystalline silica administered to rats by inhalation and intratracheal instillation have caused fibrosis and lung cancer. Mice and hamsters, similarly exposed, develop inflammatory disease including fibrosis but no lung cancer.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

No studies have been undertaken on humans exposed to these products in occupational environments.

Crystalline silica

Exposure to crystalline silica can cause silicosis, and exacerbate pulmonary tuberculosis and bronchitis. IARC (Monograph vol. 68, 1997) concluded that “crystalline silica from occupational sources inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite is carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)”, and noted that “carcinogenicity in humans was not detected in all industrial circumstances studied” and “may be dependent on inherent characteristics of the crystalline silica or on external factors affecting its biological activity”.

12. ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Adverse effects of this material on the environment are not anticipated.

13. DISPOSAL INFORMATION

WASTE MANAGEMENT

To prevent waste materials becoming airborne during waste storage, transportation and disposal, a covered container or plastic bagging is recommended. Comply with federal, state and local regulations.

DISPOSAL

If discarded in its purchased form, this product would not be a hazardous waste under Federal regulations (40 CFR 261) Any processing, use, alteration or chemical additions to the product, as purchased, may alter the disposal requirements. Under Federal regulations, it is the waste generator's responsibility to properly characterize a waste material, to determine if it is a hazardous waste. Check local, regional, state or provincial regulations to identify all applicable disposal requirements.

14. TRANSPORT INFORMATION

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (DOT)

Hazard Class:	Not Regulated	United Nations (UN) Number:	Not Applicable
Labels:	Not Applicable	North America (NA) Number:	Not Applicable
Placards:	Not Applicable	Bill of Lading:	Product Name

INTERNATIONAL

Canadian TDG Hazard Class & PIN: Not regulated
Not classified as dangerous goods under ADR (road), RID (train) or IMDG (ship).

15. REGULATORY INFORMATION

UNITED STATES REGULATIONS

SARA Title III:	This product does not contain any substances reportable under Sections 302, 304, 313 (40 CFR 372). Sections 311 and 312 apply.
OSHA:	Comply with Hazard Communication Standards 29 CFR 1910.1200 and 29 CFR 1926.59 and Respiratory Protection Standards 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.103.
TSCA:	All substances contained in this product are listed in the TSCA Chemical Inventory
California:	"Silica, crystalline (airborne particles of respirable size)" is listed in Proposition 65, The Safe Drinking Water and Toxic Enforcement Act of 1986 as a chemical known to the State of California to cause cancer.
Other States:	Crystalline silica products are not known to be regulated by states other than California; however, state and local OSHA and EPA regulations may apply to these products. Contact your local agency if in doubt.

INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS

Canadian WHMIS:	Class D-2A Materials Causing Other Toxic Effects
Canadian EPA:	All substances in this product are listed, as required, on the Domestic Substance List (DSL).

16. OTHER INFORMATION

SARA TITLE III HAZARD CATEGORIES

Acute Health:	No	**Pressure Hazard:**	No
Chronic Health:	Yes	**Reactivity Hazard:**	No
Fire Hazard:	No		

DEFINITIONS:

ACGIH:	American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists
ADR:	Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Road (International Regulation)
CAA:	Clean Air Act
CAS:	Chemical Abstracts Service Registry Number
CERCLA:	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act
EPA:	Environmental Protection Agency
EU:	European Union
f/cc:	Fibers per cubic centimeter
HEPA:	High Efficiency Particulate Air
HMIS:	Hazardous Materials Identification System
IARC:	International Agency for Research on Cancer
IATA:	International Air Transport Association
IMDG:	International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code
mg/m^3 :	Milligrams per cubic meter of air
mppcf:	Million particles per cubic meter
MSHA:	Mine Safety and Health Administration
NFPA:	National Fire Protection Association
NIOSH:	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
OSHA:	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
PEL:	Permissible Exposure Limit
PNOC:	Particulates Not Otherwise Classified
PNOR:	Particulates Not Otherwise Regulated
RCRA:	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act
RID:	Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (International Regulation)
SARA:	Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act
Title III:	Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act
…Section 302:	Extremely Hazardous Substances
…Section 304:	Emergency Release
…Section 311:	MSDS/List of Chemicals
…Section 312:	Emergency and Hazardous Inventory
…Section 313:	Toxic Chemicals Release Reporting
STEL:	Short-Term Exposure Limit
TCLP:	Toxicity Characteristics Leaching Procedures (EPA)
TLV:	Threshold Limit Values (ACGIH)
TSCA:	Toxic Substance Control Act
WHMIS:	Workplace Hazardous Materials Information System (Canada)
29 CFR 1910.134 & 1926.103:	OSHA Respiratory Protection Standards
29 CFR 1910.1200 & 1926.59:	OSHA Hazard Communication Standards

Revision Summary: **Section 1:** Product Cer-Flex® added.

MSDS Prepared By: THERMAL CERAMICS ENVIRONMENTAL, HEALTH & SAFETY DEPARTMENT

DISCLAIMER

The information presented herein is presented in good faith and believed to be accurate as of the effective date of this Material Safety Data Sheet. Employers may use this MSDS to supplement other information gathered by them in their efforts to assure the health and safety of their employees and the proper use of the product. This summary of the relevant data reflects professional judgment; employers should note that information perceived to be less relevant has not been included in this MSDS. Therefore, given the summary nature of this document, Thermal Ceramics does not extend any warranty (expressed or implied), assume any responsibility, or make any representation regarding the completeness of this information or its suitability for the purposes envisioned by the user.

Printing date 05/12/2004 *Reviewed on 06/12/2007*

1 Identification of substance

· ***Product details***

· ***Trade name: GREENSET-94-P***

· ***Manufacturer/Supplier:***
ANH Refractories Company
400 Fairway Drive
Moon Township, PA 15108

General Phone: (412)375-6600

· ***Information department:*** *MSDS Technical Information: (412)375-6837*
· ***Emergency information:*** *CHEMTREC 24 HOUR EMERGENCY PHONE NUMBER: 1-800-424-9300.*

2 Composition/Data on components

· ***Chemical characterization***
· ***Description:*** *Mixture of the substances listed below with nonhazardous additions.*

· ***Components:***

1344-28-1	non-fibrous alumina	60-100%
7664-38-2	phosphoric acid	5-10%
13530-50-2	aluminum phosphate binder (as P2O5)	1-2.5%
1302-78-9	bentonite	1-2.5%
14808-60-7	crystalline silica (quartz)	0.1-0.5%

· ***Additional information:*** *For the wording of the listed risk phrases refer to section 16.*

3 Hazards identification

· ***Hazard description:***
Toxic
· ***Medical conditions aggravated by exposure to the product:*** *Asthma, chronic lung disease, and skin irritation.*
· ***Carcinogenicity Information:***
Crystalline silica is listed by IARC as a Group 1 Carcinogen "sufficient evidence of carcinogenicity in humans", and is listed by NTP as K, "Known To Be A Human Carcinogen".
· ***Information pertaining to particular dangers for man and environment:***
The product has to be labelled due to the calculation procedure of the "General Classification guideline for preparations of the EU" in the latest valid version.
May cause cancer by inhalation.
Irritating to eyes, respiratory system and skin.
· ***NFPA ratings (scale 0-4)***

Health = 1
Fire = 0
Reactivity = 0

(Contd. on page 2)

Trade name: GREENSET-94-P

(Contd. from page 1)

· ***HMIS Classification***

HEALTH	1
FIRE	0
REACTIVITY	0

Health: 1
Flammability: 0
Reactivity: 0

4 First aid measures

· ***After inhalation:*** *Move to fresh air; consult doctor if needed.*
· ***After skin contact:*** *Immediately wash with water and soap and rinse thoroughly.*
· ***After eye contact:*** *Flush eyes with water for 15 minutes. If irritation persists, consult a doctor.*
· ***After swallowing:***
This product is intended for industrial applications; in the unlikely event that this product is swallowed, consult a physician if any adverse medical conditions occur.

5 Fire fighting measures

· ***Suitable extinguishing agents:*** *Use fire fighting measures that suit the environment.*
· ***Protective equipment:*** *No special measures required.*

6 Accidental release measures

· ***Person-related safety precautions:*** *Not required.*
· ***Measures for environmental protection:*** *No special measures required.*
· ***Measures for cleaning/collecting:***
Dispose contaminated material as waste according to item 13.
Ensure adequate ventilation.

7 Handling and storage

· ***Handling:***
· ***Information for safe handling:***
Ensure good ventilation/exhaust at the workplace.
Prevent formation of dust.
· ***Information about protection against explosions and fires:*** *No special measures required.*

· ***Storage:***
· ***Requirements to be met by storerooms and containers:*** *No special requirements.*
· ***Information about storage in one common storage facility:*** *Not required.*
· ***Further information about storage conditions:*** *Store product inside, out of extreme weather conditions.*

(Contd. on page 3)

Trade name: GREENSET-94-P

(Contd. from page 2)

8 Exposure controls and personal protection

· ***Components with limit values that require monitoring at the workplace:***

1344-28-1 non-fibrous alumina	
PEL	*15*;5** mg/m³* **Total dust **Respirable fraction*
TLV	*10 mg/m³* *(e)*
7664-38-2 phosphoric acid	
PEL	*1 mg/m³*
REL	*Short-term value: 3 mg/m³* *Long-term value: 1 mg/m³*
TLV	*Short-term value: 3 mg/m³* *Long-term value: 1 mg/m³*
14808-60-7 crystalline silica (quartz)	
REL	*0.05* mg/m³* **Respirable dust*
TLV	*0.05 R mg/m³*

· ***Personal protective equipment:***
· ***General protective and hygienic measures:***
Keep away from foodstuffs, beverages and feed.
Wash hands before breaks and at the end of work.
Store protective clothing separately.
Avoid contact with the eyes and skin.
· ***Breathing equipment:***

NIOSH approved respirators should be used if dust is present. A respiratory protection program should be implemented if exposures exceed OSHA PELs.

· ***Protection of hands:***

Protective gloves recommended

The glove material has to be impermeable and resistant to the product/ the substance/ the preparation.
Due to missing tests no recommendation to the glove material can be given for the product/ the preparation/ the chemical mixture.
Selection of the glove material on consideration of the penetration times, rates of diffusion and the degradation
· ***Material of gloves***
The selection of the suitable gloves does not only depend on the material, but also on further marks of quality and varies from manufacturer to manufacturer. As the product is a preparation of several substances, the resistance of the glove material can not be calculated in advance and has therefore to be checked prior to the application.
· ***Penetration time of glove material***
The exact break trough time has to be found out by the manufacturer of the protective gloves and has to be observed.

(Contd. on page 4)

(Contd. from page 3)

· ***Eye protection:*** *Safety glasses with side shields recommended*

9 Physical and chemical properties

· ***General Information***	
Form:	*Solid*
Color:	*According to product specification*
Odor:	*No specific odor.*
· ***Change in condition***	
Melting point/Melting range:	*Undetermined.*
Boiling point/Boiling range:	*Undetermined.*
· ***Flash point:***	*Not applicable.*
· ***Auto igniting:***	*Product is not selfigniting.*
· ***Danger of explosion:***	*Product does not present an explosion hazard.*
· ***Density:***	*Not determined.*
· ***Solubility in / Miscibility with***	
Water:	*Insoluble.*

10 Stability and reactivity

· ***Thermal decomposition / conditions to be avoided:*** *No decomposition if used according to specifications.*
· ***Dangerous reactions*** *No dangerous reactions known.*
· ***Dangerous products of decomposition:***
Refractories containing crystalline silica may, after service,contain more or less crystalline silica. Care must be taken to avoid and/or control dust from demolition. If in doubt of the proper protection, seek advice from a safety professional.

11 Toxicological information

· ***Acute toxicity:***
· ***Primary acute effects:***
· ***Skin contact:*** *Irritant to skin and mucous membranes.*
· ***Eye contact:*** *Irritating effect.*
· ***Sensitization:*** *No sensitizing effects known.*
· ***Additional toxicological information:***
The product shows the following dangers according to internally approved calculation methods for preparations:
Irritant
Carcinogenic if inhaled.

(Contd. on page 5)

Trade name: GREENSET-94-P

(Contd. from page 4)

12 Ecological information

· ***General notes:*** *At present there are no ecotoxicological assessments.*

13 Disposal considerations

· ***Recommendation for Disposal of Product:***
As sold, this product is not RCRA hazardous. Final used condition must be evaluated prior to disposal. Dispose of waste product in accordance with Federal, State and Local regulations.
Dust created during demolition of used product may contain crystalline silica.

· ***Recommendation for Disposal of Uncleaned Packaging:*** *Reuse, recycle or treat as industrial waste.*

14 Transport information

· ***Transport/Additional information:*** *Not dangerous according to available information.*

15 Regulations

· ***SARA 313 TOXIC CHEMICALS***

No material listed in the components in Section 2 of this MSDS is on the SARA 313 list.

· ***SARA 302 EXTREMELY HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES***

No material listed in the components in Section 2 of this MSDS is on the SARA 302 list.

· ***TSCA (Toxic Substances Control Act)***
This substance or all the ingredients of this product are on the Chemical Substances Inventory of the Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA Inventory). The presence on this list does not require any legal reporting.

· ***WHMIS Classification***
Class D - Division 2 - Sub Division A
Untested mixture containing a very toxic material
Class D - Division 2 - Sub Division B
Untested mixture containing a toxic material
This product has been classified in accordance with the hazard criteria of the Controlled Products Regulations (CPR) and the MSDS contains all the information required by the CPR.

· ***Cancerogenity categories***

· ***EPA (Environmental Protection Agency)***

None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***IARC (International Agency for Research on Cancer)***

14808-60-7	*crystalline silica (quartz)*	*1*

· ***NTP (National Toxicology Program)***

14808-60-7	*crystalline silica (quartz)*	*R*

· ***TLV (Threshold Limit Value established by ACGIH)***

1344-28-1	*non-fibrous alumina*	*A4*
14808-60-7	*crystalline silica (quartz)*	*A2*

(Contd. on page 6)

Trade name: GREENSET-94-P

(Contd. from page 5)

· ***MAK (German Maximum Workplace Concentration)***		
1344-28-1	*non-fibrous alumina*	*2*
14808-60-7	*crystalline silica (quartz)*	*1*

· ***NIOSH-Ca (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health)***	
14808-60-7	*crystalline silica (quartz)*

· ***OSHA-Ca (Occupational Safety & Health Administration)***
None of the ingredients is listed.

· ***Classification according to EU-guidelines***

· ***Hazard symbols:***
Toxic

· ***Hazard-determining components of labeling:***
crystalline silica (quartz)

· ***Risk phrases:***
May cause cancer by inhalation.
Irritating to eyes, respiratory system and skin.

· ***Safety phrases:***
When using do not eat or drink.
Do not breathe dust.
Avoid contact with eyes.
In case of contact with eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical advice.
After contact with skin, wash immediately with plenty of soap and water
Wear suitable protective clothing and gloves.
In case of accident or if you feel unwell, seek medical advice immediately.

· ***National regulations:***

· ***The following ingredients are known in the state of California to be a cancer risk (Proposition 65):***	
14808-60-7	*crystalline silica (quartz)*

16 Other information

This information is based on our present knowledge. However, this shall not constitute a guarantee for any specific product features and shall not establish a legally valid contractual relationship.

· ***Contact:*** *Patricia A. Kott 412-375-6712*
· ***Creation date:*** *08/14/2000*

IMERYS

100 Mansell Court East, Suite 300; Roswell, GA 30076
Telephone (770) 594-0660 Fax: (770) 645-3384
Customer Service: (800) 251-6327

MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

Section 1 - Material Identity

Product Trade Name(s): 6-Tile
Common Names(s): Kaolin Clay, China Clay
Chemical Name: Kaolin
CAS Number: 1332-58-7 (In TSCA Inventory)
Physical Form: White Powder

HMIS Ratings	
Health Hazard	1
Flammability Hazard	0
Reactivity Hazard	0
Max. Personal Protection	E

Manufacturer's Name & Address: IMERYS Pigments & Additives Group, 100 Mansell Court East, Suite 300; Roswell, GA 30076
Emergency Telephone: (800) 424-9300 CHEMTREC

Section 2 - Ingredients and Hazards

Ingredient	Wt. % (Approx.)	CAS No.	OSHA PEL*	ACGIH TLV*
Kaolin - $Al_2Si_2O_5(OH)_4$	> 98%	1332-58-7	5 mg/m^3 Resp. 15 mg/m^3 Total	2 mg/m^3 Resp. --
Crystalline Silica, Quartz	> 0.1% - ~1%	14808-60-7	0.1 mg/m^3 Resp.	0.05 mg/m^3 Resp.
Water	< 2%			

* Unless otherwise noted, all PEL and TLV values are reported as 8 hour time weighted averages (TWA).

Section 3 - Hazards Identification and Cautions

Appearance: White Powder
Primary Routes of Entry: Skin contact, skin absorption, eye contact, ingestion: Hazard Classification - None. (Historical basis for classification.)
Target Organs: Eye, skin and lungs
Medical Conditions Aggravated by Exposure: Skin contact may aggravate existing dermatitis. Breathing excessive quantities of kaolin dust may aggravate pre-existing respiratory conditions.

Potential Health Effects:

Eye Contact: This product may produce irritation upon contact with the eye. See also Section 4 below.
Skin Contact: Prolonged or repeated exposure may cause skin irritation. Kaolin is not expected to be absorbed through the skin in harmful amounts or to produce an allergic skin reaction. See also Section 4 below.
Ingestion: No adverse effect is expected. If ingested, seek medical advice. See also Section 4 below.
Inhalation: Inhalation of excessive quantities of kaolin dust may irritate the respiratory tract. Prolonged exposure to respirable kaolin dust without use of appropriate respiratory equipment could adversely affect respiratory function including fibrogenic response. See Am. Rev. Respir. Dis. 1983; 127:215-220; 231-253; 141-142; Doc. Thres. Limit Values and Bio. Exp. Ind., Sixth Edition, 1991: OSHA PEL-29 C.F.R. 1910.1000.
Subchronic, Chronic: None expected. No applicable information was found concerning any potential health effects resulting from subchronic or chronic exposure to kaolin.

This product typically contains crystalline silica (quartz sand) above 0.1% as a naturally occurring impurity. The International Agency for Research on Cancer has concluded that "crystalline silica inhaled in the form of quartz or cristohalite from occupational sources is carcinogenic to humans (Group I)." It also noted that carcinogenicity was not detected in all industrial circumstance studies, and may be dependent on external factors affecting its biological activity or distribution of its polymorphs. (See IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Volume 68 (1997).) Exposure to respirable silica has also been associated with silicosis, scleroderma, and nephrotoxicity. (See Occupational Lung Disorders, Third Edition, Chapter 12 (1994) and American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine, Volume 155, pp 761-765 (1997).)

Section 4 - First Aid Measures

Eye Contact: Follow good industrial hygiene practices. In case of contact, immediately flush eyes with plenty of water. Seek medical aid if necessary.

Skin Contact: Follow good industrial hygiene practices. Wash affected skin areas thoroughly with soap and water. Seek medical aid if necessary.

Inhalation: Follow good industrial hygiene practices. If excessive exposure by inhalation is suspected, remove to fresh air. If necessary, a MSHA/NIOSH or OSHA/NIOSH approved respirator is recommended. Seek medical aid if necessary.

Ingestion: Follow good industrial hygiene practices. If ingested, do not induce vomiting. If conscious, drink two glasses of water. Seek medical aid if necessary.

Section 5 - Fire Fighting Measures

Explosion Data: Not Explosive
LEL: Not Applicable
UEL: Not Applicable
Extinguishing Media: Product will not burn.

Flammability: Not Flammable or Combustible
Flash Point: Not Applicable
Auto-Ignition: Not Applicable

NFPA 704M Hazard Classification: Health: 1 Flammable: 0 Reactivity: 0

Use appropriate extinguishing media for packaging material if applicable.

Section 6 - Accidental Release Measures

Vacuum, pump or scoop spilled material into containers for reclaiming or disposal. Use proper respiratory and personal protective equipment. MSHA/NIOSH or OSHA/NIOSH approved respirator recommended. Spilled materials may cause slippery conditions when wet. Care should be exercised when walking on spills on floors or concrete pads. No neutralizing chemicals required. Material is inert and nonreactive. Kaolin is not a CERCLA listed hazardous substance.

Section 7 - Handling and Storage

Storage in a cool, dry location is recommended.
Spilled materials may cause slippery conditions when wet. Care should be exercised when walking on spills on floors or concrete pads.
Minimize dust generation & accumulation.
If excessive dust is generated, provide adequate ventilation and use proper respiratory and personal protective equipment.
MSHA/NIOSH or OSHA/NIOSH approved respirator recommended

Section 8 - Exposure Control/Personal Protection

Hazardous Ingredient	Weight %(Approx.)	CAS No.	MSHA PEL	OSHA PEL	ACGIH TLV
		1332-58-7	10mg/cu.m. Total	15mg/cu.m. Total 5 mg/cu.m. Resp.	2 mg/cu.m. Respirable
Crystalline Silica, Quartz	> 0.1% - ~1%	14808-60-7	0.1 mg/m3 Resp	0.1 mg/m^3 Resp.	0.05 mg/m^3 Resp.

Unless otherwise noted, all PEL and TLV values are reported as 8 hour time weighted averages (TWA).

Respiratory Protection: If respirator is required, use of a MSHA/NIOSH or OSHA/NIOSH approved respirator is recommended.

Ventilation: Use exhaust ventilation, if required, to maintain dust concentration below recommended exposure limits.

Protective Equipment: Wear side shield safety glasses. Rubber gloves are recommended for prolonged exposure.

Section 9 - Physical and Chemical Properties

Physical State:	Solid	**Boiling Point:**	Not Applicable
Appearance & Odor:	Odorless, white powder	**Freezing Point:**	Not Applicable
pH (Aqueous Suspension):	4.0 - 6.0	**Vapor Pressure:**	Not Applicable
Specific Gravity:	~2.6	**Vapor Density:**	Not Applicable
% Solubility in Water:	Insoluble	**VOC:**	None

Melting Point: Not Determined, > 1500°C **Evaporation Rate:** Not Applicable

Section 10 - Stability and Reactivity

Chemically Stable? Yes _X_ No___ Inert and nonreactive.
Compatible with Other Substances? Yes _X_ No ___ Inert and nonreactive.
Hazardous Decomposition/By-Products: No hazardous decomposition or by-products expected. Inert and nonreactive.
Conditions Contributing to Hazardous Polymerization: None, inert and nonreactive.

Section 11 - Disposal Considerations

EPA Waste Number: Under RCRA (40 CFR 261) kaolin is a non-hazardous waste. Dispose of waste material in accordance with all local, state and federal requirements.

Section 12 - Toxicological Information

kaolin - CAS No. 1332-58-7
Primary Route of Exposure: _X_ Skin; _X_ Eye Contact; _X_ Inhalation; ___ Ingestion

Acute Health Hazards:
Eye contact may cause mechanical irritation if exposed to excessive amounts of kaolin.
Skin contact may aggravate existing dermatitis.
Inhalation from prolonged and continuous exposure to excessive quantities of dust may aggravate existing asthmatic or respiratory conditions.
No adverse effect expected when ingested.

Chronic Health Hazards:
Prolonged inhalation of excessive levels of kaolin dust may cause a simple pneumoconiotic condition, not normally associated with a decrement in lung function. In cases of long term exposure to extremely high levels of dust, complicated pneumoconiosis with lung function impairment may occur.

Carcinogenicity*: NTP? No IARC? No OSHA? No

Mutagenicity: None known **Teratogenicity:** None known **Reproductive Effects:** None known

* See Section 3 for discussion of crystalline silica.

Section 13 - Transport Information

EPA Waste Number: Not Regulated
DOT Classification: Not Regulated **DOT/IMO Classification:** Not Regulated
Internal UN: Not Regulated

Section 14 - Regulatory Information

FDA: Kaolin is as generally recognized as safe (GRAS) under the FDA in accordance with 21 CFR 186.1256. Additionally, kaolin is established as a component of the uncoated or coated food-contact surface of paper and paperboard in accordance with 21 CFR 176.170 (aqueous and fatty foods) and 21 CFR 176.180 (dry foods).

SARA Title III Section 302 Extremely Hazardous Substances: This product does not contain extremely hazardous substances subject to the reporting requirements of Section 302 of Title III of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 and 40 CFR Part 355.
SARA Title III Section 311 and 312 Health and Physical Hazard Categories per 40 CFR 370.2:

Immediate	Delayed	Fire	Pressure	Reactivity
Yes	Yes	No	No	No

SARA Section 313 Notification: This product does not contain toxic chemicals subject to the reporting requirements of Section 313 of Title III of the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 and 40 CFR Part 372.

TSCA: Product is listed in Initial Inventory, Vol. 1, Appendix A, CAS No. 1332-58-7.

The International Agency for Research on Cancer has concluded that "crystalline silica inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite from occupational sources is carcinogenic to humans (Group I)." It also noted that carcinogenicity was not detected in all industrial circumstance studies, and may be dependent on external factors affecting its biological activity or distribution of its polymorphs. (See IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Volume 68 (1997).) Exposure to respirable silica has also been associated with silicosis, scleroderma, and nephrotoxicity. (See Occupational Lung Disorders, Third Edition, Chapter 12 (1994) and American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine, Volume 155, pp 761-765 (1997).)

WARNING: This product may also contain extremely small amounts of one or more naturally-occurring materials known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

While this information and recommendations set forth herein are believed to be accurate as of the date hereof, IMERYS PIGMENTS & ADDITIVES GROUP MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, WITH RESPECT HERETO

AND DISCLAIMS ALL LIABILITY FROM RELIANCE THEREON.

Date Prepared: 07/27/82
Revised: 06/2000

MSDS Number: **A2796** * * * * * *Effective Date:* ***11/09/06*** * * * * * *Supercedes:* ***02/12/04***

This material is used in the Cone 10 Kiln Wash

MSDS *Material Safety Data Sheet*

From: Mallinckrodt Baker, Inc.
222 Red School Lane
Phillipsburg, NJ 08865

24 Hour Emergency Telephone: 908-859-2151
CHEMTREC: 1-800-424-9300

National Response in Canada
CANUTEC: 613-996-6666

Outside U.S. And Canada
Chemtrec: 703-527-3887

NOTE: CHEMTREC, CANUTEC and National Response Center emergency numbers to be used only in the event of chemical emergencies involving a spill, leak, fire, exposure or accident involving chemicals.

All non-emergency questions should be directed to Customer Service (1-800-582-2537) for assistance.

Aluminum Hydroxide

1. Product Identification

Synonyms: Aluminum hydrate; Aluminum trihydrate; Hydrated alumina
CAS No.: 21645-51-2
Molecular Weight: 78.00
Chemical Formula: Al(OH)3
Product Codes: 0518

2. Composition/Information on Ingredients

Ingredient	CAS No	Percent	Hazardous
Aluminum Hydroxide	21645-51-2	98 - 100%	Yes

3. Hazards Identification

Emergency Overview

WARNING! CAUSES IRRITATION TO EYES AND RESPIRATORY TRACT.

SAF-T-DATA(tm) Ratings (Provided here for your convenience)

Health Rating: 1 - Slight
Flammability Rating: 0 - None
Reactivity Rating: 1 - Slight
Contact Rating: 2 - Moderate
Lab Protective Equip: GOGGLES; LAB COAT; PROPER GLOVES
Storage Color Code: Green (General Storage)

Potential Health Effects

Inhalation:
Causes irritation to the respiratory tract. Symptoms may include coughing, shortness of breath.
Ingestion:
Not expected to be a health hazard via ingestion.
Skin Contact:
Not expected to be a health hazard from skin exposure.
Eye Contact:
Causes irritation, redness, and pain.
Chronic Exposure:
Repeated exposure may cause symptoms similar to those listed for acute effects. Prolonged contact with skin may result in minor mechanical irritation.
Aggravation of Pre-existing Conditions:
No information found.

4. First Aid Measures

Inhalation:
Remove to fresh air. If not breathing, give artificial respiration. If breathing is difficult, give oxygen. Get medical attention.
Ingestion:
Not expected to require first aid measures. If large amounts were swallowed, give water to drink and get medical advice.
Skin Contact:
Wash exposed area with soap and water. Get medical advice if irritation develops.
Eye Contact:
Immediately flush eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes, lifting lower and upper eyelids occasionally. Get medical attention immediately.

5. Fire Fighting Measures

Fire:
Not considered to be a fire hazard.
Explosion:
Not considered to be an explosion hazard.
Fire Extinguishing Media:
Use any means suitable for extinguishing surrounding fire.
Special Information:
In the event of a fire, wear full protective clothing and NIOSH-approved self-contained breathing apparatus with full facepiece operated in the pressure demand or other positive pressure mode.

6. Accidental Release Measures

Ventilate area of leak or spill. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment as specified in Section 8. Spills: Sweep up and containerize for reclamation or disposal. Vacuuming or wet sweeping may be used to avoid dust dispersal.

7. Handling and Storage

Keep in a tightly closed container, stored in a cool, dry, ventilated area. Protect against physical damage. Isolate from incompatible substances. Containers of this material may be hazardous when empty since they retain product residues (dust, solids); observe all warnings and precautions listed for the product.

8. Exposure Controls/Personal Protection

Airborne Exposure Limits:
None established.
Ventilation System:
In general, dilution ventilation is a satisfactory health hazard control for this substance. However, if conditions of use create discomfort to the worker, a local exhaust system should be considered.
Personal Respirators (NIOSH Approved):
For conditions of use where exposure to dust or mist is apparent and engineering controls are not feasible, a particulate respirator (NIOSH type N95 or better filters) may be worn. If oil particles (e.g. lubricants, cutting fluids, glycerine, etc.) are present, use a NIOSH type R or P filter. For emergencies or instances where the exposure levels are not known, use a full-face positive-pressure, air-supplied respirator. WARNING: Air-purifying respirators do not protect workers in oxygen-deficient atmospheres.
Skin Protection:
Wear protective gloves and clean body-covering clothing.
Eye Protection:
Use chemical safety goggles and/or full face shield where dusting or splashing of solutions is possible. Maintain eye wash fountain and quick-drench facilities in work area.

9. Physical and Chemical Properties

Appearance:
White Powder.
Odor:
Odorless.
Solubility:
Practically insoluble in water.
Specific Gravity:
2.42
pH:
> 7 (Basic).
% Volatiles by volume @ 21C (70F):
0
Boiling Point:
No information found.

Melting Point:
300C (572F)
Vapor Density (Air=1):
Not applicable.
Vapor Pressure (mm Hg):
Not applicable.
Evaporation Rate (BuAc=1):
No information found.

---

10. Stability and Reactivity

Stability:
Stable under ordinary conditions of use and storage. Aluminum hydroxide forms a gel on prolonged contact with water; absorbs acids and carbon dioxide.
Hazardous Decomposition Products:
May produce oxides of aluminum.
Hazardous Polymerization:
Will not occur.
Incompatibilities:
Strong acids, strong oxidizers. Aluminum hydroxide can react dangerously with bismuth.
Conditions to Avoid:
Moisture and incompatibles.

---

11. Toxicological Information

No LD50/LC50 information found relating to normal routes of occupational exposure.

```
--------\Cancer Lists\---------------------------------------------------------
                                       ---NTP Carcinogen---
Ingredient                             Known    Anticipated    IARC Category
------------------------------------   -----    -----------    -------------
Aluminum Hydroxide (21645-51-2)         No          No             None
```

---

12. Ecological Information

Environmental Fate:
No information found.
Environmental Toxicity:
No information found.

---

13. Disposal Considerations

Whatever cannot be saved for recovery or recycling should be managed in an appropriate and approved waste disposal facility. Processing, use or contamination of this product may change the waste management options. State and local disposal regulations may differ from federal disposal regulations. Dispose of container and unused contents in accordance with federal, state and local requirements.

---

14. Transport Information

Not regulated.

---

15. Regulatory Information

```
--------\Chemical Inventory Status - Part 1\---------------------------------
Ingredient                                       TSCA  EC   Japan  Australia
-----------------------------------------------  ----  ---  -----  ---------
Aluminum Hydroxide (21645-51-2)                   Yes  Yes   Yes      Yes

--------\Chemical Inventory Status - Part 2\---------------------------------
                                                        --Canada--
Ingredient                                       Korea  DSL   NDSL  Phil.
-----------------------------------------------  -----  ---   ----  -----
Aluminum Hydroxide (21645-51-2)                   Yes   Yes   No     Yes

--------\Federal, State & International Regulations - Part 1\----------------
                                          -SARA 302-    ------SARA 313------
Ingredient                                RQ    TPQ     List  Chemical Catg.
-----------------------------------------  ---   -----   ----  --------------
Aluminum Hydroxide (21645-51-2)           No    No      No         No

--------\Federal, State & International Regulations - Part 2\----------------
```

```
                                                          -RCRA-    -TSCA-
  Ingredient                                  CERCLA      261.33     8(d)
  -----------------------------------------   ------      ------    ------
  Aluminum Hydroxide (21645-51-2)             No          No         No


Chemical Weapons Convention:  No     TSCA 12(b):  No     CDTA:  No
SARA 311/312:  Acute: Yes      Chronic: Yes  Fire: No  Pressure: No
Reactivity: No          (Pure / Solid)
```

Australian Hazchem Code: None allocated.
Poison Schedule: None allocated.
WHMIS:
This MSDS has been prepared according to the hazard criteria of the Controlled Products Regulations (CPR) and the MSDS contains all of the information required by the CPR.

16. Other Information

NFPA Ratings: Health: **1** Flammability: **0** Reactivity: **0**
Label Hazard Warning:
WARNING! CAUSES IRRITATION TO EYES AND RESPIRATORY TRACT.
Label Precautions:
Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothing.
Wash thoroughly after handling.
Avoid breathing dust.
Keep container closed.
Use only with adequate ventilation.
Label First Aid:
In case of eye contact, immediately flush eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Remove material from skin and clothing. If inhaled, remove to fresh air. If not breathing, give artificial respiration. If breathing is difficult, give oxygen. In all cases, get medical attention.
Product Use:
Laboratory Reagent.
Revision Information:
MSDS Section(s) changed since last revision of document include: 3.
Disclaimer:

Prepared by: Environmental Health & Safety
Phone Number: (314) 654-1600 (U.S.A.)

HMIS RATING

HEALTH - - - - - - - - - - - - - 1
FLAMMABILITY - - - - - - - - 0
REACTIVITY - - - - - - - - - - 0
PERSONAL PROTECTION - E

Material Safety Data Sheet

May be used to comply with OSHA's Hazard Communication Standard, 29 CFR 1910.1200. Standard must be consulted for specific requirements.

U.S. Department of Labor
Occupational Safety and Health Administration
(Non-Mandatory Form)
Form Approved
OMB No. 1218-0072

IDENTITY *(As Used on Label and List)* **HALTEX® Alumina Trihydrate** (all grades)	*Note: Blank spaces are not permitted. If any item is not applicable, or no information is available, the space must be marked to indicate that.*

Section I

Manufacturer's Name **TOR Minerals International**	Emergency Telephone Number **361/883-5591**
Address *(Number, Street, City, State, and ZIP Code)* **722 Burleson Street (Plant)**	Telephone Number for Information **361/883-5591**
Corpus Christi, TX 78402	Date Prepared **January 2006**
	Signature of Preparer *(optional)*

Section II - Hazardous Ingredients/Identity Information

Hazardous Components (Specific Chemical Identity; Common Name(s))	OSHA PEL	ACGIH TLV	Other Limits Recommended	% *(optional)*
Aluminium Trihydrate ($Al(OH)_3$)	**10 mg/m³ (dust)**	**10 mg/m³ (dust)**		**100.0%**
(CAS No. 21645-51-2)				

(These are typical quantities and may change slightly with different lots.)

Section III - Physical/Chemical Characteristics

Boiling Point	**2980 ± 60**	Specific Gravity (H_2O = 1)	**2.38 - 2.42**
Vapor Pressure (mm Hg.)	**N/A**	Melting Point	**2015 ± 15**
Vapor Density (AIR = 1)	**N/A**	Evaporation Rate (Butyl Acetate = 1)	**N/A**
Solubility in Water	**Insoluble**		
Appearance and Odor	**Fine white powder with no odor.**		

Section IV - Fire and Explosion Hazard Data

Flash Point (Method Used)	**Non-flammable**	Flammable Limits	**N/A**	LEL	**N/A**	UEL	**N/A**

Extinguishing Media	**As appropriate for surrounding combustibles. Does not burn or support combustion.**
Special Fire Fighting Procedures	**Fire fighters should wear self-contained breathing apparatus.**
Unusual Fire and Explosion Hazards	**No fire or explosion hazard.**

Section V - Reactivity Data

Stability	Unstable		Conditions to Avoid	None in normal or expected use
	Stable	X		

Incompatibility *(Material to Avoid)* None Known

Hazardous Decomposition or Byproducts None in normal or expected use

Hazardous Polymerization	May Occur		Conditions to Avoid	None in normal or expected use
	Will Not Occur	X		

Section VI - Health Hazard Data

Route(s) of Entry:	Primary	Inhalation?	Yes	Skin? Eye ?	No Yes	Ingestion?	Yes

Health Hazards *(Acute and Chronic)*
Hydrated Alumina is environmentally safe and is not regulated under RCRA. None of the components are on the EPA list of Extremely Hazardous Substances. However, high exposure to Alumina dust may produce irritation to the eyes and respiratory system.

Carcinogenicity:	None known.	NTP?	N/A	IARC Monographs?	N/A	OSHA Regulated?	N/A

Signs and Symptoms of Exposure
Inhalation of dust may cause mechanical irritation of the respiritory tract. Skin and eye contact may cause mechanical abrasion - irritation.

Medical Conditions Generally Aggravated by Exposure
Pre-existing upper respiritory and lung diseases such as, but not limited to , brochitis, emphysema, and asthma.

Emergency and First Aid Procedures **Eye contact**: Flush eye with generous amounts of water for 15 min., consult a physician. **Inhalation**: Remove to fresh air. **Skin contact**: Wash from skin with soap and water. **Ingestion**: Consult a physician.

Section VII - Precautions for Safe Handling and Use

Steps to Be Taken in Case Material is Released or Spilled
Prevent spread of material and keep dust level down. Scoop up material or use vacuum technique and place in closed container.

Waste Disposal Method
Disposal must be made in accordance with Federal, State, and Local regulations, and pursuant to 40 CFR p. 261 of RCRA regulations currently in effect. Discarded hydrated alumina would not be classified as hazardous waste.

Precautions to Be Taken in Handling and Storing
Handle and keep in dry building area. Avoid handling methods which cause dusting. Avoid breathing dust. Use ventilation that will maintain exposure below recommended TLV. Wear goggles and use NIOSH/MSHA approved respirator. Wash thoroughly after handling.

Other Precautions No special requirements. Use good, acceptable industrial hygene practices.

Section VIII - Control Measures

Respiratory Protection *(Specify Type)* **Use NIOSH approved respirator in accordance with air contaminant standard.**

Ventilation	Local Exaust Provide local system.	Special
	Mechanical *(General)* Is recommemded for potentially dusty conditions.	Other

Protective Gloves No special requirement, ordinary work type.	Eye Protection Safety glasses or vented goggles.

Other Protective Clothing or Equipment
No special requirement, ordinary work clothes.

Work/Hygienic Practices
Good industrial hygiene practices. Wash thoroughly with soap and water before eating, drinking, or using tobacco products.

MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET   MSDS No: 093

UNIMIN CORPORATION
258 Elm Street
New Canaan, CT 06840

Emergency Telephone Number
(203) 966-8880

Telephone Number for Information
(203) 966-8880

Date Prepared: July 2000

==

SECTION 1: IDENTIFICATION

PRODUCT NAME: Kaolin Slurry

SYNONYMS: Kaolin, China Clay, Hydrated Aluminum Silicate

==

SECTION 2: COMPONENTS

CAS#	Component	Percentage	Exposure Limits
1332-58-7	Kaolin	>65%	PEL – 5 mg/m^3 TWA (respirable fraction) TLV- 2 mg/m^3 TWA (respirable fraction) MSHA - 5 mg/m^3 TWA (respirable fraction)
14808-60-7	Crystalline Silica in the form of Quartz	<1%	PEL - See Below TLV- 0.05 mg/m^3 TWA (respirable fraction) MSHA - See Below
13463-67-7	Titanium Dioxide	<2%	PEL – 15 mg/m^3 TWA (total dust) TLV- 10 mg/m^3 TWA MSHA - 15 mg/m^3 TWA (total dust)
7332-18-5	Water	<34%	None Established

OSHA PEL and MSHA Exposure Limit for Crystalline Silica, Quartz: (Respirable) $\frac{10 \text{ mg/m}^3}{\% \text{ Silica} + 2}$

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) has recommended that the permissible exposure limit be changed to 50 micrograms respirable free silica percubic meter of air (0.05 mg/m^3) as determined by a full shift sample up to 10 hour working day, 40 hours per week. The 1974 NIOSH Criteria for a recommended Standard for Occupational Exposure to Crystalline Silica should be consulted for more detailed information.

PEL means OSHA Permissible Exposure Limit.
TLV means American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH) Threshold Limit Value.
MSHA means Mine Safety and Health Administration Exposure Limit.
TWA means 8 hour time weighted average.

Note: The Permissible Exposure Limits (PEL) reported above are the pre-1989 limits that were reinstated by OSHA June 30, 1993 following a decision by the 11th Circuit Court of Appeals. These PELs are now being enforced by Federal OSHA. Be aware that more restrictive exposure limits may be enforced by some states, agencies or other authorities.

SECTION 3: HAZARDS IDENTIFICATION

EMERGENCY OVERVIEW

This product is an aqueous slurry of a chemically inert, non-combustible mineral. A single exposure will not result in serious adverse effects. When this product is in a dryer form, prolonged and excessive inhalation of dust may cause lung disease, pneumoconiosis, with symptoms of shortness of breath and reduced pulmonary function. See "Cancer Status" in this Section
==

HEALTH HAZARDS:

Inhalation: Breathing prolonged and excessive amounts of kaolin dust may not cause noticeable injury or illness even though permanent lung damage may be occurring. Inhalation of dust may have the following serious chronic health effects:

Pneumoconiosis: Excessive inhalation of respirable dust may cause pneumoconiosis, a respiratory disease, which can result in delayed, progressive, disabling and sometimes fatal lung injury. Symptoms include cough, shortness of breath, wheezing, non-specific chest illness and reduced pulmonary function. This disease is exacerbated by smoking. Individuals with pneumoconiosis are predisposed to develop tuberculosis.

Cancer Status: The International Agency for Research on Cancer has determined that crystalline silica inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite from occupational sources is carcinogenic to humans (Group 1 - carcinogenic to humans). Refer to IARC Monograph 68, Silica, Some Silicates and Organic Fibres (published in June 1997) in conjunction with the use of these materials. The National Toxicology Program classifies respirable crystalline silica as "known to be a human carcinogen". Refer to the 9th Report on Carcinogens (2000). The American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH) classifies crystalline silica, quartz, as a suspected human carcinogen (A2).

Other Data with Possible Relevance to Human Health:

There is some evidence that breathing respirable crystalline silica or the disease silicosis is associated with an increased incidence of significant disease endpoints such as scleroderma (an immune system disorder manifested by fibrosis of the lungs, skin and other internal organs) and kidney disease.

For further information consult "Adverse Effects of Crystalline Silica Exposure" published by the American Thoracic Society Medical Section of the American Lung Association, American Journal of Respiratory and Critical Care Medicine, Volume 155, pages 761-768, 1997.

Inhalation of dust may cause irritation of the nose, throat and respiratory passages.

Skin Contact: No adverse effects expected.

Eye Contact: Contact may cause mechanical irritation and possible injury.

Ingestion: No adverse effects expected for normal, incidental ingestion.

Chronic Health Effects: See "Inhalation" subsection above with respect to silicosis, cancer status and other data with possible relevance to human health.

Medical Conditions Aggravated by Exposure: Individuals with respiratory disease, including but not limited to, asthma and bronchitis, or subject to eye irritation should not be exposed to respirable quartz dust.

Signs and Symptoms of Exposure: There are generally no signs or symptoms of exposure to crystalline silica (quartz). See "Inhalation" subsection above for symptoms of silicosis.

==

SECTION 4: FIRST AID

Gross Inhalation: Remove victim to fresh air. If breathing has stopped, perform artificial respiration. If breathing is difficult have qualified personnel administer oxygen. Get prompt medical attention.

Skin Contact: No first aid should be needed since this product does not affect the skin. Wash exposed skin with soap and water before breaks and at the end of the shift.

Eye Contact: Flush the eyes immediately with large amounts of running water, lifting the upper and lower lids occasionally. If irritation persists or for imbedded foreign body, get immediate medical attention.

Ingestion: If large amounts are swallowed, get immediate medical attention.

==

SECTION 5: FIRE AND EXPLOSION DATA

Flash Point (Method Used): Fully oxidized, will not burn.

Autoignition Temp: Will not burn.

Flammable Limits: LEL: Not applicable UEL: Not applicable

Extinguishing Media: This product will not burn but is compatible with all extinguishing media. Use any media that is appropriate for the surrounding fire.

Special Fire Fighting Procedures: None required with respect to this product. Firefighters should always wear self-contained breathing apparatus for fires indoors or in confined areas.

Unusual Fire and Explosion Hazards: None.

Hazardous Combustion Products: None.

==

SECTION 6: ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

Wear appropriate protective equipment. If uncontaminated, collect using dustless method (HEPA vacuum or wet method) and place in appropriate container for use. If contaminated: a) use appropriate method for the nature of contamination, b) consider possible toxic or fire hazards associated with the contaminating substances. Collect for disposal.

==

SECTION 7: HANDLING AND STORAGE

Do not breathe dust. Do not rely on your sight to determine if dust is in the air. Silica may be in the air without a visible dust cloud. Use normal precautions against bag breakage or spills of bulk material. Avoid creation of respirable dust. Use good housekeeping in storage and use areas to prevent accumulation of dust in work area.

Use adequate ventilation and dust collection. Maintain and use proper, clean respiratory equipment (See Section 8). Launder clothing that has become dusty. Empty containers (bags, bulk containers, storage tanks, etc.) retain silica residue and must be handled in accordance with the provisions of this Material Safety Data Sheet. WARN and TRAIN employees in accordance with state and federal regulations.

WARN YOUR EMPLOYEES (AND YOUR CUSTOMERS - USERS IN CASE OF RESALE) BY POSTING AND OTHER MEANS OF THE HAZARDS AND OSHA PRECAUTIONS TO BE USED. PROVIDE TRAINING FOR YOUR EMPLOYEES ABOUT OSHA PRECAUTIONS.

Additional information on silica hazards and precautionary measures can be found at the following websites:

NIOSH Joint Campaign on Silicosis Prevention http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/sicampn.html
OSHA Crystalline Silica Website http://www.osha-slc.gov/SLTC/silicacrystalline/index.html
MSHA Silicosis Prevention Website http://www.msha.gov/S&HINFO/SILICO/SILICO.HTM

==

SECTION 8: EXPOSURE CONTROLS/PERSONAL PROTECTION

Ventilation: Use local exhaust as required to maintain exposures below applicable occupational exposure limits (See Section 2). See also ACGIH "Industrial Ventilation - A Manual for Recommended Practice", (current edition).

Respiratory Protection: Use appropriate respiratory protection for respirable particulates based on consideration of airborne workplace concentrations and duration of exposure arising from intended end use. Refer to the most recent standards of ANSI (Z88.2), OSHA (29 CFR 1910.134), MSHA (30 CFR Parts 56 and 57) and NIOSH Respirator Decision Logic.

Gloves: Protective gloves recommended.

Eye Protection: Safety glasses or goggles recommended.

Other Protective Equipment/Clothing: As appropriate for the work environment. Dusty clothing should be laundered before reuse.

==

9: PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

Appearance and Odor: White to cream colored slurry with a slight earthy odor.

pH: Not determined
Boiling Point: Not applicable
Melting Point: Not applicable
Solubility in Water: Negligible
Percent Volatile: Not determined

Specific Gravity (water=1): 1.78-2.58
Vapor Pressure: Not applicable
Vapor Density: Not applicable
Evaporation Rate: Not applicable
Fusion Range: 1569-1785°C

==

SECTION 10: STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

Stability: Stable
Conditions to Avoid: When exposed to high temperatures, free quartz can change crystal structures to form tridymite (above 870°C) or cristobalite (above 1470°C) which have greater health hazards than quartz.
Incompatibility: Powerful oxidizing agents such as fluorine, chlorine trifluoride, manganese trioxide, etc.
Hazardous Decomposition Products: Silica will dissolve in hydrofluoric acid producing a corrosive gas, silicon tetrafluoride.
Hazardous Polymerization: Will not occur.
Conditions to Avoid: None

==

SECTION 11: TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

No acute toxicity data is available for product or components. Refer to Section 3 for health hazard information.

==

SECTION 12: ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

No ecotoxicity data is available. This product is not expected to present an environmental hazard.

==

SECTION 13: DISPOSAL

Waste Disposal Method: If uncontaminated, dispose as an inert, non-metallic mineral. If contaminated, dispose in accordance with all applicable local, state/provincial and federal regulations.

==

SECTION 14: TRANSPORTATION DATA

U.S. DOT HAZARD CLASSIFICATION

- Proper Shipping Name: Not Regulated
- Technical Name: N/A
- UN Number: N/A
- Hazard Class/Packing Group: N/A
- Labels Required: None
- DOT Packaging Requirements: N/A
- Exceptions: N/A

==

SECTION 15: OTHER REGULATORY INFORMATION

SARA 311/312: Hazard Categories for SARA Section 311/312 Reporting: Chronic Health

SARA 313 This Product Contains the Following Chemicals Subject to Annual Release Reporting Requirements Under the SARA Section 313 (40 CFR 372): None

CERCLA Section 103 Reportable Quantity: None

California Proposition 65: This product contains crystalline silica (respirable) which is known to the State of California to cause cancer.

Toxic Substances Control Act: All of the components of this product are listed on the EPA TSCA Inventory or exempt from notification requirements.

European Inventory of Commercial Chemical Substances: All of the components of this product are listed on the EINECS Inventory or exempt from notification requirements. (The EINECS number for Quartz: 231-545-4)

Canadian Environmental Protection Act: All the components of this product are listed on the Canadian Domestic Substances List or exempt from notification requirements.

Japan MITI: All of the components of this product are existing chemical substances as defined in the Chemical Substance Control Law.

Australian Inventory of Chemical Substances: All of the components of this product are listed on the AICS inventory or exempt from notification requirements.

Canadian WHMIS Classification: Class D, Division 2, Subdivision A (Very Toxic Material causing other Toxic Effects)

==

16: OTHER INFORMATION

European Community Labeling Classification: Harmful (Xn)

European Community Risk and Safety Phrases: R40, R48, S22

NFPA Hazard Rating: Health: 1 Fire: 0 Reactivity: 0

HMIS Hazard Rating: Health: * Fire: 0 Reactivity: 0
* Warning - Chronic health effect possible - inhalation of silica dust may cause lung injury/disease (silicosis). Take appropriate measures to avoid breathing dust. See Section 3.

References:

Registry for Toxic Effects of Chemical Substances (RTECS), 1998
Patty's Industrial Hygiene and Toxicology
NTP Ninth Report on Carcinogens, 2000
IARC Monograph Volume 68, Silica, Some Silicates and Organic Fibres, 1997

Revision Summary: New Product

===

U. S. SILICA COMPANY

MSDS - MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

SECTION 1 - CHEMICAL PRODUCT AND COMPANY IDENTIFICATION

Product Names/Trade Names:

Silica Sand sold under various names: ASTM TESTING SANDS • GLASS SAND • FLINT SILICA • DM-SERIES • F-SERIES • FOUNDRY SANDS • FJ-SERIES • FP-SERIES • H-SERIES • L-SERIES • N-SERIES • NJ-SERIES • OK-SERIES • P-SERIES • T-SERIES • HYDRAULIC FRACING SANDS • MIN-U-SIL® Ground Silica• MYSTIC WHITE® • #1 DRY • #1 SPECIAL • PENN SAND® • Q-ROK® • SIL-CO-SIL® Ground Silica • SUPERSIL® • MASON SAND • GS-SERIES • PER-SPEC

Synonyms/Common Names: Sand, Silica Sand, Quartz, Crystalline Silica, Flint, Ground Silica.

Manufacturer's Name:
U. S. Silica Company
P. O. Box 187
Berkeley Springs, WV 25411

Emergency Telephone Number: 304-258-2500 (8:30 am to 5:00 pm eastern)
304-258-8295 (fax)

Date Prepared: June 30, 2006 (revising February 10, 2005)

SECTION 2 - HAZARD IDENTIFICATION

EMERGENCY OVERVIEW:

The U. S. Silica Company material is a white or tan sand, or ground sand. It is not flammable, combustible or explosive. It does not cause burns or severe skin or eye irritation. A single exposure will not result in serious adverse health effects. Crystalline silica (quartz) is not known to be an environmental hazard.

Crystalline silica (quartz) is incompatible with hydrofluoric acid, fluorine, chlorine trifluoride or oxygen difluoride.

OSHA REGULATORY STATUS

This material is considered hazardous under the OSHA Hazard Communications Standard (29 CFR 1910.1200).

POTENTIAL HEALTH EFFECTS:

Inhalation:

a. Silicosis — Respirable crystalline silica (quartz) can cause silicosis, a fibrosis (scarring) of the lungs.

   Silicosis may be progressive; it may lead to disability and death.

b. Lung Cancer — Crystalline silica (quartz) inhaled from occupational sources is classified as carcinogenic to humans.

c. Tuberculosis — Silicosis increases the risk of tuberculosis.

d. Autoimmune and Chronic Kidney Diseases — Some studies show excess numbers of cases of scleroderma, connective tissue disorders, lupus, rheumatoid arthritis, chronic kidney diseases and end-stage kidney disease in workers exposed to respirable crystalline silica.

e. Non-Malignant Respiratory Diseases (other than silicosis) — Some studies show an increased incidence in chronic bronchitis and emphysema in workers exposed to respirable crystalline silica.

Eye Contact: Crystalline silica (quartz) may cause abrasion of the cornea.

Skin Contact: Not applicable. **Ingestion:** Not applicable.

Chronic Effects: The adverse health effects -- silicosis, lung cancer, autoimmune and chronic kidney diseases, tuberculosis, and non-malignant respiratory diseases-- are chronic effects.

Signs and Symptoms of Exposure: Generally, there are no signs or symptoms of exposure to crystalline silica (quartz).

Medical Conditions Generally Aggravated by Exposure: The condition of individuals with lung disease (e.g., bronchitis, emphysema, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease) can be aggravated by exposure.

See Section 11, Toxicological Information, for additional detail on potential adverse health effects.

SECTION 3 - COMPOSITION/INFORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

Ingredients:

	Chemical Formula	Typical %, By Weight	CAS #
Crystalline Silica (quartz)	SiO_2	99.0 - 99.9	14808-60-7
Aluminum Oxide	Al_2O_3	< .8	1344-28-1
Iron Oxide	Fe_2O_3	< .1	1309-37-1
Titanium Oxide	TiO_2	< .1	13463-67-7

SECTION 4 - FIRST AID MEASURES

Inhalation: No specific first-aid is necessary since the adverse health effects associated with exposure to crystalline silica (quartz) result from chronic exposures. If there is a gross inhalation of crystalline silica (quartz), remove the person immediately to fresh air, give artificial respiration as needed, seek medical attention as needed.

Eye Contact: Wash immediately with water. If irritation persists, seek medical attention.

Skin Contact: Not applicable.

Ingestion: Not applicable.

SECTION 5 - FIRE FIGHTING MEASURES

Crystalline silica (quartz) is not flammable, combustible or explosive.

SECTION 6 - ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

Spills: Use dustless methods (vacuum) and place into closable container for disposal, or flush with water. Do not dry sweep. Wear protective equipment specified below.

Waste Disposal Method: See Section 13.

SECTION 7 - HANDLING AND STORAGE

Precautions During Handling and Use: Do not breathe dust. Use adequate ventilation and dust collection. Keep airborne dust concentrations below permissible exposure limit ("PEL"). Do not rely on your sight to determine if dust is in the air. Respirable crystalline silica dust may be in the air without a visible dust cloud.

If crystalline silica dust cannot be kept below permissible limits, wear a respirator approved for silica dust when using, handling, storing or disposing of this product or bag. See Section 8 for further information on respirators. Practice good housekeeping. Do not permit dust to collect on walls, floors, sills, ledges, machinery, or equipment. Maintain, clean, and fit test respirators in accordance with OSHA regulations. Maintain and test ventilation and dust collection equipment. Wash or vacuum clothing that has become dusty.

The OSHA Hazard Communication Standard, 29 CFR Sections 1910.1200, 1915.1200, 1917.28, 1918.90, 1926.59 and 1928.21, and state and local worker or community "right-to-know" laws and regulations should be strictly followed.

Do not use U. S. Silica Company materials for sandblasting.

Precautions During Storage: Avoid breakage of bagged material or spills of bulk material. Use dustless methods (vacuum) and place into closable container for disposal, or flush with water. Do not dry sweep. See control measures in Section 8.

The OSHA Hazard Communication Standard, 29 CFR Sections 1910.1200, 1915.1200, 1917.28, 1918.90, 1926.59 and 1928.21, and state and local worker or community "right-to-know" laws and regulations should be strictly followed. WARN YOUR EMPLOYEES (AND YOUR CUSTOMERS IN CASE OF RESALE) BY POSTING AND OTHER MEANS OF THE HAZARDS AND THE REQUIRED OSHA PRECAUTIONS. PROVIDE TRAINING FOR YOUR EMPLOYEES ABOUT THE OSHA PRECAUTIONS.

For additional precautions, see American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) standard practice E 1132-99a, "Standard Practice for Health Requirements Relating to Occupational Exposure to Respirable Crystalline Silica."

SECTION 8 - EXPOSURE CONTROLS/PERSONAL PROTECTION

Local Exhaust Ventilation: Use sufficient local exhaust ventilation to reduce the level of respirable crystalline silica to below the OSHA PEL. See ACGIH "Industrial Ventilation, A Manual of Recommended Practice" (latest edition).

Respiratory Protection:

If it is not possible to reduce airborne exposure levels to below the OSHA PEL with ventilation, use the table below to assist you in selecting respirators that will reduce personal exposures to below the OSHA PEL. This table is part of the NIOSH Respirator Selection Logic, 2004, Chapter III, Table 1, “Particulate Respirators”. The full document can be found at www.cdc.gov/niosh/npptl/topics/respirators; the user of this MSDS is directed to that site for information concerning respirator selection and use.

The assigned protection factor (APF) is the minimum anticipated level of protection provided by each type of respirator worn in accordance with an adequate respiratory protection program. For example, an APF of 10 means that the respirator should reduce the airborne concentration of a particulate by a factor of 10, so that if the workplace concentration of a particulate was 150 ug/m^3, then a respirator with an APF of 10 should reduce the concentration of particulate to 15 ug/m^3.

Assigned protection factor [1]	Type of Respirator (Use only NIOSH-certified respirators)
10	Any air-purifying elastomeric half-mask respirator equipped with appropriate type of particulate filter. [2] Appropriate filtering facepiece respirator. [2,3] Any air-purifying full facepiece respirator equipped with appropriate type of particulate filter. [2] Any negative pressure (demand) supplied-air respirator equipped with a half-mask.
25	Any powered air-purifying respirator equipped with a hood or helmet and a high efficiency (HEPA) filter. Any continuous flow supplied-air respirator equipped with a hood or helmet.
50	Any air-purifying full facepiece respirator equipped with N-100, R-100, or P-100 filter(s). Any powered air-purifying respirator equipped with a tight-fitting facepiece (half or full facepiece) and a high-efficiency filter. Any negative pressure (demand) supplied-air respirator equipped with a full facepiece. Any continuous flow supplied-air respirator equipped with a tight-fitting facepiece (half or full facepiece). Any negative pressure (demand) self-contained respirator equipped with a full facepiece.
1,000	Any pressure-demand supplied-air respirator equipped with a half-mask.

1. The protection offered by a given respirator is contingent upon (1) the respirator user adhering to complete program requirements (such as the ones required by OSHA in 29CFR1910.134), (2) the use of NIOSH-certified respirators in their approved configuration, and (3) individual fit testing to rule out those respirators that cannot achieve a good fit on individual workers.
2. Appropriate means that the filter medium will provide protection against the particulate in question.
3. An APF of 10 can only be achieved if the respirator is qualitatively or quantitatively fit tested on individual workers.

Exposure Guidelines:

Component	CAS No.	Percentage (by wt.)	OSHA PEL		ACGIH TLV		NIOSH REL		
			TWA	STEL	TWA	STEL	TWA	STEL	Unit
Crystalline Silica (quartz)	14808-60-7	99.0-99.9	$\frac{10}{\% SiO_2 + 2}$	None	.025	None	.05	None	mg/m³

If crystalline silica (quartz) is heated to more than 870°C, it can change to a form of crystalline silica known as trydimite; if crystalline silica (quartz) is heated to more than 1470°C, it can change to a form of crystalline silica known as cristobalite. The OSHA PEL for crystalline silica as trydimite or cristobalite is one-half of the OSHA PEL for crystalline silica (quartz).

SECTION 9 - PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

Appearance: White or tan sand; granular, crushed, or ground.

Boiling Point: 4046°F/2230°C

Odor: None

Vapor Pressure (mm Hg.): None

Specific Gravity (Water = 1): 2.65

Vapor Density (Air = 1): None

Melting Point: 3110°F/1710°C

Solubility in Water: Insoluble in water

Evaporation Rate (Butyl Acetate = 1): None

SECTION 10 - STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

Stability: Crystalline silica (quartz) is stable.

Incompatibility (Materials to Avoid): Contact with powerful oxidizing agents, such as fluorine, chlorine trifluoride and oxygen difluoride, may cause fires.

Hazardous Decomposition or Byproducts: Silica will dissolve in hydrofluoric acid and produce a corrosive gas - silicon tetrafluoride.

Hazardous Polymerization: Will not occur.

SECTION 11 - TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

The method of exposure to crystalline silica that can lead to the adverse health effects described below is inhalation.

A. SILICOSIS

The major concern is silicosis, caused by the inhalation and retention of respirable crystalline silica dust. Silicosis can exist in several forms, chronic (or ordinary), accelerated, or acute.

Chronic or Ordinary Silicosis (often referred to as Simple Silicosis) is the most common form of silicosis, and can occur after many years of exposure to relatively low levels of airborne respirable crystalline silica dust. It is further defined as either simple or complicated silicosis.

Simple silicosis is characterized by lung lesions (shown as radiographic opacities) less than 1 centimeter in diameter, primarily in the upper lung zones. Often, simple silicosis is not associated with symptoms, detectable changes in lung function or disability.

Simple silicosis may be progressive and may develop into complicated silicosis or progressive massive fibrosis (PMF). Complicated silicosis or PMF is characterized by lung lesions (shown as radiographic opacities) greater than 1 centimeter in diameter. Although there may be no symptoms associated with complicated silicosis or PMF, the symptoms, if present, are shortness of breath, wheezing, cough and sputum production. Complicated silicosis or PMF may be associated with decreased lung function and may be disabling. Advanced complicated silicosis or PMF may lead to death. Advanced complicated silicosis or PMF can result in heart disease secondary to the lung disease (cor pumonale).

Accelerated Silicosis can occur with exposure to high concentrations of respirable crystalline silica over a relatively short period; the lung lesions can appear within five (5) years of initial exposure. Progression can be rapid. Accelerated silicosis is similar to chronic or ordinary silicosis, except that lung lesions appear earlier and progression is more rapid.

Acute Silicosis can occur with exposures to very high concentrations of respirable crystalline silica over a very short time period, sometimes as short as a few months. The symptoms of acute silicosis include progressive shortness of breath, fever, cough and weight loss. Acute silicosis is fatal.

B. CANCER

IARC - The International Agency for Research on Cancer ("IARC") concluded that there was "*sufficient evidence* in humans for the carcinogenicity of crystalline silica in the forms of quartz or cristobalite from occupational sources", and that there is "*sufficient evidence* in experimental animals for the carcinogenicity of quartz and cristobalite." The overall IARC evaluation was that "crystalline silica inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite from occupational sources is *carcinogenic to humans* (*Group 1*)." The IARC evaluation noted that "carcinogenicity was not detected in all industrial circumstances studies. Carcinogenicity may be dependent on inherent characteristics of the crystalline silica or on external factors affecting its biological activity or distribution of its polymorphs." For further information on the IARC evaluation, see IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Volume 68, "Silica, Some Silicates..." (1997).

NTP - The National Toxicology Program's Eleventh Annual Report on Carcinogens classifies "silica, crystalline (respirable size)" as a known human carcinogen.

OSHA - Crystalline silica (quartz) is not regulated by the U. S. Occupational Safety and Health Administration as a carcinogen.

C. AUTOIMMUNE DISEASES

Several studies have reported excess cases of several autoimmune disorders, -- scleroderma, systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis -- among silica-exposed workers**.** For a review of the subject, the following may be consulted: "Occupational Exposure to Crystalline Silica and Autoimmune Disease", Environmental Health Perspectives, Volume 107, Supplement 5, pp. 793-802 (1999); "Occupational Scleroderma", Current Opinion in Rheumatology, Volume 11, pp. 490-494 (1999).

D. TUBERCULOSIS

Individuals with silicosis are at increased risk to develop pulmonary tuberculosis, if exposed to persons with tuberculosis. The following may be consulted for further information: Occupational Lung Disorders, Third Edition, Chapter 12, entitled "Silicosis and Related Diseases", Parkes, W. Raymond (1994); "Risk of pulmonary tuberculosis relative to silicosis and exposure to silica dust in South African gold miners," Occup Environ Med., Volume 55, pp.496-502 (1998).

E. KIDNEY DISEASE

Several studies have reported excess cases of kidney diseases, including end stage renal disease, among silica-exposed workers. For additional information on the subject, the following may be consulted: "Kidney Disease and Silicosis", Nephron, Volume 85, pp. 14-19 (2000).

F. **NON-MALIGNANT RESPIRATORY DISEASES**

The reader is referred to Section 3.5 of the NIOSH Special Hazard Review cited below, for information concerning the association between exposure to crystalline silica and chronic bronchitis, emphysema and small airways disease. There are studies that disclose an association between dusts found in various mining occupations and non-malignant respiratory diseases, particularly among smokers. It is unclear whether the observed associations exist only with underlying silicosis, only among smokers, or result from exposure to mineral dusts generally (independent of the presence or absence of crystalline silica, or the level of crystalline silica in the dust).

Sources of information:

The ***NIOSH Hazard Review - Occupational Effects of Occupational Exposure to Respirable Crystalline Silica*** published in April 2002 summarizes and discusses the medical and epidemiological literature on the health risks and diseases associated with occupation exposures to respirable crystalline silica. The *NIOSH Hazard Review* should be consulted for additional information, and citations to published studies on health risks and diseases associated with occupational exposure to respirable crystalline silica. The *NIOSH Hazard Review* is available from NIOSH - Publications Dissemination, 4676 Columbia Parkway, Cincinnati, OH 45226, or by calling 1-800-35-NIOSH (1-800-356-4676), or through the NIOSH web site, www.cdc.gov/niosh/topics/silica, then click on the link "NIOSH Hazard Review: Health Effects of Occupational Exposure to Respirable Crystalline Silica".

SECTION 12 - ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

Crystalline silica (quartz) is not known to be ecotoxic; i.e., there are no data that suggests that crystalline silica (quartz) is toxic to birds, fish, invertebrates, microorganisms or plant

SECTION 13 - DISPOSAL CONSIDERATIONS

General: The packaging and material may be landfilled; however, material should be covered to minimize generation of airborne dust.

RCRA: Crystalline silica (quartz) is not classified as a hazardous waste under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, or its regulations, 40 CFR §261 et seq.

The above applies to materials as sold by U. S. Silica Company. The material may be contaminated during use, and it is the responsibility of the user to assess the appropriate disposal of the used material.

SECTION 14 - TRANSPORT INFORMATION

Crystalline silica (quartz) is not a hazardous material for purposes of transportation under the U. S. Department of Transportation Table of Hazardous Materials, 49 CFR §172.101.

SECTION 15 - REGULATORY INFORMATION

UNITED STATES (FEDERAL AND STATE)

TSCA No.: Crystalline silica (quartz) appears on the EPA TSCA inventory under the CAS No. 14808-60-7.

RCRA: Crystalline silica (quartz) is not classified as a hazardous waste under the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, or its regulations, 40 CFR §261 et seq.

CERCLA: Crystalline silica (quartz) is not classified as a hazardous substance under regulations of the Comprehensive Environmental Response Compensation and Liability Act (CERCLA), 40 CFR §302.

Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act (SARA Title III): Crystalline silica (quartz) is not an extremely hazardous substance under Section 302 and is not a toxic chemical subject to the requirements of Section 313.

Clean Air Act: Crystalline silica (quartz) mined and processed by U.S. Silica Company is not processed with or does not contain any Class I or Class II ozone depleting substances.

FDA: Silica is included in the list of substances that may be included in coatings used in food contact surfaces, 21 CFR §175.300(b)(3)(xxvi).

NTP: Respirable crystalline silica, primarily quartz dusts occurring in industrial and occupational settings, is classified as Known to be a Human Carcinogen.

OSHA Carcinogen: Crystalline silica (quartz) is not listed.

California Proposition 65: Crystalline silica (airborne particles of respirable size) is classified as a substance known to the State of California to be a carcinogen.

California Inhalation Reference Exposure Level (REL): California established a chronic REL of 3 ug for silica (crystalline, respirable). A chronic REL is an airborne level of a substance at or below which no adverse health effects are anticipated in individuals indefinitely exposed to the substance at that level.

Massachusetts Toxic Use Reduction Act: Silica, crystalline (respirable size, <10 microns) is “toxic” for purposes of the Massachusetts Toxic Use Reduction Act.

Pennsylvania Worker and Community Right to Know Act: Quartz is a hazardous substance under the Act, but it is not a special hazardous substance or an environmental hazardous substance.

CANADA

Domestic Substances List: U. S. Silica Company products, as naturally occurring substances, are on the Canadian DSL.

WHMIS Classification: D2A

OTHER

EINECS No.: 238-878-4

EEC Label (Risk/Safety Phrases): R 48/20, R 40/20, S22, S38

IARC: Crystalline silica (quartz) is classified in IARC Group 1.

Japan MITI: All of the components of this product are existing chemical substances as defined in the Chemical Substance Control Law.

Australian Inventory of Chemical Substances: All of the components of this product are listed on the AICS inventory or exempt from notification requirements.

National, state, provincial or local emergency planning, community right-to-know or other laws, regulations or ordinances may be applicable--consult applicable national, state, provincial or local laws.

SECTION 16 - OTHER INFORMATION

Hazardous Material Information System (HMIS):

Health	*
Flammability	0
Reactivity	0
Protective Equipment	E

* For further information on health effects, see Sections 2 and 11 of this MSDS.

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

Health	0
Flammability	0
Reactivity	0

Web Sites with Information about Effects of Crystalline Silica Exposure:

The U. S. Silica web site will provide updated links to OSHA and NIOSH web sites addressing crystalline silica issues. www.u-s-silica.com, click in "Information", then click on "Health & Safety".

U. S. SILICA COMPANY DISCLAIMER

The information and recommendations contained herein are based upon data believed to be correct. However, no guarantee or warranty of any kind, express or implied, is made with respect to the information contained herein. We accept no responsibility and disclaim all liability for any harmful effects that may be caused by purchase, resale, use or exposure to our silica. Customers-users of silica must comply with all applicable health and safety laws, regulations, and orders, including the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard.

MATERIAL SAFETY DATA SHEET

MSDS No. M0372	Effective Date: 10/05/2007

1. IDENTIFICATION OF THE PRODUCT AND OF THE COMPANY

Trade Names: **ISOFRAX® 1260C PAPER**

Chemical Name: **ALKALINE EARTH SILICATE WOOL (AES)**

Synonym(s): Synthetic vitreous fiber (SVF), man-made vitreous fiber (MMVF), man-made mineral fiber (MMMF), alkaline-earth-silicate fiber, magnesium silicate fiber

Manufacturer/Supplier: **Unifrax I LLC**
2351 Whirlpool St.
Niagara Falls, NY 14305-2413
Product Stewardship Information Hotline
1-800-322-2293 (Monday - Friday 8:00 a.m. - 4:30 p.m. EST)
For additional MSDSs, visit our web page, http: //www.unifrax.com, or call Unifrax Customer Service at (716) 278-3872

CHEMTREC Assist: CHEMTREC will provide assistance for chemical emergencies. Call **1-800-424-9300**

2. COMPOSITION / INFORMATION ON INGREDIENTS

COMPONENTS	CAS NUMBER	% BY WEIGHT
Amorphous alkaline-earth-silicate (magnesium-silicate) wool (SiO_2 70-80 %, MgO 18-27 %, trace elements 0-4%)	436083-99-7	80-90
Acrylic latex	MIXTURE	5-10
Aluminum sulfate	10043-01-3	0-5

(See Section 8 "Exposure Controls / Personal Protection" for exposure guidelines)

3. HAZARDS IDENTIFICATION

MAY IRRITATE EYES, SKIN and RESPIRATORY TRACT

May cause temporary mechanical irritation to eyes, skin, and respiratory tract (nose, throat & lungs).

Pre-existing medical conditions, including dermatitis, asthma or chronic lung disease may be aggravated by exposure; individuals who are atopic (with a history of allergies) may experience greater amounts of skin and respiratory irritation.

HAZARD CLASSIFICATION

The **Hazardous Materials Identification System (HMIS)** –

Health 1 Flammability 0 Reactivity 0 Personal Protection Index: X (Employer Determined)

4. FIRST AID MEASURES

FIRST AID PROCEDURES

RESPIRATORY TRACT (nose & throat) IRRITATION:
If respiratory tract irritation develops, move the person to a dust free location. Get medical attention if the irritation continues. See Section 8 for additional measures to reduce or eliminate exposure.

EYE IRRITATION:
If eyes become irritated, flush immediately with large amounts of lukewarm water for at least 15 minutes. Eyelids should be held away from the eyeball to ensure thorough rinsing. Do not rub eyes. Get medical attention if irritation persists.

SKIN IRRITATION:
If skin becomes irritated, remove soiled clothing. Do not rub or scratch exposed skin. Wash area of contact thoroughly with soap and water. Using a skin cream or lotion after washing may be helpful.

GASTROINTESTINAL IRRITATION:
If gastrointestinal tract irritation develops, move the person to a dust free environment.

NOTES TO PHYSICIANS:
Skin and respiratory effects are the result of temporary, mild mechanical irritation; fiber exposure does not result in allergic manifestations.

5. FIRE FIGHTING MEASURES

Non-combustible (does not burn) product.

Packaging and surrounding materials may be combustible.
Use extinguishing agent suitable for surrounding combustible materials.

6. ACCIDENTAL RELEASE MEASURES

SPILL PROCEDURES

Avoid creating airborne dust. Dust suppressing cleaning methods such as wet sweeping or vacuuming should be used to clean the work area. If vacuuming, the vacuum must be equipped with a HEPA filter. Compressed air or dry sweeping should not be used for cleaning.

7. HANDLING AND STORAGE

STORAGE

Store in original container in a dry area. Keep container closed when not in use.

HANDLING

Handle fiber carefully. Limit use of power tools unless in conjunction with local exhaust. Use hand tools whenever possible. Frequently clean the work area with HEPA filtered vacuum or wet sweeping to minimize the accumulation of debris. Do not use compressed air for clean-up.

EMPTY CONTAINERS

Product packaging may contain residue. Do not reuse.

8. EXPOSURE CONTROL / PERSONAL PROTECTION

INDUSTRIAL HYGIENE STANDARDS AND OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE LIMITS

COMPONENTS	OSHA PEL	MANUFACTURER REG
Amorphous alkaline-earth-silicate (magnesium-silicate) wool	None established	See below**
Acrylic latex	None established	None established
Aluminum sulfate	None established	None established

There is no specific regulatory standard for ISOFRAX® in the U.S. OSHA's "Particulate Not Otherwise Regulated (PNOR)" standard [29 CFR 1910.1000, Subpart Z, Air Contaminants] applies generally; Total Dust 15 mg/m^3; Respirable Fraction 5 mg/m^3.

OTHER OCCUPATIONAL EXPOSURE LEVELS (OEL)
ACGIH TLV's : Amorphous alkaline-earth-silicate (magnesium-silicate) wool -- Particulates Not Otherwise Classified (PNOC) : Inhalable particulate -- 10 mg/m^3. Respirable particulate -- 3 mg/m^3. Acrylic latex -- None established. Aluminum sulfate -- None established.

** As with most industrial materials, it is prudent to minimize unnecessary exposure to respirable dusts. Note that Industrial hygiene standards and occupational exposure limits differ between countries and local jurisdictions. Check with your employer to identify any "respirable dust", "total dust" or "fiber" exposure standards to follow in your area. If no regulatory dust or fiber control standard apply, a qualified industrial hygiene professional can assist with a specific evaluation of workplace conditions and the identification of appropriate respiratory protection practices. In the absence of other guidance, the supplier has found that it is generally feasible to control occupational fiber exposure to 1 f/cc or less.

ENGINEERING CONTROLS:

Dust suppressing control technologies such as local exhaust ventilation, point of generation dust collection, down draft work stations, emission controlling tool designs, and materials handling equipment are effective means of minimizing airborne fiber emissions. For additional information, contact the Unifrax Product Stewardship Information Line at 1-800-322-2293 (See Section 16).

PERSONAL PROTECTION EQUIPMENT

Skin Protection:

Wear gloves, head coverings and full body clothing as necessary to prevent skin irritation. Washable or disposable clothing may be used. If possible, do not take unwashed clothing home. If soiled work clothing must be taken home, employers should ensure employees are thoroughly trained on the best practices to minimize or avoid non-work dust exposure (e.g., vacuum clothes before leaving the work area, wash work clothing separately, rinse washer before washing other household clothes, etc.).

Eye Protection:

Wear safety glasses with side shields or other forms of eye protection in compliance with appropriate OSHA standards to prevent eye irritation. The use of contact lenses is not recommended, unless used in conjunction with appropriate eye protection. Do not touch eyes with soiled body parts or materials. If possible, have eye-washing facilities readily available where eye irritation can occur.

Respiratory Protection:

When effective engineering and/or administrative controls are insufficient, the use of appropriate respiratory protection, pursuant to the requirements of OSHA 1910.134, is recommended. For dust concentrations below the applicable exposure limit value, PPE is not required. The evaluation of workplace hazards and the identification of appropriate respiratory protection is best performed on a case by case basis, by a qualified Industrial Hygienist.

9. PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL PROPERTIES

ODOR AND APPEARANCE:	White, odorless, fibrous material
CHEMICAL FAMILY:	Alkaline Earth Silicate Wool (AES) Magnesium Silicate
BOILING POINT:	Not Applicable
WATER SOLUBILITY (%):	Not Soluble in Water
MELTING POINT:	1500-1550°C (2730-2820°F)
SPECIFIC GRAVITY:	2.60
VAPOR PRESSURE:	Not Applicable
pH:	Not Applicable
VAPOR DENSITY (Air = 1):	Not Applicable
% VOLATILE:	Not Applicable
MOLECULAR FORMULA:	SiO_2MgO.

10. STABILITY AND REACTIVITY

CHEMICAL STABILITY:	Stable under conditions of normal use.
INCOMPATIBILITY:	Avoid direct contact with strong acid environments.
CONDITIONS TO AVOID:	None.
HAZARDOUS DECOMPOSITION PRODUCTS:	
HAZARDOUS POLYMERIZATION:	Not Applicable.

11. TOXICOLOGICAL INFORMATION

EPIDEMIOLOGY

This product has not been the subject of epidemiological study. Epidemiological studies related to other fiber chemistries of similar solubility have not identified a statistically significant incidence of exposure-related respiratory disease.

TOXICOLOGY

This product has been the subject of limited testing.

A review of available scientific literature suggests an inverse relationship between dissolution rate and potential health effects; i.e. the higher the dissolution rate of a fiber the lower its potential to produce health effects. The dissolution rate of ISOFRAX® fiber has been determined through standardized *in vitro* testing. The dissolution rate of ISOFRAX® fibers is higher than that of other fiber types that have been tested in chronic animal studies and did not produce respiratory disease.

This product possesses a fiber chemistry within the regulatory (European Commission Directive 97/69/EC) definition as a "man-made vitreous (silicate) fiber with random orientation with alkaline oxide and alkaline earth oxide (Na_2O + K_2O + CaO + MgO + BaO) content greater than 18% by weight". ISOFRAX® fibers have been tested pursuant to EU protocol ECB/TM/26, rev. 7, Nota Q, Directive 97/69/EC. The results for the short term biopersistence test by inhalation (IH test) was 6 days; well below the regulatory threshold of 10 days cited in Directive 97/69/EC. Based on testing results, ISOFRAX® based products are not regarded as potential carcinogens and they ARE EXEMPT from European classification as such. By virtue of these test results, these products ARE EXEMPT from European regulatory guidelines that require hazard warning labels with specific risk phrases citing respiratory disease potential. In addition, ISOFRAX® fibers have been tested in an independent laboratory, by intratracheal (IT test) instillation, under a protocol that was consistent with the requirements of the German Hazardous Substances Ordinance (BGBI. I pp. 1782, 2049, Third Amendment, Appendix V, No. 7). The half-life clearance of Isofrax® fibers was 32.7 days; well below the applicable regulatory thresholds. Based on the IT test results, Isofrax products ARE EXEMPT from the requirements of the German Ordinance.

The definition of "irritant" contained in the hazard communication standard, 29 CFR 1900.1200, Appendix A, is "...a reversible inflammatory effect on living tissue by chemical action...". ISOFRAX® fiber is an inert material which doesn't interact chemically with exposed skin. However, there is a possibility that exposure to this product may cause temporary mechanical irritation to the eyes, skin or respiratory tract (nose, throat, lungs). This temporary irritation can be mitigated with proper handling practices designed to limit exposure and the use of protective clothing (glasses, gloves, clothing).

This product has not been specifically evaluated by any regulatory authority or other classification entity, such as the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) or the National Toxicology Program (NTP). Other types of man-made vitreous fibers (MMVF) have been evaluated and subsequently classified as potential carcinogens. Various classifications, such as "possible carcinogen", "probable carcinogen", and "reasonably anticipated to be a carcinogen" have been given to other MMVF's.

12. ECOLOGICAL INFORMATION

No ecological concerns have been identified.

13. DISPOSAL CONSIDERATIONS

WASTE MANAGEMENT

To prevent waste materials from becoming airborne during waste storage, transportation and disposal, a covered container or plastic bagging is recommended.

DISPOSAL

ISOFRAX® fiber, as manufactured, is not classified as a hazardous waste according to Federal regulations (40 CFR 261). Any processing, use, alteration or chemical additions to the product, as purchased, may alter the disposal requirements. Under Federal regulations, it is the waste generator's responsibility to properly characterize a waste material, to determine if it is a "hazardous" waste. Check local, regional, state or provincial regulations to identify all applicable disposal requirements.

EUROPEAN UNION

Waste from this product is not classified as “hazardous” or “special” under European Union regulations. Disposal is permitted at landfills licensed for industrial waste.

14. TRANSPORT INFORMATION

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION (DOT)

Hazard Class:	Not Regulated	United Nations (UN) Number:	Not Applicable
Labels:	Not Applicable	North America (NA) Number:	Not Applicable
Placards:	Not Applicable	Bill of Lading:	Product Name

INTERNATIONAL

Canadian TDG Hazard Class & PIN: Not regulated
Not classified as dangerous goods under ADR (road), RID (train) or IMDG (ship).

15. REGULATORY INFORMATION

UNITED STATES REGULATIONS

EPA: **Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act (SARA)** Title III - This product does not contain any substances reportable under Sections 302, 304, 313, (40 CFR 372). Sections 311 and 312 (40 CFR 370) apply (delayed hazard).
Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA) - All substances in this product are listed, as required, on the TSCA inventory.

Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act (**CERCLA)** and the **Clean Air Act (CAA)** - ISOFRAX® contains fibers with an average diameter greater than one micron and thus is not considered a hazardous air pollutant.

OSHA: Comply with **Hazard Communication Standards** 29 CFR 1910.1200 and 29 CFR 1926.59 and the **Respiratory Protection Standards** 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.103.

States: ISOFRAX® products are not known to be regulated. However, state and local OSHA and EPA regulations may apply to these products. If in doubt, contact your local regulatory agency.

INTERNATIONAL REGULATIONS

Canada: **Canadian Workplace Hazardous Materials Information System (WHMIS):** No Canadian Workplace Hazardous Materials Information System (WHMIS) categories apply to this product.
Canadian Environmental Protection Act (CEPA) - All substances in this product are listed, as required, on the Domestic Substance List (DSL)

European Union: **European Directive 97/69/EC** - By virtue of testing results, ISOFRAX® fiber has been exempted from classification and labeling as a potential carcinogen.

16. OTHER INFORMATION

After-Service ISOFRAX® Thermal Insulation: Removal

As produced, Isofrax fibers are vitreous (glassy) materials, which upon continued exposure to elevated temperatures (above about 800°C) might devitrify, intitially forming magnesia-bearing phases (enstatite). At higher temperatures, (above about 1000°C) crystalline phase silicas may occur. The occurrence and extent of crystalline phase formation is dependent on the duration and temperature of exposure, fiber chemistry and/or the presence of fluxing agents. The presence of crystalline phases can be confirmed only through laboratory analysis of the “hot-face” fiber.

IARC’s evaluation of crystalline silica states “Crystalline silica inhaled in the form of quartz or cristobalite from occupational sources is carcinogenic to humans (Group 1)” and additionally notes “carcinogenicity in humans was not detected in all industrial circumstances studied” (IARC Monograph Vol. 68, 1997). NTP lists all polymorphs of crystalline silica amongst substances which may "reasonably be anticipated to be carcinogens".

During removal operations, the use of a full face respirator is recommended to reduce inhalation exposure along with eye & respiratory tract irritation. A specific evaluation of workplace hazards and the identification of appropriate respiratory protection is best performed, on a case by case basis, by a qualified industrial hygiene professional. For more detailed information regarding respirable crystalline silica, call the Product Stewardship Information Hotline (see below).

PRODUCT STEWARDSHIP PROGRAM

Unifrax has established a program to provide customers with up-to-date information regarding the proper use and handling of fiber-based products, including ISOFRAX® THERMAL INSULATION. In addition, Unifrax has also established a program to monitor airborne fiber concentrations at customer facilities. If you would like more information about this program, please call the Unifrax Product Stewardship Information Line at 1-800-322-2293.

DEFINITIONS

ACGIH: American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists

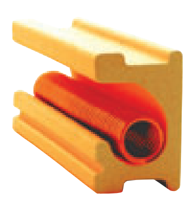
ADR:	Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Road (International Regulation)
CAA:	Clean Air Act
CAS:	Chemical Abstracts Service
CERCLA:	Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act
DSL:	Domestic Substances List
EPA:	Environmental Protection Agency
EU:	European Union
f/cc:	Fibers per cubic centimeter
HEPA:	High Efficiency Particulate Air
HMIS:	Hazardous Materials Identification System
IARC:	International Agency for Research on Cancer
IATA:	International Air Transport Association
IMDG:	International Maritime Dangerous Goods Code
mg/m^3:	Milligrams per cubic meter of air
mmpcf:	Million particles per cubic meter
NFPA:	National Fire Protection Association
NIOSH:	National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health
OSHA:	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
29 CFR 1910.134 & 1926.103:	OSHA Respiratory Protection Standards
29 CFR 1910.1200 & 1926.59:	OSHA Hazard Communication Standards
PEL:	Permissible Exposure Limit (OSHA)
PIN:	Product Identification Number
PNOC:	Particulates Not Otherwise Classified
PNOR:	Particulates Not Otherwise Regulated
PSP:	Product Stewardship Program
RCRA:	Resource Conservation and Recovery Act
REL:	Recommended Exposure Limit (NIOSH)
RID:	Carriage of Dangerous Goods by Rail (International Regulations)
SARA:	Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act
SARA Title III:	Emergency Planning and Community Right to Know Act
SARA Section 302:	Extremely Hazardous Substances
SARA Section 304:	Emergency Release
SARA Section 311:	MSDS/List of Chemicals and Hazardous Inventory
SARA Section 312:	Emergency and Hazardous Inventory
SARA Section 313:	Toxic Chemicals and Release Reporting
STEL:	Short Term Exposure Limit`
SVF:	Synthetic Vitreous Fiber
TDG:	Transportation of Dangerous Goods
TLV:	Threshold Limit Value (ACGIH)
TSCA:	Toxic Substances Control Act
TWA:	Time Weighted Average
WHMIS:	Workplace Hazardous Materials Information System (Canada)

Revision Summary: Updated corporate name. Added "wool" to CAS nomenclature. Replaces 05/19/05 MSDS.

MSDS Prepared By: UNIFRAX RISK MANAGEMENT DEPARTMENT

DISCLAIMER
The information presented herein is presented in good faith and believed to be accurate as of the effective date of this Material Safety Data Sheet. Employers may use this MSDS to supplement other information gathered by them in their efforts to assure the health and safety of their employees and the proper use of the product. This summary of the relevant data reflects professional judgment; employers should note that information perceived to be less relevant has not been included in this MSDS. Therefore, given the summary nature of this document, Unifrax I LLC does not extend any warranty (expressed or implied), assume any responsibility, or make any representation regarding the completeness of this information or its suitability for the purposes envisioned by the user.

JUPITER AUTOMATIC INSTRUCTION MANUAL



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

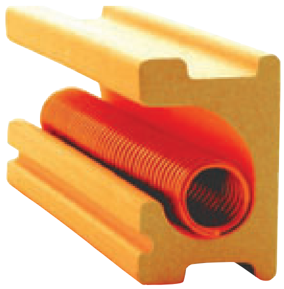
LITERATURE

Features & Benefits of L&L Kilns

L&L Kilns are unique. It just starts with the easy maintainability of the kiln.

Dyna-Glow holders enhance uniformity

L&L kilns naturally fire evenly top to bottom. The whole Dyna-Glow ceramic element holder glows with radiant heat. (See hotkilns.com/zone-control.html for test data comparing an Easy-Fire e23T to a competitive model).



Dyna-Glow holders protect elements

Reliability, durability and element life are enhanced by Dyna-Glow element holders. The smooth, hard surface of the inside channel allows the elements to expand and contract freely - unrestricted by pins - preventing catastrophic element failure. Elements won't droop out of broken firebrick channels. Also the dense ceramic Dyna-Glow holders extend element life because they do not insulate the hot elements from the kiln interior.

Holder Prevents Rim Damage

Hard ceramic holders support the brick inside the element grooves, creating a strong structure and preventing damage to the rim.

Quick-change elements

With L&L's Dyna-Glow element holders in your kiln, changing elements takes minutes, not hours. You don't need to worry about breaking brick, installing clumsy pins, or crimping element connectors. Anyone can do it with a screwdriver and a wrench.

L&L kilns are easy to troubleshoot

Open up any L&L kiln control panel and see how easy it is to check amps, element resistance, and voltage. No other kiln can be serviced as quickly, easily, or inexpensively as an L&L kiln.

Sectional construction makes repair work easy

All top-loading L&L kilns are sectional. Even the large 35 cubic foot standard DaVinci kiln is easy to move, set up, and repair.

Protected thermocouples last longer

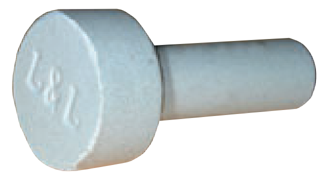
Our standard thermocouple is shielded from corrosion by a ceramic protection tube. We use the finest "special limit" aerospace-grade heavy-gauge thermocouple wire. The protection tube also prevents black dust from the thermocouple end from discoloring your work.

Maximum corrosion resistance

Stainless, aluminized, and galvanealed steel are used where needed. Hardware and screws are pure stainless steel.

Solid peephole plugs

Our solid straight plugs are strong. They do not slip out like tapered, fragile slip-cast plugs.

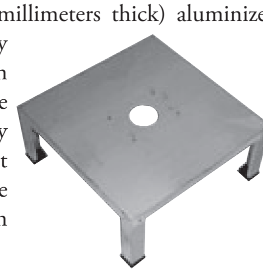


Lid brick is secured

Stainless "U" brackets secure the firebrick to the edge metal. The lid brick support does not rely on friction.

Full-support stands

L&L provides an engineered full-support 14 gauge (about 2 millimeters thick) aluminized steel stand. They are stronger than hollow frame stands and they provide important support in the center of the kiln bottom.



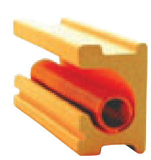
Proprietary Brick Coating

L&L's proprietary reflective brick coating protects the surface of the firebrick and keeps dusting down inside the kiln.

Features & Benefits of L&L Kilns

L&L Kilns
hotkilns.com

505 Sharptown Road • Swedesboro, NJ 08085
Phone: 856.294.0077 • Fax: 856.294.0070
Email: sales@hotkilns.com • Web:www.hotkilns.com



L&L Kiln's patented hard ceramic element holders protect your kiln.

Features & Benefits of L&L Kilns

Performance • Durability • Support • Serviceability • Safety

Our "Easy-Open, Easy-Load" lid is feather-lite yet opens wide for loading

The whole kiln supports the lid (not just one section). Our positive safety pin secures the lid so it can't accidentally fall while loading the kiln. No support bars get in the way of loading when the lid is fully tilted back.

The DynaTrol is easy and powerful

Artists have four choices of Easy-Fire programs plus six of their own. The important Delay, Preheat, and Alarm options are organized into a One-Touch "Easy Options" section on the control face.

Zone control dynamically adjusts kiln

Zone control dynamically adjusts the kiln firing - maintaining evenness over time and with different loads. You can replace one element at a time without worrying about an imbalance.

Uniform even without zone control

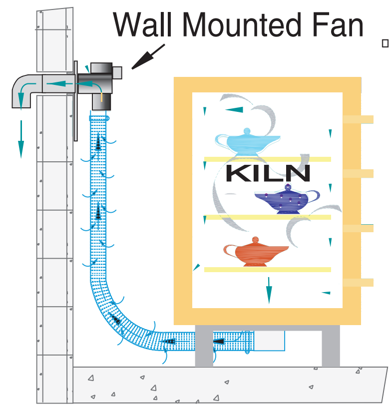
Even on the School-Master kilns, where we do use graded elements, L&L kilns are so fundimentally uniform because of the element holders that the the differential in the graded elements is much less than in competing kilns.

The One-Touch™ Control is designed for K-12 schools & hobbyists

Proprietary One-Touch™ Intuitive Kiln Control is designed for busy school teachers - One touch and you are ready to fire the bisque and glaze programs typically used in schools (also easy to adjust simple parameters like cone, delay, hold, heat-up and cool-down rates).

Vent-Sure is safe, strong and adaptable

Our powerful 148 CFM downdraft Vent-Sure adapts to long installation runs. In fact you can normally vent two kilns with one vent using our optional vent doubler. Even if the vent duct leaks, fumes will get *pulled* into the duct, not *pushed* into your room. Our Vent-Sure motors keep on working because they are mounted away from the kiln heat and floor dust. Motor vibration is isolated from your work.



Mercury-free

All L&L kilns use mercury-free relays.

On-off Switch

All L&L kilns include an industrial-grade on-off switch.

UL499 listing

Many L&L kilns, including Easy-Fire, Jupiter and DaVinci kilns, as well as our Vent-Sure vent, are c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards. Our Renaissance and Easy-Load Front-Loading kilns are MET-us listed to UL499 standards.

Support from experienced people

The staff at L&L has worked as a team for many years to ensure customer satisfaction. We support our distributors with extensive technical information so they can effectively support you.

Easy-to-use visual instructions

No one has a better or more complete instruction manual. Our visual instructions address the needs of the artist, the installer, and the repair person. You get a fully illustrated operation and service manual. Various instructional videos are available at www.youtube.com/LLKilns.

Web support for kilns

One customer recently said: "I am truly impressed with your web site, it is more than informative and your products are well designed. The fact that all the information, including repair manuals, are listed, speaks well of your dedication to customer service."

Free 800 numbers for support

We respond quickly to your needs Monday through Friday.

Safe, fast delivery

L&L's flow manufacturing system allows us to ship built-to-order kilns quickly. Typical delivery for an Easy-Fire, School-Master kiln or Liberty-Belle kiln is about two weeks. Parts normally ship within 24 hours (often the same day). Our advanced packaging guarantees your kiln arrives in great shape.

Responsive engineering since 1945

We pride ourselves on flexibility, technical depth, and the ability to listen to customers. L&L makes more models, kiln configurations, and options than anyone. L&L kilns and custom furnaces are in continuous use by NASA, Fermi Lab, Kodak, 3M, Corning, General Motors, General Electric as well as countless art schools, universities, schools, and pottery studios worldwide. More and more people recognize the unique value of L&L kilns.

Each Kiln Series has its own special features

Each series of L&L kilns has its own special features and even, in some cases like the JH Series, its own applications. Read through the specification sheets and our product selection guides and price list to see what fits your exact needs. And don't forget - we and our fine distribution network are here to help you make the right choice. Call us!

Features & Benefits of L&L Kilns

FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS FOR L&L KILNS

SALES QUESTIONS

What is the difference between an Easy-Fire and a Jupiter kiln?

The Easy-Fire kilns were designed to meet the need for an uncomplicated easy-to-buy kiln that meets the majority of kiln users' needs. We selected four popular sizes and restricted the line to automatic only. There are virtually no options. On the other hand, we decided to use all of our best technology like element holders, thermocouple protection tubes, "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" spring hinge, heavy-duty elements and zone control so, for the most part, there are no options you would likely want to add. We redesigned the control panel to remove the plug-in cords which some people find objectionable (yet others love). This results in a sleeker kiln that is more acceptable in many classrooms and studios. However, even with this new design we maintained the famous L&L tradition of an easy-to-service and easy-to-remove control panel that is isolated as much as possible from the heat of the kiln. We also took advantage of the simplicity of the design to increase the power of the kilns. Because there are so few models we could maximize the power on each voltage and phase without implication to other models. This is just too complicated to do on the Jupiter line. Long story short is that, if the size and configuration of the Easy-Fire models suits you go ahead and buy an Easy-Fire kiln. If you want a manual kiln or one of the many sizes of the Jupiter line or one of the many options available in that line then by all means get a Jupiter. You will find that feature for feature the Easy-Fire line is a better price and this is partly a direct result of the simplicity and uniformity of the line. One might compare the difference to a "prefix menu" vs. an "a la cart menu" – the choice is yours.

What is the difference between a Jupiter kiln and a DaVinci kiln?

The DaVinci kilns are normally larger and are square and rectangular in shape. For some the shape is critical (for tiles for instance) and makes the kiln for efficient in terms of usable space. For others the size is the issue. There are simple so other sectional kilns that are made this large. The counterbalanced lid system and angle-iron stand are very heavy-duty on the DaVinci kilns and make even the heaviest lid easy to lift. The control panels on most DaVinci kilns (except the X2327, X2336 and X2345 which use a Jupiter panel mounted on the kiln) are floor standing and feature 50 amp circuits. The DynaTrol on the DaVinci kilns (again except for the X2300 models mentioned) is a handheld model that attaches to the kiln with a four-foot cable and can hang on the wall or the panel. The DaVinci kilns use 3" brick. The share many of the same options like Dawson back-up for automatic kilns, bottom elements, etc.

Where can I buy L&L Kilns?

Call our factory to get the name of a local distributor. If there is not a local distributor near you or if you prefer to buy direct we can help you as well.

How Should I place an order if I order direct?

Call the factory or send in an order for *(hotkilns.com/order.pdf)*. This order form has all the options and prices logically laid out for each type of kiln. See *hotkilns.com/direct.pdf* for a list of important questions to ask yourself before ordering from the factory. We collect sales tax in Pennsylvania and New Jersey. You can also order online on our website.

What payment do you accept?

Money order, check, wire transfer, Visa, MasterCard and American Express are accepted. Payment by wire transfer, money order or credit card will allow immediate processing of your order. Payment by personal check requires a three-week delay for check to clear. No COD's on kilns, (parts are OK). Purchase orders are accepted from schools and companies; however, credit must be preapproved. Companies must have a Dun & Bradstreet Paydex score of 65 or better. Call, fax or email for the instructions on how to wire transfer. Wire transfers are particularly helpful for export transactions.

Are kilns returnable?

Kilns are not returnable. Each kiln is configured to order. We try hard to make your choice easy by providing as much information as possible but we ask that you make a careful choice.

What if I order the wrong voltage or phase?

Changing the phase is easy on a Jupiter or DaVinci kiln because of the unique way in which we do our circuits. Changing the phase on an Easy-Fire kiln requires switching the control panel - which is very easy to do. Contact factory for details. Changing the voltage is not so easy. You need to change all the elements. While we do not accept responsibility for others mistakes we do our best to minimize the expense. Call the factory if this happens and we will sell you a set of appropriate elements at a deep discount.

Does L&L Export?
Orders for export will be shipped by ocean or air, freight collect. Mexico and Canada can ship by common carrier. Import and export licenses, duties, tariffs, etc. are expenses due from the purchaser. We can quote CIF shipping charges. See *hotkilns.com/ship.pdf* for more information.

How to get to the L&L factory and can I visit?
We are open from 8:30am - 5:00 pm Monday through Friday. Please call ahead for an appointment.

SHIPPING QUESTIONS

How much does it cost to ship a kiln?
Talk to your local distributor or call our factory for a shipping quote (if you are buying direct from the factory).

How are L&L kilns packed?
Easy-Fire, Jupiter, Liberty-Belle, Chameleon, Doll/Test and GS1714 kilns are protected with advanced foam-in-place in heavy-duty skidded cartons. DaVinci kilns typically come in two skidded wood crates or cartons. Renaissance and Easy-Load kilns are crated as well. Our free advanced packaging has virtually eliminated shipping damage. See page 30 of our main catalog. Export crating is by special quote but is normally not required if kilns ship by container (which is almost always the case for ocean freight). Airfreight does not need any special packing.

What is the freight classification?
Class 85.

What is the F.O.B. (Freight on Board) point?
All kilns are shipped from our factory in Swedesboro, NJ (10 miles south of Philadelphia PA).

What do I do if there is shipping damage?
See *hotkilns.com/damage.pdf*.

What freight companies does L&L use? Can I specify a freight company?
We use a variety of companies. We try to use only freight lines that we have had good experience with. You can specify a freight company if you have a preference. L&L will make all shipping arrangements with you prior to shipping. Tailgate loading is available for an extra charge of $75. This is where the trucker will lower the kiln to the ground with a special tailgate lift. If you buy from a local distributor they may offer delivery and set up. See *hotkilns.com/ship.pdf*.

How easy is the set up of L&L kilns?
Setting up any of our kilns is very simple. The sectional design of the Easy-Fire, Liberty-Belle, Jupiter and DaVinci kilns makes moving the kiln exceptionally easy - even down steps or through narrow doorways. The DaVinci counterbalance comes apart. Two people can carry the largest DaVinci section. Just locate and level the stand, stack the sections, plug in the control panel and have an electrician hook up power. If you bought a vent you will need to install the motor on an outside wall. Set-up instructions (with photographs) are attached to the outside of the carton and take you through the process step-by-step starting with unpacking. See *hotkilns.com/pdf.htm* for set-up instructions for all our kilns. Moving the Renaissance and Easy-Load kilns requires special handling (they can not be moved up stairs for instance). Talk to the factory before assuming you can do this.

Can L&L ship kilns Prepay and Add?
Yes.

Can L&L ship kilns collect?
No.

What are the packing charges for parts?
See *hotkilns.com/ship.pdf* for more information.

How does L&L ship parts?
We work with both UPS and Federal Express. Generally speaking Federal Express is a better deal for shipments west of the Mississippi. We can ship next day or second

day if you request it. Saturday delivery is available in most places. We can ship by FedEx, UPS or DHL for overseas parts shipments.

TECHNICAL QUESTIONS

Are automatic controls reliable?
In years past electronic controls for kilns had some reliability problems. Today, we see very little of this. The DynaTrol has a long history of reliability. Its antecedents have been used on kilns for many years and many thousands of these antecedents are still in use today. L&L, in most cases, mounts its automatic control in an instrument box that is separate from the kiln. It is easy to remove and send to our factory for expert repair (if ever necessary).

Can I convert my older J Series Manual Econo-Kiln to an automatic kiln?
The new Jupiter automatic kilns use the same basic kiln sections that made the J Series Econo-Kilns so popular and reliable. You can purchase a new control box that the old sections will plug into. See *hotkilns.com/parts.pdf* for pricing on the various panels. Because of the cost of a new panel, it may be worth considering buying a new kiln but, in any case, the option is a possibility. Be sure to talk directly to the factory if you want to do this. We are using all 20 amp cords and receptacles now and, on some J Series kilns, you may have to change either your plugs or have us put in 15 amp receptacles.

Does L&L make a wall mount control that I can plug my kiln into?
We used to but the need was so minimal that we have discontinued doing this. If you want to do this you can talk to Orton (*ortonceramic.com*).

Can I buy a manual kiln now and convert it to an automatic kiln later?
You can but it would not be cost effective. See above comments.

What can I do to promote even kiln firings?
Our DynaTrol automatic control with Dynamic Zone Control is the state of the art way to do this. On manual kilns we recommend you use out Truview Pyrometer System. In addition, the way you load the kiln will help promote good uniform firings. You must keep enough space in the kiln to allow air to circulate. If you are firing dense loads (such as tiles) you may want to consider one of our powered bottoms. A powered downdraft vent such as our Vent-Sure system will also help.

Why don't other manufactures use Element Holders?
We invented them, they are patented and they are expensive.

What is so great about Dyna-Glow Element Holders? Why pay the extra money?
There are two incontestable reasons. One, your kiln will last much longer. We have seen L&L kilns that are 20 and even 30 years old that look and function like new kilns. The firebrick around the element grooves in our competitor's kilns is easily subject to breakage. All it takes is a kiln shelf hitting the brick near an element groove and you have a BIG problem. Bang hard on a Dyna-Glow element holder and nothing much happens. The other reason, which is logically clear, is that the wall on the Dyna-Glow element holder that holds the element in is only 1/16" thick and is made of hard dense non-insulating ceramic. This transfers the heat of the element much better than the highly insulating firebrick wall (typically ¼" or more) that you will find on competitors' kilns. Another great feature is that the expansion and contraction of the element coils does not kick up brick dust, which can get on your precious ware. Element life is longer because elements stay in their hard grooves and don't droop out.

Can I use L&L element holders in another type of kiln to fix it or to make my own kiln?
No. We route a special "T" shaped slot in out firebrick to hold the element holders in place. There is no way easily to do this in another kiln and the required tooling is all special.

Do I need a vent?
Kilns have been operated for years without the newer ventilation systems. Without a vent typically the kiln is vented by propping the lid during the first part of the cycle when the ware gives off fumes. However, a powered downdraft type of vent, like the Vent-Sure that L&L makes, automates this process and improves air circulation and heat distribution in the kiln as well

as insures good venting of the fumes to the outside. You MUST be sure to vent fumes generated by a kiln to the outside. Some of these, such as carbon monoxide, are hazardous. A downdraft vent will also help element and thermocouple life because it keeps the kiln full of oxygen, which promotes the proper oxide coatings on those components. See *hotkilns.com/install.pdf*.

Can I use another brand vent with an L&L kiln?

Yes, you can use an Orton vent or the Skutt Envirovent. However, if you look into the details of these vents you will find our vent system to be superior, safer and more adjustable. Be careful if you DO use one of these vents of two things. One is that they typically come with stands. Sometimes the stands are inferior to ours and are not sized properly. We have seen bottoms cracked as a result. Also sometimes they will be overpowered or underpowered for our kilns. We have seen a large vent used on one of our small kilns and it caused heat-up problems. There is no easy way to adjust these other vents like there is with our kilns.

What about running the kiln at night?

This can be a good idea. Often you can get cheaper electrical rates. Often there is not a voltage drop at night in areas where power conditions are not great. If you do this be careful of conditions near the kiln. You may want to have a good fire alarm or automatic sprinkler system. You will probably need the automatic DynaTrol option to do this because of the easy-to-use Time Delay feature. Also be sure to be around the kiln when it is at the end of its firing to protect against overfiring.

Should I get a powered bottom?

Powered bottoms are available as options on some Jupiter and DaVinci kilns. They are not available on the Easy-Fire kilns. We recommend this option for a few different reasons. 1) If you are firing very dense loads such as tiles. 2) On very large kilns such as the T3400 Series where you could get a cold spot in the floor – improves uniformity. 3) To decrease cycle time and add KW to the kiln – not normally an issue with ceramics but it can be for some industrial processes. 4) To increase the temperature rating of a J23 or J2918 kiln. Another benefit of a powered bottom is that it increases the element life by allowing all the elements to work less hard to achieve the same results.

Does it make sense to buy a J18, J23 or J2918 and then add a section to it later?

The J18, J23 and J2918 control panels all come with three-zone capability. Therefore you can easily add a section later to make the kiln into either a J18X, J230 or J2927. The cost is just slightly higher plus, of course, the cost of shipping. For larger kilns like the J230 or J2927, if you anticipate making the kiln larger, you should special order a larger control panel (four or five zones). Contact the factory for more information.

Can I buy kiln furniture separately rather than in the kits mentioned for each model?

You can buy shelves and posts separately in any combination. There is a slight discount for buying it in the kit form but not enough to deter you from buying exactly what you need for the way you load your kiln.

Where should I put my kiln?

Your kiln should be in a covered enclosed space. A basement or garage is usually a good location. Preferably the floor should be concrete. There must be at least 12" from the walls of the kiln to any walls of the room. Keep all flammables away from the kiln. Room should be vented with either good natural ventilation or forced ventilation fan. See hotkilns.com/preorder.pdf for a great pre-order checklist and description of various important considerations you need to make before you buy a kiln.

Can I keep my kiln in an unheated shed?

Yes. Lack of heat will not harm the kiln. The kiln is made for extreme expansion and contraction. However, you don't want the kiln to get moist from condensation and then freeze because this could harm the brick. The specification on the control puts its operating temperature range between 0 and 125 Deg F. However, the low temperature will mostly affect how accurate the control will be – not an important consideration when you are first starting a firing (unless you are candling). As the kiln heats up it should bring the ambient temperature up to a reasonable degree and allow the control to function properly. On the other hand, very hot outdoor sheds could present a problem for the control overheating. You may need to blow a small fan on the control in extreme circumstances.

Can I put my kiln directly on the floor?

No. You must have an air space between the kiln bottom and the floor. This is true even for a cement floor. The water in the cement could cause a mini explosion and at least spalling. A kiln sitting on a flammable floor such as a wood floor could very well cause a fire – even if it doesn't seem like it is getting too hot at first. Over time a wood floor could dry out and become more flammable. Be very careful with any flammable floors and be sure to have an adequate insulator over it like cinder blocks and then put our stand on top of that. Be sure to monitor the heat in the floor occasionally if the potential for a fire exists. Basically, you do not want to have direct contact between the kiln bottom and anything that will conduct heat.

Where can I get good information on how to fire my kiln?

We include many firing tip brochures from Orton. For a more in depth explanation Orton has a great booklet called Successful Firing Practices. They also have a number of other booklets available such as Cones and Firing (20 pages), Using Orton Cones/Temperature Charts, Kiln Safety Booklet, Kiln-Sitter Maintenance & Repair and Porcelain Firing Guide. Contact Orton at 614-895-2663 for more information. In addition L&L has available a book called Electric Kiln Ceramics written by Richard Zakin. This is an excellent in depth review of clays, glazes and techniques developed exclusively for use in an electric kiln. We also sell What Every Potter Should Know, 222 pages, by Jeff Zamek. Author Jeff Zamek has researched just about every mishap that can occur in ceramics and has learned how to either prevent or correct them. He provides information in easy to grasp segments to guide you through new glaze formulas, new clay body formulas, kiln firing techniques, clay/glaze defects, and much more. We also sell Mastering Cone 6 Glazes by Ron Roy and John Hasselberth – a great book about making and firing wonderful "reduction quality" Cone 6 glazes in an automatic electric kiln. See *hotkilns.com/books.pdf* for more details. Also see our Troubleshooting Guide (*hotkilns.com/trouble.pdf*) which has a whole section on typical ceramic firing problems.

ELECTRICAL QUESTIONS

Do I need a separate electrical line for my kiln?

We recommend that you install your kiln on a separate line coming out of your main electrical box. It should have its own circuit breaker or fused disconnect switch. See hotkilns.com/preorder.pdf for a great pre-order checklist and description of various important considerations you need to make before you buy a kiln.

How do I know if I have 240 or 208 volts and single or three phase?

Most household electrical current is 240 volts, single phase. Industrial or commercial can be anything. If you aren't sure ask your electrical utility company or an electrician. It is important to know because it can be expensive to convert a kiln form one voltage to another. See *hotkilns.com/volts.pdf* for more information.

Is three phase cheaper to run than single phase?

Not normally. You still use the same amount of KW hours regardless of the phase of the power. In some areas there may be cheaper rates for three phase power so you might check on this if three phase is available to you. The main reason that three phase is used is that the size of the wires and circuit breaker or fused disconnect is dramatically smaller than with single phase for the same amount of KW This is particularly important for larger kilns. On our Easy-Fire kilns we take advantage of the fact that we can get more power from 3 phase and still keep under the 48 amp limit for the power cord.

What do I do if I ordered the wrong voltage or phase?

Depending on the kiln it may be possible to switch the phase easily at our factory by sending in the control panel. This is possible for almost all Jupiter and DaVinci kilns. We can also instruct your electrician in how to do this. If you ordered a 240 volt kiln and you have 208 volts you will get about 25% less power out of the kiln. If you can live with this then you may not have to do anything. If you need the full power you will need to change all the elements to 208 volt elements. If you ordered a 208 volt kiln and you have 240 volts you must change the elements because the kiln will draw too much power and you will burn out the electricals inside the control box to say nothing of what you could do to your own power lines. While we do not accept responsibility for such mistakes we do our best to minimize the expense. Call the factory if this happens and we will sell you a set of appropriate elements at a deep discount.

PARTS, SERVICE AND INSTRUCTIONS FOR L&L KILNS

I just bought an old L&L kiln and its in great shape. How do I get instructions?
You can download almost all our instructions (including those for older models) from our PDF Library (*hotkilns.com/pdf.htm*). Or send a check to L&L Kiln Mfg for $25 along with the model and serial number of the kiln. We will send you a complete instruction manual, wiring diagram, troubleshooting guide, parts list, etc.

How old is my kiln?
Look at the Serial Number. Usually the last two digits are the year in which it was made. For instance a kiln with the Serial Number 0992A would have been made in 1992.

Where can I get parts?
Parts are available direct from the factory. We typically ship the day after we get an order. We can ship next day air if you are in a rush. We accept Visa, Mastercard and American Express. Some distributors also stock parts and you can order through them if you prefer.

Are parts available for all L&L kilns?
Just about. Certainly all Easy-Fire, Jupiter, J Series, K Series, DaVinci X & T Series, OV Oval Series, SQ Series, H & C Series. Some brick may not be available. Elements are almost never a problem. Some unusual old electrical parts are not available. We made a few odd kilns in the 40's and 50's that we may not be able to help you with.

Why should I use L&L elements?
Replacement elements made by L&L Kiln Mfg., Inc. are designed for each individual model for long life and superior performance. Good element design is a complex balance of watt density, design voltage, stretch ratio, wire gauge, element length and material. It takes hours and years of experience to design a good element for each model. Do not expect an outside supplier with no interest in your kiln performance or long experience with L&L kilns to spend the necessary time to do this right. In the end you will not save money.

What can I do to improve element life?
See *hotkilns.com/troubleshoot-elements.pdf*. Consider heavy duty elements. They are standard on Easy-Fire and DaVinci kilns and an option on Jupiter kilns (and some older J Series Econo-kilns). These elements are heavier gauge wire and lower watt density than the standard elements. They require a larger element holder (which is used on all J Series kilns manufactured after Jan 1, 1996).

My kiln is taking longer and longer to heat up. What is the problem?
Chances are the elements have aged. See our troubleshooting guide at *hotkilns.com/troubleshoot-elements.pdf*.

My thermocouples keep burning out. What can I do to improve thermocouple life?
If you are using 14 gauge thermocouples at least upgrade to 8 gauge (these use thicker wire). However, for ultimate performance the best Type K thermocouple available is the 8 gauge thermocouple with the industrial mullite protection tube. Platinum thermocouples (which are very expensive) can work with the DynaTrol but the DynaTrol has to be specially rebuilt. See *hotkilns.com/stc.pdf*. Type S thermocouples will not work with the Truview Pyrometer System.

Is there a temporary fix for a broken thermocouple?
If you have one of the exposed Type K thermocouples you can break away some of the ceramic at the end and twist the two wires together. Or you can use an acetylene torch to reweld the tip (using Borax to dip the hot tip into afterwards to prevent undue oxidation). This may get you by for a little while. There is no way to repair one of the industrial thermocouples.

Where can I get service?
See *hotkilns.com/service.pdf*. We keep a list of the names of local kiln service people that we find out about. Call us for a name and we'll see if we can help you. Check

our distributor list. Most of our distributors provide repair service. Check the local yellow pages. L&L kilns are designed for easy service and most of our customers do their own service. Most qualified electricians should be able to help with service. L&L kilns are perhaps the simplest kiln on the market in terms of repair ability so most people are either able to do their own repair work or find a competent non-specialist to help.

Expert Instrument Panel Repair

If you have a problem that you are unable to fix yourself with a Econo-Kiln, Jupiter or DaVinci instrument panel you can send it to L&L for inspection and/or repair. Remove it from the panel (you may want to leave the Dawson kiln sitter attached) and carefully pack it and send by UPS. L&L will inspect it and advise you of repair charges before proceeding. There is a non-refundable $25 inspection/handling fee for this service. Repair charges are extra but there is no extra handling or packing charge to send it back, only the cost of UPS charges. Sorry, we can not estimate repair costs over the phone. The worse case is, of course, that you would need to buy a new instrument panel. If this is advised L&L will apply the $25 inspection fee against the cost of a new panel. We charge $75 per hour for our shop time. (How much does your service person charge per hour? Do they charge for travel? Do they know everything about your control?). PLEASE CALL OUR SERVICE DEPARTMENT BEFORE SENDING YOUR PANEL.

2011 Price List and Mini-Catalog

Effective January 1, 2011 (Revised 5-15-11)

(Introducing new Quad options across most of the top-loading product line)

Prices are subject to change without notice. All prices are FOB Swedesboro, NJ. All kilns ship Class 85. All shipping weights are approximate. Packaging is included in the price (except for shelves which go by common carrier and some export crating which will be quoted). All kilns include L&L's Standard Limited Three-Year Warranty except for the School-Master kilns which include a special Five-Year Limited Warranty. Kilns are not returnable. See hotkilns.com/policies for all L&L policies.

Orders are accepted by phone, fax or email. Accepted forms of payment are Visa, Mastercard or American Express. Wire transfer is welcome (contact office for details). Terms are available for most schools and institutions and for companies with good D&B ratings.

Toll Free: 888.683.7472

505 Sharptown Road, Swedesboro, NJ 08085

Phone: 856-294-0077 Fax: 856-294-0070 Email: sales@hotkilns.com Web: hotkilns.com

EASY-FIRE KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Furn Kit	Quad Elem	No. Shelves F=full, H=half	Brick Thick	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	Exterior Dimensions (in)	240/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	240/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
e18S	$1675	$285	$250	15-1/2" (1F, 4H)	2-1/2"	17-1/2"	18"	2.6	29W x 31H x 30D	5.7~23.9~30	5.7~18.9~30	5.0~23.9~30	5.0~18.9~30	190	245
e18S-3	$1725	$285	$250	15" (1F, 4H)	3"	16-1/2"	18"	2.5	29W x 32H x 30D	5.7~23.9~30	5.7~18.9~30	5.0~23.9~30	5.0~18.9~30	220	255
e18T	$2225	$325	$375	15-1/2" (2F, 4H)	2-1/2"	17-1/2"	27"	3.9	29W x 40H x 30D	8.4~35.0~50	8.4~20.2~30	8.4~40.4~60	8.4~23.3~30	230	305
e18T-3	$2300	$325	$375	15" (2F, 4H)	3"	16-1/2"	27"	3.7	29W x 41H x 30D	8.4~35.0~50	8.4~20.2~30	8.4~40.4~60	8.4~23.3~30	255	325
e23S	$2250	$325	$300	21" (1F, 4H)	2-1/2"	23-3/8"	18"	4.7	31W x 32H x 42D	9.5~39.4~50	9.5~31.2~40	8.3~40.0~50	8.3~31.6~40	265	350
e23S-3	$2350	$325	$300	20" (1F, 4H)	3"	22-3/8"	18"	4.4	31W x 33H x 42D	9.5~39.4~50	9.5~31.2~40	8.3~40.0~50	8.3~31.6~40	305	375
e23T	$2775	$400	$450	21" (2F, 4H)	2-1/2"	23-3/8"	27"	7.0	31W x 41H x 42D	11.5~48.0~60	11.5~27.7~40	10.0~48.0~60	11.0~30.5~40	325	420
e23T-3	$2875	$400	$450	20" (2F, 4H)	3"	22-3/8"	27"	6.7	31W x 42H x 42D	11.5~48.0~60	11.5~27.7~40	10.0~48.0~60	11.0~30.5~40	360	455
e28S-3	$2775	$505	$400	25-1/2" (6H)	3"	28"	18"	6.8	37W x 33H x 48D	11.5~47.9~60	11.5~37.9~50	10.0~48.0~60	10.0~38.0~50	370	470
e28T-3	$3300	$615	$600	25-1/2" (8H)	3"	28"	27"	10.2	37W x 42H x 48D	11.5~48.0~60	16.6~40.0~50	10.0~48.0~60	14.3~39.8~50	460	565

Furniture Kit: includes the shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6" and 8" high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. **Cone Rating:** All models are rated to Cone 10 except the e28T-3 which is rated to Cone 8 at 240V/1 Phase, Cone 5 at 208V/1 Phase and Cone 10 for any 3 phase kiln. **More**: See various Easy-Fire Specification Sheets at hotkilns.com additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control and DynaTrol for information about the control system.

This is the classic L&L multi-purpose kiln.

Standard Features

24-Key DynaTrol with Dynamic Zone Control (two zones for "S" models and three zones for "T" models) • Type K 8 gauge thermocouples with ceramic protection tubes • Piggy-back control panel with drop-down front panel for easy maintenance • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plugs with full 1" view (no tapering) • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" stainless steel spring hinge system with full-support when door is up and tilted back (there are no support bars to get in the way of loading) (Spring hinge not available on e18S & e18T models) • Mercury-free relays • Plugs on all USA models (6-50 on single phase and 15-50 on three phase) • c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Voltage & Element Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase are all standard options. .... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge
Quad Element System (watts & amps do not change - elements doubled & more massive with Quad system) .... See above

Control Options

Pyrocil metal-sheathed thermocouple (instead of 8 ga TCs with ceramic protection tubes).......... no charge
Type S platinum thermocouples (2 required for 18" High "S" models, 3 required for 27" High "T" models) .... $175 each
KISS Computer Software to monitor control with USB connector for computer.......... $575

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440

EASY-FIRE XT SQUARE KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Furn Kit	High Power	Quad Elem	Shelves in Furniture Kit	Inside W x D	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	External Dimensions	Stand KW	High KW	240/1 Amp~Fuse	240/3 Amp~Fuse	208/1 Amp~Fuse	208/3 Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
XB2318-EZ	$3400	$350	n/a	$350	(4) 20" x 10"	22" Square	18"	5.0	40W x 32H x 42D	8.9	n/a	37.2~50	32.2~40	42.9~60	37.2~50	500	550
X2327-EZ	$3825	$440	$30	$525	(6) 20" x 10"	22" Square	27"	8.1	40W x 41H x 42D	11.7	13.4	48.8~60	28.2~40	56.3~70	32.5~40	600	665
XB2818-EZ	$4125	$385	n/a	$400	(4) 23" x 11-1/2"	26-1/2" Square	18"	7.8	45W x 32H x 43D	11.6	n/a	48.3~60	41.8~60	55.7~70	48.3~60	625	695
X2827-EZ	$5075	$495	$55	$600	(6) 23" x 11-1/2"	26-1/2" Square	27"	11.7	45W x 41H x 43D	14.9	17.4	62.2~80	35.9~50	71.8~90	41.5~60	735	835

Furniture Kit: includes the shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6" and 8" high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. **Cone Rating:** All models are rated to Cone 10. **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Easy-Fire-XT.pdf for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control and hotkilns.com/Spec-DynaTrol.

Standard Features

The Easy-Fire XT Square kilns feature a square body shape as used in our DaVinci Series • Stainless steel spring hinge as used on the Easy-fire kilns • 3" brick • Three elements per 9" section • Strong arched sides with extra space added to interior dimensions for good air circulation • Series of strong aluminized stands • Hinged control panel for easy maintenance mounted on the element box • Automatic 24-Key DynaTrol with Dynamic Zone control (two zone for 18" models and three zone for 27" models) • Type K 8 gauge thermocouples with ceramic protection tubes • Solid peephole plugs with full 1" view (no tapering) • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • Mercury-free relays • Direct wire • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton or Crate for Common Carrier

Voltage & Element Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase are all standard options. .... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge
Quad Element System (watts & amps do not change - there are two doubled elements instead of the normal three) .... See above

Control and Vent Options

See above options for Easy-fire Kilns.

SCHOOL-MASTER K-12 SCHOOL KILNS WITH ONE-TOUCH™ CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Furn Kit	No. of Shelves F=full, H=half	Brick Thick	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	Exterior Dimensions	240/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	240/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
SM23T	$2575	$400	21" (2F, 4H)	2-1/2"	23-3/8"	27"	7.0	31W x 41H x 42D	11.5~48.0~60	11.5~27.7~40	10.0~48.0~60	11.0~30.5~40	325	420
SM23T-3	$2675	$400	20" (2F, 4H)	3"	22-3/8"	27"	6.7	31W x 42H x 42D	11.5~48.0~60	11.5~27.7~40	10.0~48.0~60	11.0~30.5~40	360	455
SM28T-3	$3100	$615	25-1/2" (8H)	3"	28"	27"	10.2	37W x 42H x 48D	11.5~48.0~60	16.6~40.0~50	10.0~48.0~60	14.3~39.8~50	460	565

Furniture Kit: includes the shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6" and 8" high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. You can substitute two half shelves for one full shelf at no charge. **Cone Rating:** All models rated for Cone 6 except for the SM28T-3, 208V/1 phase which is rated for Cone 5. **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-School-Master for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. Also see hotkilns.com/Spec-One-Touch for more information about the One-Touch™ control. See hotkilns.com/five-year-warranty for information about the K-12 Five-Year Warranty.

NEW

This is the new standard for school kilns.

Standard Features

SPECIAL FIVE-YEAR LIMITED WARRANTY. Proprietary One-Touch™ Intuitive Kiln Control is designed for busy school teachers - One touch and you are ready to fire the bisque and glaze programs typically used in schools (also easy to adjust simple parameters like cone, delay, hold, heat-up and cool-down rates). You can even create four custom ramp/hold programs. • Type K 8 gauge thermocouple with protection tube • Single zone with graded elements • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Three solid peephole plugs with full 1" view (no tapering) • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" stainless steel spring hinge system with full-support when door is up and tilted back (there are no support bars to get in the way of loading) • Mercury-free relays • Plugs on all USA models (6-50 on single phase and 15-50 on three phase) • c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

5-YEAR WARRANTY

Voltage Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase .... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440

HERCULES MEDIUM SIZE FRONT-LOADING KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Price	Furn Kit	Inside Dimensions	Cubic Feet	Hearth Size	Shelves in Furniture Kit	Hearth Height	KW	240/1 Amp~Fuse	240/3 Amp~Fuse	208/1 Amp~Fuse	208/3 Amp~Fuse	480/3 Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
EL2424-H	$7375	$350	25W x 26D x 24H	8	22" x 22"	(4) 11" x 22"	30"	15.0	63.0~80	55.0~70	73.0~90	63.0~80	28.0~40	1075	1250
EL2427-H	$7975	$455	25W x 26D x 27H	9	22" x 22"	(6) 11" x 22"	30"	15.0	63.0~80	55.0~70	73.0~90	63.0~80	28.0~40	1200	1450

Furniture Kit: includes the shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6" and 8" high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. **Cone Rating:** Cone 10 **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Hercules.pdf for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control.pdf and DynaTrol.pdf for information about the control system.

NEW LARGER SIZE

MET US

This is the best value in medium-sized front-loading kilns. Elements in the door, gasketed plug door, arched roof, door shut-off switch - all are standard at an excellent price. Now there are two sizes - a 24" high and a 27" high model.

Standard Features

Adjustable door • Plug seal with gasket • Heavy 12 gauge welded case with separate but attached stand • Leveling pads • Extra-tough K25 2500°F 4-1/2" firebrick arch • Other insulation is 3" of K23 brick with 2" of mineral wool backup insulation • Elements on door, sides and back • 24-Key DynaTrol with Dynamic Zone Control • Type K 8 gauge thermocouples with ceramic protection tubes • Control panel mounted with air space between it and the case • Branch fusing in control • Two solid peephole plugs with full 1" view (no tapering) in the door • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • Door power safety shut-off switch • Direct wire • Mercury-free relays • MET-us listed to UL499 standards • The kiln will fit through a 34-1/2" wide door without disassembly or removal of door • Crated with interior support and air-cushion skids. Shipping arrangements must be made by factory (see hotkilns.com/front-loader-installation-checklist.pdf)

Voltage Options

See all control voltage options for the Easy-Load Kilns on Page 6.

Control Options

See all control options for the Easy-Load Kilns on Page 6.

Hinge Mounting

Hinge mounted on right and panel mounted on left (production delay for this)..........................$800

FOR LARGE FRONT-LOADING KILNS SEE PAGE 6

JUPITER CUSTOMIZABLE KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Powered Bottom	Furn Kit	Quad Elem	No. of Shelves F=full, H=half	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	Cone Rating	240/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	240/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
JD Jupiter Automatic Kilns with 2-1/2” Brick															
JD18	$1725	n/a	$285	$250	15-1/2” (1F, 4H)	17-1/2”	18”	2.6	10	5.5~23.0~30	5.5~19.9~30	5.5~26.5~30	5.5~23.0~30	200	245
JD18X	$2400	n/a	$325	$375	15-1/2” (2F, 4H)	17-1/2”	27”	3.9	10	8.3~34.5~50	8.3~19.9~30	8.3~39.8~50	8.3~23.0~30	245	295
JD23V	$2275	$450	$325	$300	21” (1F, 4H)	23-3/8”	18”	4.7	5	7.0~29.3~40	7.0~25.4~40	6.1~29.3~40	6.1~25.4~40	275	350
JD230V	$2825	$450	$400	$450	21” (2F, 4H)	23-3/8”	27”	7.0	10	10.6~44.0~60	10.6~25.4~40	9.1~44.0~60	9.1~25.4~40	330	425
JD236V	$3400	$450	$470	$600	21” (3F, 4H)	23-3/8”	36”	9.4	10	14.1~58.6~80	14.1~38.1~50	12.2~58.6~80	12.2~38.1~50	360	455
JD245V	$3975	$450	$545	$750	21” (4F, 4H)	23-3/8”	45”	11.8	10	17.6~73.3~100	17.6~50.8~70	15.2~73.3~100	15.2~50.8~70	445	560
JD2918	$3200	$575	$505	$350	25-1/2” (6H)	29”	18”	6.9	5	9.1~38.0~50	9.1~32.9~50	8.3~40.0~50	8.3~34.6~50	335	440
JD2927	$3975	$575	$615	$525	25-1/2” (8H)	29”	27”	10.3	10	13.7~57.0~80	13.7~32.9~50	12.5~60.0~80	12.5~34.6~50	390	520
JD2936	$5025	$575	$735	$700	25-1/2” (10H)	29”	36”	13.8	10	18.2~76.0~100	18.2~49.3~70	16.6~80.0~100	16.6~52.0~70	480	635
JD2945	$5925	$575	$850	$875	25-1/2” (12H)	29”	45”	17.2	10	22.8~95.0~125	22.8~65.8~90	20.8~100.0~125	20.8~69.3~90	575	755
JD Jupiter Automatic Kilns with 3” brick															
JD18-3	$1775	n/a	$285	$250	15” (1F, 4H)	16-1/2”	18”	2.5	10	5.5~23.0~30	5.5~19.9~30	5.5~26.5~30	5.5~23.0~30	230	280
JD18X-3	$2500	n/a	$325	$375	15” (2F, 4H)	16-1/2”	27”	3.7	10	8.3~34.5~50	8.3~19.9~30	8.3~39.8~50	8,3~23.0~30	270	320
JD23V-3	$2400	$450	$325	$300	20” (1F, 4H)	22-3/8”	18”	4.5	5	7.0~29.3~40	7.0~25.4~40	6.1~29.3~40	6.1~25.4~40	315	340
JD230V-3	$2950	$450	$400	$450	20” (2F, 4H)	22-3/8”	27”	6.7	10	10.6~44.0~60	10.6~25.4~40	9.1~44.0~60	9.1~25.4~40	385	470
JD236V-3	$3550	$450	$470	$600	20” (3F, 4H)	22-3/8”	36”	8.9	10	14.1~58.6~80	14.1~38.1~50	12.2~58.6~80	12.2~38.1~50	460	545
JD245V-3	$4200	$450	$545	$750	20” (4F, 4H)	22-3/8”	45”	11.1	10	17.6~73.3~100	17.6~50.8~70	15.2~73.3~100	15.2~50.8~70	540	650
JD2918-3	$3300	$575	$505	$350	25-1/2” (6H)	28”	18”	6.8	5	9.1~38.0~50	9.1~32.9~50	8.3~40.0~50	8.3~34.6~50	380	480
JD2927-3	$4125	$575	$615	$525	25-1/2” (8H)	28”	27”	10.2	10	13.7~57.0~80	13.7~32.9~50	12.5~60.0~80	12.5~34.6~50	450	575
JD2936-3	$5250	$575	$735	$700	25-1/2” (10H)	28”	36”	13.6	10	18.2~76.0~100	18.2~49.3~70	16.6~80.0~100	16.6~52.0~70	565	715
JD2945-3	$6225	$575	$850	$875	25-1/2” (12H)	28”	45”	17.0	10	22.8~95.0~125	22.8~65.8~90	20.8~100.0~125	20.8~69.3~90	645	820

Note: All the J2300 series are available with higher watts “EZ” elements (the same elements used in the e23T kilns) at no extra charge. Contact factory for details. **Furniture Kit:** includes the shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2”, 1”, 2”, 4”, 6” and 8” high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. You can substitute two half shelves for one full shelf at no charge. **Cone Rating:** See above chart. **More**: See various Jupiter Automatic specification sheets at hotkilns.com/pdf for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control and hotkilns.com/Spec-DynaTrol for information about the control system.

MET c us

Jupiter kilns are highly customizable, with tall heights possible (even taller than what is shown here. They are easy-to stack and disassemble because of the plug-in sections- great for sculpture.

Standard Features

Automatic 24-Key DynaTrol with zone control • Kiln sections plug into separate control panel • Type K 8 gauge thermocouples with ceramic protection tubes • Separate control box with plug-in sections • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plugs with full 1” view (no tapering) • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • “Easy-Lift, Easy-Load” stainless steel spring hinge system with full-support when door is up and tilted back (there are no support bars to get in the way of loading) is standard on all 12 and 10 sided models (29”, 28”, 22” and 23” diameter), Not available on the 8 sided (17-1/2” and 16-1/2” diameter models) • Branch fusing on all models above 50 amps • 6-50 plug on JD18, JD18X, JD23, JD230 and JD230-EZ single phase models. 15-50 plug on JD18, JD18X, JD23, JD230 and JD230-EZ three phase models. All other models are direct wire • Mercury-free relays • c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Voltage & Element Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase .... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge
480 volts/3 phase $650
(needs NEMA1 panel for MET-us listing) (sections hard wired to power box)
NEMA 1 Control box for industrial use (MET-us listed with this extra option for 480 volts) $650
Quad Element System (watts & amps do not change from the standard models. For JD1800 & JD2300 elements are doubled & more massive with Quad system. For JD2900 there are two doubled elements instead of the normal three) .... See above

Pull-Apart Option for Sculpture

“Pull-Apart” Option for sculpture. Includes floor mount stand for control panel, lift off lid with extra handles but no hinge. This option allows the entire kiln to be dismantled to make it easy to load large sculptural pieces. The kiln sections are unplugged and then taken off one at a time. There is no charge for this option. However, If you want the “Easy-Lift, Easy-Load” spring hinge with it there is a $175 extra charge.

Control Options

An Orton Kiln Sitter is available as safety backup to the automatic control $600
120 volt power supply with electrical noise filter for the automatic control $175
Pyrocil metallic type K thermocouples instead of 8 ga type K TCs with ceramic protection tubes .... no charge
Type S platinum thermocouples (2 required for 18” kilns, 3 required for all other models) .... $175 each
KISS Computer Software to monitor control with USB connector $575

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440

eQUAD-PRO PRODUCTION KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Furn Kit	No. of Shelves F=full, H=half	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	Exterior Dimensions	240/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	240/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
eQ2327-3	$3550	$400	20" (2F, 4H)	22-3/8"	27"	6.7	31W x 42H x 42D	13.4~56.0~70	13.4~32.4~50	11.7~56.0~70	11.7~32.4~50	365	485
eQ2827-3	$4100	$615	25-1/2" (8H)	28"	27"	10.2	37W x 42H x 48D	15.0~62.3~80	15.0~36.0~50	15.0~71.9~90	15.0~41.5~60	480	585
eQ2836-3	$4800	$735	25-1/2" (10H)	28"	36"	13.6	37W x 51H x 48D	19.0~79.2~100	19.0~51.5~70	19.0~91.3~125*	19.0~59.4~80	595	725

***Note**:Special model eQ2836-X-208-1P is available with 16.6 KW, 208 Volt/1 Phase, 80 amps for a 100 amp fuse. **Furniture Kit:** includes the shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6" and 8" high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. **Cone Rating:** Cone 10 **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-eQuad-Pro for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control and hotkilns.com/Spec-DynaTrol for information about the control system.

The eQuad-Pro sets a new standard in production kilns.

Standard Features

24-Key DynaTrol with Dynamic Zone Control • 3" brick • Quad element system (fours rows of super heavy gauge elements per 9" high section) • Extra power with branch fusing for high production work • Type K 8 gauge thermocouples with ceramic protection tubes • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plugs with full 1" view (no tapering) • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" stainless steel spring hinge system with full-support when door is up and tilted back (there are no support bars to get in the way of loading) • Mercury-free relays • Direct wired • MET-us listing to UL499 standards is pending • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Voltage Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase .... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge

Control Options

Type S platinum thermocouples (3 required if you want to maintain the 3 zone capability) ....$175 each
KISS Computer Software to monitor control with USB connector for computer.....................................$575

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440

JH SERIES CRYSTALLINE GLAZE CONE 12 KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	APM Elements	Furn Kit	No. of Shelves F=full, H=half	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	240/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	240/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
JD18-JH	$2525	$540	$285	15-1/2" (1F, 4H)	17-1/2"	18"	2.6	8.8~36.7~60	8.8~31.7~50	8.8~42.3~60	8.8~36.8~50	255	300
e23S-JH	$2950	$580	$325	21" full (1F, 4H)	23-3/8"	18"	4.7	10.5~47.9~60	n/a	10.0~48.0~60	n/a	280	365
JD230-JH	$4675	$870	$400	21" full (2F, 4H)	23-3/8"	27"	7.0	13.7~57.0~80	13.7~32.9~50	12.5~60.0~80	12.5~34.7~50	400	505
JD2927-JH	$5950	$990	$615	25-1/2" (8H)	29"	27"	10.3	18.0~75.2~100	18.0~43.5~60	18.0~86.7~125	18.0~50.1~70	580	710

Furniture Kit: includes high alumina shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6" and 8" high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. You can substitute two half shelves for one full shelf at no charge. **Cone Rating:** Cone 12 **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-JH for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control and hotkilns.com/Spec-DynaTrol for information about the control system.

This is the "Thoroughbred" of kilns. Designed specifically for Crystalline Glaze firing - fast, responsive and precise.

Standard Features

These kilns will reach 2400°F (cone 12) • Includes 2-1/2" of K25 2500°F firebrick of sides and bottom with a 3" thick top • Approximately 25% more power than the base models • Quad element holder system with super heavy-duty elements • Type S platinum thermocouples • 24-Key DynaTrol dynamic zone control • Other features that are standard on the base models • Plugs vary with model, voltage and phase. See Specification sheet • Not UL499 Listed • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Voltage Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase .... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge

Control Options

KISS Computer Software to monitor control with USB connector for computer...$575

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440

Custom Variations

We can make a large number of variations on this design - for instance to accomodate industrial processes. We can offer thicker firebrick, multi-layered insulation, many different sizes, more power and many other options too numerous to mention. Please contact the factory to discuss your requirements.

EASY-LOAD LARGE FRONT-LOADING KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Price	Furn Kit	Inside Dimensions	Cubic Feet	Hearth Size	Shelves in Furniture Kit	Hearth Height	KW	240/1 Amp~Fuse	240/3 Amp~Fuse	208/1 Amp~Fuse	208/3 Amp~Fuse	480/3 Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
EL2436	$11,825	$705	25W x 25D x 36H	12	22” x 22”	(8) 11” x 22”	29”	19.0	80.0~100	46.0~60	92.0~125	53.0~70	24.0~30	1350	1500
EL2448	$14,250	$805	25W x 25D x 48H	16	22” x 22”	(10) 11” x 22”	18”	24.2	101.0~125	59.0~80	117.0~150	68.0~90	30.0~40	1500	1750
EL2848	$15,350	$1075	31W x 25D x 48H	20	28” x 24”	(12) 14” x 24”	18”	27.0	113.0~150	66.0~90	130.0~175	75.0~100	33.0~50	1750	2000
EL3048	$17,775	$1130	31W x 31D x 48H	25	28” x 28”	(12) 14” x 28”	18”	31.5	132.0~175	76.0~100	152.0~200	88.0~125	39.0~50	2000	2300

Furniture Kit: includes twelve each (two large post kits) 1/2”, 1”, 2”, 4”, 6”, & 8” high 1-1/2” square ceramic posts, insulated gloves for unloading and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. **Cone Rating:** Cone 10 **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Easy-Load for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control and hotkilns.com/Spec-DynaTrol for information about the control system.

Standard Features

Adjustable door • Massive hinge for stability of door • Plug seal with gasket • Heavy 10 gauge welded case with integrated stand • Extra-tough K25 2500°F 4-1/2” firebrick arch • Other insulation is 3” of K23 brick with 2” of mineral wool backup insulation • Elements on door, sides and back • 24-Key DynaTrol with Dynamic Zone Control • Type K 8 gauge thermocouples with ceramic protection tubes • Control panel mounted with air space between it and the case • Branch fusing in control • Three solid peephole plugs with full 1” view (no tapering) in the door • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • Door power safety shut-off switch • Direct wire • Mercury-free relays • MET-us listed to UL499 standards • The kiln will fit through a door shown above without disassembly or removal of door • Crated with interior support and air-cushion skids • Shipping arrangements must be made by factory (see hotkilns.com/front-loader-installation-checklist.pdf) • All the kilns except the EL3048 will go through a 34-1/2” wide by 75” high door. The EL3048 needs a minimum door size of 40-1/2” wide by 75” high.

Big, strong, well-built - if you need a large front-loading kiln we have it. L&L has been building front-loading kilns for over 60 years.

Voltage Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase are all standard options. KW does not change.... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge
480 volts/3 phase (needs NEMA1 panel for MET-us listing) $650
NEMA 1 Control box (MET-us listed with this extra option for 480 volts)....$650

Control Options

An Orton Kiln Sitter with back up safety contactors to backup to automatic control $600
High Limit Electronic Control latching relay and back up safety contactors (alternate to Kiln Sitter back-up)....$600
120 volt power supply with electrical noise filter for the automatic control $175
Pyrocil metallic type K thermocouples instead of 8 ga type K TCs with ceramic protection tubes.... no charge
Type S platinum thermocouples (3 required for Easy-Load and Hercules EL2427-R, 2 for Hercules EL2424-H) ....$175 each
KISS Computer Software to monitor control with USB connector for computer $575

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440

Hinge Mounting

Hinge mounted on right and panel mounted on left (Special order: production delay for this) $800

DAVINCI SQUARE & RECTANGULAR PRODUCTION KILNS WITH DYNAMIC ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Power Bottom	High Power	Furn Kit	Quad Elem	Shelves in Furn Kit	Post Kits	Inside W x D	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	External Dimensions	Stand KW	High KW	240/1 Fuse	240/3 Fuse	208/1 Fuse	208/3 Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
XB2318-D	$4400	n/a	n/a	$350	$350	(4) 20" x 10"	(1)	22" Square	18"	5.0	40W x 32H x 42D	8.9	n/a	50	40	60	50	600	650
X2327-D	$4850	n/a	$35	$440	$525	(6) 20" x 10"	(1)	22" Square	27"	8.1	40W x 41H x 42D	11.7	13.4	60	40	70	40	700	765
X2336-D	$5500	n/a	$70	$675	$700	(8) 20" x 10"	(2)	22" Square	36"	10.8	40W x 50H x 42D	15.6	17.9	80	60	90	60	775	870
X2345-D	$6100	n/a	$95	$765	$875	(10) 20" x 10"	(2)	22" Square	45"	13.5	40W x 59H x 42D	19.5	22.3	100	40	125	80	875	985
XB2818-D	$5200	$725	n/a	$385	$400	(4) 23" x 11-1/2"	(1)	26-1/2" Square	18"	7.8	45W x 32H x 43D	11.6	n/a	60	60	70	60	725	795
X2827-D	$6225	$725	$60	$495	$600	(6) 23" x 11-1/2"	(1)	26-1/2" Square	27"	11.7	45W x 41H x 43D	14.9	17.4	80	50	90	60	835	935
X2836-D	$6975	$725	$95	$765	$800	(8) 23" x 11-1/2"	(2)	26-1/2" Square	36"	15.6	45W x 50H x 43D	19.9	23.2	100	70	125	80	935	1075
X2845-D	$7700	$725	$120	$880	$1000	(10) 23" x 11-1/2"	(2)	26-1/2" Square	45"	19.5	45W x 59H x 43D	24.9	29.0	125	90	150	100	1050	1220
XB3218-D	$5925	$875	n/a	$460	$500	(4) 28" x 14"	(1)	30-1/2" Square	18"	10.0	49W x 32H x 49D	14.2	n/a	80	70	90	80	880	985
X3227-D	$6950	$875	$115	$605	$750	(6) 28" x 14"	(1)	30-1/2" Square	27"	15.0	49W x 41H x 49D	18.0	21.3	100	60	125	70	1000	1150
X3236-D	$7875	$875	$135	$905	$1000	(8) 28" x 14"	(2)	30-1/2" Square	36"	20.0	49W x 50H x 49D	24.4	28.4	125	80	150	100	1135	1340
X3245-D	$8750	$875	$180	$1060	$1250	(10) 28" x 14"	(2)	30-1/2" Square	45"	25.0	49W x 59H x 49D	30.5	35.5	175	125	200	125	1275	1525
TB2318-D	$5850	$1000	n/a	$475	$500	(6) 22" x 11"	(1)	26-1/2" x 34-3/4"	18"	9.7	54W x 32H x 43D	15.3	n/a	80	70	100	80	900	995
T2327-D	$6850	$1000	$115	$635	$750	(9) 22" x 11"	(1)	26-1/2" x 34-3/4"	27"	14.6	54W x 41H x 43D	19.5	23.0	100	60	125	70	1035	1175
T2336-D	$7550	$1000	$135	$955	$1000	(12) 22" x 11"	(2)	26-1/2" x 34-3/4"	36"	19.4	54W x 50H x 43D	26.0	30.7	125	90	150	100	1165	1355
T2345-D	$8500	$1000	$180	$1110	$1250	(15) 22" x 11"	(2)	26-1/2" x 34-3/4"	45"	24.3	54W x 59H x 43D	32.5	38.4	175	125	200	125	1300	1530
TB3418-D	$6325	$1175	n/a	$735	$600	(6) 28" x 14"	(2)	30-1/2" x 43-1/2"	18"	13.8	62W x 32H x 49D	19.9	n/a	100	90	125	100	1065	1225
T3427-D	$7400	$1175	$135	$975	$900	(9) 28" x 14"	(2)	30-1/2" x 43-1/2"	27"	20.7	62W x 41H x 49D	24.9	36.5	125	80	150	90	1225	1455
T3436-D	$8575	$1175	$180	$1195	$1200	(12) 28" x 14"	(2)	30-1/2" x 43-1/2"	36"	27.6	62W x 50H x 49D	33.3	39.9	175	125	200	125	1475	1775
T3445-D	$10025	$1175	$205	$1625	$1500	(15) 28" x 14"	(3)	30-1/2" x 43-1/2"	45"	34.5	62W x 59H x 49D	41.6	49.8	200	150	225	175	1675	2050

One Large Square Post Kit: includes six each 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6", & 8" high 1-1/2" square ceramic posts. The Number of post kits varies with model and is shown above. **Furniture Kit:** includes insulated gloves for unloading and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. **Cone Rating:** Cone 10 **More**: See see various DaVinci specification sheets at hotkilns.com/pdf for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. See hotkilns.com/Spec-Zone-Control and hotkilns.com/Spec-DynaTrol for information about the control system.

Standard Features

Counterbalanced Lid with springs inside of tubes • Welded angle-iron stand and hinge system • 3" brick with all brick construction (including lid) • Strong arched sides with extra space added to interior dimensions for good air circulation • Solid peephole plugs with full 1" view (no tapering) • Floor mounted control panel (except for X2300 series) • Branch fusing in control panel • 24-Key DynaTrol with Dynamic Zone Control • Type K 8 gauge thermocouples with ceramic protection tubes • Control mounted in a handheld box with 4' cord • Solid peephole plugs with full 1" view (no tapering) • Hard ceramic element holders • Direct wired • Mercury-free relays • c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards • Three-year Limited Warranty • Wood Crating for Common Carrier. Depending on the model there are either two or three crates

This is L&L's classic production kiln. Great for Universities too.

Voltage & Element Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase are all standard options. KW does not change....................no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) ....no charge
480 volts/3 phase (sections are hard wired to power box with SO cord) (needs NEMA1 panel for MET-us listing)....................$650
NEMA 1 Control box
(MET-us listed with this extra option for 480 volts)....................$650
Quad Element System (watts & amps do not change - there are two doubled elements instead of the normal three)....................See above

High Power Option

XB and TB elements, which have a higher KW rating, are available on the 27", 36" and 45" high DaVinci kilns. Price adder listed above (High Power column).

Control Options

Manual kiln with manual infinite zone switches and Orton Sitter/Timer instead of 24-Key DynaTrol....................no charge
An Orton Kiln Sitter with back up safety contactors to backup to automatic control....................$600
High Limit Electronic Control latching relay and back up safety contactors (alternate to Kiln Sitter back-up)....................$600
120 volt power supply with electrical noise filter....................$175
Pyrocil metallic type K thermocouples ....no charge
Type S platinum thermocouples....................$175 each
(2 required for 18" kilns, 3 required for all other models)
KISS Computer Software to monitor control with USB Connector $575

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440
(Kilns over 20 Cubic feet may need an extra vent)

Bell Lift Option

Available on any X3200 series or T3400 series....................$4500
See hotkilns.com/Spec-Bell-Lift

T644754 (100 cubic feet, 66" W x 47" D x 54" H)....................special quote
See hotkilns.com/ Spec-TB644754

JUPITER CUSTOMIZABLE KILNS WITH KILN SITTER & MANUAL ZONE CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Powered Bottom	Furn Kit	Quad Elem	No. of Shelves F=full, H=half	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	Cone Rating	240/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	240/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/3 KW~Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
Jupiter Manual Kilns with 2-1/2" Brick															
J18	$1675	n/a	$285	$250	15-1/2" (1F, 4H)	17-1/2"	18"	2.6	10	5.5~23.0~30	5.5~19.9~30	5.5~26.5~30	5.5~23.0~30	200	245
J18X	$2350	n/a	$325	$375	15-1/2" (2F, 4H)	17-1/2"	27"	3.9	10	8.3~34.5~50	8.3~19.9~30	8.3~39.8~50	8.3~23.0~30	245	295
J23V	$2225	$450	$325	$300	21" (1F, 4H)	23-3/8"	18"	4.7	5	7.0~29.3~40	7.0~25.4~40	6.1~29.3~40	6.1~25.4~40	275	350
J230V	$2775	$450	$400	$450	21" (2F, 4H)	23-3/8"	27"	7.0	10	10.6~44.0~60	10.6~25.4~40	9.1~44.0~60	9.1~25.4~40	330	425
J236V	$3400	$450	$470	$600	21" (3F, 4H)	23-3/8"	36"	9.4	10	14.1~58.6~80	14.1~38.1~50	12.2~58.6~80	12.2~38.1~50	360	455
J245V	$3975	$450	$545	$750	21" (4F, 4H)	23-3/8"	45"	11.8	10	17.6~73.3~100	17.6~50.8~70	15.2~73.3~100	15.2~50.8~70	445	560
J2918	$3200	$575	$505	$350	25-1/2" (6H)	29"	18"	6.9	5	9.1~38.0~50	9.1~32.9~50	8.3~40.0~50	8.3~34.6~50	335	440
J2927	$3975	$575	$615	$525	25-1/2" (8H)	29"	27"	10.3	10	13.7~57.0~80	13.7~32.9~50	12.5~60.0~80	12.5~34.6~50	390	520
J2936	$5025	$575	$735	$700	25-1/2" (10H)	29"	36"	13.8	10	16.6~76.0~100	16.6~49.3~70	16.6~80.0~100	16.6~52.0~70	480	635
J2945	$5925	$575	$850	$875	25-1/2" (12H)	29"	45"	17.2	10	22.8~95.0~125	22.8~65.8~90	20.8~100.0~125	20.8~69.3~90	575	755
Jupiter Manual Kilns with 3" brick															
J18-3	$1725	n/a	$285	$250	15" (1F, 4H)	16-1/2"	18"	2.5	10	5.5~23.0~30	5.5~19.9~30	5.5~26.5~30	5.5~23.0~30	230	280
J18X-3	$2450	n/a	$325	$375	15" (2F, 4H)	16-1/2"	27"	3.7	10	8.3~34.5~50	8.3~19.9~30	8.3~39.8~50	8.3~23.0~30	270	320
J23V-3	$2350	$450	$325	$300	20" (1F, 4H)	22-3/8"	18"	4.5	5	7.0~29.3~40	7.0~25.4~40	6.1~29.3~40	6.1~25.4~40	315	340
J230V-3	$2900	$450	$400	$450	20" (2F, 4H)	22-3/8"	27"	6.7	10	10.6~44.0~60	10.6~25.4~40	9.1~44.0~60	9.1~25.4~40	385	470
J236V-3	$3550	$450	$470	$600	20" (3F, 4H)	22-3/8"	36"	8.9	10	14.1~58.6~80	14.1~38.1~50	12.2~58.6~80	12.2~38.1~50	460	545
J245V-3	$4200	$450	$545	$750	20" (4F, 4H)	22-3/8"	45"	11.1	10	17.6~73.3~100	17.6~50.8~70	15.2~73.3~100	15.2~50.8~70	540	650
J2918-3	$3300	$575	$505	$350	25-1/2" (6H)	28"	18"	6.8	5	9.1~38.0~50	9.1~32.9~50	8.3~40.0~50	8.3~34.6~50	380	480
J2927-3	$4125	$575	$615	$525	25-1/2" (8H)	28"	27"	10.2	10	13.7~57.0~80	13.7~32.9~50	12.5~60.0~80	12.5~34.6~50	450	575
J2936-3	$5250	$575	$735	$700	25-1/2" (10H)	28"	36"	13.6	10	18.2~76.0~100	18.2~49.3~70	16.6~80.0~100	16.6~52.0~70	565	715
J2945-3	$6225	$575	$850	$875	25-1/2" (12H)	28"	45"	17.0	10	22.8~95.0~125	22.8~65.8~90	20.8~100.0~125	20.8~69.3~90	645	820

Furniture Kit: includes the shelves listed above plus six (6) each of 1/2", 1", 2", 4", 6" and 8" high square posts, plus insulated gloves for unloading, and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. You can substitute two half shelves for one full shelf at no charge. **Cone Rating:** See chart above. **More**: See varius Jupiter Manual specification sheets at hotkilns.com/pdf for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes.

This is the original L&L manual kiln with manual infinitely variable zone control.

Standard Features

Orton Kiln Sitter with Timer backup mounted in external box • Infinite Zone Switches for manual zone control of each section • Kiln sections plug into separate control panel • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plugs • Hard cramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • "Easy-Lift, Easy-Load" stainless steel spring hinge system with full-support when door is up and tilted back (there are no support bars to get in the way of loading) is standard on all 12 and 10 sided models (29", 28", 22" and 23" diameter), not available on the 8 sided (17-1/2" and 16-1/2" diameter models) • Branch fusing and relays on all models above 50 amps • 6-50 plug on J18, J18X, J23, and J230 single phase models. 15-50 plug on J18, J18X, J23, and J230 three phase models. All other models are direct wire • Mercury-free relays • c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Voltage & Element Options

240 or 208, 1 phase or 3 phase .... no charge
220 volts single phase or 380 volts Wye or Delta (for non-USA installations) .... no charge
Quad Element System (watts & amps do not change from the standard models. For JD1800 & JD2300 elements are doubled & more massive with Quad system. For JD2900 there are two doubled elements instead of the normal three) .... See above

Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System (See page 11) $440

Multi-Zone Pyrometer (Tru-View) System

Varies with Number of thermocouples .... (See Page 11)

Blank Unheated Rings (Can be used on JD Models as well but not on Easy-Fire or Dura-Fire Kilns)

JU18	Blank Ring with no elements - 4-1/2" high for an 8 sided J18 or J18X (R-J-18BK/00)	$275
JU18-3	Blank Ring with no elements - 4-1/2" high for an 8 sided J18-3 or J18X-3 (R-J-18BK/03)	$310
JU23	Blank Ring with no elements - 4-1/2" high for a 10 sided J23, J230, J236 or J245 (R-J-23BK/00)	$315
JU23-3	Blank Ring with no elements - 4-1/2" high for a 10 sided J23-3, J230-3, J236-3 or J245-3 (R-J-23BK/03)	$325
JU29	Blank Ring with no elements - 4-1/2" high for a 12 sided J2918, J2927, J2936 or J2945 (R-J-29BK/00)	$415
JU29-3	Blank Ring with no elements - 4-1/2" high for a 12 sided J2918-3, J2927-3, J2936-3 or J2945-3 (R-J-29BK/03)	$455

(Note: See Jupiter Parts List on the L&L web site for prices of heated rings)

DURA-FIRE MANUAL KILNS WITH KILN SITTER & HI-MED-LOW CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Furn Kit	Quad Elem	No. of Shelves F=full, H=half	Brick Thick	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	Cone Rate	External Dimension	240/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	208/1 KW~Amp~Fuse	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
D18S	**$1500**	**$285**	**$250**	15-1/2” (1F, 4H)	2-1/2”	17-1/2”	18”	2.6	10	29W x 31H x 30D	6.4~26.6~40	5.5~26.6~40	190	245
D18S-3	**$1550**	**$285**	**$250**	15” (1F, 4H)	3”	16-1/2”	18”	2.5	10	29W x 31H x 30D	6.4~26.6~40	5.5~26.6~40	220	255
D18T	**$2025**	**$325**	**$375**	15-1/2” (2F, 4H)	2-1/2”	17-1/2”	27”	3.9	10	29W x 40H x 30D	9.6~40.0~50	8.3~39.8~40	230	305
D18T-3	**$2100**	**$325**	**$375**	15” (2F, 4H)	3”	16-1/2”	27”	3.7	10	29W x 40H x 30D	9.6~40.0~50	8.3~39.8~40	255	325
D23S	**$1950**	**$325**	**$300**	21” (1F, 4H)	2-1/2”	23-3/8”	18”	4.7	10	31W x 32H x 42D	9.5~39.4~50	8.3~40.0~50	265	350
D23S-3	**$2050**	**$325**	**$300**	20” (1F, 4H)	3”	22-3/8”	18”	4.5	10	31W x 33H x 42D	9.5~39.4~50	8.3~40.0~50	305	400
D23T	**$2575**	**$400**	**$450**	21” (2F, 4H)	2-1/2”	23-3/8”	27”	7.0	10	31W x 41H x 42D	11.5~48.0~60	10.0~48.0~60	325	420
D23T-3	**$2675**	**$400**	**$450**	20” (2F, 4H)	3”	22-3/8”	27”	6.7	10	31W x 42H x 42D	11.5~48.0~60	10.0~48.0~60	360	455
D28S-3	**$2575**	**$505**	**$400**	26” (6H)	3”	28”	18”	6.8	10	37W x 33H x 48D	11.5~47.9~60	10.0~48.0~60	370	470
D28T-3	**$3100**	**$615**	**$600**	26” (8H)	3”	28”	27”	10.2	5 or 8	37W x 42H x 48D	11.5~48.0~60	10.0~48.0~60	460	565

One Large Square Post kit: includes six each 1/2”, 1”, 2”, 4”, 6”, & 8” high 1-1/2” square ceramic posts. The Number of post kits varies with model and is shown above. **Furniture Kit:** includes insulated gloves for unloading and 5 lbs of Cone 10 kiln wash. **Cone Rating:** All Dura-Fire kilns are rated to Cone 10 except the D28T model. 208 volt D28T reaches cone 5, 240 volt D28T reaches cone 8 **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Dura-Fire for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes.

This is the most basic and durable kiln we make.

Standard Features

Orton Kiln Sitter with Timer backup mounted in external box • Hi-Medium-Low Switches for each section • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plugs • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • “Easy-Lift, Easy Load” Spring Hinge is standard on the D28S & D28T, optional on the D23S & D23T and not available on the D18 & D18T models. 6-50 plugs on all USA models. Single phase only. Mercury-free. Not listed to UL499. Vent-Sure is optional. Three-year Limited Warranty. Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Voltage & Element Options

240 or 208, 1 phase only because of the way Kiln Sitter is wired .... no charge
220 volts single phase (for non-USA installations) .... no charge
Quad Element System (watts & amps do not change - elements doubled & more massive with Quad system) .... See above

Lid Option

Easy-Lift spring hinge option for D23S, D23S-3, D23T and D23T-3........ $175

TRU-VIEW DIGITAL MULTI-ZONE PYROMETER SYSTEMS FOR MANUAL KILNS

Tru-View Digital Pyrometers

P1 Single Zone Digital Pyrometer with one 8 gauge thermocouple (T-G-PC00/00) $325
P2 Two Zone Digital Pyrometer with two 8 gauge thermocouples (T-G-P200/000 . . . . $415
P3 Three Zone Digital Pyrometer with three 8 gauge thermocouples (T-G-P300/00). $455
P4 Four Zone Digital Pyrometer with four 8 gauge thermocouples (T-G-P400/00). $500
P5 Five Zone Digital Pyrometer with five 8 gauge thermocouples (T-G-P500/00) $540
Pyrocil metallic type K thermocouples instead of 8 ga type K TCs . . . .$25 each

Standard Features

A highly accurate digital pyrometer is mounted in an open control box. It is connected from one to five separate type K thermocouples with a selector switch. The pyrometer operates with one 9 volt battery. NOTE: All thermocouples should be the same thickness and of similar age. **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Tru-View

LIBERTY-BELLE HOBBY KILNS WITH ONE-TOUCH™ CONTROL

Model No.	Kiln Price	Furn Kit	Quad Elem	No. of Shelves F=full, H=half	Brick Thick	Inside Diam	Inside Height	Cubic Feet	Exterior Dimensions	240V KW~Amp~Fuse	208V KW~Amp~Fuse	Ship Lbs	Lbs w/Kit
LB18	**$1525**	**$210**	**$250**	15-1/2” (1F, 4H)	2-1/2”	17-1/2”	18”	2.6	29W x 31H x 30D	5.7~23.9~30	5.0~23.9~30	200	240
LB18-3	**$1575**	**$210**	**$250**	15” (1F, 4H)	3”	16-1/2”	18”	2.5	29W x 32H x 30D	5.7~23.9~30	5.0~23.9~30	215	250

Furniture Kit: includes four each of 1”, 2”, 4” and 6” triangular posts plus one pound of Cone 10 kiln wash. You can substitute two half shelves for one full shelf at no charge. **Cone Rating:** Cone 10 **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Liberty-Belle.pdf for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes. Also see hotkilns.com/Spec-One-Touch.pdf for more information about the One-Touch™ control.

The perfect hobby kiln and great for people who need to stay portable. The 12 foot cord plugs into your dryer outlet!

Standard Features with the new One-Touch™ Intuitive Kiln Control

Proprietary One-Touch™ Intuitive Kiln Control. One touch and you are ready to fire the most common bisque and glaze programs. (also easy to adjust simple parameters like cone, delay, hold, heat-up and cool-down rates). You can even create four custom ramp/hold programs • 12 foot long cord with Nema 14-30 dryer type plug • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plugs • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • Mercury-free relays • c-MET-us listed to UL499 standards• Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Voltage & Element Options

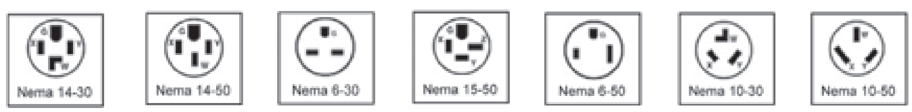
240, 220 or 208 single phase are all standard options at no charge. 3 phase is not available.
Quad Element System (watts & amps do not change - elements doubled & more massive with Quad system) ....See above

Control Options

Pyrocil metallic thermocouple instead of 8 ga thermocouple $25

Plug & Cord Options

Standard Nema 12 foot long 14-30 plug can be changed by customer to Nema 14-50 (hardware is included to do this). Nema 6-30 plug, Nema 15-50 or 6-50, Nema 10-30 or NEMA 10-50 plug is available for $60 extra. A 6 foot long 6-50 plug is available at no charge. (All these plugs can be easily changed in the field if necessary.) All cords are 12 feet long.



Standard | Standard | No Charge | $60 | $60 | $60 | $60

DOLL / TEST KILNS WITH THREE CONTROL OPTIONS

Dimensions

Cubic Feet: 0.5 **Inside Diameter:** 11” **Inside Height:** 9” **Outside Width:** 19” Outside Depth (front to back): 23”

Standard Features of Manual Doll Kiln with Orton Kiln Sitter/Timer

Orton Kiln Sitter/Timer • Infinite manual switch • 120 volt operation • Power cord • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plug • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • Not UL499 listed • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Standard Features of Automatic Doll Kiln with the One-Touch™ Intuitive Kiln Control

Proprietary One-Touch™ Intuitive Kiln Control. One touch and you are ready to fire the most common bisque and glaze programs. (also easy to adjust simple parameters like cone, delay, hold, heat-up and cool-down rates). You can even create four custom ramp/hold programs • 120 volt operation (for all but the “DX” versions) • Type K 8 gauge thermocouple with ceramic protection tube • Full support 14 gauge aluminized steel stand • Solid peephole plug • Hard ceramic element holders • Proprietary reflective brick coating that protects brick and keeps dusting down • Not UL499 listed • Three-year Limited Warranty • Skidded Carton with foam-in-place packaging for Common Carrier

Standard Features of Automatic Doll Kiln with 24-Key DynaTrol Program Control

Same as the automatic with the One-Touch™ Program Control except it has the 24-Key DynaTrol (single zone version).

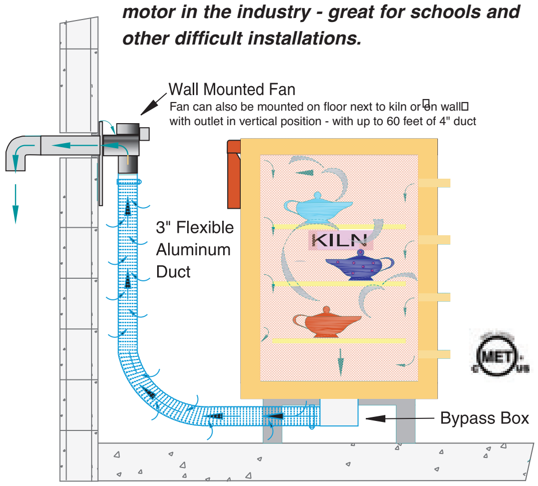
Perfection in a small package.

VENT-SURE DOWNDRAFT KILN VENT SYSTEM

Vent-Sure Super-Safe Downdraft Kiln Vent System

Vent-Sure Downdraft Kiln Vent System $440
Vent Doubler (includes all the parts necessary to vent two kilns up to 10 cubic feet each with one vent) $140
Bracket for mounting motor on floor or in vertical position on wall $25

The L&L Vent-Sure has the strongest fan motor in the industry - great for schools and other difficult installations.



Standard Features

Downdraft venting pulls air down to bottom of kiln • Improves temperature uniformity inside the kiln • Powerful 130 CFM fan motor, typically mounted on wall, allows fumes to be under vacuum in your studio • 120 volts with on/off switch on cord 220-240 volt model available at no charge) • 15 foot long flexible aluminum duct • Bypass collection box mounted on kiln allows adjustment of venting. Note that, because of the air restrictions, the vent doesn't actually pull that much air out of the kiln - just enough • The strong fan motor helps overcome static pressure in long exhaust lines • Fan motor stays cool and there is no vibration transmitted to the kiln • Three-year Limited Warranty • c-MET-us Listed to UL499 standards for use on c-MET-us L&L Kilns (Easy-fire, Jupiter & Davinci). MET-us Listed to UL499 standards on Hercules, Easy-Load, Renaissance kilns. Not listed, Liberty-Belle, Dura-Fire and other brand kilns.

Which kilns you can use the Vent-Sure on?

Almost all L&L kilns will work with the L&L Vent-Sure power kiln vent system. The only exceptions are the Chameleon kilns listed in this Price List.

More information?

Specifications: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Vent-Sure
Instructions: See hotkilns.com/vent-sure-instructions

MISCELLANEOUS ACCESSORIES

Loading & Firing Accesories

Dark Viewing glasses. #3 shade (M-A-GLAS/00) $21
Cotton/Kevlar gloves will protect your hands from heat up to 300°F (M-A-GLOV/00) $21
1 lb box of Cone 10 Kiln wash (M-G-WASH/01) $4
5 lb Box of Cone 10 Kiln Wash (M-G-WASH/05) $10

Books

What Every Potter Should Know (A 222 page book about firing ceramics) by Jeff Zamek. (B-G-WHAT/00) $28
Electric Kiln Firing (A 284 page book about firing ceramics with electric kilns). By Richard Zakin. (B-G-ELCM/00) $40
Mastering Cone 6 Glazes (A 168 page book about making and firing durable Cone 6 glazes) by John Hasselberth and Ron Roy. (B-G-CON6/00) $40

Other

Brick Repair Kit (M-G-BKIT/00) $35

DOLL / TEST KILNS WITH THREE CONTROL OPTIONS

Model No.	Kiln Price	Furn Kit	Control	Cone Rating	Watts	Amps	Volts	Fuse	Plug	Lbs Kiln	Lbs w/Kit
DL11	**$1050**	**$145**	Orton Sitter/Timer	5	1800	15	120	20	5-15R	110	130
DLH11	**$1050**	**$145**	Orton Sitter/Timer	10	2160	18	120	20	5-20R	110	130
DL11-DB	**$1050**	**$145**	One-Touch™ Control	5	1800	15	120	20	5-15R	110	130
DLH11-DB	**$1050**	**$145**	One-Touch™ Control	10	2160	18	120	20	5-20R	110	130
DLH11-DXB-240	**$1050**	**$145**	One-Touch™ Control	10	2800	11.7	240	15	14-30R	110	130
DLH11-DXB-208	**$1050**	**$145**	One-Touch™ Control	10	2800	13.5	208	20	14-30R	110	130
DL11-D	**$1175**	**$145**	24-Key DynaTrol Control	5	1800	15	120	20	5-15R	110	130
DLH11-D	**$1175**	**$145**	24-Key DynaTrol Control	10	2160	18	120	20	5-20R	110	130
DLH11-DX	**$1175**	**$145**	24-Key DynaTrol Control	10	2800	11.7	240	15	14-30R	110	130
DLH11-DX	**$1175**	**$145**	24-Key DynaTrol Control	10	2800	13.5	208	20	14-30R	110	130

Furniture Kit: includes two 9" diameter full shelves, one 9" diameter half shelf, four each of 1/2", 1", 1-1/2", 2", 2-1/2", 3" and 4" triangular posts plus one pound of Cone 10 kiln wash. You can substitute two half shelves for one full shelf at no charge. **Cone Rating:** See chart above. **More**: See hotkilns.com/Spec-Doll for additional information like shipping dimensions, electrical ratings, fuse sizes and wire connection sizes.

KILN SHELVES

SHELF MATERIAL AND RATING: All shelves that are 15” in diameter and above are currently made of a ***press-molded (not cast) high alumina*** cordierite body that holds up to Cone 11 firing with little warpage. This is particularly important for these larger shelves.

ROUND & POLYGONAL SHELVES

Shelves for 11   Diameter Kilns

For Doll/Test Kilns
Full Round 9” diameter shelf (7/16” thick) (H-D-9000/00)....................$25.00
Half Round 9” diameter shelf (7/16” thick) (H-D-9050/00)...................$15.00

Shelves for 14   Diameter Kilns

For J14 Kilns
Full Round 13” diameter (1/2” thick) (H-J-1300/00).............................$30.00
Half Round 13” diameter (1/2” thick) (H-J-1350/00).............................$18.00

Shelves for 16-1/2   Diameter Kilns

For LB18-3, e18S-3 & e18T-3, and J18-3 kilns with 3   brick
Full Round 15” diameter (5/8” thick) (H-J-150A/00).............................$37.00
Half Round 15” diameter (5/8” thick) (H-J-155A/00).............................$22.00

Shelves for 17-1/2   Diameter Kilns

For LB18, e18S & T, and J18 kilns with 2-1/2   brick
Full Octagonal 15-1/2” diameter (5/8” thick) (H-J-1500/00).................$37.00
Half Octagonal 15-1/2” diameter (5/8” thick)(H-J-1550/00)..................$22.00

Shelves for 22   Diameter Kilns

For e23S-3, e23T-3, SM23T-3, & J2300-3 kilns with 3   brick
Full Round 20” diameter (3/4” thick) (H-J-2000/00).............................$73.00
Half Round 20” diameter (3/4” thick) (H-J-2050/00).............................$36.00

Shelves for 23   Diameter Kilns

For e23S, e23T, SM23T & J2300 kilns with 2-1/2   brick
Full Round 21” diameter (3/4” thick) (H-J-2100/00).............................$74.00
Half Round 21” diameter (3/4” thick) (H-J-2150/00).............................$37.00

Shelves for 28   & 29   Diameter Kilns

For e28S, e28T, SM28T, J2900 Series with 2-1/2   or 3   brick
Half Round 25-1/2” diameter (3/4” thick) (H-J-2650/00).......................$61.00

SQUARE & RECTANGULAR SHELVES

Shelves for Small Front-Loading Kilns

For E48, E49, R490
6” x 8” rectangular (5/8” thick) (H-R-6800/00)......................................$30.00

Shelves for 17   Square Kilns

For SQ1818, SQ1827, X1800 Series, EL1824, EL3648
8” x 16” rectangular (5/8” thick) (H-S-1608/00)....................................$32.00
16” x 16” square (3/4” thick) (H-S-1616/00)...$61.00

Shelves for 22   Square Kilns

For X2300 Series
20” x 10” rectangular (5/8” thick) (H-X-2010/00)..................................$44.00

Shelves for 26   Square Kilns

For X2800 Series and X2800-XT Series kilns
23” x 11-1/2” rectangular (3/4” thick) (H-X-2311/00)............................$55.00

Shelves for 26   x 35   Rectangular Kilns and 24   square Front-Loaders

For T2300 Series, T2300-XT Series, EL2424-H, EL2427-H, EL2436 & EL2448
22” x 11” rectangular (3/4” thick) (H-X-2211/00)..................................$51.00

Shelves for 30   x 28   Front Loader Kilns

For EL2848
24” x 14” rectangular (3/4” thick) (H-J-2414/00)...................................$64.00

Shelves for 30   Square, & 30   x 43   Rectangular Kilns

For X3200 Series, T3400 Series & EL3048
28” x 14” rectangular (3/4” thick) (H-J-2814/00)...................................$70.00

KILN POSTS

POST KITS

Large Square Post Kit (C-G-SPKT/EZ) $145.00
(Six each 1/2”, 1”, 2”, 4”, 6” & 8” square posts)

Small Square Post Kit (C-G-SPKT/SM) $96.00
(Four each 1/2”, 1”, 2”, 4”, 6” & 8” square posts)

Doll-Baby Post Kit (C-G-TPKT/DB) $60.00
(Four each of 1/2”, 1”, 1-1/2”, 2”, 2-1/2”, 3” and 4” triangular posts)

Liberty-Belle Post Kit (C-G-TPKT/LB) $41.00
(Four each 1”, 2”, 4” & 6” triangular posts)

Large Triangular Post Kit (C-G-TPKT/01) $118.00
(Six each 1/2”, 1”, 1-1/2”, 2”, 2-1/2”, 3”, 4”, 5” & 6” triangular posts)

Small Triangular Post Kit (C-G-TPKT/00) $64.00
(Four each 1”, 2”, 3”, 4”, 5” & 6” triangular posts)

FREIGHT FOR SHELVES AND FURNITURE KITS: Depending on the quantitiy and size of shelves, posts and furniture kit(s) ordered, the order may have to ship by common carrier freight. If so a skid/carton charge of $35 will apply.

L&L sells the highest grade posts on the market. They are very straight (even in lengths up to 12” long), precision cut for squareness and are strong without being excessively thick.

TRIANGULAR POSTS (1” Triangular)

1/2”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T005/00)	$1.85
1”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T010/00)	$1.90
1-1/2”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T015/00)	$1.95
2”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T020/00)	$2.15
2-1/2”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T025/00)	$2.20
3”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T030/00)	$2.35
4”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T040/00)	$2.75
5”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T050/00)	$3.10
6”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T060/00)	$3.65
7”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T070/00)	$4.40
8”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T080/00)	$4.65
10”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T100/00)	$5.70
12”	Triangular Post	(C-G-T120/00)	$6.20

SQUARE POSTS (1-1/2” Square)

1/2”	Square Post	(C-G-S005/00)	$2.35
1”	Square Post	(C-G-S010/00)	$3.10
2”	Square Post	(C-G-S020/00)	$3.70
4”	Square Post	(C-G-S040/00)	$4.05
6”	Square Post	(C-G-S060/00)	$5.05
8”	Square Post	(C-G-S080/00)	$6.00
10”	Square Post	(C-G-S100/00)	$7.65
12”	Square Post	(C-G-S120/00)	$9.30